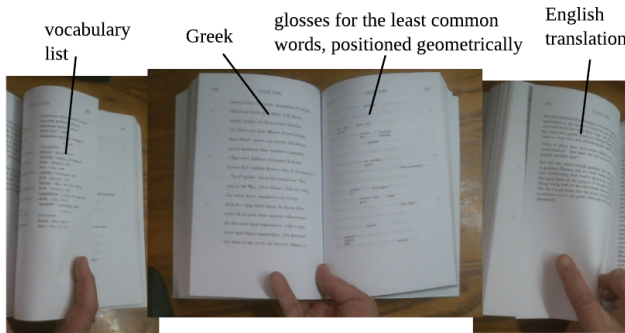


This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, go to [lightandmatter.com/ransom](http://lightandmatter.com/ransom). To read this book on a computer screen, you should set up your PDF viewer so that it displays a two-page layout, with an even page on the left and an odd one on the right.



Text and aids are presented in a four-page spread.

rev. December 31, 2025

The Greek text is from the 1920 edition by Godley, via Wikisource. My additional proofreading and editorial work on the Greek text are released here under the CC0 license.

The English translation is by Macaulay, 1890, via Project Gutenberg.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

**Copyright info.** Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.



*vocabulary***ἀδικία** injustice, offence**αἵρεσις** -εως (f) choice, plan**ἀνθέω** sprout**ἀντιόω** meet, fight, join**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
upwards, out to sea**ἀποδημέω** be absent, abroad**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐκδέχομαι** receive; succeed to a  
position**ἔλασις** -εως (f) driving out**ἐπιδιώκω** chase after**καταπαύω** stop, restrain ~pause**κάτειμι** go down, disembark ~ion**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**προσδοκάω** expect**στρατιά** army ~strategy**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**σφέτερος** their**τίνω** (ι) pay, atone for; (mp) punish**τίω** value, honor; mp: exact  
recompense for**φοιτέω** go back and forth

## 4

## 4.1

Μετὰ δὲ τὴν Βαβυλῶνος αἵρεσιν ἐγένετο ἐπὶ Σκύρας αὐτοῦ Δαρείου ἔλασις· ἀνθεύσης γὰρ τῆς Ἀσίης ἀνδράσι καὶ χρημάτων μεγάλων συνιόντων, ἐπεθύμησε ὁ Δαρεῖος τίσασθαι Σκύθας, ὅτι ἐκεῖνοι πρότεροι ἐσβαλόντες ἐς τὴν Μηδικὴν καὶ νικήσαντες μάχῃ τοὺς ἀντιουμένους ὑπῆρξαν ἀδικίης. τῆς γὰρ ἄνω Ἀσίης ἦρξαν, ὥς καὶ πρότερον μοι εἴρηται, Σκύθαι ἕτα δυῶν δέοντα τριήκοντα. Κιμμερίους γὰρ ἐπιδιώκοντες ἐσέβαλον ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, καταπαύσαντες τῆς ἀρχῆς Μήδους· οὗτοι γὰρ πρὶν ἢ Σκύθας ἀπικέσθαι ἦρχον τῆς Ἀσίης. τοὺς δὲ Σκύθας ἀποδημήσαντας ὀκτῶ καὶ εἴκοσι ἕτα καὶ διὰ χρόνου τοσούτου κατιόντας ἐς τὴν σφετέρην ἐξεδέξατο οὐκ ἐλάσσω πόνος τοῦ Μηδικοῦ· εὖρον γὰρ ἀντιουμένην σφίσι στρατιήν οὐκ ὀλίγην. αἱ γὰρ τῶν Σκυθέων γυναῖκες, ὥς σφι οἱ ἄνδρες ἀπῆσαν χρόνον πολλόν, ἐφοίτεον παρὰ τοὺς δούλους.

## 4

## 4.1

Μετὰ δὲ τὴν Βαβυλῶνος |choice, plan, ἐνετο ἐπὶ Σκύρας  
 αὐτοῦ Δαρείου |driving |sprout γὰρ τῆς Ἀσίας ἀνδράσι  
 καὶ χρημάτων μεγάλων |be with; have sex. ἔϋμησε ὁ Δαρεῖος  
 τίσασθαι Σκύθας, ὅτι ἐκεῖνοι πρότεροι |throw into ἐς τὴν  
 Μηδικὴν καὶ νικήσαντες μάχῃ τοὺς |meet, fight, join ὑπῆρξαν  
 ἀδικίης. τῆς γὰρ ἄνω Ἀσίας ἦρξαν, ὥς καὶ πρότερον μοι  
 εἴρηται, Σκύθαι ἔτεα δυῶν δέοντα τριήκοντα. Κιμμερίους  
 γὰρ |chase after ἐσέβαλον ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, |stop, restrain  
 τῆς ἀρχῆς Μήδους· οὗτοι γὰρ πρὶν ἢ Σκύθας ἀπικέσθαι  
 ἦρχον τῆς Ἀσίας. τοὺς δὲ Σκύθας |be absent, abroad |eight  
 καὶ εἴκοσι ἔτεα καὶ διὰ χρόνου τοσούτου |go down, disembark  
 τὴν |their |receive; succeed ἐλάσσων πόνος τοῦ Μηδικοῦ·  
 εὗρον γὰρ |meet, |fight, σφίσι στρατιήν οὐκ ὀλίγην. αἱ γὰρ  
 τῶν Σκυθέων γυναῖκες, ὥς σφι οἱ ἄνδρες ἀπῆσαν χρόνον  
 πολλόν, |go back and forth οὐς δούλους.

**4****4.1**

After Babylon had been taken, the march of Dareios himself against the Scythians took place: for now that Asia was flourishing in respect of population, and large sums were being gathered in as revenue, Dareios formed the desire to take vengeance upon the Scythians, because they had first invaded the Median land and had overcome in fight those who opposed them; and thus they had been the beginners of wrong. The Scythians in truth, as I have before said, had ruled over Upper Asia for eight and twenty years; for they had invaded Asia in their pursuit of the Kimmerians, and they had deposed the Medes from their rule, who had rule over Asia before the Scythians came. Now when the Scythians had been absent from their own land for eight and twenty years, as they were returning to it after that interval of time, they were met by a contest not less severe than that which they had had with the Medes, since they found an army of no mean size opposing them. For the wives of the Scythians, because their husbands were absent from them for a long time, had associated with the slaves.

*vocabulary*

ἀγγήιον vessel

ἀμέλγω to milk ~milk

ἄρθρον joint

αὐλός flute, tube, hollow

γάλα milk ~galaxy

δονέω shake, agitate

εἰστίθηναι put in

εἰσχέω pour into

εὖς good, brave, noble

θηλέω abound in ~thallium

θηλὺς female; (rare) abundant ~female

καθίηναι (τι) speed down upon; take  
down ~jet

κοῖλος hollow ~hollow

νεότης -τος (f, 3) youth ~neon

νομᾶς -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing

ξύλινος wooden

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

οὔθαρ -τος (n) udder

πίμπλημι fill (+gen.) ~plenum

σφέτερος their

τίμιος honored, precious

τυφλός blind

τυφλώ blind

ὕφίστημι promise, undertake ~station

φλέψ -βός (f) vein ~phlebotomy

φυσάω (ῶ) blow, puff, blow out

## 4.2

Τοὺς δὲ δούλους οἱ Σκύθαι πάντας τυφλοῦσι τοῦ γάλακτος  
 εἵνεκεν τοῦ πίνουσι ποιεῦντες ὧδε. ἐπεὰν φυσητήρας  
 λάβωσι ὀστεῖνους αὐλοῖσι προσεμφερεστάτους, τούτους  
 ἐσθέντες ἐς τῶν θηλέων ἵππων τά ἄρθρα φυσῶσι τοῖσι  
 στόμασι, ἄλλοι δὲ ἄλλων φυσώντων ἀμέλγουσι. φασὶ δὲ  
 τοῦδε εἵνεκα τοῦτο ποιέειν· τὰς φλέβας τε πύμπλασθαι  
 φυσωμένας τῆς ἵππου καὶ τὸ οὖθαρ κατίεσθαι. ἐπεὰν  
 δὲ ἀμέλξωσι τὸ γάλα, ἐσχέαντες ἐς ξύλινα ἀγγήια κοῖλα  
 καὶ περιστίζαντες κατὰ τὰ ἀγγήια τοὺς τυφλοὺς δονέουσι  
 τὸ γάλα, καὶ τὸ μὲν αὐτοῦ ἐπιστάμενον ἀπαρύσαντες  
 ἡγεῦνται εἶναι τιμιώτερον, τό δ' ὑπιστάμενον ἥσσον τοῦ  
 ἐτέρου. τούτων μὲν εἵνεκα ἅπαντα τὸν ἂν λάβωσι οἱ  
 Σκύθαι ἐκτυφλοῦσι. οὐ γὰρ ἀρόται εἰσὶ ἀλλὰ νομάδες.

## 4.3

Ἐκ τούτων δὴ ὦν σφι τῶν δούλων καὶ τῶν γυναικῶν  
 ἐτράφη νεότης· οἱ ἐπεῖτε ἔμαθον τὴν σφετέρην γένεσιν,



## 4.2

Τοὺς δὲ δούλους οἱ Σκύθαι πάντας |blind      τοῦ |milk  
 εἶνεκεν τοῦ πίνουσι ποιεῦντες ὧδε. ἐπεὰν φύσητήρας  
 λάβωσι ὀστέϊνους |flute, tube, hollow... ῥερεστάτους, τούτους  
 |put in      ἐς τῶν θηλέων ἵππων τά |joint      |blow, puff, blōw out  
 στόμασι, ἄλλοι δὲ ἄλλων |blow,      puff, |to milk      . φασὶ δὲ  
    |blow out  
 τοῦδε εἶνεκα τοῦτο ποιέειν· τὰς |vein      τε |fill (+gen.)  
 |blow, puff, blow out ἵππου καὶ τὸ |udder      |speed down upon; \_αν  
    |take down  
 δὲ |to milk      τὸ |milk , |pour into      ἐς |wooden |vessel      |hollow  
 καὶ περιστίζαντες κατὰ τὰ |vessel      τοὺς |blind      |shake,  
    |agitate  
 τὸ |milk , καὶ τὸ μὲν αὐτοῦ ἐπιστάμενον ἀπαρύσαντες  
 ἡγεῖνται εἶναι |honored,  
    |precious      , τό δ' |promise,  
    |undertake  
 ἐτέρου. τούτων μὲν εἶνεκα ἅπαντα τὸν ἂν λάβωσι οἱ  
 Σκύθαι ἐκτυφλοῦσι. οὐ γὰρ ἀρόται εἰςὶ ἀλλὰ |roaming, .  
    |grazing

## 4.3

Ἐκ τούτων δὴ ὦν σφι τῶν δούλων καὶ τῶν γυναικῶν  
 ἐτράφη |youth      οἱ ἐπέιτε ἔμαθον τὴν |their      γένεσιν,

## 4.2

Now the Scythians put out the eyes of all their slaves because of the milk which they drink; and they do as follows:— they take blow-pipes of bone just like flutes, and these they insert into the vagina of the mare and blow with their mouths, and others milk while they blow: and they say that they do this because the veins of the mare are thus filled, being blown out, and so the udder is let down. When they had drawn the milk they pour it into wooden vessels hollowed out, and they set the blind slaves in order about the vessels and agitate the milk. Then that which comes to the top they skim off, considering it the more valuable part, whereas they esteem that which settles down to be less good than the other. For this reason the Scythians put out the eyes of all whom they catch; for they are not tillers of the soil but nomads.

## 4.3

From these their slaves then, I say, and from their wives had been born and bred up a generation of young men, who having learnt the

*vocabulary***ἄγχι** near, nigh ~angina**αἶσσω** dart, glance**αἰχμή** spear point ~acute**ἀντικαθίζω** place instead of; (mp) sit  
watching against**ἀντιόω** meet, fight, join**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure**ἄσσω** dart, glance**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐπιτελής** accomplished**εὖς** good, brave, noble**κατατείνω** stretch out**κάτειμι** go down, disembark ~ion**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**μάστιξ** -γος (f) whip**μέτειμι** be among, go, follow ~ion**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**ὀρύσσω** dig**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain**ᾠρος** year

ἡντιοῦντο αὐτοῖσι κατιοῦσι ἐκ τῶν Μήδων. καὶ πρῶτα μὲν τὴν χώραν ἀπετάμοντο, τάφρον ὀρυζάμενοι εὐρέαν κατατείνουσιν ἐκ τῶν Ταυρικῶν ὁρέων εἰς τὴν Μαιήτιν λίμνην, τῇ περ ἐστὶ μεγίστη· μετὰ γε πειρωμένοισι ἐσβάλλειν τοῖσι Σκύθῃσι ἀντικατιζόμενοι ἐμάχοντο. γινομένης δὲ μάχης πολλάκις καὶ οὐ δυναμένων οὐδὲν πλέον ἔχειν τῶν Σκυθέων τῇ μάχῃ, εἰς αὐτῶν ἔλεξε τάδε. «οἷα ποιεῦμεν, ἄνδρες Σκύθαι· δούλοισι τοῖσι ἡμετέροισι μαχόμενοι αὐτοὶ τε κτεινόμενοι ἐλάσσονες γινόμεθα καὶ ἐκείνους κτείνοντες ἐλασσόνων τὸ λοιπὸν ἄρξομεν. νῦν ὦν μοι δοκεῖ αἰχμὰς μὲν καὶ τόξα μετεῖναι, λαβόντα δὲ ἕκαστον τοῦ ἵππου τὴν μάστιγα ἰέναι ἄσσον αὐτῶν. μέχρι μὲν γὰρ ὥρων ἡμέας ὄπλα ἔχοντας, οἳ δὲ ἐνόμιζον ὅμοιοί τε καὶ ἐξ ὁμοίων ἡμῖν εἶναι· ἐπεὰν δὲ ἴδωνται μάστιγας ἀντὶ ὄπλων ἔχοντας, μαθόντες ὥς εἰς ἡμέτεροι δούλοι καὶ συγγινόντες τοῦτο. οὐκ ὑπομενέουσι.»

#### 4.4

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ Σκύθαι ἐποίουν ἐπιτελέα· οἳ δὲ

|meet, fight, join, αὐτοῖσι κατιοῦσι ἐκ τῶν Μήδων. καὶ πρῶτα

μὲν τὴν χώραν |cut off, sever , |ditch |dig εὐρέαν

|stretch out ἐκ τῶν Ταυρικῶν ὁρέων ἐς τὴν Μαιῆτιν

|lake, marsh, basin, sea, περ ἐστὶ μεγίστη· μετὰ γε πειρωμένοισι

ἐσβάλλειν τοῖσι Σκύθησι |place instead of; (mp) |sit watching against ἄχοντο.

γινομένης δὲ μάχης πολλάκις καὶ οὐ δυναμένων οὐδὲν

πλέον ἔχειν τῶν Σκυθῶν τῇ μάχῃ, εἷς αὐτῶν ἔλεξε τάδε.

«οἷα ποιεῦμεν, ἄνδρες Σκύθαι· δούλοισι τοῖσι ἡμετέροισι

μαχόμενοι αὐτοὶ τε κτεινόμενοι ἐλάσσονες γινόμεθα καὶ

ἐκείνους κτείνοντες ἐλασσόνων τὸ λοιπὸν ἄρξομεν. νῦν

ὦν μοι δοκείει |spear |point μὲν καὶ τόξα |be among λαβόντα δὲ

ἕκαστον τοῦ ἵππου τὴν |whip ἰέναι ἄσσον αὐτῶν. μέχρι

μὲν γὰρ |year ἡμέας ὅπλα ἔχοντας, οἱ δὲ ἐνόμιζον ὅμοιοί

τε καὶ ἐξ ὁμοίων ἡμῖν εἶναι· ἐπεὰν δὲ ἴδωνται |whip

ἀντὶ ὅπλων ἔχοντας, μαθόντες ὥς εἰσὶ ἡμέτεροι δούλοι

καὶ συγγινόντες τοῦτο. οὐκ |stay behind, await

#### 4.4

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ Σκύθαι ἐποίουν |accomplished ἃ δὲ

manner of their birth set themselves to oppose the Scythians as they were returning from the Medes. And first they cut off their land by digging a broad trench extending from the Tauric mountains to the Maiotian lake, at the point where this is broadest; then afterwards when the Scythians attempted to invade the land, they took up a position against them and fought; and as they fought many times, and the Scythians were not able to get any advantage in the fighting, one of them said: “What a thing is this that we are doing, Scythians! We are fighting against our own slaves, and we are not only becoming fewer in number ourselves by being slain in battle, but also we are killing them, and so we shall have fewer to rule over in future. Now therefore to me it seems good that we leave spears and bows and that each one take his horse-whip and so go up close to them: for so long as they saw us with arms in our hands, they thought themselves equal to us and of equal birth; but when they shall see that we have whips instead of arms, they will perceive that they are our slaves, and having acknowledged this they will not await our onset.”

#### 4.4

When they heard this, the Scythians proceeded to do that which he said,

*vocabulary*

ἄγχι near, nigh ~angina

αἶσσω dart, glance

ἄροτρον plow ~arable

ἄσσω dart, glance

ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic

ἐπιλανθάνω mp: forget ~Lethe

ἐργω bound, fend off; do ~ergonomics

ἐρῆμος empty

εὖς good, brave, noble

ζυγόν yoke, a joined pair ~zygote

ζυγός yoke, a joined pair ~zygote

κατέρχομαι come down, out from

ὄον οὖ type of fruit

ποίημα -τος (n, 3) work, deed

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συναγείρω gather together ~agora

σφέτερος their

τίνω (i) pay, atone for; (mp) punish

τίω value, honor; mp: exact

recompense for

τοκεύς -ος (m) parent ~oxytocin

φιάλη jar ~vial

ἐκπλαγέντες τῷ γινομένῳ τῆς μάχης τε ἐπελάθοντο καὶ ἔφευγον. οὕτω οἱ Σκύθαι τῆς τε Ἀσίας ἤρξαν καὶ ἐξελασθέντες αὐτὶς ὑπὸ Μήδων κατηήλθον τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ ἐς τὴν σφετέρην. τῶνδε εἵνεκα ὁ Δαρεΐς τίσασθαι βουλόμενος συνήγειρε ἐπ' αὐτοὺς στράτευμα.

#### 4.5

Ὡς δὲ Σκύθαι λέγουσι, νεώτατον πάντων ἐθνέων εἶναι τὸ σφέτερον, τοῦτο δὲ γενέσθαι ὧδε. ἄνδρα γενέσθαι πρῶτον ἐν τῇ γῇ ταύτῃ εὐούση ἐρήμῳ τῷ οὐνομα εἶναι Ταργιτάον· τοῦ δὲ Ταργιτάου τούτου τοὺς τοκέας λέγουσι εἶναι, ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ πιστὰ λέγοντες, λέγουσι δ' ὦν, Δία τε καὶ Βορυσθέneos τοῦ ποταμοῦ θυγατέρα. γένεος μὲν τοιούτου δὴ τινος γενέσθαι τὸν Ταργιτάον, τούτου δὲ γενέσθαι παῖδας τρεῖς, Λιπόξαιν καὶ Ἀρπόξαιν καὶ νεώτατον Κολάξαιν. ἐπὶ τούτων ἀρχόντων ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ φερομένα χρύσεια ποιήματα, ἄροτρον τε καὶ ζυγόν καὶ σάγαριν καὶ φιάλην, πεσεῖν ἐς τὴν Σκυθικὴν· καὶ τῶν ἰδόντα πρῶτον τὸν πρεσβύτατον ἄσσον ἰέναι



|panic, be τῷ γινομένῳ τῆς μάχης τε ἐπελάθοντο καὶ  
 |knocked out  
 ἔφευγον. οὕτω οἱ Σκύθαι τῆς τε Ἀσίας |bound, fend off; do  
 |drive out αὖτις ὑπὸ Μήδων |come down, out from οὕτω  
 ἐς τὴν |their τῶνδε εἵνεκα ὁ Δαρεῖος τίσασθαι  
 βουλόμενος συνήγειρε ἐπ' αὐτοὺς |army

## 4.5

Ὡς δὲ Σκύθαι λέγουσι, νεώτατον πάντων ἐθνέων εἶναι  
 τὸ |their , τοῦτο δὲ γενέσθαι ὧδε. ἄνδρα γενέσθαι  
 πρῶτον ἐν τῇ γῇ ταύτῃ εὐρύση ἐρήμῳ τῷ οὐνομα εἶναι  
 Ταργιτάον· τοῦ δὲ Ταργιτάου τούτου τοὺς |parent λέγουσι  
 εἶναι, ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ πιστὰ λέγοντες, λέγουσι δ' ὦν, Δία  
 τε καὶ Βορυσθένης τοῦ ποταμοῦ θυγατέρα. γένεος  
 μὲν τοιούτου δὴ τινος γενέσθαι τὸν Ταργιτάον, τούτου  
 δὲ γενέσθαι παῖδας τρεῖς, Λιπόξαιν καὶ Ἀρπόξαιν καὶ  
 νεώτατον Κολάξαιν. ἐπὶ τούτων ἀρχόντων ἐκ τοῦ  
 οὐρανοῦ φερομένα χρύσεια |work, deed, |plow τε καὶ  
 ζυγόν καὶ σάγαριν καὶ |jar , πεσεῖν ἐς τὴν Σκυθικὴν  
 καὶ τῶν ἰδόντα πρῶτον τὸν πρεσβύτατον ἄσσον ἵεναι

and the others being panic-stricken by that which was done forgot their fighting and fled. Thus the Scythians had ruled over Asia; and in such manner, when they were driven out again by the Medes, they had returned to their own land. For this Dareios wished to take vengeance upon them, and was gathering together an army to go against them.

## 4.5

Now the Scythians say that their nation is the youngest of all nations, and that this came to pass as follows:— The first man who ever existed in this region, which then was desert, was one named Targitaos: and of this Targitaos they say, though I do not believe it for my part, however they say the parents were Zeus and the daughter of the river Borysthenes. Targitaos, they report, was produced from some such origin as this, and of him were begotten three sons, Lipoxaïs and Arpoxaïs and the youngest Colaxaïs. In the reign of these there came down from heaven certain things wrought of gold, a plough, a yoke, a battle-axe, and a cup, and fell in the Scythian land: and first the eldest saw and came near them, desiring to

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be  
freed, depart  
**ἄπωθέω** repel, reject  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named  
**κατασβέννυμι** (ὅ) extinguish

**μίν** him, her, it  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon  
**σύμπας** (ᾶ) all together  
**χρυσός** (ὅ) gold

βουλόμενον αὐτὰ λαβεῖν, τὸν δὲ χρυσὸν ἐπιόντος καίεσθαι. ἀπαλλαχθέντος δὲ τούτου προσιέναι τὸν δεύτερον, καὶ τὸν αὐτὶς ταῦτα ποιέειν. τοὺς μὲν δὴ καιόμενον τὸν χρυσὸν ἀπώσασθαι, τρίτῳ δὲ τῷ νεωτάτῳ ἐπελθόντι κατασβῆναι, καὶ μιν ἐκεῖνον κομίσει ἐς ἑωυτοῦ· καὶ τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους ἀδελφεοὺς πρὸς ταῦτα συγγνόντας τὴν βασιληίην πᾶσαν παραδοῦναι τῷ νεωτάτῳ.

## 4.6

Ἀπὸ μὲν δὴ Λιποξάιος γεγονέναι τούτους τῶν Σκυθέων οἱ Ἀνχάται γένος καλέονται, ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ μέσου Ἄρποξάιος οἱ Κατίαροί τε καὶ Τράσπιες καλέονται, ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ νεωτάτου αὐτῶν τοῦ βασιλέος οἱ καλέονται Παραλάται· σύμπασι δὲ εἶναι οὖνομα Σκολότους, τοῦ βασιλέος ἐπωνυμίην. Σκύθας δὲ Ἕλληνες ὠνόμασαν.

## 4.7

Γεγονέναι μὲν νυν σφέας ὧδε λέγουσι οἱ Σκύθαι, ἔτεα δὲ σφίσι ἐπείτε γεγόνασι τὰ σύμπαντα λέγουσι εἶναι ἀπὸ

βουλόμενον αὐτὰ λαβεῖν, τὸν δὲ |gold ἐπιόντος καίεσθαι.  
 ἀπαλλαχθέντος δὲ τούτου προσιέναι τὸν δεύτερον, καὶ τὸν  
 αὐτὶς ταῦτὰ ποιέειν. τοὺς μὲν δὴ καιόμενον τὸν |gold  
 |repel, reject , τρίτῳ δὲ τῷ νεωτάτῳ ἐπελθόντι |extinguish ,  
 καὶ μιν ἐκεῖνον κομίσαι ἐς ἑωυτοῦ· καὶ τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους  
 ἀδελφεοὺς πρὸς ταῦτα |acknowledge; γὴν βασιληίην πᾶσαν  
 |pardon  
 παραδοῦναι τῷ νεωτάτῳ.

## 4.6

Ἀπὸ μὲν δὴ Λιποξάιος γεγονέναι τούτους τῶν Σκυθέων οἱ  
 Αὐχάται γένος καλέονται, ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ μέσου Ἄρποξάιος  
 οἱ Κατίαροί τε καὶ Τράσπιες καλέονται, ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ  
 νεωτάτου αὐτῶν τοῦ βασιλέος οἱ καλέονται Παραλάται·  
 |all together δὲ εἶναι οὔνομα Σκολότους, τοῦ βασιλέος  
 |called, Σκύθας δὲ |Greek ὠνόμασαν.  
 |named

## 4.7

Γεγονέναι μὲν νυν σφέας ὧδε λέγουσι οἱ Σκύθαι, ἔτεα δὲ  
 σφίσι ἐπεῖτε γεγόνασι τὰ |all together λέγουσι εἶναι ἀπὸ

take them, but the gold blazed with fire when he approached it: then when he had gone away from it, the second approached, and again it did the same thing. These then the gold repelled by blazing with fire; but when the third and youngest came up to it, the flame was quenched, and he carried them to his own house. The elder brothers then, acknowledging the significance of this thing, delivered the whole of the kingly power to the youngest.

#### 4.6

From Lixopais, they say, are descended those Scythians who are called the race of the Auchatai; from the middle brother Arpoxais those who are called Catiaroi and Trasprians, and from the youngest of them the “Royal” tribe, who are called Paralatai: and the whole together are called, they say, Scolotoi, after the name of their king; but the Hellenes gave them the name of Scythians.

#### 4.7

Thus the Scythians say they were produced; and from the time of their origin, that is to say from the first king Targitaos, to the

*vocabulary*

ἀποκλήϊω shut out; close up  
 βορέας -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
 διάβασις -εως (f) crossing, passage  
 ~basis  
 διέξειμι pass through; recount ~ion  
 θυσία sacrifice  
 ἱλάσκομαι appease  
 κατακοιμάω pass: go to sleep; have  
 sex with  
 κατύπερθεν above, from above  
 μετέρχομαι seek, visit

ὁρτή holiday, feast  
 ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view  
 ~thanatopsis  
 περιαιρέω strip off  
 περιελαύνω drive around  
 προσωτέρω farther  
 πτερόν feather, wing ~pterodactyl  
 πτερόω give wings  
 τριφάσιος triple  
 ὑπαίθριος in open air  
 χίλιοι (ι) thousand ~kilo-  
 χρυσός (ο) gold

τοῦ πρώτου βασιλέος Ταργιτάου ἐς τὴν Δαρείου διάβασιν τὴν ἐπὶ σφέας χιλίων οὐ πλέω ἀλλὰ τοσαῦτα. τὸν δὲ χρυσὸν τοῦτον τὸν ἱρὸν φυλάσσουνσι οἱ βασιλέες ἐς τὰ μάλιστα, καὶ θυσίησι μεγάλῃσι ἱλασκόμενοι μετέρχονται ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος. ὃς δ' ἂν ἔχων τὸν χρυσὸν τὸν ἱρὸν ἐν τῇ ὀρτῇ ὑπαίθριος κατακοιμηθῇ, οὗτος λέγεται ὑπὸ Σκυθέων οὐ διενιαντίζειν. δίδοσθαι δέ οἱ διὰ τοῦτο ὅσα ἂν ἵππῳ ἐν ἡμέρῃ μὴ περιέλασῃ αὐτὸς. τῆς δὲ χώρας ἐούσης μεγάλης τριφασίας τὰς βασιλῆας τοῖσι παισὶ τοῖσι ἐωυτοῦ καταστήσασθαι Κολάζαιν, καὶ τουτέων μίαν ποιῆσαι μεγίστην, ἐν τῇ τὸν χρυσὸν φυλάσσεσθαι. τὰ δὲ κατύπερθε πρὸς βορέην λέγουσι ἄνεμον τῶν ὑπεροίκων τῆς χώρας οὐκ οἶα τε εἶναι ἔτι προσωτέρῳ οὔτε ὀρᾶν οὔτε διεξιέναι ὑπὸ πτερῶν κεχυμένων· πτερῶν γὰρ καὶ τὴν γῆν καὶ τὸν ἡέρα εἶναι πλέον, καὶ ταῦτα εἶναι τὰ ἀποκληιόντα τὴν ὄψιν.

## 4.8

Σκύθαι μὲν ὧδε ὑπὲρ σφέων τε αὐτῶν καὶ τῆς χώρας



τοῦ πρώτου βασιλέος Ταργιτάου ἐς τὴν Δαρείου διάβασιν  
 τὴν ἐπὶ σφέας χιλίων οὐ πλέω ἀλλὰ τοσαῦτα. τὸν δὲ  
 |gold τοῦτον τὸν ἱρὸν φυλάσσουνσι οἱ βασιλεῖς ἐς τὰ  
 μάλιστα, καὶ θυσίῃσι μεγάλῃσι |appease |seek, visit  
 ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος. ὃς δ' ἂν ἔχων τὸν |gold τὸν ἱρὸν  
 ἐν τῇ |holiday |in open air |sleep; have sex, οὗτος λέγεται ὑπὸ  
 |feast  
 Σκυθέων οὐ διενιαντίζειν. δίδοσθαι δέ οἱ διὰ τοῦτο ὅσα  
 ἂν ἵππῳ ἐν ἡμέρῃ μὴ περιελάσῃ αὐτὸς. τῆς δὲ χώρας  
 εἰσόδου μεγάλης |triple τὰς βασιλῆας τοῖσι παισὶ  
 τοῖσι ἑωυτοῦ καταστήσασθαι Κολάζαιν, καὶ τουτέων μίαν  
 ποιῆσαι μεγίστην, ἐν τῇ τὸν |gold φυλάσσεσθαι. τὰ δὲ  
 |above, from above |north, λέγουσι ἄνεμον τῶν ὑπεροίκων  
 |north  
 τῆς χώρας οὐκ οἶα τε εἶναι ἔτι |wind |farther οὔτε ὀρᾶν οὔτε  
 |pass through; |recount πτερῶν κεχυμένων· πτερῶν γὰρ καὶ τὴν γῆν  
 καὶ τὸν ἡέρα εἶναι πλέον, καὶ ταῦτα εἶναι τὰ ἀποκληρόντα  
 τὴν |sight

## 4.8

Σκύθαι μὲν ὥδε ὑπὲρ σφέων τε αὐτῶν καὶ τῆς χώρας

passing over of Dareios against them, they say that there is a period of a thousand years and no more. Now this sacred gold is guarded by the kings with the utmost care, and they visit it every year with solemn sacrifices of propitiation: moreover if any one goes to sleep while watching in the open air over this gold during the festival, the Scythians say that he does not live out the year; and there is given him for this so much land as he shall ride round himself on his horse in one day. Now as the land was large, Colaxaïs, they say, established three kingdoms for his sons; and of these he made one larger than the rest, and in this the gold is kept. But as to the upper parts which lie on the North side of those who dwell above this land, they say one can neither see nor pass through any further by reason of feathers which are poured down; for both the earth and the air are full of feathers, and this is that which shuts off the view.

#### 4.8

Thus say the Scythians about themselves and about the region above them;

*vocabulary*

**ἀνατολή** a rising in the sky ~apostle  
**ἄντρον** cave  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἀφανίζω** do away with, make off with;  
 (pass) disappear  
**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here  
**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence  
**ἐπεξέρχομαι** sally

**ἔχιδνα** viper  
**καθυπνόω** fall asleep  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κατύπερθεν** above, from above  
**κρυμός** (ῥ) icy cold  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**στήλη** post, column  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

τῆς κατύπερθε λέγουσι, «Ἑλλήνων δὲ οἱ τὸν Πόντον οἰκέοντες ὧδε. Ἡρακλέα ἐλαύνοντα τὰς Γηρυόνεω βούς ἀπικέσθαι ἐς γῆν ταύτην εὐῶσαν ἐρήμην, ἦντινα νῦν Σκύθαι νέμονται. Γηρυόνεα δὲ οἰκέειν ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, κατοικημένον τὴν Ἑλληνές λέγουσι Ἐρύθειαν νῆσον τὴν πρὸς Γαδείροισι τοῖσι ἔξω Ἡρακλέων στηλέων ἐπὶ τῷ Ὀκεανῷ. τὸν δὲ Ὀκεανὸν λόγῳ μὲν λέγουσι ἀπὸ ἡλίου ἀνατολέων ἀρξάμενον γῆν περὶ πᾶσαν ῥέειν, ἔργῳ δὲ οὐκ ἀποδεικνῦσι. ἐνθεῦτεν τὸν Ἡρακλέα ἀπικέσθαι ἐς τὴν νῦν Σκυθίην χώραν καλομένην, καὶ καταλαβεῖν γὰρ αὐτὸν χειμῶνα τε καὶ κρυμὸν, ἐπειρυσάμενον τὴν λεοντήην κατυπνῶσαι, τὰς δὲ οἱ ἵππους τὰς ὑπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος νεμομένας ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἀφανισθῆναι θείῃ τύχῃ.

#### 4.9

Ὡς δ' ἐγερθῆναι τὸν Ἡρακλέα, διζῆσθαι, πάντα δὲ τῆς χώρας ἐπεξελθόντα τέλος ἀπικέσθαι ἐς τὴν Ὑλαίην καλομένην γῆν· ἐνθαῦτα δὲ αὐτὸν εὔρεῖν ἐν ἄνθρω μιξοπάρθενον τινά, ἔχιδναν διφυέα, τῆς τὰ

τῆς |above, from above| ισι, «|Greek δὲ οἱ τὸν Πόντον  
οἰκέοντες ᾤδε. Ἡρακλέα ἐλαύνοντα τὰς Γηρυνόεω βουῆς  
ἀπικέσθαι ἐς γῆν ταύτην ἐοῦσαν ἐρήμην, ἥντινα νῦν  
Σκύθαι |distribute| Γηρυνόεα δὲ οἰκέειν ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου,  
κατοικημένον τὴν |Greek| λέγουσι Ἐρύθειαν νῆσον τὴν  
πρὸς Γαδείροις τοῖσι ἔξω Ἡρακλέων |post, ἐπὶ τῷ  
column|  
᾽Ωκεανῷ. τὸν δὲ ᾽Ωκεανὸν λόγῳ μὲν λέγουσι ἀπὸ ἡλίου  
|a rising in the sky| ἔμμενον γῆν περὶ πᾶσαν |flow|, ἔργῳ δὲ  
οὐκ ἀποδεικνῦσι. |thence| τὸν Ἡρακλέα ἀπικέσθαι ἐς  
τὴν νῦν Σκυθίην χώραν καλεομένην, καὶ |seize, understand, catch, over-  
take; (mp) happen|  
αὐτὸν |winter, τε καὶ |icy cold|, ἐπειρυσάμενον τὴν λεοντέην  
storm|  
κατυπνῶσαι, τὰς δὲ οἱ ἵππους τὰς ὑπὸ τοῦ |chariot  
|distribute| ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ |do away with, make off, |λη.  
with; (pass) disappear|

#### 4.9

Ὡς δ' ἐγερθῆναι τὸν Ἡρακλέα, |seek|, πάντα δὲ  
τῆς χώρας |sally| τέλος ἀπικέσθαι ἐς τὴν Ὑλαίην  
καλεομένην γῆν· |there, here| δὲ αὐτὸν εὔρεϊν ἐν |cave  
μιξοπάρθενον τινά, |viper| διφυέα, τῆς τὰ

but the Hellenes who dwell about the Pontus say as follows:— Heracles driving the cattle of Geryones came to this land, then desert, which the Scythians now inhabit; and Geryones, says the tale, dwelt away from the region of the Pontus, living in the island called by the Hellenes Erytheia, near Gadeira which is outside the Pillars of Heracles by the Ocean.— As to the Ocean, they say indeed that it flows round the whole earth beginning from the place of the sunrising, but they do not prove this by facts.— From thence Heracles came to the land now called Scythia; and as a storm came upon him together with icy cold, he drew over him his lion's skin and went to sleep. Meanwhile the mares harnessed in his chariot disappeared by a miraculous chance, as they were feeding.

#### 4.9

Then when Heracles woke he sought for them; and having gone over the whole land, at last he came to the region which is called Hylaia; and there he found in a cave a kind of twofold

*vocabulary***ἀνδρόω** make a man**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
upwards, out to sea**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be  
freed, depart**ἀπόδοσις** -τος (f) payment; definition**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**γλουτός** buttock**διατείνω** extend; (mp) try hard**ἐνερθε** beneath, below**ἐπείρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπειρωτάω** consult, ask**ζώννυμι** (ὀ) gird ~zone**ζωστήρ** -ος (m) belt ~zone**κατοικίζω** colonize**μίν** him, her, it**μισθός** reward, wages**μισθόω** rent out; (pass) be hired**ὄφεις** ὄφεως (m) serpent ~ophidian**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander  
~plankton**προσδοκάω** expect**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**συνίημι** send together; hear, notice,  
understand ~jet**σῶστρα** reward, offering of thanks**τρόφεις** -εως (n) big, swollen ~atrophy**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay  
~ballistic

μὲν ἄνω ἀπὸ τῶν γλουτῶν εἶναι γυναικός, τὰ δὲ  
 ἔνερθε ὄφιος. ἰδόντα δὲ καὶ θαυμάσαντα ἐπειρέσθαι  
 μιν εἴ κου ἴδοι ἵππους πλανωμένας· τὴν δὲ φάναι  
 ἑωυτὴν ἔχειν καὶ οὐκ ἀποδώσειν ἐκείνῳ πρὶν ἢ οἱ  
 μιχθῇ· τό δὲ Ἡρακλέα μιχθῆναι ἐπὶ τῷ μισθῷ τούτῳ.  
 κείνην τε δὴ ὑπερβάλλεσθαι τὴν ἀπόδοσιν τῶν ἵππων,  
 βουλομένην ὥς πλείστον χρόνον συνεῖναι τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ,  
 καὶ τὸν κομισάμενον ἐθέλειν ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι· τέλος  
 δὲ ἀποδιδούσαν αὐτὴν εἰπεῖν Ἴππους μὲν δὴ ταύτας  
 ἀπικομένας ἐνθάδε ἔσωσα τοὶ ἐγώ, σῶστρά τε σὺ  
 παρέσχες· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐκ σεῦ τρεῖς παῖδας ἔχω. τούτους,  
 ἐπεὰν γένωνται τρόφιες, ὃ τι χρὴ ποιέειν, ἐξηγέο σύ, εἴτε  
 αὐτοῦ κατοικίζω χώρης γὰρ τῇσδε ἔχω τὸ κράτος αὕτη  
 εἴτε ἀποπέμπω παρὰ σέ.» τὴν μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἐπειρωτᾶν,  
 τὸν δὲ λέγουσι πρὸς ταῦτα εἰπεῖν «ἐπεὰν ἀνδρωθέντας ἴδῃ  
 τοὺς παῖδας, τάδε ποιέῃσα οὐκ ἂν ἀμαρτάνοις· τὸν μὲν  
 ἂν ὀρᾷς αὐτῶν τόδε τὸ τόξον ὧδε διατεινόμενον καὶ τῷ  
 ζωστήρι τῷδε κατὰ τάδε ζωννύμενον, τοῦτον μὲν τῇσδε



μὲν ἄνω ἀπὸ τῶν |buttock εἶναι γυναικός, τὰ δὲ  
 |beneath, |serpent ἰδόντα δὲ καὶ θωμάσαντα |ask as well;  
 |below |ask then  
 μιν εἴ κου ἴδοι ἵππους |lead astray; τὴν δὲ φάναι  
 |(mp) wander  
 ἑωυτὴν ἔχειν καὶ οὐκ ἀποδώσειν ἐκείνῳ πρὶν ἢ οἱ  
 μιχθῇ· τό δὲ Ἡρακλέα μιχθῆναι ἐπὶ τῷ μισθῷ τούτῳ.  
 κείνην τε δὴ |cause to go be- τὴν |payment; τῶν ἵππων,  
 |yond; delay |definition  
 βουλομένην ὥς πλείστον χρόνον συνεῖναι τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ,  
 καὶ τὸν κομισάμενον ἐθέλειν |free from, remove; τέλος  
 |be freed, depart  
 δὲ ἀποδιδούσαν αὐτὴν εἰπεῖν Ἴππους μὲν δὴ ταύτας  
 ἀπικομένας ἐνθάδε ἔσωσα τοὶ ἐγώ, |reward, offer- σὺ  
 |ing of thanks  
 παρέσχες· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐκ σεῦ τρεῖς παῖδας ἔχω. τούτους,  
 ἐπεὰν γένωνται |big, swollen τι χρὴ ποιεῖν, ἐξηγέο σύ, εἴτε  
 αὐτοῦ |colonize χώρας γὰρ τῆσδε ἔχω τὸ κράτος αὕτη  
 εἴτε |send away παρὰ σέ.» τὴν μὲν δὴ ταῦτα |consult, ask ,  
 τὸν δὲ λέγουσι πρὸς ταῦτα εἰπεῖν «ἐπεὰν |make a man ἴδῃ  
 τοὺς παῖδας, τάδε ποιεύσα οὐκ ἂν ἀμαρτάνοις· τὸν μὲν  
 ἂν ὀρᾶς αὐτῶν τόδε τὸ τόξον ὧδε |extend; (mp) try καὶ τῷ  
 |hard  
 |belt τῷδε κατὰ τάδε |gird , τοῦτον μὲν τῆσδε

creature formed by the union of a maiden and a serpent, whose upper parts from the buttocks upwards were those of a woman, but her lower parts were those of a snake. Having seen her and marvelled at her, he asked her then whether she had seen any mares straying anywhere; and she said that she had them herself and would not give them up until he lay with her; and Heracles lay with her on condition of receiving them. She then tried to put off the giving back of the mares, desiring to have Heracles with her as long as possible, while he on the other hand desired to get the mares and depart; and at last she gave them back and said: "These mares when they came hither I saved for thee, and thou didst give me reward for saving them; for I have by thee three sons. Tell me then, what must I do with these when they shall be grown to manhood, whether I shall settle them here, for over this land I have power alone, or send them away to thee?" She thus asked of him, and he, they say, replied: "When thou seest that the boys are grown to men, do this and thou shalt not fail of doing right:— whichsoever of them thou seest able to stretch this bow as I do now, and to be girded with this girdle, him cause to be the settler of

*vocabulary***ἄθλον** ἄέθλου prize ~athlete**ἄθλος** ἄέθλου contest, trial ~athlete**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄνδρόω** make a man**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at**ἐπιστολή** message, letter**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty**ζωστήρ** -ος (m) belt ~zone**καταμένω** stay; not change**οἰκήτωρ** inhabitant**προδείκνυμι** (ὑ) show by example; foreshadow**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**συμβολή** encounter; contribution**φιάλη** jar ~vial**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry ~bear

τῆς χώρας οἰκίτορα ποιεῦ· ὃς δ' ἂν τούτων τῶν ἔργων τῶν ἐντέλλομαι λείπηται, ἔκπεμπε ἐκ τῆς χώρας. καὶ ταῦτα ποιεῦσα αὐτὴ τε εὐφρανέαι καὶ τὰ ἐντεταλμένα ποιήσεις.

#### 4.10

Τὸν μὲν δὴ εἰρύσαντα τῶν τόξων τὸ ἕτερον δύο γὰρ δὴ φορέειν τέως Ἡρακλέα καὶ τὸν ζωστήρα προδέξαντα, παραδοῦναι τὸ τόξον τε καὶ τὸν ζωστήρα ἔχοντα ἐπ' ἄκρης τῆς συμβολῆς φιάλην χρυσέην, δόντα δὲ ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι. τὴν δ', ἐπεὶ οἱ γενομένους τοὺς παῖδας ἀνδρωθῆναι, τοῦτο μὲν σφι οὐνόματα θέσθαι, τῷ μὲν Ἀγάθουρσον αὐτῶν, τῷ δ' ἐπομένῳ Γελωνόν, Σκύθην δὲ τῷ νεωτάτῳ, τοῦτο δὲ τῆς ἐπιστολῆς μεμνημένην αὐτὴν ποιῆσαι τὰ ἐντεταλμένα. καὶ δὴ δύο μὲν οἱ τῶν παίδων, τὸν τε Ἀγάθουρσον καὶ τὸν Γελωνόν, οὐκ οἴους τε γενομένους ἐξικέσθαι πρὸς τὸν προκείμενον ἄθλον, οἴχεσθαι ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐκβληθέντας ὑπὸ τῆς γευναμένης, τὸν δὲ νεώτατον αὐτῶν Σκύθην ἐπιτελέσαντα καταμεῖναι

τῆς χώρας |inhabitant ποιεῖν· ὃς δ' ἂν τούτων τῶν ἔργων  
τῶν ἐντέλλομαι λείπηται, ἔκπεμπε ἐκ τῆς χώρας. καὶ  
ταῦτα ποιεῖσα αὐτὴ τε εὐφρανέαι καὶ τὰ ἐντεταλμένα  
ποιήσεις.

## 4.10

Τὸν μὲν δὴ εἰρύσαντα τῶν τόξων τὸ ἕτερον δύο γὰρ δὴ

|frequentative of Ἡρακλέα καὶ τὸν |belt προδέξαντα,  
|φέρω, to carry

παραδοῦναι τὸ τόξον τε καὶ τὸν |belt ἔχοντα

ἐπ' |at the edge, ex-|encounter; |jar χρυσέην, δόντα δὲ  
|treme |contribution

|free from, remove; τὴν δ', ἐπεὶ οἱ γενομένους τοὺς παῖδας  
|be freed, depart

|make a man , τοῦτο μὲν σφι οὐνόματα θέσθαι, τῷ μὲν

Ἀγάθурсον αὐτῶν, τῷ δ' ἐπομένῳ Γελωνόν, Σκύθην

δὲ τῷ νεωτάτῳ, τοῦτο δὲ τῆς |message, μεμνημένην  
|letter

αὐτὴν ποιῆσαι τὰ ἐντεταλμένα. καὶ δὴ δύο μὲν οἱ τῶν

παιδων, τόν τε Ἀγάθурсον καὶ τὸν Γελωνόν, οὐκ οἴους

τε γενομένους |arrive at πρὸς τὸν |be placed by; ἄεθλον,  
|be devoted to

οἷχεσθαι ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐκβληθέντας ὑπὸ τῆς γευναμένης,

τὸν δὲ νεώτατον αὐτῶν Σκύθην |complete; do a|stay; not change  
|religious duty

this land; but whosoever of them fails in the deeds which I enjoin, send him forth out of the land: and if thou shalt do thus, thou wilt both have delight thyself and perform that which has been enjoined to thee.”

#### 4.10

Upon this he drew one of his bows (for up to that time Heracles, they say, was wont to carry two) and showed her the girdle, and then he delivered to her both the bow and the girdle, which had at the end of its clasp a golden cup; and having given them he departed. She then, when her sons had been born and had grown to be men, gave them names first, calling one of them Agathyrsos and the next Gelonos and the youngest Skythes; then bearing in mind the charge given to her, she did that which was enjoined. And two of her sons, Agathyrsos and Gelonos, not having proved themselves able to attain to the task set before them, departed from the land, being cast out by her who bore them; but Skythes the youngest of them performed the task and remained

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart

**ἀράσσω** smash

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**διαμάχομαι** fight hard, contend

**Ἕλλην** Greek

**ἐντονος** violent, intense

**ζωστήρ** -ος (m) belt ~zone

**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing

**οὐκω** no longer

**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric

**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to

**σποδός** (f) embers; ashes

**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

**στρατόω** be on a campaign ~strategy

**φιάλη** jar ~vial

**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry

~bear

**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

**χωρίζω** divide; distinguish, pull down

ἐν τῇ χωρῇ. καὶ ἀπὸ μὲν Σκύθew τοῦ Ἡρακλέος γενέσθαι τοὺς αἰεὶ βασιλέας γινομένους Σκυθέων, ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς φιάλης ἔτι καὶ ἐς τόδε φιάλας ἐκ τῶν ζωστήρων φορέειν Σκύθας· τὸ δὴ μῦνον μηχανήσασθαι τὴν μητέρα Σκύθη. ταῦτα δὲ Ἑλλήνων οἱ τὸν Πόντον οἰκέοντες λέγουσι.

## 4.11

Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἄλλος λόγος ἔχων ὧδε, τῷ μάλιστα λεγομένῳ αὐτός πρόσκειμαι, Σκύθας τοὺς νομάδας οἰκέοντας ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ, πολέμῳ πιεσθέντας ὑπὸ Μασσαγετέων, οἵχεσθαι διαβάντας ποταμὸν Ἀράξην ἐπὶ γῆν τὴν Κιμμερίην τὴν γὰρ νῦν νέμονται Σκύθαι, αὕτη λέγεται τὸ παλαιὸν εἶναι Κιμμερίων, τοὺς δὲ Κιμμερίους ἐπιόντων Σκυθέων βουλεύεσθαι ὡς στρατοῦ ἐπιόντος μεγάλου, καὶ δὴ τὰς γνώμας σφέων κεχωρισμένας, ἐντόνους μὲν ἀμφοτέρας, ἀμείνω δὲ τὴν τῶν βασιλέων· τὴν μὲν γὰρ δὴ τοῦ δήμου φέρειν γνώμην ὡς ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι πρὴγμα εἴη μηδὲ πρὸ σποδοῦ μένοντας κινδυνεύειν, τὴν δὲ τῶν βασιλέων διαμάχεσθαι περὶ τῆς χώρας τοῖσι ἐπιούσι. οὓκων δὴ



ἐν τῇ |withdraw, give ὁ μὲν Σκύθew τοῦ Ἡρακλέος γενέσθαι  
|way to (+dat)

τοὺς αἰεὶ βασιλέας γινομένους Σκυθέων, ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς

|jar ἔτι καὶ ἐς τόδε |jar ἐκ τῶν |belt |frequentative of  
|φέρω, to carry

Σκύθας· τὸ δὲ μῶνον |build, contrive τὴν μητέρα Σκύθη.

ταῦτα δὲ |Greek οἱ τὸν Πόντον οἰκέοντες λέγουσι.

#### 4.11

Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἄλλος λόγος ἔχων ὧδε, τῷ μάλιστα λεγομένῳ

αὐτός πρόσκειμαι, Σκύθας τοὺς |roaming, οἰκέοντας ἐν τῇ  
|grazing

Ἀσίῃ, πολέμῳ |press, ὑπὸ Μασσαγετέων, οἵχεσθαι  
|squeeze

|pass over, cross ταμὸν |smash ἐπὶ γῆν τὴν Κιμμερίην τὴν

γὰρ νῦν |distribute Σκύθαι, αὕτη λέγεται τὸ παλαιὸν

εἶναι Κιμμερίων, τοὺς δὲ Κιμμερίους ἐπιόντων Σκυθέων

βουλεύεσθαι ὡς στρατοῦ ἐπιόντος μεγάλου, καὶ δὲ τὰς

γνώμας σφέων |divide; distin-|violent, μὲν ἀμφοτέρας,  
|guish, pull down |intense

ἀμείνω δὲ τὴν τῶν βασιλέων· τὴν μὲν γὰρ δὴ τοῦ

δήμου φέρειν γνώμην ὡς |free from, remove; |τρήγμα εἴη μηδὲ  
|be freed, depart

πρὸ |embers; μένοντας κινδυνεύειν, τὴν δὲ τῶν βασιλέων  
|ashes

|fight hard, contend ` τῆς χώρας τοῖσι ἐπιούσι. |no longer`

in the land: and from Skythes the son of Heracles were descended, they say, the succeeding kings of the Scythians (Skythians): and they say moreover that it is by reason of the cup that the Scythians still even to this day wear cups attached to their girdles: and this alone his mother contrived for Skythes. Such is the story told by the Hellenes who dwell about the Pontus.

#### 4.11

There is however also another story, which is as follows, and to this I am most inclined myself. It is to the effect that the nomad Scythians dwelling in Asia, being hard pressed in war by the Massagetai, left their abode and crossing the river Araxes came towards the Kimmerian land (for the land which now is occupied by the Scythians is said to have been in former times the land of the Kimmerians); and the Kimmerians, when the Scythians were coming against them, took counsel together, seeing that a great host was coming to fight against them; and it proved that their opinions were divided, both opinions being vehemently maintained, but the better being that of their kings: for the opinion of the people was that it was necessary to depart and that they ought not to run the risk of fighting against so many, but that of the kings was to fight for their land with those who came against them: and as

*vocabulary***ἀμαχητί** without a fight**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀριθμός** number**δίστημι** stand apart ~stand**ἐξοδος** (f) leaving, way out**ἐπίδοξος** likely; famous**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider**συμφεύγω** flee with; take refuge**τάφος** (m) funeral, grave; (n) astonishment**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat) ~heir

ἐθέλειν πείθεσθαι οὔτε τοῖσι βασιλεῦσι τὸν δῆμον οὔτε τῷ δήμῳ τοὺς βασιλέας· τοὺς μὲν δὲ ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι βουλεύεσθαι ἀμαχητὶ τὴν χωρὴν παραδόντας τοῖσι ἐπιούσι· τοῖσι δὲ βασιλεῦσι δόξαι ἐν τῇ ἐωυτῶν κείσθαι ἀποθανόντας μηδὲ συμφεύγειν τῷ δήμῳ, λογισαμένους ὅσα τε ἀγαθὰ πεπόνθασι καὶ ὅσα φεύγοντας ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος κακὰ ἐπίδοξα καταλαμβάνειν. ὥς δὲ δόξαι σφι ταῦτα, διαστάντας καὶ ἀριθμὸν ἴσους γενομένους μάχεσθαι πρὸς ἀλλήλους. καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἀποθανόντας πάντας ὑπ' ἐωυτῶν θάψαι τὸν δῆμον τῶν Κιμμερίων παρὰ ποταμὸν Τύρην καὶ σφεων ἔτι δῆλος ἐστὶ ὁ τάφος, θάψαντας δὲ οὕτω τὴν ἔξοδον ἐκ τῆς χώρας ποιέεσθαι· Σκύθας δὲ ἐπελθόντας λαβεῖν τὴν χώραν ἐρήμην.

#### 4.12

Καὶ νῦν ἔστι μὲν ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ Κιμμέρια τείχεα, ἔστι δὲ πορθμῖα Κιμμέρια, ἔστι δὲ καὶ χωρὴ οὖνομα Κιμμερίη, ἔστι δὲ Βόσπορος Κιμμέριος καλεόμενος· φαίνονται δὲ οἱ Κιμμέριοι φεύγοντες ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην τοὺς Σκύθας καὶ τὴν

ἐθέλειν πείθεσθαι οὔτε τοῖσι βασιλεῦσι τὸν δῆμον οὔτε  
 τῷ δήμῳ τοὺς βασιλέας· τοὺς μὲν δὴ |free from, remove;  
 |be freed, depart  
 βουλεύεσθαι |without a fight. χωρὴν παραδόντας τοῖσι  
 ἐπιούσι· τοῖσι δὲ βασιλεῦσι δόξαι ἐν τῇ ἐωυτῶν κείσθαι  
 ἀποθανόντας μηδὲ |flee with; τῷ δήμῳ, |reckon, consider  
 |take refuge  
 ὅσα τε ἀγαθὰ πεπόνθασι καὶ ὅσα φεύγοντας ἐκ τῆς  
 πατρίδος κακὰ |likely; |seize, understand, catch, δὲ δόξαι  
 |famous |overtake; (mp) happen  
 σφι ταῦτα, |stand apart καὶ |number ἴσους γενομένους  
 μάχεσθαι πρὸς ἀλλήλους. καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἀποθανόντας  
 πάντας ὑπ' ἐωυτῶν |bury τὸν δῆμον τῶν Κιμμερίων  
 παρὰ ποταμὸν Τύρην καὶ σφῶν ἔτι δηλὸς ἐστὶ ὁ |(m) funeral, grave;  
 |(n) astonishment  
 |bury δὲ οὕτω τὴν |leaving, way οὐτ χώρης ποιέεσθαι·  
 Σκύθας δὲ ἐπελθόντας λαβεῖν τὴν χώραν ἐρήμην.

## 4.12

Καὶ νῦν ἔστι μὲν ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ Κιμμέρια τείχεα, ἔστι δὲ  
 πορθμῆια Κιμμέρια, ἔστι δὲ καὶ |withdraw, give Κιμμερίη,  
 |way to (+dat)  
 ἔστι δὲ Βόσπορος Κιμμέριος καλεόμενος· φαίνονται δὲ οἱ  
 Κιμμέριοι φεύγοντες ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην τοὺς Σκύθας καὶ τὴν

neither the people were willing by means to agree to the counsel of the kings nor the kings to that of the people, the people planned to depart without fighting and to deliver up the land to the invaders, while the kings resolved to die and to be laid in their own land, and not to flee with the mass of the people, considering the many goods of fortune which they had enjoyed, and the many evils which it might be supposed would come upon them, if they fled from their native land. Having resolved upon this, they parted into two bodies, and making their numbers equal they fought with one another: and when these had all been killed by one another's hands, then the people of the Kimmerians buried them by the bank of the river Tyras (where their burial-place is still to be seen), and having buried them, then they made their way out from the land, and the Scythians when they came upon it found the land deserted of its inhabitants.

#### 4.12

And there are at the present time in the land of Scythia Kimmerian walls, and a Kimmerian ferry; and there is also a region which is called Kimmeria, and the so-called Kimmerian Bosphorus. It is known moreover that the Kimmerians, in their flight to Asia from the Scythians, also made a settlement on

*vocabulary*

γρύψ griffin

εἰσβάλλω throw into ~ballistic

Ἕλληγ Greek

ἐξωθέω drive out

εὖς good, brave, noble

καθήκω come down, (a day) to fall,  
arrive; be proper

κτίζω found, populate ~oxytocin

μεσόγαια inland

μουνόφθαλμος one-eyed

ξυνός (ῶ) common, shared

ὄον οῦ type of fruit

πλησιόχωρος adjacent

ὑπεροικέω dwell above or beyond

χερσόνησον κτίσαντες, ἐν τῇ νῦν Σινώπῃ πόλιν Ἑλλάς οἴκισται. φανεροὶ δὲ εἰσὶ καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι διώξαντες αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐσβαλόντες ἐς γῆν τὴν Μηδικήν, ἀμαρτόντες τῆς ὁδοῦ· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Κιμμέριοι αἰεὶ τὴν παρὰ θάλασσαν ἔφευγον, οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι ἐν δεξιῇ τὸν Καύκασον ἔχοντες ἐδίωκον ἐς οὗ ἐσέβαλον ἐς γῆν τὴν Μηδικήν, ἐς μεσόγειαν τῆς ὁδοῦ τραφθέντες. οὗτος δὲ ἄλλος ξυνὸς Ἑλλήνων τε καὶ βαρβάρων λεγόμενος λόγος εἴρηται.

## 4.13

Ἔφη δὲ Ἀριστέης ὁ Καῦστροβίου ἀνὴρ Προκοννήσιος ποιέων ἔπεα, ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Ἰσσηδόνας φοιβόλαμπτος γενόμενος, Ἰσσηδόνων δὲ ὑπερρικήειν Ἀριμασποὺς ἄνδρας μονοφθάλμους ὕπερ δὲ τούτων τοὺς χρυσοφύλακας γρυῖπας, τούτων δὲ τοὺς Ὑπερβορέους κατήκοντας ἐπὶ θάλασσαν. τούτους ὦν πάντας πλὴν Ὑπερβορέων, ἀρξάντων Ἀριμασπῶν, αἰεὶ τοῖσι πλησιοχώροισι ἐπιτίθεσθαι, καὶ ὑπὸ μὲν Ἀριμασπῶν ἐξωθέεσθαι ἐκ τῆς χώρας Ἰσσηδόνας, ὑπὸ δὲ Ἰσσηδόνων Σκύθας,



χερσόνησον |found, , ἐν τῇ νῦν Σινώπῃ πόλιν Ἑλλάς  
 |populate  
 οἰκισται. φανεροὶ δὲ εἰσὶ καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι διώξαντες αὐτοὺς  
 καὶ |throw into ἐς γῆν τὴν Μηδικὴν, ἀμαρτόντες τῆς  
 ὁδοῦ· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Κιμμέριοι αἰεὶ τὴν παρὰ θάλασσαν  
 ἔφευγον, οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι ἐν δεξιῇ τὸν Καύκασον ἔχοντες  
 ἐδίωκον ἐς οὗ ἐσέβαλον ἐς γῆν τὴν Μηδικὴν, ἐς μεσόγαιαν  
 τῆς ὁδοῦ τραφθέντες. οὗτος δὲ ἄλλος |com- |Greek τε  
 |mon  
 καὶ βαρβάρων λεγόμενος λόγος εἴρηται.

## 4.13

Ἐφη δὲ Ἀριστέης ὁ Καῦστροβίου ἀνὴρ Προκοννήσιος  
 ποιέων ἔπεα, ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Ἴσσηδόνας φοιβόλαμπος  
 γενόμενος, Ἴσσηδόνων δὲ |dwell above Ἀριμασποὺς ἄνδρας  
 |or beyond  
 |one-eyed ὕπερ δὲ τούτων τοὺς χρυσοφύλακας  
 |griffin , τούτων δὲ τοὺς Ὑπερβορέους |come down, (a day) to fall, ar-  
 |rive; be proper  
 θάλασσαν. τούτους ὦν πάντας πλὴν Ὑπερβορέων,  
 ἀρξάντων Ἀριμασπῶν, αἰεὶ τοῖσι |adjacent  
 ἐπιτίθεσθαι, καὶ ὑπὸ μὲν Ἀριμασπῶν |drive out ἐκ  
 τῆς χώρας Ἴσσηδόνας, ὑπὸ δὲ Ἴσσηδόνων Σκύθας,

that peninsula on which now stands the Hellenic city of Sinope; and it is known too that the Scythians pursued them and invaded the land of Media, having missed their way; for while the Kimmerians kept ever along by the sea in their flight, the Scythians pursued them keeping Caucasus on their right hand, until at last they invaded Media, directing their course inland. This then which has been told is another story, and it is common both to Hellenes and Barbarians.

#### 4.13

Aristeas however the son of Caÿ strobios, a man of Proconnesos, said in the verses which he composed, that he came to the land of the Issedonians being possessed by Phoebus, and that beyond the Issedonians dwelt Arimaspians, a one-eyed race, and beyond these the gold-guarding griffins, and beyond them the Hyperboreans extending as far as the sea: and all these except the Hyperboreans, beginning with the Arimaspians, were continually making war on their neighbours, and the Issedonians were gradually driven out of their country by the Arimaspians and the Scythians by

*vocabulary***ἄγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

**ἀμφισβασίη** dispute, controversy**ἀμφισβαστέω** dispute**ἀνοίγνυμι** (ῥ) open**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**ἐντεταμένως** vehemently**ἐργαστήριον** workshop**κατακλείω** enclose; shut up**νοτία** rain shower**νότιος** flowing; south**οἶκημα** -τος (n, 3) room**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**προσήκω** belong to, it seems**σκεδάννυμι** (ῥ) shed, disperse**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;

agree; (mp) happen ~bear

**συντυγχάνω** fall in with; happen**ὑποδεής** inferior; fearful

Κιμμερίους δὲ οἰκέοντας ἐπὶ τῇ νοτίῃ θαλάσῃ ὑπὸ  
Σκυθέων πιεζομένους ἐκλείπειν τὴν χώραν. οὕτω οὐδὲ  
οὗτος συμφέρεται περὶ τῆς χώρας ταύτης Σκύθῃσι.

## 4.14

Καὶ ὅθεν μὲν ἦν Ἀριστέης ὁ ταῦτα εἶπας, εἴρηκα,  
τὸν δὲ περὶ αὐτοῦ ἤκουον λόγον ἐν Προκοινήσῳ καὶ  
Κυζίκῳ, λέξω. Ἀριστέην γὰρ λέγουσι, ἐόντα τῶν ἀστῶν  
οὐδενὸς γένος ὑποδεέστερον, ἐσελθόντα ἐς κναφήμιον ἐν  
Προκοινήσῳ ἀποθανεῖν, καὶ τὸν κναφέα κατακληίσαντα  
τὸ ἐργαστήριον οἶχεσθαι ἀγγελέοντα τοῖσι προσήκουσι τῷ  
νεκρῷ. ἐσκεδασμένου δὲ ἤδη τοῦ λόγου ἀνὰ τὴν πόλιν  
ὥς τεθνεῶς εἶη ὁ Ἀριστέης, ἐς ἀμφισβασίας τοῖσι λέγουσι  
ἀπικνέεσθαι ἄνδρα Κυζικηνὸν ἤκοντα ἐξ Ἀρτάκης πόλιος,  
φάντα συντυχεῖν τε οἱ ἰόντι ἐπὶ Κυζίκου καὶ ἐς λόγους  
ἀπικέσθαι. καὶ τοῦτον μὲν ἐντεταμένως ἀμφισβατεύειν,  
τοὺς δὲ προσήκοντας τῷ νεκρῷ ἐπὶ τὸ κναφήμιον παρεῖναι  
ἔχοντας τὰ πρόσφορα ὥς ἀναιρησομένους· ἀνοιχθέντος  
δὲ τοῦ οἰκήματος οὔτε τεθνεῶτα οὔτε ζῶντα φαίνεσθαι

Κιμμερίους δὲ οἰκέοντας ἐπὶ τῇ νοτίῃ θαλάσῃ ὑπὸ  
 Σκυθέων |press, squeeze |leave out, pass over|,ρην. οὕτω οὐδὲ  
 οὗτος |bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen| ὕρῃς ταύτης Σκύθησι.

4.14

Καὶ ὅθεν μὲν ἦν Ἀριστέης ὁ ταῦτα εἶπας, εἶρηκα,  
 τὸν δὲ περὶ αὐτοῦ ἤκουον λόγον ἐν Προκοινησῶ καὶ  
 Κυζίκῳ, λέξω. Ἀριστέην γὰρ λέγουσι, ἔοντα τῶν ἀστῶν  
 οὐδενὸς γένος |inferior; fearful, ἐσελθόντα ἐς κναφήμιον ἐν  
 Προκοινησῶ ἀποθανεῖν, καὶ τὸν κναφέα |enclose; shut up  
 τὸ |workshop οἷχεσθαι|carry a message, |belong to, it τῷ  
 |announce |beseems  
 νεκρῷ. |shed, disperse δὲ ἤδη τοῦ λόγου ἀνὰ τὴν πόλιν  
 ὥς τεθνεὺς εἶη ὁ Ἀριστέης, ἐς |dispute, τοῖσι λέγουσι  
 |controversy  
 ἀπικνέεσθαι ἄνδρα Κυζικηνὸν ἦκοντα ἐξ Ἀρτάκης πόλιος,  
 φάντα |fall in with; happen ᾽ντι ἐπὶ Κυζίκου καὶ ἐς λόγους  
 ἀπικέσθαι. καὶ τοῦτον μὲν |vehemently |dispute,  
 τοὺς δὲ |belong to, it be- τῷ νεκρῷ ἐπὶ τὸ κναφήμιον παρεῖναι  
 |seems  
 ἔχοντας τὰ πρόσφορα ὥς ἀναιρησομένους· |open  
 δὲ τοῦ |room οὔτε τεθνεῶτα οὔτε ζῶντα φαίνεσθαι

the Issedonians, and so the Kimmerians, who dwelt on the Southern Sea, being pressed by the Scythians left their land. Thus neither does he agree in regard to this land with the report of the Scythians.

#### 4.14

As to Aristéas who composed this, I have said already whence he was; and I will tell also the tale which I heard about him in Proconnesos and Kyzikos. They say that Aristéas, who was in birth inferior to none of the citizens, entered into a fuller's shop in Proconnesos and there died; and the fuller closed his workshop and went away to report the matter to those who were related to the dead man. And when the news had been spread abroad about the city that Aristéas was dead, a man of Kyzikos who had come from the town of Artake entered into controversy with those who said so, and declared that he had met him going towards Kyzikos and had spoken with him: and while he was vehement in dispute, those who were related to the dead man came to the fuller's shop with the things proper in order to take up the corpse for burial; and when the house was opened, Aristéas was not found there

*vocabulary*

**ἀνδριάς** -ντος (m, 3) portrait, statue  
**ἀφανίζω** do away with, make off with;  
 (pass) disappear  
**ἀφάνισις** extermination  
**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal  
**διακόσιοι** (ἄ) two hundred  
**ἑβδομος** seventh

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ἐπειρωτάω** consult, ask  
**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named  
**ἰδρύω** establish  
**κόραξ** -χος (m) raven  
**συγκυρέω** meet or happen by chance  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic

Ἀριστέην. μετὰ δὲ ἐβδόμῳ ἔτει φανέντα αὐτὸν ἐς Προκόννησον ποιῆσαι τὰ ἔπεα ταῦτα τὰ νῦν ὑπ' Ἑλλήνων Ἀριμάσπεα καλέεται, ποιήσαντα δὲ ἀφανισθῆναι τὸ δεύτερον.

## 4.15

Ταῦτα μὲν αἱ πόλεις αὗται λέγουσι, τάδε δὲ οἶδα Μεταποντίνοισι τοῖσι ἐν Ἰταλίῃ συγκυρήσαντα μετὰ τὴν ἀφάνισιν τὴν δευτέρην Ἀριστέω ἔτεσι τεσσεράκοντα καὶ διηκοσίοισι, ὥς ἐγὼ συμβαλλόμενος ἐν Προκοννήσῳ τε καὶ Μεταποντίῳ εὔρισκον. Μεταποντῖνοι φασὶ αὐτὸν Ἀριστέην φανέντα σφί ἐς τὴν χώραν κελεῦσαι βωμὸν Ἀπόλλωνος ιδρύσασθαι καὶ Ἀριστέω τοῦ Προκοννησίου ἐπωνυμίην ἔχοντα ἀνδριάντα παρ' αὐτὸν ἰστάναι· φάναι γὰρ σφί τὸν Ἀπόλλωνα Ἰταλιωτέων μούνοισι δὴ ἀπικέσθαι ἐς τὴν χώραν, καὶ αὐτὸς οἱ ἔπεσθαι ὁ νῦν ἔων Ἀριστέης· τότε δὲ, ὅτε εἶπετο τῷ θεῷ, εἶναι κόραξ. καὶ τὸν μὲν εἰπόντα ταῦτα ἀφανισθῆναι, σφέας δὲ Μεταποντῖνοι λέγουσι ἐς Δελφοὺς πέμψαντας τὸν θεὸν ἐπειρωτᾶν ὃ



Ἀριστέην. μετὰ δὲ |seventh ἔτει φανέντα αὐτὸν ἐς

Προκόννησον ποιῆσαι τὰ ἔπεα ταῦτα τὰ νῦν ὑπ' |Greek

Ἀρμιάσπεα καλέεται, ποιήσαντα δὲ |do away with, make off with;  
|(pass) disappear

δεύτερον.

#### 4.15

Ταῦτα μὲν αἱ πόλεις αὗται λέγουσι, τάδε δὲ οἶδα

Μεταποντίνοισι τοῖσι ἐν Ἰταλίῃ |συγκυρώ?: meet, or happen by chance;  
|or συγκυρώ?: meet or happen by chance

|extermination, ' δευτέρην Ἀριστέω ἔτεσι τεσσεράκοντα καὶ

|two hundred, ὥς ἐγὼ |pit against; compare; Προκοννήσω τε  
|mp: meet, fall in with

καὶ Μεταποντίῳ εὕρισκον. Μεταποντίνοι φασὶ αὐτὸν

Ἀριστέην φανέντα σφι ἐς τὴν χώραν κελεῦσαι |altar

Ἀπόλλωνος |establish καὶ Ἀριστέω τοῦ Προκοννησίου

|called, ἔχοντα |portrait, παρ' αὐτὸν ἰστάναι· φάναι  
|named |statue

γὰρ σφι τὸν Ἀπόλλωνα Ἰταλιωτέων μούνοισι δὴ

ἀπικέσθαι ἐς τὴν χώραν, καὶ αὐτὸς οἱ ἔπessθαι ὁ νῦν ἐὼν

Ἀριστέης· τότε δὲ, ὅτε εἶπετο τῷ θεῷ, εἶναι |raven . καὶ τὸν

μὲν εἰπόντα ταῦτα |do away with, make off δὲ Μεταποντίνοι  
|with; (pass) disappear

λέγουσι ἐς Δελφοὺς πέμψαντας τὸν θεὸν |consult, ask ὁ

either dead or alive. In the seventh year after this he appeared at Proconnesos and composed those verses which are now called by the Hellenes the Arimaspeia, and having composed them he disappeared the second time.

#### 4.15

So much is told by these cities; and what follows I know happened to the people of Metapontion in Italy two hundred and forty years after the second disappearance of Aristeas, as I found by putting together the evidence at Proconnesos and Metapontion. The people of Metapontion say that Aristeas himself appeared in their land and bade them set up an altar of Apollo and place by its side a statue bearing the name of Aristeas of Proconnesos; for he told them that to their land alone of all the Italiotes Apollo had come, and he, who now was Aristeas, was accompanying him, being then a raven when he accompanied the god. Having said this he disappeared; and the Metapontines say that they sent to Delphi and asked the god what the apparition of

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαλμα** -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory,  
statue

**ἄκοή** hearing ~acoustic

**ἀνδριὰς** -ντος (m, 3) portrait, statue

**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain

**αὐτόπτης** -ου (m, 1) eyewitness

**δάφνη** laurel

**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at

**ἐπιτελής** accomplished

**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named

**ἰδρύω** establish

**κατύπερθε** above, from above

**μνήμη** reminder, memorial

**πéριξ** all around

**προσώτερω** farther

**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;  
agree; (mp) happen ~bear

**φάσμα** phantom, apparition

τι τὸ φάσμα τοῦ ἀνθρώπου εἶη. τὴν δὲ Πυθίην σφέας κελεύειν πείθεσθαι τῷ φάσματι, πειθομένοισι δὲ ἄμεινον συνοίσεσθαι. καὶ σφέας δεξαμένους ταῦτα ποιῆσαι ἐπιτελέα. καὶ νῦν ἔστηκε ἀνδριάς ἐπωνυμίην ἔχων Ἀριστέω παρ' αὐτῷ τῷ ἀγάλματι τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος, πέριξ δὲ αὐτὸν δάφναι ἐστᾶσι· τὸ δὲ ἄγαλμα ἐν τῇ ἀγορῇ ἵδρυται. Ἀριστέω μὲν νυν πέρι τοσαῦτα εἰρήσθω.

## 4.16

Τῆς δὲ γῆς, τῆς πέρι ὅδε ὁ λόγος ὀρμηται λέγεσθαι, οὐδεὶς οἶδε ἀτρεκέως ὃ τι τὸ κατύπερθε ἐστί· οὐδενὸς γὰρ δὴ αὐτόπτεω εἰδέναι φαμένου δύναμαι πυθέσθαι· οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ Ἀριστέης, τοῦ περ ὀλίγω πρότερον τούτων μνήμην ἐποιεύμην, οὐδὲ οὗτος προσωτέρω Ἰσσηδόνων ἐν αὐτοῖσι τοῖσι ἔπεσι ποιέων ἔφησε ἀπικέσθαι, ἀλλὰ τὰ κατύπερθε ἔλεγε ἀκοῇ, φασ' Ἰσσηδόνας εἶναι τοὺς ταῦτα λέγοντας. ἀλλ' ὅσον μὲν ἡμεῖς ἀτρεκέως ἐπὶ μακρότατον οἶοι τε ἐγενόμεθα ἀκοῇ ἐξικέσθαι, πᾶν εἰρήσεται.

τι τὸ |phantom, ὃ ἀνθρώπου εἶη. τὴν δὲ Πυθίην σφέας  
 |apparition  
 κελεύειν πείθεσθαι τῷ |phantom, , πειθομένοισι δὲ ἄμεινον  
 |apparition  
 |bring together; be expedi- ζέας δεξαμένους ταῦτα ποιῆσαι  
 |ent; agree; (mp) happen  
 |accomplished καὶ νῦν ἔστηκε |portrait, |called, ἔχων  
 |statue |named  
 Ἀριστέω παρ' αὐτῷ τῷ |ornament, οὐ Ἀπόλλωνος, |all around  
 |glory, statue  
 δὲ αὐτὸν |laurel ἐστᾶσι· τὸ δὲ |ornament, ὃ τῇ ἀγορῇ  
 |glory, statue  
 |establish Ἀριστέω μὲν νυν περὶ τοσαῦτα εἰρήσθω.

## 4.16

Τῆς δὲ γῆς, τῆς περὶ ὅδε ὁ λόγος ὀρμηται λέγεσθαι, οὐδεὶς  
 οἶδε |precise, ὃ τι τὸ |above, from above οὐδενὸς γὰρ δὴ  
 |certain  
 |eyewitness εἰδέναι φαμένου δύναμαι πυθέσθαι· οὐδὲ γὰρ  
 οὐδὲ Ἀριστέης, τοῦ περ ὀλίγω πρότερον τούτων |reminder,  
 |memorial  
 ἐποιεύμην, οὐδὲ οὗτος |farther Ἰσηδόνων ἐν αὐτοῖσι  
 τοῖσι ἔπεισι ποιέων ἔφησε ἀπικέσθαι, ἀλλὰ τὰ |above, from above  
 ἔλεγε |hearing ἵασ' Ἰσηδόνας εἶναι τοὺς ταῦτα λέγοντας.  
 ἀλλ' ὅσον μὲν ἡμεῖς |precise, ἐπὶ μακρότατον οἶοι τε  
 |certain  
 ἐγενόμεθα |hear- |arrive at , πᾶν εἰρήσεται.  
 |ing

the man meant: and the Pythian prophetess bade them obey the command of the apparition, and told them that if they obeyed, it would be the better for them. They therefore accepted this answer and performed the commands; and there stands a statue now bearing the name of Aristeeas close by the side of the altar dedicated to Apollo, and round it stand laurel trees; and the altar is set up in the market-place. Let this suffice which has been said about Aristeeas.

#### 4.16

Now of the land about which this account has been begun, no one knows precisely what lies beyond it: for I am not able to hear of any one who alleges that he knows as an eye-witness; and even Aristeeas, the man of whom I was making mention just now, even he, I say, did not allege, although he was composing verse, that he went further than the Issedonians; but that which is beyond them he spoke of by hearsay, and reported that it was the Issedonians who said these things. So far however as we were able to arrive at certainty by hearsay, carrying inquiries as far as possible, all this shall be told.

*vocabulary*

**ἀλαζών** -όνος (m, 3) charlatan, boaster  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἄροτήρ** -ος (m) plowman ~arable  
**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
**γεωργός** farming  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐμπόριον** immigrant, metic, trading  
 post  
**ἐμπόριος** immigrant, metic, trading  
 post  
**ἐπασχέω** finish, complete; do  
 habitually

**ἐρήμιος** empty  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**κατύπερθε** above, from above  
**κέγχρος** small thing, bit  
**κρόμμυον** onion  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**νευρή** bowstring ~neuro  
**παραθαλάσσιος** by the sea  
**πρήσις** sale  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**σιτέομαι** (ι) eat ~parasite  
**σίτησις** (ι) feeding  
**σκόροδον** garlic  
**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora

## 4.17

Ἀπὸ τοῦ Βορυσθενειτέων ἐμπορίου τοῦτο γὰρ τῶν παραθαλασσίων μεσαίτατον ἐστὶ πάσης τῆς Σκυθίης, ἀπὸ τούτου πρῶτοι Καλλιπίδαι νέμονται ἐόντες Ἕλληνες Σκύθαι, ὕπερ δὲ τούτων ἄλλο ἔθνος οἱ Ἀλαζόνες καλέονται. οὗτοι δὲ καὶ οἱ Καλλιπίδαι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα κατὰ ταῦτὰ Σκύθησι ἐπασκέουσι, σῖτον δὲ καὶ σπείρουσι καὶ σιτέονται, καὶ κρόμνα καὶ σκόροδα καὶ φακούς καὶ κέγχρους. ὕπερ δὲ Ἀλαζόνων οἰκέουσι Σκύθαι ἀροτῆρες, οἱ οὐκ ἐπὶ σιτήσι σπείρουσι τὸν σῖτον ἀλλ' ἐπὶ πρήσι. τούτων δὲ κατύπερθε οἰκέουσι Νευροί. νευρῶν δὲ τὸ πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον ἔρημον ἀνθρώπων, ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν.

## 4.18

Ταῦτα μὲν παρὰ τὸν Ὑπανιν ποταμὸν ἐστὶ ἔθνεα πρὸς ἐσπέρης τοῦ Βορυσθέneos· ἀτὰρ διαβάντι τὸν Βορυσθέnea ἀπὸ θαλάσσης πρῶτον μὲν ἡ Ὑλαίη, ἀπὸ δὲ ταύτης ἄνω ἰόντι οἰκέουσι Σκύθαι γεωργοί, τοὺς Ἕλληνες οἱ οἰκέοντες





## 4.17

Beginning with the trading station of the Borysthenites,— for of the parts along the sea this is the central point of all Scythia,— beginning with this, the first regions are occupied by the Callipidai, who are Hellenic Scythians; and above these is another race, who are called Alazonians. These last and the Callipidai in all other respects have the same customs as the Scythians, but they both sow corn and use it as food, and also onions, leeks, lentils and millet. Above the Alazonians dwell Scythians who till the ground, and these sow their corn not for food but to sell.

18. Beyond them dwell the Neuroi; and beyond the Neuroi towards the North Wind is a region without inhabitants, as far as we know. These races are along the river Hypanis to the West of the Borysthenes; but after crossing the Borysthenes, first from the sea-coast is Hylaia, and beyond this as one goes up the river dwell agricultural Scythians, whom the Hellenes who live upon

*vocabulary***άνδροφάγος** man-eating**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**γεωργέω** farm, till land**γεωργός** farming**δένδρεον** -οῦ tree**δένδρον** tree**δένδρος** tree**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**ξνδεκα** eleven ~decimal**ἐρημος** empty**ἐύς** good, brave, noble**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; be proper**κατατείνω** stretch out**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**ῥον** οῦ type of fruit**οὔδαμός** not anyone**πλόος** -ῦ course, voyage ~float**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora**φιλός** (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon

ἐπὶ τῷ Ὑπάνι ποταμῷ καλέουσι Βορυσθενείτας, σφέας δὲ αὐτοὺς Ὀλβιοπολίτας. οὗτοι ὦν οἱ γεωργοὶ Σκύθαι νέμονται τὸ μὲν πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας ὁδοῦ, κατήκοντες ἐπὶ ποταμὸν τῷ οὐνομα κείται Παντικάπης, τὸ δὲ πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον πλόον ἀνὰ τὸν Βορυσθένα ἡμερέων ἔνδεκα. ἤδη δὲ κατύπερθε τούτων ἡ ἔρημος ἐστὶ ἐπὶ πολλόν. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἔρημον Ἀνδροφάγοι οἰκέουσι, ἔθνος ἐὼν ἴδιον καὶ οὐδαμῶς Σκυθικόν. τὸ δὲ τούτων κατύπερθε ἔρημον ἤδη ἀληθέως καὶ ἔθνος ἀνθρώπων οὐδέν, ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν.

#### 4.19

Τὸ δὲ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ τῶν γεωργῶν τούτων Σκυθέων, διαβάντι τὸν Παντικάπην ποταμόν, νομάδες ἤδη Σκύθαι νέμονται, οὔτε τι σπείροντες οὐδέν οὔτε ἀροῦντες· ψιλή δὲ δενδρέων ἢ πᾶσα αὕτη πλήν τῆς Ὑλαίης. οἱ δὲ νομάδες οὗτοι τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ ἡμερέων τεσσέρων καὶ δέκα ὁδὸν νέμονται χώραν κατατείνουσιν ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Γέρρον.

ἐπὶ τῷ Ὑπάνι ποταμῷ καλέουσι Βορυσθενείτας, σφέας  
 δὲ αὐτοὺς Ὀλβιοπολίτας. οὗτοι ὦν οἱ |farming Σκύθαι  
 |distribute τὸ μὲν πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας ὁδοῦ,  
 |come down, (a day) to αὐτὸν τῷ ὀνόματι κεῖται Παντικάπης,  
 |fall, arrive; be proper  
 τὸ δὲ πρὸς |north, ἄνεμον |course, ἀνὰ τὸν Βορυσθένα  
 |north |voyage  
 ἡμερέων |eleven ἤδη δὲ |above, from above ὦν ἡ ἔρημος ἐστὶ  
 ἐπὶ πολλὸν. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἔρημον |man-eating οἰκέουσι,  
 ἔθνος ἐὼν ἴδιον καὶ |not anyone Σκυθικόν. τὸ δὲ τούτων  
 |above, from above, ὦν ἤδη ἀληθέως καὶ ἔθνος ἀνθρώπων  
 οὐδέν, ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν.

#### 4.19

Τὸ δὲ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ τῶν γεωργῶν τούτων Σκυθέων,  
 |pass over, cross Παντικάπην ποταμόν, |roaming, ἤδη Σκύθαι  
 |grazing  
 |distribute , οὔτε τι |sow οὐδέν οὔτε ἀροῦντες· |naked, bare  
 δεινδρέων ἢ πᾶσα αὕτη πλήν τῆς Ὑλαίης. οἱ δὲ |roaming,  
 |grazing  
 οὗτοι τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ ἡμερέων τεσσέρων καὶ δέκα ὁδὸν  
 |distribute χώραν |stretch out ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Γέρρον.

the river Hypanis call Borysthenites, calling themselves at the same time citizens of Olbia. These agricultural Scythians occupy the region which extends Eastwards for a distance of three days' journey, reaching to a river which is called Panticapes, and Northwards for a distance of eleven days' sail up the Borysthenes. Then immediately beyond these begins the desert and extends for a great distance; and on the other side of the desert dwell the Androphagoi, a race apart by themselves and having no connection with the Scythians. Beyond them begins a region which is really desert and has no race of men in it, as far as we know.

#### 4.19

The region which lies to the East of these agricultural Scythians, after one has crossed the river Panticapes, is occupied by nomad Scythians, who neither sow anything nor plough the earth; and this whole region is bare of trees except Hylaia. These nomads occupy a country which extends to the river Gerros, a distance of fourteen days' journey Eastwards.

*vocabulary*

**βασίλειος** kingly  
**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**ἐμπόριον** immigrant, metic, trading  
 post  
**ἐμπόριος** immigrant, metic, trading  
 post  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,  
 arrive; be proper  
**κατύπερθε** above, from above  
**κρημνός** riverside cliff

**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**μεσσαμβρία** midday; the south  
**μυχός** recess, nook  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**ὀρύσσω** dig  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
**σφέτερος** their  
**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph  
**τυφλός** blind  
**τυφλώ** blind  
**φιλός** (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon

## 4.20

Πέρην δὲ τοῦ Γέρρου ταῦτα δὴ τὰ καλούμενα βασιλῆια ἐστὶ καὶ Σκύθαι οἱ ἄριστοί τε καὶ πλείστοι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους νομίζοντες Σκύθας δούλους σφετέρους εἶναι· κατήκουσι δὲ οὗτοι τὸ μὲν πρὸς μεσαμβρίην ἐς τὴν Ταυρικὴν, τὸ δὲ πρὸς ἡῶ ἐπὶ τε τάφρον, τὴν δὴ οἱ ἐκ τῶν τυφλῶν γενόμενοι ὤρυξαν, καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς λίμνης τῆς Μαιήτιδος τὸ ἐμπόριον τὸ καλέεται Κρημνοί· τὰ δὲ αὐτῶν κατήκουσι ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Τάναϊν. τὰ δὲ κατύπερθε πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον τῶν βασιλῆων Σκυθέων οἰκέουσι Μελάγχλαινοι, ἄλλο ἔθνος καὶ οὐ Σκυθικόν. μελαγχλαίνων δὲ τὸ κατύπερθε λίμναι καὶ ἔρημος ἐστὶ ἀνθρώπων, κατ' ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν.

## 4.21

Τάναϊν δὲ ποταμὸν διαβάντι οὐκέτι Σκυθική, ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν πρώτη τῶν λαξίων Σαυροματέων ἐστί, οἱ ἐκ τοῦ μυχοῦ ἀρξάμενοι τῆς Μαιήτιδος λίμνης νέμονται τὸ πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον ἡμερέων πεντεκαίδεκα ὁδόν, πᾶσαν ἐοῦσαν ψιλὴν



4.20

|across δὲ τοῦ Γέρρου ταῦτα δὴ τὰ καλούμενα |kingly  
 ἐστὶ καὶ Σκύθαι οἱ ἄριστοί τε καὶ πλείστοι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους  
 νομίζοντες Σκύθας δούλους |their εἶναι· |come down, (a day) to  
 |fall, arrive; be proper  
 δὲ οὗτοι τὸ μὲν πρὸς |midday; the south ἦν Ταυρικὴν, τὸ  
 δὲ πρὸς ἡῶ ἐπὶ τε |ditch , τὴν δὴ οἱ ἐκ τῶν τυφλῶν  
 γενόμενοι |dig , καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς |lake, marsh, Μαιήτιδος τὸ  
 |basin, sea  
 ἐμπόριον τὸ καλέεται |riverside τὰ δὲ αὐτῶν |come down, (a day) to  
 |cliff |fall, arrive; be proper  
 ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Τάναϊν. τὰ δὲ |above, from above |north, ἄνεμον  
 |north  
 τῶν |kingly Σκυθέων οἰκέουσι Μεγάγχαίνοι, ἄλλο  
 |wind  
 ἔθνος καὶ οὐ Σκυθικόν. μελαγχαλίνων δὲ τὸ |above, from above  
 |lake, marsh, ἔρημος ἐστὶ ἀνθρώπων, κατ' ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν.  
 |basin, sea

4.21

Τάναϊν δὲ ποταμὸν |pass over, cross ἐπὶ Σκυθική, ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν  
 πρώτη τῶν λαξίων Σαυροματέων ἐστί, οἱ ἐκ τοῦ |recess, nook  
 ἀρξάμενοι τῆς Μαιήτιδος |lake, |distribute τὸ πρὸς |north,  
 |marsh, |north  
 ἄνεμον ἡμερέων |15 |basin, |wind  
 |sea ὁδόν, πᾶσαν ἐοῦσαν |naked, bare

## 4.20

Then on the other side of the Gerros we have those parts which are called the “Royal” lands and those Scythians who are the bravest and most numerous and who esteem the other Scythians their slaves. These reach Southwards to the Tauric land, and Eastwards to the trench which those who were begotten of the blind slaves dug, and to the trading station which is called Cremnoi upon the Maiotian lake; and some parts of their country reach to the river Tanaïs. Beyond the Royal Scythians towards the North Wind dwell the Melanchlainoi, of a different race and not Scythian. The region beyond the Melanchlainoi is marshy and not inhabited by any, so far as we know.

## 4.21

After one has crossed the river Tanaïs the country is no longer Scythia, but the first of the divisions belongs to the Sauromatai, who beginning at the corner of the Maiotian lake occupy land extending towards the North Wind fifteen days’ journey, and wholly bare of trees both cultivated

*vocabulary*

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture  
 ἀπηνλιώτης -ου (m, 1) east wind  
 ἀποκλίνω (ι) bend aside ~incline  
 ἀπηνλιώτης -ου (m, 1) east wind  
 ἀφοράω look away, at ~panorama  
 βασιλεις kingly  
 βορέας -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
 γαστήρ -έρος (f) belly ~gastric  
 δένδρεον -οῦ tree  
 δένδρον tree  
 δένδρος tree  
 ἐρημος empty

ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled  
 ἥμερος gentle; (animals) domesticated  
 θήρα hunt ~fierce  
 κατύπερθεν above, from above  
 λοχάω lie in wait for  
 νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
 παντοῖος all kinds of  
 συνεχής (ι) continuously  
 τοιόσδε such  
 τοξεύω shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
 ὑπεροικέω dwell above or beyond  
 χώρος place ~heir

καὶ ἀγρίων καὶ ἡμέρων δενδρέων· ὑπεροικέουσι δὲ τούτων  
 δευτέρην λάξιν ἔχοντες Βουδῖνοι, γῆν νεμόμενοι πᾶσαν  
 δασέαν ὕλη παντοίῃ.

#### 4.22

Βουδίνων δὲ κατύπερθε πρὸς βορέην ἐστὶ πρώτη μὲν  
 ἔρημος ἐπ' ἡμερέων ἐπτὰ ὁδόν, μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἔρημον  
 ἀποκλίνοντι μᾶλλον πρὸς ἀπηλιώτην ἄνεμον νέμονται  
 Θυσσαγέται, ἔθνος πολλὸν καὶ ἴδιον· ζῶσι δὲ ἀπὸ θήρης.  
 συνεχέες δὲ τούτοισι ἐν τοῖσι αὐτοῖσι τόποισι κατοικημένοι  
 εἰσὶ τοῖσι οὖνομα κεῖται Ἰύρκαι, καὶ οὗτοι ἀπὸ θήρης  
 ζῶντες τρόπῳ τοιῷδε· λοχᾶ ἐπὶ δένδρεον ἀναβάς, τὰ  
 δὲ ἐστὶ πυκνὰ ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν· ἵππος δὲ ἐκάστω  
 δεδιδαγμένος ἐπὶ γαστέρα κείσθαι ταπεινότητος εἵνεκα  
 ἕτοιμος ἐστὶ καὶ κύων· ἐπεὰν δὲ ἀπίδῃ τὸ θηρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 δενδρέου, τοξεύσας ἐπιβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον διώκει, καὶ ὁ  
 κύων ἔχεται, ὑπὲρ δὲ τούτων τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ ἀποκλίνοντι  
 οἰκέουσι Σκύθαι ἄλλοι, ἀπὸ τῶν βασιληῶν Σκυθέων  
 ἀποστάντες καὶ οὕτω ἀπικόμενοι ἐς τοῦτον τὸν χώρον.

καὶ |wild, savage καὶ |gentle; (animals) do-|mesticated dwell above or δὲ τούτων  
 δευτέρην λάξιν ἔχοντες Βουδῖνοι, γῆν |distribute πᾶσαν  
 δασέαν ὕλη |all kinds of

## 4.22

Βουδίνων δὲ |above, from above north, ἔστι πρώτη μὲν  
 ἔρημος ἐπ' ἡμερέων ἑπτὰ ὁδόν, μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἔρημον  
 |bend aside μᾶλλον πρὸς ἀπηλιώτην ἄνεμον |distribute  
 Θυσσαγέται, ἔθνος πολλὸν καὶ ἴδιον· ζῶσι δὲ ἀπὸ θήρης.  
 |continuously τούτοισι ἐν τοῖσι αὐτοῖσι τόποισι κατοικημένοι  
 εἰσὶ τοῖσι οὖνομα κέϊται Ἰύρκαι, καὶ οὗτοι ἀπὸ θήρης  
 ζῶντες τρόπῳ |such |lie in wait |tree ἀναβάς, τὰ  
 δὲ ἔστι πυκνὰ ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν· ἵππος δὲ ἐκάστῳ  
 δεδιδαγμένος ἐπὶ |belly κείσθαι ταπεινότητος εἵνεκα  
 ἔτοιμος ἔστι καὶ κύων· ἐπεὰν δὲ ἀπίδῃ τὸ θηρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 |tree , |shoot an arrow at... ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον διώκει, καὶ ὁ  
 κύων ἔχεται, ὑπὲρ δὲ τούτων τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ |bend aside  
 οἰκέουσι Σκύθαι ἄλλοι, ἀπὸ τῶν |kingly Σκυθέων  
 ἀποστάντες καὶ οὕτω ἀπικόμενοι ἐς τοῦτον τὸν |place

and wild. Above these, holding the next division of land, dwell the Budinoi, who occupy a land wholly overgrown with forest consisting of all kinds of trees.

#### 4.22

Then beyond the Budinoi towards the North, first there is desert for seven days' journey; and after the desert turning aside somewhat more towards the East Wind we come to land occupied by the Thyssagetai, a numerous people and of separate race from the others. These live by hunting; and bordering upon them there are settled also in these same regions men who are called Irycai, who also live by hunting, which they practise in the following manner:— the hunter climbs up a tree and lies in wait there for his game (now trees are abundant in all this country), and each has a horse at hand, which has been taught to lie down upon its belly in order that it may make itself low, and also a dog; and when he sees the wild animal from the tree, he first shoots his arrow and then mounts upon his horse and pursues it, and the dog seizes hold of it. Above these in a direction towards the East dwell other Scythians, who have revolted from the Royal Scythians and so have come to this region.

*vocabulary***ἀπορρέω** flow, fall off**αὐτόθι** on the spot**γάλα** milk ~galaxy**γενετή** birth ~genus**δένδρεον** -οῦ tree**δένδρον** tree**δένδρος** tree**διεξέρχομαι** go through**ἔρσην** male**ἔσθῃς** clothes ~vest**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;

enroll ~legion

**κύαμος** bean**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**νομή** pasture; distribution**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm**παχύτης** -τος (f, 3) thickness**πέπων** familiar, 'softie'**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**σιμός** (ι) snub-nosed**σιτέομαι** (ι) eat ~parasite**σπουδαῖος** quick, active; excellent**συκέα** -ῆς (ῶ) fig tree**συκῇ** fig tree**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis**τραχύς** (ᾱ) rough ~trachea**τρύξ** -γός (f) wine must, lees**φαλακρός** bald**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
~bear

## 4.23

Μέχρι μὲν δὴ τῆς τούτων τῶν Σκυθέων χώρας ἐστὶ ἡ καταλεχθείσα πᾶσα πεδιάς τε γῆ καὶ βαθύγαιος, τὸ δ' ἀπὸ τούτου λιθώδης τ' ἐστὶ καὶ τρηχέα. διεξελθόντι δὲ καὶ τῆς τρηχέης χώρας πολλὸν οἰκέουσι ὑπώρεαν ὁρέων ὑψηλῶν ἄνθρωποι λεγόμενοι εἶναι πάντες φαλακροὶ ἐκ γενετῆς γινόμενοι, καὶ ἔρσενες καὶ θήλεια ὁμοίως, καὶ σιμοὶ καὶ γένεια ἔχοντες μεγάλα, φωνὴν δὲ ἰδίην ἰέντες, ἐσθῆτι δὲ χρεώμενοι Σκυθικῇ, ζῶντες δὲ ἀπὸ δενδρέων. ποντικὸν μὲν οὖνομα τῷ δενδρέῳ ἀπ' οὗ ζῶσι, μέγαθος δὲ κατὰ σκέην μάλιστά κη. καρπὸν δὲ φορέει κνάμω ἴσον, πυρῆνα δὲ ἔχει. τοῦτο ἐπεὰν γένηται πέπον, σακκέουσι ἱματίοις, ἀπορρέει δὲ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ παχὺ καὶ μέλαν· οὖνομα δὲ τῷ ἀπορρέοντι ἐστὶ ἄσχυ· τοῦτο καὶ λείχουσι καὶ γάλακτι συμμίσγοντες πίνουσι, καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς παχύτητος αὐτοῦ τῆς τρυγὸς παλάθας συντιθείσι καὶ ταύτας σιτέονται. πρόβατα γάρ σφι οὐ πολλά ἐστί. οὐ γάρ τι σπονδαῖαι αἱ νομαὶ αὐτόθι εἰσί. ὑπὸ δενδρέῳ δὲ



## 4.23

Μέχρι μὲν δὴ τῆς τούτων τῶν Σκυθέων χώρας ἐστὶ ἡ  
 |relate in detail, |pāsa pedias te gē kai bathygaios, tō d'  
 |choose; enroll  
 ἀπὸ τούτου λιθώδης τ' ἐστὶ καὶ τρηχέα. |go through δὲ  
 καὶ τῆς τρηχέης χώρας πολλὸν οἰκέουσι ὑπώρεαν ὀρέων  
 ὑψηλῶν ἄνθρωποι λεγόμενοι εἶναι πάντες |bald ἐκ  
 |birth γινόμενοι, καὶ |male καὶ θήλειαι ὁμοίως, καὶ  
 |snub-nosed, /eneia echontes megala, phonēn dē idīn iēntes,  
 |clothes δὲ χρεώμενοι Σκυθικῇ, ζῶντες δὲ ἀπὸ δενδρέων.  
 ποντικὸν μὲν οὔνομα τῷ |tree ἀπ' οὗ ζῶσι, |tall, big  
 δὲ κατὰ σукέην μάλιστά κη. καρπὸν δὲ |frequen-|bean  
 |tative of  
 ἴσον, πυρῆνα δὲ ἔχει. τοῦτο ἐπεὰν γένηται |φέρω, to  
 |carry |'softie',  
 σακκέουσι ἱματίοις, |flow, fall off ὃ δὲ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ |thick, stout,  
 |clotted  
 μέλαν· οὔνομα δὲ τῷ |flow, fall off ἐστὶ ἄσχυ· τοῦτο καὶ  
 λείχουσι καὶ |milk συμμίσγοντες πίνουσι, καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς  
 |thickness αὐτοῦ τῆς |wine must, leēs. /as |hearken, mark ἡ  
 ταύτας σιτέονται. |cattle, flocks, ἱρ σφι οὐ πολλά ἐστι. οὐ  
 |herds  
 γάρ τι |quick, active; |on the spot ἡ. ὑπὸ |tree δὲ  
 |excellent |pas-  
 |ture;  
 |distri-  
 |bution

## 4.23

As far as the country of these Scythians the whole land which has been described is level plain and has a deep soil; but after this point it is stony and rugged. Then when one has passed through a great extent of this rugged country, there dwell in the skirts of lofty mountains men who are said to be all bald-headed from their birth, male and female equally, and who have flat noses and large chins and speak a language of their own, using the Scythian manner of dress, and living on the produce of trees. The tree on the fruit of which they live is called the Pontic tree, and it is about the size of a fig-tree: this bears a fruit the size of a bean, containing a stone. When the fruit has ripened, they strain it through cloths and there flows from it a thick black juice, and this juice which flows from it is called as-chy. This they either lick up or drink mixed with milk, and from its lees, that is the solid part, they make cakes and use them for food; for they have not many cattle, since the pastures there are by no means good. Each man has his

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. *sin*

**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet

**ἄρειος** warlike

**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary

**δένδρεον** -οῦ tree

**διαίρῃω** divide, distinguish, distribute

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

**διαφορά** disagreement

**Ἑλλήν** Greek

**ἐμπόριον** immigrant, metic, trading

post

**ἐμπόριος** immigrant, metic, trading

post

**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter

**θέρος** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos

**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to

~fugitive

**περιοικέω** dwell around

**πίλος** felt

**προσδοκάω** expect

**στεγνόω** plug, fix leaks

**φαλακρός** bald

**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

ἕκαστος κατοίκηται, τὸν μὲν χειμῶνα ἐπεὰν τὸ δένδρεον περικαλύψῃ πύλῳ στεγνῶ λευκῶ, τὸ δὲ θέρος ἄνευ πύλου. τούτους οὐδεὶς ἀδικεῖ ἀνθρώπων· ἱροὶ γὰρ λέγονται εἶναι· οὐδέ τι ἀρήγιον ὄπλον ἐκτέεται. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν τοῖσι περιοικέουσι οὗτοι εἰσὶ οἱ τὰς διαφορὰς διαιρέοντες, τοῦτο δὲ ὃς ἂν φεύγων καταφύγῃ ἐς τούτους, ὑπ' οὐδενὸς ἀδικέεται· οὐνομα δέ σφι ἐστὶ Ἀργιππαῖοι.

## 4.24

Μέχρι μὲν νυν τῶν φαλακρῶν τούτων πολλὴ περιφανείη τῆς χώρας ἐστὶ καὶ τῶν ἔμπροσθε ἐθνέων· καὶ γὰρ Σκυθέων τινὲς ἀπικνέονται ἐς αὐτούς, τῶν οὐ χαλεπὸν ἐστὶ πυθέσθαι καὶ Ἑλλήνων τῶν ἐκ Βορυσθένεος τε ἐμπορίου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ποντικῶν ἐμπορίων· Σκυθέων δὲ οἱ ἂν ἔλθωσι ἐς αὐτούς, δι' ἐπτὰ ἐρμηνέων καὶ δι' ἐπτὰ γλωσσέων διαπρήσσονται.

## 4.25

Μέχρι μὲν δὴ τούτων γινώσκεται, τὸ δὲ τῶν φαλακρῶν

ἕκαστος κατοίκηται, τὸν μὲν |winter, |tree  
 |storm  
 περικαλύψῃ |felt στεγνῶ λευκῶ, τὸ δὲ |summer |felt  
 τούτους οὐδείς ἀδικεῖ ἀνθρώπων· ἱροὶ γὰρ λέγονται  
 εἶναι· οὐδέ τι |warlike ὄπλον ἐκτέεται. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν  
 τοῖσι |dwell around οὔτοι εἰσὶ οἱ τὰς |disagree- |divide, distin-  
 |ment |guish, distribute  
 τοῦτο δὲ ὅς ἂν φεύγων |resort to, flee |s τούτους, ὑπ' οὐδενὸς  
 |to, appeal to  
 ἀδικέεται· οὐνομα δέ σφι ἐστὶ Ἀργιππαῖοι.

## 4.24

Μέχρι μὲν νυν τῶν |bald τούτων πολλὴ περιφανείη  
 τῆς χώρας ἐστὶ καὶ τῶν ἔμπροσθε ἐθνέων· καὶ γὰρ  
 Σκυθέων τινὲς ἀπικνέονται ἐς αὐτούς, τῶν οὐ χαλεπὸν  
 ἐστι πυθέσθαι καὶ |Greek τῶν ἐκ Βορυσθένης τε  
 ἐμπορίου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ποντικῶν ἐμπορίων· Σκυθέων  
 δὲ οἱ ἂν ἔλθωσι ἐς αὐτούς, δι' ἐπτὰ |interpreter καὶ δι' ἐπτὰ  
 |tongue, |language διαπρήσσονται.

## 4.25

Μέχρι μὲν δὴ τούτων γινώσκεται, τὸ δὲ τῶν |bald

dwelling under a tree, in winter covering the tree all round with close white felt-cloth, and in summer without it. These are injured by no men, for they are said to be sacred, and they possess no weapon of war. These are they also who decide the disputes rising among their neighbours; and besides this, whatever fugitive takes refuge with them is injured by no one: and they are called Argippaians.

#### 4.24

Now as far as these bald-headed men there is abundantly clear information about the land and about the nations on this side of them; for not only do certain of the Scythians go to them, from whom it is not difficult to get information, but also some of the Hellenes who are at the trading-station of the Borysthenes and the other trading-places of the Pontic coast: and those of the Scythians who go to them transact their business through seven interpreters and in seven different languages.

#### 4.25

So far as these, I say, the land is known; but concerning the region to

*vocabulary*

**ἄβατος** untrodden; impassable  
**ἄγαλμα** -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory, statue  
**ἀναμίγνυμι** mix ~mix  
**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain  
**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
**γονεύς** -ος (m) parent  
**δαίς** -τός (f) feast, banquet ~demon  
**δαίτη** feast, banquet  
**ἐκκαθαίρω** clear out  
**ἐνδέχομαι** accept, admit, be possible  
**θύω** (ῑ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

**καθεύδω** lie down  
**κατατάμνω** cut up  
**κατατέμνω** cut up  
**καταχρυσόω** (ῑ) gild  
**κατύπερθε** above, from above  
**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**προσῆκω** belong to, it beseems  
**προτίθημι** prefer, set out ~thesis  
**ὑπερβαίνω** pass, transgress ~basis  
**φαλακρός** bald  
**φιλόω** (ῑ) strip bare ~epsilon

κατύπερθε οὐδεὶς ἀτρεκέως οἶδε φράσαι. ὄρεα γὰρ ὑψηλὰ ἀποτάμνει ἄβατα καὶ οὐδεὶς σφρα ὑπερβαίνει. οἱ δὲ φαλακροὶ οὗτοι λέγουσι, ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ πιστὰ λέγοντες, οἰκέειν τὰ ὄρεα αἰγίποδας ἄνδρας, ὑπερβάντι δὲ τούτους ἀνθρώπους ἄλλους οἱ τὴν ἐξάμηνον κατεύδουσι. τοῦτο δὲ οὐκ ἐνδέκομαι τὴν ἀρχήν, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν πρὸς ἡῶ τῶν φαλακρῶν γινώσκεται ἀτρεκέως ὑπὸ Ἰσσηδόνων οἰκεόμενον, τὸ μέντοι κατύπερθε πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον οὐ γινώσκεται οὔτε τῶν φαλακρῶν οὔτε τῶν Ἰσσηδόνων, εἰ μὴ ὅσα αὐτῶν τούτων λεγόντων.

## 4.26

Νόμοισι δὲ Ἰσσηδόνες τοῖσιδε λέγονται χρᾶσθαι. ἐπεὰν ἀνδρὶ ἀποθάνῃ πατήρ, οἱ προσήκοντες πάντες προσάγουσι πρόβατα, καὶ ἔπειτα ταῦτα θύσαντες καὶ καταταμόντες τὰ κρέα κατατάμνουσι καὶ τὸν τοῦ δεκομένου τεθνεῶτα γονέα, ἀναμίζαντες δὲ πάντα τὰ κρέα δαῖτα προτίθενται· τὴν δὲ κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ ψιλώσαντες καὶ ἐκκαθήραντες καταχρυσοῦσι καὶ ἔπειτα ἅτε ἀγάλματι



|above, from above` |precise, οἶδε φράσαι. ὄρεα γὰρ ὑψηλὰ  
 |certain  
 ἀποτάμνει |untrodden; οὐδείς σφρα |pass, transgress οἱ δὲ  
 |impassable  
 |bald οὔτοι λέγουσι, ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ πιστὰ λέγοντες,  
 οἰκέειν τὰ ὄρεα αἰγίποδας ἀνδρας, |pass, transgress τούτους  
 ἀνθρώπους ἄλλους οἱ τὴν ἐξάμηνον |lie down τοῦτο  
 δὲ οὐκ |accept, admit, ἦν ἀρχήν, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν πρὸς ἡῶ  
 |be possible  
 τῶν |bald γινώσκεται |precise, ὑπὸ Ἰσσηδόνων  
 |certain  
 οἰκεόμενον, τὸ μέντοι |above, from above` |north, ἄνεμον οὐ  
 |north  
 γινώσκεται οὔτε τῶν |bald οὔτε τῶν Ἰσσηδόνων, εἰ  
 |wind  
 μὴ ὅσα αὐτῶν τούτων λεγόντων.

## 4.26

Νόμοισι δὲ Ἰσσηδόνες τοῖσιδε λέγονται χρᾶσθαι.  
 ἐπεὰν ἀνδρὶ ἀποθάνῃ πατήρ, οἱ |belong to, it be- πάντες  
 |seems  
 |bring to a place |cattle, flocks, καὶ ἔπειτα ταῦτα |rush; sacrifice  
 |herds  
 καὶ |cut up τὰ |meat |cut up καὶ τὸν τοῦ  
 δεκομένου τεθνεῶτα |parent, |mix δὲ πάντα τὰ |meat  
 δαῖτα |prefer, set out τὴν δὲ κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ |strip bare  
 καὶ |clear out |gild καὶ ἔπειτα |as if; |ornament,  
 |since |glory, statue

the North of the bald-headed men no one can speak with certainty, for lofty and impassable mountains divide it off, and no one passes over them. However these bald-headed men say (though I do not believe it) that the mountains are inhabited by men with goats' feet; and that after one has passed beyond these, others are found who sleep through six months of the year. This I do not admit at all as true. However, the country to the East of the bald-headed men is known with certainty, being inhabited by the Issedonians, but that which lies beyond both the bald-headed men and the Issedonians towards the North Wind is unknown, except so far as we know it from the accounts given by these nations which have just been mentioned.

#### 4.26

The Issedonians are said to have these customs:— when a man's father is dead, all the relations bring cattle to the house, and then having slain them and cut up the flesh, they cut up also the dead body of the father of their entertainer, and mixing all the flesh together they set forth a banquet. His skull however they strip of the flesh and clean it out and then gild it over, and after that they deal with it as a sacred thing

*vocabulary***ἀνακαίω** light (a fire) ~caustic**ἀφόρητος** unendurable; irresistible**γρύψ** griffin**δυσχείμερος** ill-wintered**ἐκχέω** pour out**Ἑλλην** Greek**ἐπέτειος** of one year**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty**ἐπιτέλλω** order ~apostle**ἐφέτειος** of one year**θάλλω** bloom, flourish, abound

~thallium

**θυσία** sacrifice**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;

enroll ~legion

**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**κρυμός** (ῥ) icy cold**μουνόφθαλμος** one-eyed**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**πήγνυμι** (ῥ) stick, set, build ~fang**πηλός** clay, mud

χρέωνται, θυσίας μεγάλας ἐπετείους ἐπιτελέοντες. παῖς δὲ πατρὶ τοῦτο ποιεῖ, κατὰ περ Ἑλληνες τὰ γενέσια. ἄλλως δὲ δίκαιοι καὶ οὗτοι λέγονται εἶναι, ἰσοκρατές δὲ ὁμοίως αἱ γυναῖκες τοῖσι ἀνδράσι.

## 4.27

Γινώσκονται μὲν δὴ καὶ οὗτοι, τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτων τὸ κατύπερθε Ἰσσηδόνες εἰσὶ οἱ λέγοντες μονοφθάλμους ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρυσοφύλακας γρῦπας εἶναι· παρὰ δὲ τούτων Σκύθαι παραλαβόντες λέγουσι, παρὰ δὲ Σκυθέων ἡμεῖς οἱ ἄλλοι νενομίκαμεν καὶ ὀνομάζομεν αὐτοὺς σκυθιστὶ Ἄριμασπούς· ἄριμα γὰρ ἐν καλέουσι Σκύθαι, σποῦ δὲ ὀφθαλμόν.

## 4.28

Δυσχείμερος δὲ αὕτη ἢ καταλεχθείσα πᾶσα χώρα οὕτω δὴ τι ἐστί, ἔνθα τοὺς μὲν ὀκτὼ τῶν μηνῶν ἀφόρητος οἶος γίνεται κρυμός, ἐν τοῖσι ὕδωρ ἐκχέας πηλὸν οὐ ποιήσεις, πῦρ δὲ ἀνακαίων ποιήσεις πηλόν· ἡ δὲ θάλασσα πηγνυται

χρέωνται, θυσίας μεγάλας ἐπετείους ἐπιτελέοντες. παῖς δὲ  
πατρὶ τοῦτο ποιέει, κατὰ περ |Greek τὰ γενέσια. ἄλλως  
δὲ δίκαιοι καὶ οὔτοι λέγονται εἶναι, ἰσοκρατές δὲ ὁμοίως  
αἱ γυναῖκες τοῖσι ἀνδράσι.

#### 4.27

Γινώσκονται μὲν δὴ καὶ οὔτοι, τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτων τὸ  
|above, from above ,δόνες εἰσὶ οἱ λέγοντες |one-eyed  
ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρυσοφύλακας |griffin εἶναι· παρὰ δὲ  
τούτων Σκύθαι παραλαβόντες λέγουσι, παρὰ δὲ Σκυθέων  
ἡμεῖς οἱ ἄλλοι νενομίκαμεν καὶ ὀνομάζομεν αὐτοὺς  
σκυθιστὶ Ἀριμασπούς· ἄριμα γὰρ ἐν καλέουσι Σκύθαι,  
σποῦ δὲ ὀφθαλμόν.

#### 4.28

|ill-wintered δὲ αὕτη ἡ |relate in detail, πᾶσα χώρα οὕτω  
|choose; enroll  
δὴ τι ἐστί, ἔνθα τοὺς μὲν |eight τῶν μηνῶν |unendurable; ὥς  
|irresistible  
γίνεται |icy cold , ἐν τοῖσι ὕδωρ |pour out ἡλὸν οὐ ποιήσεις,  
πῦρ δὲ |light (a fire) ..οιήσεις πηλόν· ἡ δὲ |bloom, |stick, set, build  
|flourish,  
|abound

and perform for the dead man great sacrifices every year. This each son does for his father, just as the Hellenes keep the day of memorial for the dead. In other respects however this race also is said to live righteously, and their women have equal rights with the men.

**4.27**

These then also are known; but as to the region beyond them, it is the Issedonians who report that there are there one-eyed men and gold-guarding griffins; and the Scythians report this having received it from them, and from the Scythians we, that is the rest of mankind, have got our belief; and we call them in Scythian language Arimaspians, for the Scythians call the number one arima and the eye spu.

**4.28**

This whole land which has been described is so exceedingly severe in climate, that for eight months of the year there is frost so hard as to be intolerable; and during these if you pour out water you will not be able to make mud, but only if you kindle a

*vocabulary*

**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀμφιλαφής** spreading, abundant  
**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet  
**αὐτόθι** on the spot  
**βροντή** thunder ~brontosaurus  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
 ~apostle  
**ἐντός** within  
**ἐπελαύνω** beat out ~elastic  
**ἐπίλοιπος** remaining  
**ἡμίονος** (f) mule ~hemisphere  
**ἤμος** when (ἤμος) ..., then (τῆμος)  
**θέρος** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos  
**κόλος** stump-horned

**κρυμός** (ῥ) icy cold  
**κρύσταλλος** ice ~crystal  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager  
**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
**σεισμός** shaking  
**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph  
**τέρας** -ως (n, 3) omen, fetish  
**τηνικαῦτα** at that time, in that case  
**ὕω** (ῥ) to rain  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
**χωρίζω** divide; distinguish, pull down  
**ψυχος** -εος (n, 3) coolness ~psychology  
**ώραῖος** ripe; young adult

καὶ ὁ Βόσπορος πᾶς ὁ Κιμμέριος, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ κρυστάλλου οἱ ἐντὸς τάφρου Σκύθαι κατοικημένοι στρατεύονται καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας ἐπελαύνουσι πέρην ἐς τοὺς Σίνδους. οὕτω μὲν δὴ τοὺς ὀκτὼ μῆνας διατελέει χειμῶν ἐὼν, τοὺς δ' ἐπιλοίπους τέσσαρας ψύχρα αὐτόθι ἐστί. κεχώρισται δὲ οὗτος ὁ χειμῶν τοὺς τρόπους πᾶσι τοῖσι ἐν ἄλλοισι χωρίοις γινομένοις χειμῶσι, ἐν τῷ τὴν μὲν ὥραίην οὐκ ὕει λόγου ἄξιον οὐδέν, τὸ δὲ θέρος ὕων οὐκ ἀνιεί· βρονταί τε ἥμος τῇ ἄλλῃ γίνονται, τηνικαῦτα μὲν οὐ γίνονται, θέρεος δὲ ἀμφιλαφές· ἦν δὲ χειμῶνος βροντὴ γένηται, ὥς τέρας νενόμισται θαυμάζεσθαι. ὥς δὲ καὶ ἦν σεισμὸς γένηται ἦν τε θέρεος ἦν τε χειμῶνος ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ, τέρας νενόμισται. ἵπποι δὲ ἀνεχόμενοι φέρουσι τὸν χειμῶνα τοῦτον, ἡμίονοι δὲ οὐδὲ ὄνοι οὐκ ἀνέχονται ἀρχήν· τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ ἵπποι μὲν ἐν κρυμῷ ἐστεῶτες ἀποσφακελίζουσι, ὄνοι δὲ καὶ ἡμίονοι ἀνέχονται.

## 4.29

Δοκέει δέ μοι καὶ τὸ γένος τῶν βοῶν τὸ κόλον διὰ ταῦτα



καὶ ὁ Βόσπορος πᾶς ὁ Κιμμέριος, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ |ice  
οἱ ἐντὸς τάφρου Σκύθαι κατοικημένοι στρατεύονται καὶ  
τὰς |wagon |beat out |across ἐς τοὺς Σίνδους. οὕτω  
μὲν δὴ τοὺς |eight μῆνας |accomplish; |χειμῶν ἐών, τοὺς  
|keep doing  
δ' |remaining τέσσερας |coolness|on the spot ἰ. |divide; distinguish,  
|pull down  
δὲ οὗτος ὁ χειμῶν τοὺς τρόπους πᾶσι τοῖσι ἐν ἄλλοις  
χωρίοις γινομένοις χειμῶσι, ἐν τῷ τὴν μὲν |ripe; οὐκ  
|young  
|to rain 'ου ἄξιον οὐδέν, τὸ δὲ |sum- |to rain 'κ ἀνεί' |thunder  
|mer  
τε |when (ἤμος) ..., γίνονται, |at that time, μὲν οὐ γίνονται,  
|then (τῆμος) |in that case  
|sum- δὲ |spreading, ἦν δὲ χειμῶνος |thunder γένηται,  
|mer |abundant  
ὥς |omen, νενόμισται θαμάζεσθαι. ὥς δὲ καὶ ἦν |shaking  
|fetish  
γένηται ἦν τε |sum- ἦν τε χειμῶνος ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ. |omen,  
|mer |fetish  
νενόμισται. ἵπποι δὲ ἀνεχόμενοι φέρουσι τὸν χειμῶνα  
τοῦτον, |mule δὲ οὐδὲ |donkey 'κ ἀνέχονται ἀρχήν· τῇ δὲ  
ἄλλῃ ἵπποι μὲν ἐν |icy cold ἵστεῶτες ἀποσφακελίζουσι, |donkey  
δὲ καὶ |mule ἀνέχονται.

## 4.29

Δοκέει δέ μοι καὶ τὸ γένος τῶν βοῶν τὸ |stump-horned αὐτὰ

fire can you make it; and the sea is frozen and the whole of the Kimmerian Bosphorus, so that the Scythians who are settled within the trench make expeditions and drive their waggons over into the country of the Sindians. Thus it continues to be winter for eight months, and even for the remaining four it is cold in those parts. This winter is distinguished in its character from all the winters which come in other parts of the world; for in it there is no rain to speak of at the usual season for rain, whereas in summer it rains continually; and thunder does not come at the time when it comes in other countries, but is very frequent, in the summer; and if thunder comes in winter, it is marvelled at as a prodigy: just so, if an earthquake happens, whether in summer or in winter, it is accounted a prodigy in Scythia. Horses are able to endure this winter, but neither mules nor asses can endure it at all, whereas in other countries horses if they stand in frost lose their limbs by mortification, while asses and mules endure it.

#### 4.29

I think also that it is for this reason that the hornless breed of oxen

*vocabulary***ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;

(intrans) ride away

**ἀρήν** ἄρνός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool**ἄρνός** lamb, sheep; wool**αὐτόθι** on the spot**ἄφαρ** quickly**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἡμίονος** (f) mule ~hemisphere**θερμός** warm, hot ~thermos**κατάρρα** curse**κεραός** horned ~ceratopsia**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal**κυῖσχομαι** breed, reproduce, make/get

pregnant (humans, animals, plants)

**μαρτυρέω** testify, bear witness**μόγισ** with difficulty, barely**ὅθι** where**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend

~genus

**πέλας** near, close**πλησιόχωρος** adjacent**προσίημι** be allowed near**τελέθω** turn out, come around

~apostle

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χωρός** place ~heir**ψυχός** -εος (n, 3) coolness ~psychology**ψυχρός** (ū) cold ~psychology

οὐ φύειν κέρεα αὐτόθι· μαρτυρέει δέ μοι τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ Ὅμηρου ἔπος ἐν Ὀδυσσεΐῃ ἔχον ὧδε, καὶ Λιβύην, ὅθι τ' ἄρνες ἄφαρ κεραοὶ τελέθουσι, ὀρθῶς εἰρημένον, ἐν τοῖσι θερμοῖσι ταχὺ παραγίνεσθαι τὰ κέρεα, ἐν δὲ τοῖσι ἰσχυροῖσι ψύχεσι ἢ οὐ φύειν κέρεα τὰ κτήνεα ἀρχὴν ἢ φύοντα φύειν μόγισ.

## 4.30

Ἐνθαῦτα μὲν νυν διὰ τὰ ψύχεα γίνεται ταῦτα. θαυμάζω δέ προσθήκας γὰρ δὴ μοι ὁ λόγος ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐδίζητο ὅτι ἐν τῇ Ἡλείῃ πάσῃ χώρῃ οὐ δυνέεται γίνεσθαι ἡμίονοι, οὔτε ψυχροῦ τοῦ χώρου ἐόντος οὔτε ἄλλου φανεροῦ αἰτίου οὐδενός. φασὶ δὲ αὐτοὶ Ἡλεῖοι ἐκ κατάρης τευ οὐ γίνεσθαι σφίσι ἡμίονους, ἀλλ' ἐπεὰν προσίῃ ἢ ὥρῃ κυΐσκεσθαι τὰς ἵππους, ἐξελαύνουσι ἐς τοὺς πλησιοχώρους αὐτάς, καὶ ἔπειτά σφι ἐν τῇ τῶν πέλας ἐπιείσι τοὺς ὄνους, ἐς οὗ ἂν σχώσι αἱ ἵπποι ἐν γαστρὶ· ἔπειτα δὲ ἀπελαύνουσι.

οὐ |produce, beget;|on the|testify, bear δέ μοι τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ  
 |clasp |spot |witness  
 Ὀμήρου ἔπος ἐν Ὀδυσσεΐῃ ἔχον ὧδε, καὶ Λιβύην, |where  
 τ' ἄρνες |quickly |horned |turn out , ὀρθῶς εἰρημένον, ἐν  
 τοῖσι |warm, hot γαχὺ παραγίνεσθαι τὰ κέρεια, ἐν δὲ τοῖσι  
 ἰσχυροῖσι |coolness ἢ οὐ |produce, , καὶ τὰ |herd animal| γὰρ ἢ  
 |beget; clasp  
 |produce, |pro- |with difficulty,  
 |beget; |duce, |barely  
 |clasp |beget;  
 4.30 |clasp

|there, here μέν νυν διὰ τὰ |coolness ,ίνεται ταῦτα. θωμάζω  
 δέ προσθήκας γὰρ δὴ μοι ὁ λόγος ἐξ ἀρχῆς |seek ὅτι  
 ἐν τῇ Ἡλείῃ πάσῃ χώρῃ οὐ δυνέεται γίνεσθαι |mule ,  
 οὔτε |cold τοῦ |place ἐόντος οὔτε ἄλλου φανεροῦ αἰτίου  
 οὐδενός. φασὶ δὲ αὐτοὶ Ἡλεῖοι ἐκ |curse τευ οὐ γίνεσθαι  
 σφίσι |mule , ἀλλ' ἐπεὰν |be allowed near, |breed, reproduce, make/get  
 |pregnant (humans, animals,  
 ἵππους, |drive out ἐς τοὺς |adjacent |plants) αὐτάς, καὶ  
 ἔπειτά σφι ἐν τῇ τῶν |near, ἐπιείσι τοὺς |donkey ἐς οὐ ἂν  
 |close  
 σχῶσι αἱ ἵπποι ἐν |belly ἔπειτα δὲ |expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans)  
 |ride away

in that country have no horns growing; and there is a verse of Homer in the *Odyssey* supporting my opinion, which runs this:—

“Also the Libyan land, where the sheep very quickly grow horned.”

For it is rightly said that in hot regions the horns come quickly, whereas in extreme cold the animals either have no horns growing at all, or hardly any.

#### 4.30

In that land then this takes place on account of the cold; but (since my history proceeded from the first seeking occasions for digression) I feel wonder that in the whole land of Elis mules cannot be bred, though that region is not cold, nor is there any other evident cause. The Eleians themselves say that in consequence of some curse mules are not begotten in their land; but when the time approaches for the mares to conceive, they drive them out into the neighbouring lands and there in the land of their neighbours they admit to them the he-asses until the mares are pregnant, and then they drive them back.

*vocabulary***ἄδρός** full-grown, fat**ἀναπλέω** sail up, through**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**διέξιμι** pass through; recount ~ion**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἥπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**θέρος** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**μουνόφθαλμος** one-eyed**νίφω** (ἷ) it snows**ὄον** οὔ type of fruit**περίοικος** dwelling around**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**πτερόν** feather, wing ~pterodactyl**πτερόω** give wings**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm**χιών** χιόνος (f, 3) snow

## 4.31

Περὶ δὲ τῶν πτερῶν τῶν Σκύθαι λέγουσι ἀνάπλεον εἶναι τὸν ἡέρα, καὶ τούτων εἵνεκα οὐκ οἰοί τε εἶναι οὔτε ἰδεῖν τὸ πρόσω τῆς ἡπείρου οὔτε διεξιέναι, τήνδε ἔχω περὶ αὐτῶν γνώμην· τὰ κατύπερθε ταύτης τῆς χώρας αἰεὶ νίφεται, ἐλάσσουσι δὲ τοῦ θέρους ἢ τοῦ χειμῶνος, ὥσπερ καὶ οἰκός. ἤδη ὦν ὅστις ἀγχόθεν χιόνα ἀδρῆν πίπτουσαν εἶδε οἶδε τὸ λέγω· ἔοικε γὰρ ἢ χιῶν πτεροῖσι καὶ διὰ τὸν χειμῶνα τοῦτον ἐόντα τοιοῦτον ἀνοίκητα τὰ πρὸς βορέην ἐστὶ τῆς ἡπείρου ταύτης. τὰ ὦν πτερὰ εἰκάζοντας τὴν χιόνα τοὺς Σκύθας τε καὶ τοὺς περιοίκους δοκέω λέγειν. ταῦτα μὲν νυν τὰ λέγεται μακρότατα εἴρηται.

## 4.32

Ὑπερβορέων δὲ περὶ ἀνθρώπων οὔτε τι Σκύθαι λέγουσι οὐδὲν οὔτε τινὲς ἄλλοι τῶν ταύτῃ οἰκημένων, εἰ μὴ ἄρα Ἴσσηδόνες. ὥς δὲ ἐγὼ δοκέω, οὐδ' οὔτοι λέγουσι οὐδέν· ἔλεγον γὰρ ἂν καὶ Σκύθαι, ὥς περὶ τῶν μονοφθάλμων



4.31

Περὶ δὲ τῶν πτερῶν τῶν Σκύθαι λέγουσι ἀνάπλεον εἶναι  
τὸν ἡέρα, καὶ τούτων εἵνεκα οὐκ οἰοί τε εἶναι οὔτε ἰδεῖν τὸ  
|forward, in|mainland, ὅτε |pass through; |δε ἔχω περὶ αὐτῶν  
|the future; far|continent |recount  
γνώμην· τὰ |above, from above |ς τῆς χώρας αἰεὶ |it snows,  
ἐλάσσονι δὲ τοῦ |sum- ἢ τοῦ |winter, ὥσπερ καὶ οἰκός.  
|mer |storm  
ἤδη ὧν ὅστις ἀγχόθεν |snow |fat πίπτουσιν εἶδε οἶδε  
τὸ λέγω· ἔοικε γὰρ ἡ |snow |feather, wing ` διὰ τὸν |winter,  
|storm  
τοῦτον ἐόντα τοιοῦτον ἀνοίκητα τὰ πρὸς |north, ἐστὶ τῆς  
|north  
|mainland, αὐτῆς. τὰ ὧν |feather, |liken; |wind  
|continent |wing |conjecture |την |snow τοὺς  
Σκύθας τε καὶ τοὺς |dwelling δοκέω λέγειν. ταῦτα μέν  
|around  
νυν τὰ λέγεται μακρότατα εἴρηται.

4.32

Ὑπερβορέων δὲ περὶ ἀνθρώπων οὔτε τι Σκύθαι λέγουσι  
οὐδὲν οὔτε τινὲς ἄλλοι τῶν ταύτῃ οἰκημένων, εἰ μὴ ἄρα  
Ἴσσηδόνες. ὥς δὲ ἐγὼ δοκέω, οὐδ' οὔτοι λέγουσι οὐδέν·  
ἔλεγον γὰρ ἂν καὶ Σκύθαι, ὥς περὶ τῶν |one-eyed

## 4.31

As to the feathers of which the Scythians say that the air is full, and that by reason of them they are not able either to see or to pass through the further parts of the continent, the opinion which I have is this:— in the parts beyond this land it snows continually, though less in summer than in winter, as might be supposed. Now whomsoever has seen close at hand snow falling thickly, knows what I mean without further explanation, for the snow is like feathers: and on account of this wintry weather, being such as I have said, the Northern parts of this continent are uninhabitable. I think therefore that by the feathers the Scythians and those who dwell near them mean symbolically the snow. This then which has been said goes to the furthest extent of the accounts given.

## 4.32

About a Hyperborean people the Scythians report nothing, nor do any of those who dwell in this region, unless it be the Issedonians: but in my opinion neither do these report anything; for if they did the Scythians also would report it, as they do about

*vocabulary***διαπορεύω** carry over, through**έκαστάτω** afar, far off**έκλείπω** leave out, pass over**Έλλην** Greek**ένδέω** tie to, entangle; lack**ένθεϋτεν** thence**έσπέρα** evening, west**καλάμη** straw, stubble**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf**μεσαμβρία** midday; the south**πλησιόχωρος** adjacent**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp**πυρά** pyre ~pyre**πυρός (ϋ)** wheat**πυρόω** burn something

λέγουσι. ἀλλ' Ἡσιόδῳ μὲν ἐστὶ περὶ Ὑπερβορέων  
εἰρημένα, ἔστι δὲ καὶ Ὀμήρῳ ἐν Ἐπιγόνοισι, εἰ δὴ τῷ ἐόντι  
γε Ὅμηρος ταῦτα τὰ ἔπεα ἐποίησε.

## 4.33

Πολλῶ δέ τι πλείστα περὶ αὐτῶν Δῆλιοι λέγουσι,  
φάμενοι ἱρὰ ἐνδεδεμένα ἐν καλάμῃ πυρῶν ἐξ Ὑπερβορέων  
φερόμενα ἀπικνέεσθαι ἐς Σκύθας, ἀπὸ δὲ Σκυθέων ἤδη  
δεκομένους αἰεὶ τοὺς πλησιοχώρους ἐκάστους κομίζειν  
αὐτὰ τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης ἐκαστάτῳ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀδρίην, ἐνθεύτεν  
δὲ πρὸς μεσαμβρίην προπεμπόμενα πρώτους Δωδωναίους  
Ἑλλήνων δέκεσθαι, ἀπὸ δὲ τούτων καταβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸν  
Μηλιέα κόλπον καὶ διαπορεύεσθαι ἐς Εὐβοίαν, πόλιν τε  
ἐς πόλιν πέμπειν μέχρι Καρύστου, τὸ δ' ἀπὸ ταύτης  
ἐκλιπεῖν Ἄνδρον· Καρυστίους γὰρ εἶναι τοὺς κομίζοντας  
ἐς Τήνον, Τηνίους δὲ ἐς Δῆλον. ἀπικνέεσθαι μὲν νυν  
οὕτω ταῦτα τὰ ἱρὰ λέγουσι ἐς Δῆλον· πρῶτον δὲ τοὺς  
Ὑπερβορέους πέμψαι φερούσας τὰ ἱρὰ δύο κόρας, τὰς  
ὀνομάζουσι Δῆλιοι εἶναι Ὑπερόχην τε καὶ

λέγουσι. ἀλλ' Ἡσιόδῳ μὲν ἐστὶ περὶ Ὑπερβορέων  
εἰρημένα, ἔστι δὲ καὶ Ὅμηρῳ ἐν Ἐπιγόνοισι, εἰ δὴ τῷ ἐόντι  
γε Ὅμηρος ταῦτα τὰ ἔπεα ἐποίησε.

4.33

Πολλῷ δέ τι πλείστα περὶ αὐτῶν Δῆλιοι λέγουσι,  
φάμενοι ἱρὰ |tie to ἐν |straw, stubble πυρῶν ἐξ Ὑπερβορέων  
φερόμενα ἀπικνέεσθαι ἐς Σκύθας, ἀπὸ δὲ Σκυθέων ἤδη  
δεκομένους αἰεὶ τοὺς |adjacent ἐκάστους κομίζειν  
αὐτὰ τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης |afar, far off ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀδρίην, |thence  
δὲ πρὸς |midday; the |send, send ahead τρώτους Δωδωναίους  
|south  
|Greek δέκεσθαι, ἀπὸ δὲ τούτων καταβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸν  
Μηλιέα |bosom, lap- |διαπορεύεσθαι ἐς Εὐβοίαν, πόλιν τε  
|fold; gulf  
|leave out, pass over Καρυστίους γὰρ εἶναι τοὺς κομίζοντας  
ἐς Τήγον, Τηνίους δὲ ἐς Δῆλον. ἀπικνέεσθαι μὲν νυν  
οὕτω ταῦτα τὰ ἱρὰ λέγουσι ἐς Δῆλον· πρῶτον δὲ τοὺς  
Ὑπερβορέους πέμψαι φερούσας τὰ ἱρὰ δύο κόρας, τὰς  
ὀνομάζουσι Δῆλιοι εἶναι Ὑπερόχην τε καὶ

the one-eyed people. Hesiod however has spoken of Hyperboreans, and so also has Homer in the poem of the “Epigonoι,” at least if Homer was really the composer of that Epic.

#### 4.33

But much more about them is reported by the people of Delos than by any others. For these say that sacred offerings bound up in wheat straw are carried from the land of the Hyperboreans and come to the Scythians, and then from the Scythians the neighbouring nations in succession receive them and convey them Westwards, finally as far as the Adriatic: thence they are sent forward towards the South, and the people of Dodona receive them first of all the Hellenes, and from these they come down to the Malian gulf and are passed over to Euboea, where city sends them on to city till they come to Carystos. After this Andros is left out, for the Carystians are those who bring them to Tenos, and the Tenians to Delos. Thus they say that these sacred offerings come to Delos; but at first, they say, the Hyperboreans sent two maidens bearing the sacred offerings, whose names, say the Delians, were

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet

**ἀποδέχομαι** accept

**ἀπονοστέω** go home

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp

**ἀσφάλεια** safeguard

**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack

**ἐπισκήπτω** lay something on

**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

**καλάμη** straw, stubble

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,

overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use  
up

**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon

**πλησιόχωρος** adjacent

**πομπός** escort, guide ~pomp

**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp

**προσδοκάω** expect

**προσφερόης** similar; useful

**πυρά** pyre ~pyre

**πυρός** (ῥ) wheat

**πυρόω** burn something

Λαοδίκην· ἅμα δὲ αὐτῇσι ἀσφαλείης εἵνεκεν πέμψαι τοὺς Ὑπερβορέους τῶν ἀστῶν ἄνδρας πέντε πομπούς, τούτους οἱ νῦν Περφερέες καλέονται τιμὰς μεγάλας ἐν Δήλῳ ἔχοντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῖσι Ὑπερβορείοις τοὺς ἀποπεμφθέντας ὀπίσω οὐκ ἀπονοστέειν, δεινὰ ποιευμένους εἰ σφέας αἰεὶ καταλάμπεται ἀποστέλλοντας μὴ ἀποδέκεσθαι, οὕτω δὴ φέροντας ἐς τοὺς οὖρους τὰ ἱρὰ ἐνδεδεμένα ἐν πυρῶν καλάμῃ τοὺς πλησιοχώρους ἐπισκίπτειν κελεύοντας προπέμπειν σφέα ἀπὸ ἐωυτῶν ἐς ἄλλο ἔθνος. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω προπεμπόμενα ἀπικνέεσθαι λέγουσι ἐς Δῆλον. οἶδα δὲ αὐτὸς τούτοις τοῖσι ἱροῖσι τόδε ποιούμενον προσφέρēs, τὰς Θρηκίας καὶ τὰς Παιονίδας γυναῖκας, ἐπεὰν θύωσι τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι τῇ βασιλείῃ, οὐκ ἄνευ πυρῶν καλάμης ἐχούσας τὰ ἱρά.

## 4.34

Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ταύτας οἶδα ποιεύσας· τῇσι δὲ παρθένοισι ταύτῃσι τῇσι ἐξ Ὑπερβορέων τελευτησάσῃσι ἐν Δήλῳ κείρονται καὶ αἱ κόραι καὶ οἱ παῖδες οἱ Δηλίων·



Λαοδίκην· ἅμα δὲ αὐτῇσι |safeguard εἵνεκεν πέμψαι τοὺς

Ὑπερβορέους τῶν ἀστῶν ἄνδρας πέντε |escort, , τούτους  
|guide

οἱ νῦν Περφερέες καλέονται τιμὰς μεγάλας ἐν Δήλῳ

ἔχοντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῖσι Ὑπερβορέοισι τοὺς |send away

ὀπίσω οὐκ |go home , δεινὰ ποιευμένους εἰ σφέας αἰεὶ

|seize, understand, catch, ἔλλοντας μὴ |accept , οὕτω δὴ  
|overtake; (mp) happen

φέροντας ἐς τοὺς οὖρους τὰ ἱρὰ |tie to ἐν πυρῶν

|straw, τοὺς |adjacent |lay something on λεύοντας  
|stubble

|send, send ahead , ἔα ἀπὸ ἐωυτῶν ἐς ἄλλο ἔθνος. καὶ

ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω |send, send ahead ἀπικνέεσθαι λέγουσι ἐς

Δήλον. οἶδα δὲ αὐτὸς τούτοις τοῖσι ἱροῖσι τόδε ποιούμενον

|similar; , τὰς Θρηκίας καὶ τὰς Παιονίδας γυναῖκας,  
|useful

ἐπεὰν |rush; sacrifice, τέμδι τῇ βασιλείῃ, οὐκ ἄνευ πυρῶν

|straw, ἐχούσας τὰ ἱρά.  
|stubble

4.34

Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ταύτας οἶδα ποιεύσας· τῇσι δὲ

|girl, virgin ταύτησι τῇσι ἐξ Ὑπερβορέων τελευτησάσῃσι

ἐν Δήλῳ |shave, sever, raze; κόραι καὶ οἱ παῖδες οἱ Δηλίων·  
|devour, use up

Hyperoche and Laodike, and with them for their protection the Hyperboreans sent five men of their nation to attend them, those namely who are now called Perphereēs and have great honours paid to them in Delos. Since however the Hyperboreans found that those who were sent away did not return back, they were troubled to think that it would always befall them to send out and not to receive back; and so they bore the offerings to the borders of their land bound up in wheat straw, and laid a charge upon their neighbours, bidding them send these forward from themselves to another nation. These things then, they say, come to Delos being thus sent forward; and I know of my own knowledge that a thing is done which has resemblance to these offerings, namely that the women of Thrace and Paionia, when they sacrifice to Artemis “the Queen,” do not make their offerings without wheat straw.

#### 4.34

These I know do as I have said; and for those maidens from the Hyperboreans, who died in Delos, both the girls and the boys of the Delians cut off their hair:

*vocabulary***ἀγείρω** gather ~agora**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**ἀριστερός** left-hand**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**ἐλαία** olive, olive tree ~olive**ἐπονομάζω** to name**θρίξ** hair ~tresses**νησιώτης** -ου (m, 1) insular**οἰκήτωρ** inhabitant**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon**πλόκαμος** lock of hair**σῆμα** -τος (n, 3) mark, sign, grave mound ~semaphore**ὑμνέω** recite, commemorate**ὕμνος** song ~hymn**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry ~bear**φόρον** forum**φόρος** tribute, revenue

αἱ μὲν πρὸ γάμου πλόκαμον ἀποταμνόμεναι καὶ περὶ  
 ἄτρακτον εἰλίξασαι ἐπὶ τὸ σῆμα τιθείσι τὸ δὲ σῆμα ἐστὶ  
 ἔσω ἐς τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον ἐσιόντι ἀριστερῆς χειρός, ἐπιπέφυκε  
 δέ οἱ ἐλαίη, ὅσοι δὲ παῖδες τῶν Δηλίων, περὶ χλόην τινὰ  
 εἰλίζαντες τῶν τριχῶν τιθείσι καὶ οὗτοι ἐπὶ τὸ σῆμα.

## 4.35

Αὗται μὲν δὴ ταύτην τιμὴν ἔχουσι πρὸς τῶν Δήλου  
 οἰκητόρων. φασὶ δὲ οἱ αὐτοὶ οὗτοι καὶ τὴν Ἄργην τε  
 καὶ τὴν Ὠπιν εὐσας παρθένους ἐξ Ὑπερβορέων κατὰ  
 τοὺς αὐτοὺς τούτους ἀνθρώπους πορευομένας ἀπικέσθαι  
 ἐς Δῆλον ἔτι πρότερον Ὑπερόχης τε καὶ Λαοδίκης. ταύτας  
 μὲν νυν τῇ Εἰλειθυίῃ ἀποφερούσας ἀντὶ τοῦ ὠκυτόκου τὸν  
 ἐτάξαντο φόρον ἀπικέσθαι, τὴν δὲ Ἄργην τε καὶ τὴν Ὠπιν  
 ἅμα αὐτοῖσι θεοῖσι ἀπικέσθαι λέγουσι καὶ σφι τιμὰς ἄλλας  
 δεδόσθαι πρὸς σφέων· καὶ γὰρ ἀγείρειν σφι τὰς γυναῖκας  
 ἐπονομαζούσας τὰ οὐνόματα ἐν τῷ ὕμνῳ τὸν σφι Ὠλὴν  
 ἀνὴρ Δύκιος ἐποίησε, παρὰ δὲ σφέων μαθόντας νησιώτας  
 τε καὶ Ἴωνας ὑμνέειν Ὠπὶν τε καὶ Ἄργην ὀνομάζοντάς

αἱ μὲν πρὸ <sup>wed-</sup>ding, <sup>sex</sup> |lock of hair ἀποταμνόμεναι καὶ περὶ  
 ἄτρακτον εἰλίσσασαι ἐπὶ τὸ <sup>mark, sign,</sup>grave mound τὸ δὲ <sup>mark, sign,</sup>grave mound  
 ἔσω ἐς τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον |go in |left-hand χειρός, ἐπιπέφυκε  
 δέ οἱ |olive , ὅσοι δὲ παῖδες τῶν Δηλίων, περὶ χλόην τινὰ  
 εἰλίσσαντες τῶν |hair τιθείσι καὶ οὔτοι ἐπὶ τὸ <sup>mark, sign,</sup>grave mound

4.35

Αὐται μὲν δὴ ταύτην τιμὴν ἔχουσι πρὸς τῶν Δήλου  
 |inhabitant . φασὶ δὲ οἱ αὐτοὶ οὔτοι καὶ τὴν Ἄργην τε  
 καὶ τὴν Ὠπιν εὐσας |girl, virgin ἐξ Ὑπερβορέων κατὰ  
 τοὺς αὐτοὺς τούτους ἀνθρώπους πορευομένας ἀπικέσθαι  
 ἐς Δῆλον ἔτι πρότερον Ὑπερόχης τε καὶ Λαοδίκης. ταύτας  
 μὲν νυν τῇ Εἰλειθυίῃ |carry off ἀντὶ τοῦ ὠκυτόκου τὸν  
 ἐτάξαντο φόρον ἀπικέσθαι, τὴν δὲ Ἄργην τε καὶ τὴν Ὠπιν  
 ἅμα αὐτοῖσι θεοῖσι ἀπικέσθαι λέγουσι καὶ σφι τιμὰς ἄλλας  
 δεδόσθαι πρὸς σφέων· καὶ γὰρ |gather σφι τὰς γυναῖκας  
 |to name τὰ οὐνόματα ἐν τῷ |song τόν σφι Ὠλὴν  
 ἀνὴρ Λύκιος ἐποίησε, παρὰ δὲ σφέων μαθόντας |insular  
 τε καὶ Ἴωνας |recite, <sup>commemorate</sup> τε καὶ Ἄργην ὀνομάζοντάς

the former before marriage cut off a lock and having wound it round a spindle lay it upon the tomb (now the tomb is on the left hand as one goes into the temple of Artemis, and over it grows an olive-tree), and all the boys of the Delians wind some of their hair about a green shoot of some tree, and they also place it upon the tomb.

#### 4.35

The maidens, I say, have this honour paid them by the dwellers in Delos: and the same people say that Arge and Opis also, being maidens, came to Delos, passing from the Hyperboreans by the same nations which have been mentioned, even before Hyperoche and Laodike. These last, they say, came bearing for Eileithuia the tribute which they had laid upon themselves for the speedy birth, but Arge and Opis came with the divinities themselves, and other honours have been assigned to them by the people of Delos: for the women, they say, collect for them, naming them by their names in the hymn which Olen a man of Lykia composed in their honour; and both the natives of the other islands and the Ionians have learnt from them

*vocabulary***ἀγείρω** gather ~agora**ἀγχοτάτω** nearest**ἀείδω** sing**ἀναισιμώω** spend, use up**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe

~hegemony

**ἐπιβάλλω** throw upon, head for

~ballistic

**θήκη** chest, grave**καταγίζω** devote, dedicate**κυκλωτερός** rounded (by wear) ~cycle**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**μηρία** -ου (n, 2) thigh bones wrapped  
in fat**οἰστός** arrow**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**πέριξ** all around**περίοδος** picket, circuit**περιφέρω** carry around**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**σιτέομαι** (i) eat ~parasite**σποδός** (f) embers; ashes**ὕμνος** song ~hymn

τε καὶ ἀγείροντας οὗτος δὲ ὁ Ὀλὴν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους  
 τοὺς παλαιούς ὕμνους ἐποίησε ἐκ Λυκίης ἐλθὼν τοὺς  
 αἰδομένους ἐν Δήλῳ, καὶ τῶν μηρίων καταγιζομένων ἐπὶ  
 τῷ βωμῷ τὴν σποδὸν ταύτην ἐπὶ τὴν θήκην τῆς Ὠπιός  
 τε καὶ Ἀργῆς ἀναισιμοῦσθαι ἐπιβαλλομένην. ἡ δὲ θήκη  
 αὐτέων ἐστὶ ὅπισθε τοῦ Ἀρτεμισίου, πρὸς ἡῷ τετραμμένη,  
 ἀγχοτάτω τοῦ Κηίων ἱστυητορίου.

#### 4.36

Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν Ὑπερβορέων πέρι εἰρήσθω· τὸν γὰρ  
 περὶ Ἀβάριος λόγον τοῦ λεγομένου εἶναι Ὑπερβορέου  
 οὐ λέγω, ὥς τὸν ὀιστὸν περιέφερε κατὰ πᾶσαν  
 γῆν οὐδὲν σιτεόμενος. εἰ δὲ εἰσι ὑπερβόρειοι τινὲς  
 ἄνθρωποι, εἰσὶ καὶ ὑπερνότιοι ἄλλοι. γελῶ δὲ ὀρέων  
 γῆς περιόδους γράψαντας πολλοὺς ἤδη καὶ οὐδένα  
 νοονεχόντως ἐξηγησάμενον· οἱ Ὀκεανὸν τε ῥέοντα  
 γράφουσι πέριξ τὴν γῆν ἐοῦσαν κυκλοτερέα ὥς ἀπὸ  
 τόρνου, καὶ τὴν Ἀσίην τῇ Εὐρώπῃ ποιούντων ἴσην. ἐν  
 ὀλίγοις γὰρ ἐγὼ δηλώσω μέγαθός τε ἐκάστης αὐτέων καὶ



τε καὶ |gather οὗτος δὲ ὁ Ὡλήν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους  
 τοὺς παλαιούς |song ἐποίησε ἐκ Λυκίης ἐλθὼν τοὺς  
 |sing ἐν Δήλῳ, καὶ τῶν |thigh |devote, dedicate ἐπὶ  
 τῷ |altar τὴν |embers; ταύτην ἐπὶ τὴν |chest, τῆς Ὡπιδίος  
 |ashes |grave  
 τε καὶ Ἀργεῖς |spend, use up |throw upon ἡ δὲ |chest,  
 |grave  
 αὐτέων ἐστὶ ὅπισθε τοῦ Ἀρτεμισίου, πρὸς ἣν τετραμμένη,  
 |nearest τοῦ Κηίων ἱστορητορίου.

## 4.36

Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν Ὑπερβορέων πέρι εἰρήσθω· τὸν γὰρ  
 περὶ Ἀβάριος λόγον τοῦ λεγομένου εἶναι Ὑπερβορέου  
 οὐ λέγω, ὥς τὸν |arrow |carry κατὰ πᾶσαν  
 |around  
 γῆν οὐδὲν σιτεόμενος. εἰ δὲ εἰσι ὑπερβόρειοι τινὲς  
 ἄνθρωποι, εἰσὶ καὶ ὑπερνότιοι ἄλλοι. γελῶ δὲ ὀρέων  
 γῆς |picket, γράψαντας πολλοὺς ἤδη καὶ οὐδένα  
 |circuit  
 νοονεχόντως |lead forth; set οἱ Ὡκεανόν τε |flow  
 |out, describe  
 γράφουσι |all around, γῆν ἐοῦσαν |rounded ὥς ἀπὸ  
 τόρνου, καὶ τὴν Ἀσίην τῇ Εὐρώπῃ ποιούντων ἴσην. ἐν  
 ὀλίγοις γὰρ ἐγὼ δηλώσω |tall, big τε ἐκάστης αὐτέων καὶ

to sing hymns naming Opis and Arge and collecting:— now this Olen came from Lukia and composed also the other ancient hymns which are sung in Delos:— and moreover they say that when the thighs of the victim are consumed upon the altar, the ashes of them are used to cast upon the grave of Opis and Arge. Now their grave is behind the temple of Artemis, turned towards the East, close to the banqueting hall of the Keïeans.

#### 4.36

Let this suffice which has been said of the Hyperboreans; for the tale of Abaris, who is reported to have been a Hyperborean, I do not tell, namely how he carried the arrow about all over the earth, eating no food. If however there are any Hyperboreans, it follows that there are also Hypernotians; and I laugh when I see that, though many before this have drawn maps of the Earth, yet no one has set the matter forth in an intelligent way; seeing that they draw Ocean flowing round the Earth, which is circular exactly as if drawn with compasses, and they make Asia equal in size to Europe. In a few words I shall declare the size of each division

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκτῃ** beach; cereal grain  
**ἀπηγέομαι** lead; tell, relate  
**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
**διφάσιος** of two kinds  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,

arrive; be proper  
**κατατείνω** stretch out  
**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf  
**κολπώω** swell, fold  
**νοτία** rain shower  
**νότιος** flowing; south  
**νότος** south, south wind  
**παρατείνω** extend, lengthen, torture  
**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**τείνω** stretch, tend ~tense  
**ὑπεροικέω** dwell above or beyond

οἷη τις ἐστὶ ἐς γραφὴν ἐκάστη.

#### 4.37

Πέρσαι οἰκέουσι κατήκοντες ἐπὶ τὴν νοτίην θάλασσαν τὴν, Ἐρυθρὴν καλεομένην, τούτων δὲ ὑπεροικέουσι πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον Μῆδοι, Μήδων δὲ Σάσπειρες, Σασπείρων δὲ Κόλχοι κατήκοντες ἐπὶ τὴν βορηίην θάλασσαν, ἐς τὴν Φᾶσις ποταμὸς ἐκδιδοί. ταῦτα τέσσερα ἔθνεα οἰκέει ἐκ θαλάσσης ἐς θάλασσαν.

#### 4.38

Ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης ἀκταὶ διφάσιαι ἀπ' αὐτῆς κατατείνουσι ἐς θάλασσαν, τὰς ἐγὼ ἀπηγῆσομαι· ἔνθεν μὲν ἢ ἀκτὴ ἢ ἐτέρη τὰ πρὸς βορέην ἀπὸ Φάσιος ἀρξαμένη παρατέταται ἐς θάλασσαν παρά τε τὸν Πόντον καὶ τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον μέχρι Σιγείου τοῦ Τρωικοῦ· τὰ δὲ πρὸς νότου ἢ αὐτὴ αὕτη ἀκτὴ ἀπὸ τοῦ Μυριανδικοῦ κόλπου τοῦ πρὸς Φοινίκη κειμένου τείνει τὰ ἐς θάλασσαν μέχρι Τριοπίου ἄκρης. οἰκέει δὲ ἐν τῇ ἀκτῇ ταύτῃ ἔθνεα

οἷη τις ἐστὶ ἐς γραφὴν ἐκάστη.

4.37

Πέρσαι οἰκέουσι |come down, (a`day) τὸ ὁ νοτίνην θάλασσαν  
|fall, arrive; be proper  
τὴν, Ἐρυθρὴν καλεομένην, τούτων δὲ |dwell above or πρὸς  
|beyond  
|north, ἄνεμον Μῆδοι, Μήδων δὲ Σάσπειρες, Σασπείρων  
|north  
|wind  
οὐ Κόλχοι |come down, (a`day) τὸ βορηίνην θάλασσαν, ἐς τὴν  
|fall, arrive; be proper  
Φᾶσις ποταμὸς |hand over ταῦτα τέσσερα ἔθνεα οἰκέει ἐκ  
θαλάσσης ἐς θάλασσαν.

4.38

|thence δὲ τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης |beach; |of two kinds... αὐτῆς  
|grain  
|stretch out ἐς θάλασσαν, τὰς ἐγὼ |lead; tell, relate ἔνθεν  
μὲν ἢ |beach; ἢ ἐτέρη τὰ πρὸς |north, ἀπὸ Φάσιος ἀρξαμένη  
|grain |north  
|extend, lengthen, θάλασσαν |wind  
|torture παρά τε τὸν Πόντον καὶ τὸν  
Ἑλλήσποντον μέχρι Σιγείου τοῦ Τρωικοῦ· τὰ δὲ πρὸς  
|south, ἢ αὐτὴ αὕτη |beach; ἰπὸ τοῦ Μυριανδικοῦ κόλπου  
|south |grain  
|wind  
τοῦ πρὸς Φοινίκη κειμένου |stretch, tend θάλασσαν μέχρι  
Τριοπίου |at the edge, extreme τῇ |beach; αὕτη ἔθνεα  
|grain

and of what nature it is as regards outline.

**4.37**

The Persians inhabit Asia extending to the Southern Sea, which is called the Erythraian; and above these towards the North Wind dwell the Medes, and above the Medes the Saspeirians, and above the Saspeirians the Colchians, extending to the Northern Sea, into which the river Phasis runs. These four nations inhabit from sea to sea.

**4.38**

From them Westwards two peninsulas stretch out from Asia into the sea, and these I will describe. The first peninsula on the one of its sides, that is the Northern, stretches along beginning from the Phasis and extending to the sea, going along the Pontus and the Hellespont as far as Sigeion in the land of Troy; and on the Southern side the same peninsula stretches from the Myriandrian gulf, which lies near Phenicia, in the direction of the sea as far as the headland Triopion; and in this peninsula dwell thirty

*vocabulary*

**ἄκτῃ** beach; cereal grain  
**ἀνατέλλω** cause to grow ~apostle  
**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal  
**εἰσάγω** lead in ~demagogue  
**ἐκδέχομαι** receive; succeed to a position  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**θάλλω** bloom, flourish, abound

~thallium

**κατύπερθεν** above, from above  
**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf  
**λήγω** cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease  
 ~lax  
**παράκειμαι** be at hand, ready  
**παρατείνω** extend, lengthen, torture  
**παρήκω** lie along; of time: to be past  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πλατύς** extensive, wide  
**χωρός** place ~heir

ἀνθρώπων τριήκοντα.

#### 4.39

Αὕτη μὲν νυν ἡ ἑτέρα τῶν ἀκτέων, ἡ δὲ δὴ ἑτέρα ἀπὸ Περσέων ἀρξαμένη παρατέταται ἐς τὴν Ἐρυθρὴν θάλασσαν, ἥ τε Περσικὴ καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἐκδεκομένη ἡ Ἀσσυρίη καὶ ἀπὸ Ἀσσυρίης ἡ Ἀραβίη· λήγει δὲ αὕτη, οὐ λήγουσα εἰ μὴ νόμῳ, ἐς τὸν κόλπον τὸν Ἀράβιον, ἐς τὸν Δαρεῖος ἐκ τοῦ Νείλου διώρυχα ἐσήγαγε. μέχρι μὲν νυν Φοινίκης ἀπὸ Περσέων χώρος πλατὺς καὶ πολλός ἐστι· τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ Φοινίκης παρήκει διὰ τῆσδε τῆς θαλάσσης ἡ ἀκτὴ αὕτη παρά τε Συρίην τὴν Παλαιστίνην καὶ Αἴγυπτον, ἐς τὴν τελευτᾷ· ἐν τῇ ἔθνεα ἐστὶ τρία μούνα.

#### 4.40

Ταῦτα μὲν ἀπὸ Περσέων τὰ πρὸς ἐσπέρην τῆς Ἀσίας ἔχοντα ἐστί· τὰ δὲ κατύπερθε Περσέων καὶ Μήδων καὶ Σασπείρων καὶ Κόλχων, τὰ πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ ἥλιον ἀνατέλλοντα, ἔνθεν μὲν ἡ Ἐρυθρὴ παρήκει θάλασσα, πρὸς



ἀνθρώπων τριήκοντα.

4.39

Αὕτη μέν νυν ἡ ἑτέρα τῶν ἀκτέων, ἡ δὲ δὴ ἑτέρα  
 ἀπὸ Περσέων ἀρξαμένη |extend, lengthen, | τὴν Ἐρυθρὴν  
 |torture  
 θάλασσαν, ἣ τε Περσικὴ καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης |receive; succeed  
 |to a position  
 Ἀσσυρίῃ καὶ ἀπὸ Ἀσσυρίης ἡ Ἀραβίῃ· |cease δὲ αὕτη, οὐ  
 |cease εἰ μὴ νόμῳ, ἐς τὸν |bosom, lap- | Ἀράβιον, ἐς τὸν  
 |fold; gulf  
 Δαρεῖος ἐκ τοῦ Νείλου |ditch, |lead in | μέχρι μέν νυν  
 |canal  
 Φοινίκης ἀπὸ Περσέων |place |extensive, wide ἄλλός ἐστι· τὸ  
 δὲ ἀπὸ Φοινίκης παρήκει διὰ τῆσδε τῆς θαλάσσης ἡ |beach;  
 |grain  
 αὕτη παρά τε Συρίην τὴν Παλαιστίνην καὶ Αἴγυπτον, ἐς  
 τὴν τελευτᾷ· ἐν τῇ ἔθνεα ἐστὶ τρία μούνα.

4.40

Ταῦτα μὲν ἀπὸ Περσέων τὰ πρὸς ἐσπέρην τῆς Ἀσίας  
 ἔχοντα ἐστί· τὰ δὲ |above, from above· ἑών καὶ Μήδων  
 καὶ Σασπείρων καὶ Κόλχων, τὰ πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ ἥλιον  
 |cause to grow , ἔνθεν μὲν ἡ Ἐρυθρὴ παρήκει |bloom, flour- | ῥὸς  
 |ish, abound

races of men.

**4.39**

This then is one of the peninsulas, and the other beginning from the land of the Persians stretches along to the Erythraian Sea, including Persia and next after it Assyria, and Arabia after Assyria: and this ends, or rather is commonly supposed to end, at the Arabian gulf, into which Dareios conducted a channel from the Nile. Now in the line stretching to Phenicia from the land of the Persians the land is broad and the space abundant, but after Phenicia this peninsula goes by the shore of our Sea along Palestine, Syria, and Egypt, where it ends; and in it there are three nations only.

**4.40**

These are the parts of Asia which tend towards the West from the Persian land; but as to those which lie beyond the Persians and Medes and Saspeirians and Colchians towards the East and the sunrising, on one side the Erythraian Sea runs along by them,

*vocabulary***ἄκτῃ** beach; cereal grain**ἄράσσω** smash**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**διαίρῃω** divide, distinguish, distribute**διουρίζω** delimit; determine**ἐκδέχομαι** receive; succeed to a position**ἐρημος** empty**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θάλλω** bloom, flourish, abound  
~thallium**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature**μυριάς** -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad**ὄον** οὐ type of fruit**ὄργυια** fathom, arm's length ~reach**ὄργυιά** fathom, arm's length**παράκειμαι** be at hand, ready**παρήκω** lie along; of time: to be past**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into contact with**πλατύς** extensive, wide**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**ῥοά** pl: waters of a river ~rheostat**ῥόος** ῥοῦ stream, flow, current  
~rheostat**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
meet, fall in with ~ballistic**χίλιοι** (ῑ) thousand ~kilo-

βορέω δὲ ἡ Κασπίη τε θάλασσα καὶ ὁ Ἀράξης ποταμός,  
 ῥέων πρὸς ἥλιον ἀνίσχοντα. μέχρι δὲ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς οἰκέεται  
 Ἀσίη· τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔρημος ἤδη τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ, οὐδὲ  
 ἔχει οὐδεὶς φράσαι οἶον δὴ τι ἐστί.

## 4.41

Τοιαύτη μὲν καὶ τοσαύτη ἡ Ἀσίη ἐστί, ἡ δὲ Λιβύη ἐν  
 τῇ ἀκτῇ τῇ ἐτέρῃ ἐστί· ἀπὸ γὰρ Αἰγύπτου Λιβύη ἤδη  
 ἐκδέκεται. κατὰ μὲν νυν Αἴγυπτον ἡ ἀκτὴ αὕτη στευνή  
 ἐστι· ἀπὸ γὰρ τῆσδε τῆς θαλάσσης ἐς τὴν Ἐρυθρὴν  
 θάλασσαν δέκα μυριάδες εἰσὶ ὀργυιέων, αὗται δ' ἂν εἶεν  
 χίλιοι στάδιοι· τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ στεينوῦ τούτου κάρτα  
 πλατέα τυγχάνει ἐοῦσα ἡ ἀκτὴ ἣτις Λιβύη κέκληται.

## 4.42

Θωμάζω ὦν τῶν διουρισάντων καὶ διελόντων Λιβύην τε  
 καὶ Ἀσίην καὶ Εὐρώπην· οὐ γὰρ σμικρὰ τὰ διαφέροντα  
 αὐτέων ἐστί· μήκει μὲν γὰρ παρ' ἀμφοτέρας παρήκει ἡ  
 Εὐρώπη, εὖρεος δὲ πέρι οὐδὲ συμβάλλειν ἀξίη

<sup>|north,</sup> δὲ ἡ Κασπία τε <sup>|bloom, flourish,|smash</sup> ποταμός,  
<sup>|north</sup>  
<sup>|wind</sup> πρὸς ἥλιον ἀνίσχοντα. μέχρι δὲ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς οἰκέεται  
 Ἀσίη· τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔρημος ἤδη τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ, οὐδὲ  
 ἔχει οὐδεὶς φράσαι οἶον δὴ τι ἐστί.

## 4.41

Τοιαύτη μὲν καὶ τοσαύτη ἡ Ἀσίη ἐστί, ἡ δὲ Λιβύη ἐν  
 τῇ <sup>|beach; grain</sup> ἑτέρῃ ἐστί· ἀπὸ γὰρ Αἰγύπτου Λιβύη ἤδη  
<sup>|receive; succeed to a position</sup> τὰ μὲν νυν Αἴγυπτον ἡ <sup>|beach; grain</sup> αὕτη στευνή  
 ἐστι· ἀπὸ γὰρ τῆσδε τῆς θαλάσσης ἐς τὴν Ἐρυθρὴν  
 θάλασσαν δέκα <sup>|countless, myriad</sup> εἰσὶ ὀργυιῶν, αὗται δ' ἂν εἶεν  
 χίλιοι στάδιοι· τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ στεينوῦ τούτου <sup>|very much</sup>  
 πλατέα τυγχάνει εὐῶσα ἡ <sup>|beach; grain</sup> ἵτις Λιβύη κέκληται.

## 4.42

Θωμάζω ὦν τῶν <sup>|delimit; determine</sup> καὶ <sup>|divide, distinguish,|guish, distribute</sup> ἑνὴν τε  
 καὶ Ἀσίην καὶ Εὐρώπην· οὐ γὰρ σμικρὰ τὰ διαφέροντα  
 αὐτέων ἐστί· <sup>|length, stature</sup> μὲν γὰρ παρ' ἀμφοτέρας παρήκει ἡ  
 Εὐρώπη, <sup>|width; (caps) the east wind</sup> ἥρι οὐδὲ <sup>|pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with</sup>

and on the North both the Caspian Sea and the river Araxes, which flows towards the rising sun: and Asia is inhabited as far as the Indian land; but from this onwards towards the East it becomes desert, nor can any one say what manner of land it is.

**4.41**

Such and so large is Asia: and Libya is included in the second peninsula; for after Egypt Libya succeeds at once. Now about Egypt this peninsula is narrow, for from our Sea to the Erythraian Sea is a distance there of ten myriads of fathoms, which would amount to a thousand furlongs; but after this narrow part, the portion of the peninsula which is called Libya is, as it chances, extremely broad.

**4.42**

I wonder then at those who have parted off and divided the world into Libya, Asia, and Europe, since the difference between these is not small; for in length Europe extends along by both, while in breadth it is clear to me that it is beyond comparison

*vocabulary*

**ἄμνητος** (ἄ) harvest  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**διεξέρχομαι** go through  
**διέχω** pass through; be apart  
**διῶρυξ** -χος (f) ditch, canal  
**ἐκάστοτε** each time  
**ἐκπλέω** sail away ~float  
**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command  
**εὖς** good, brave, noble  
**θερίζω** reap, harvest  
**κάμπτω** bend, bend in exhaustion

**καταδείκνυμι** (ῑ) discover, make known  
**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf  
**νοτία** rain shower  
**νότιος** flowing; south  
**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit  
**ὀρύσσω** dig  
**οὐρίζω** divide; ordain, define  
**περιπλώω** sail around  
**περίρρυτος** sea-girt ~rheostat  
**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora  
**στήλη** post, column

φαίνεται μοι εἶναι. Λιβύη μὲν γὰρ δηλοῖ ἐωυτὴν ἐοῦσα περίρρυτος, πλὴν ὅσον αὐτῆς πρὸς τὴν Ἀσίην οὐρίζει, Νεκῶ τοῦ Αἰγυπτίων βασιλέος πρώτου τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν καταδέξαντος· ὃς ἐπέιτε τὴν διώρυχα ἐπαύσατο ὀρύσσων τὴν ἐκ τοῦ Νείλου διέχουσαν ἐς τὸν Ἀράβιον κόλπον, ἀπέπεμψε Φοίνικας ἄνδρας πλοίοισι, ἐντειλάμενος ἐς τὸ ὀπίσω δι' Ἡρακλέων στηλέων ἐκπλέειν ἕως ἐς τὴν βορήνῃν θάλασσαν καὶ οὕτω ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἀπικνέεσθαι. ὀρμηθέντες ὦν οἱ Φοίνικες ἐκ τῆς Ἐρυθρῆς θαλάσσης ἔπλεον τὴν νοτίην θάλασσαν· ὅκως δὲ γίνοιτο φθινόπωρον προσσχόντες ἂν σπείρεσκον τὴν γῆν, ἵνα ἐκάστοτε τῆς Λιβύης πλέοντες γινοίατο, καὶ μένεσκον τὸν ἄμητον· θερίσαντες δ' ἂν τὸν σῖτον ἔπλεον, ὥστε δύο ἐτέων διεξελθόντων τρίτῳ ἔτεϊ κάμψαντες Ἡρακλέας στήλας ἀπίκοντο ἐς Αἴγυπτον. καὶ ἔλεγον ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ πιστά, ἄλλω δὲ δὴ τεῶ, ὡς περιπλώοντες τὴν Λιβύην τὸν ἥλιον ἔσχον ἐς τὰ δεξιὰ.



φαίνεται μοι εἶναι. Λιβύη μὲν γὰρ δηλοῖ ἐωυτὴν ἐοῦσα

|sea-girt , πλὴν ὅσον αὐτῆς πρὸς τὴν Ἀσίην |divide; , or-  
|dain, define

Νεκῶ τοῦ Αἰγυπτίων βασιλέος πρώτου τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν

|discover, make known' εἴτε τὴν |ditch, ἐπαύσατο |dig  
|canal

τὴν ἐκ τοῦ Νείλου |pass through; τὸν Ἀράβιον |bosom, lap-  
|be apart |fold; gulf

|send away Φοίνικας ἄνδρας πλοίοισι, ἐντειλάμενος ἐς

τὸ ὀπίσω δι' Ἡρακλέων |post, |sail away ἕως ἐς τὴν  
|column

βορηὴν θάλασσαν καὶ οὕτω ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἀπικνέεσθαι.

ὀρμηθέντες ὧν οἱ Φοίνικες ἐκ τῆς Ἐρυθρῆς θαλάσσης

ἔπλεον τὴν νοτὶν θάλασσαν· ὅπως δὲ γίνοιτο φθινόπωρον

προσσχόντες ἂν |sow τὴν γῆν, ἵνα |each time τῆς

Λιβύης πλέοντες γινοίατο, καὶ μένεσκον τὸν |harvest

|reap, harvest δ' ἂν τὸν σῖτον ἔπλεον, ὥστε δύο ἐτέων

|go through τρίτῳ ἔτεϊ |bend, bend in Ἡρακλέας |post,  
|exhaustion |column

ἀπίκοντο ἐς Αἴγυπτον. καὶ ἔλεγον ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ πιστά,

ἄλλω δὲ δὴ τεω, ὥς |sail around τὴν Λιβύην τὸν ἥλιον

ἔσχον ἐς τὰ δεξιά.

larger; for Libya furnishes proofs about itself that it is surrounded by sea, except so much of it as borders upon Asia; and this fact was shown by Necos king of the Egyptians first of all those about whom we have knowledge. He when he had ceased digging the channel which goes through from the Nile to the Arabian gulf, sent Phenicians with ships, bidding them sail and come back through the Pillars of Heracles to the Northern Sea and so to Egypt. The Phenicians therefore set forth from the Erythraian Sea and sailed through the Southern Sea; and when autumn came, they would put to shore and sow the land, wherever in Libya they might happen to be as they sailed, and then they waited for the harvest: and having reaped the corn they would sail on, so that after two years had elapsed, in the third year they turned through the Pillars of Heracles and arrived again in Egypt. And they reported a thing which I cannot believe, but another man may, namely that in sailing round Libya they had the sun on their right hand.

*vocabulary*

ἀδελφεή sister

ἄθλον ἀέθλου prize ~athlete

ἄθλος ἀέθλου contest, trial ~athlete

ἀκρωτήριο cape, extremity

ἀνασκολοπίζω impale

βιάω use force against, overcome

ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near

ἐπιτελέω complete; do a religious duty

ἐρημία wilderness, solitude

ζημία loss, penalty ~zeal

κάμπτω bend, bend in exhaustion

Καρχηδόνιος Carthaginian

κόλπος bosom, lap-fold; gulf

μεσαμβρία midday; the south

μῆκος -ους (n, 3) length, stature

ναύτης -ου (m, 1) sailor ~navy

παραιτέομαι entreat; beg for; decline

παρθένος (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon

περάω cross over, drive across; sell as a slave ~pierce

περιπλέω sail around ~float

περιπλώω sail around

πλόος -ῶ course, voyage ~float

στήλη post, column

συγχωρέω accede, concede

φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

## 4.43

Οὕτω μὲν αὕτη ἐγνώσθη τὸ πρῶτον, μετὰ δὲ Καρχηδόνιοι  
 εἰσὶ οἱ λέγοντες· ἐπεὶ Σατάσπης γε ὁ Τεάσπιος ἀνὴρ  
 Ἀχαιμενίδης οὐ περιέπλωσε Λιβύην, ἐπ' αὐτὸ τοῦτο  
 πεμφθείς, ἀλλὰ δείσας τό τε μῆκος τοῦ πλόου καὶ  
 τὴν ἐρημίην ἀπῆλθε ὀπίσω, οὐδ' ἐπετέλεσε τὸν ἐπέταξε  
 οἱ ἢ μήτηρ ἄεθλον. θυγατέρα γὰρ Ζωπύρου τοῦ  
 Μεγαβύζου ἐβίησατο παρθένον· ἔπειτα μέλλοντος αὐτοῦ  
 διὰ ταύτην τὴν αἰτίην ἀνασκολοπιεῖσθαι ὑπὸ Χέρξεω  
 βασιλέος, ἢ μήτηρ τοῦ Σατάσπεος ἐοῦσα Δαρείου ἀδελφεῇ  
 παραιτήσατο, φᾶσά οἱ αὕτη μέζω ζημίην ἐπιθήσειν ἢ περ  
 ἐκείνον· Λιβύην γάρ οἱ ἀνάγκην ἔσεσθαι περιπλώειν, ἐς  
 ὃ ἂν ἀπίκηται περιπλέων αὐτὴν ἐς τὸν Ἀράβιον κόλπον.  
 συγχωρήσαντος δὲ Χέρξεω ἐπὶ τούτοισι, ὁ Σατάσπης  
 ἀπικόμενος ἐς Αἴγυπτον καὶ λαβὼν νέα τε καὶ ναύτας  
 παρὰ τούτων ἔπλεε ἐπὶ Ἡρακλέας στήλας· διεκπλώσας  
 δὲ καὶ κάμψας τὸ ἀκρωτήριον τῆς Λιβύης τῷ οὔνομα  
 Σολόεις ἐστί, ἔπλεε πρὸς μεσαμβρίην· περήσας δὲ

4.43

Οὕτω μὲν αὕτη ἐγνώσθη τὸ πρῶτον, μετὰ δὲ Καρχηδόνιοι  
 εἰσὶ οἱ λέγοντες· ἐπεὶ Σατάσπης γε ὁ Τεάσπιος ἀνὴρ  
 Ἀχαιμενίδης οὐ περιέπλωσε Λιβύην, ἐπ' αὐτὸ τοῦτο  
 πεμφθείς, ἀλλὰ δείσας τό τε 

length,	τοῦ	course,
stature		voyage

  
 τὴν 

wilderness,	τῇ	λθε	ὀπίσω,	οὐδ'	complete; do a re-	enjoin;
solitude					ligious duty	place

  
 οἱ ἢ μήτηρ ἄεθλον. θυγατέρα γὰρ Ζωπύρου τοῦ  
 Μεγαβύζου 

use	force	girl, virgin
against,		
overcome		

 ἔπειτα μέλλοντος αὐτοῦ  
 διὰ ταύτην 

την	αἰτίην	impale
-----	--------	--------

 ὑπὸ Χέρξεω  
 βασιλέος, ἢ μήτηρ τοῦ Σατάσπεος εὐῶσα Δαρείου 

sister
--------

entreat; beg for;	produce, ...	τὴν μέζω	loss,	ἐπιθήσειν ἢ περ
decline	beget; clasp		penalty	

  
 ἐκεῖνον· Λιβύην γάρ οἱ ἀνάγκην ἔσεσθαι 

sail around	, ἐς
-------------	------

  
 ὃ ἂν ἀπίκηται 

sail around	αὐτὴν ἐς τὸν Ἀράβιον	bosom, lap-
		fold; gulf

accede, concede	δὲ Χέρξεω ἐπὶ τούτοισι, ὁ Σατάσπης
-----------------	------------------------------------

  
 ἀπικόμενος ἐς Αἴγυπτον καὶ λαβὼν νέα τε καὶ 

sailor
--------

  
 παρὰ τούτων ἔπλεε ἐπὶ Ἡρακλέας 

post,	διεκπλώσας
column	

  
 δὲ καὶ 

bend, bend 'in	cape, extremity	ἥς Λιβύης τῷ οὖνομα
exhaustion		

  
 Σολόεις ἐστί, ἔπλεε πρὸς 

midday;	the	cross; sell δὲ
south		as a slave

## 4.43

Thus was this country first known to be what it is, and after this it is the Carthaginians who make report of it; for as to Sataspes the son of Teaspis the Achaimenid, he did not sail round Libya, though he was sent for this very purpose, but was struck with fear by the length of the voyage and the desolate nature of the land, and so returned back and did not accomplish the task which his mother laid upon him. For this man had outraged a daughter of Zopyros the son of Megabyzos, a virgin; and then when he was about to be impaled by order of king Xerxes for this offence, the mother of Sataspes, who was a sister of Dareios, entreated for his life, saying that she would herself lay upon him a greater penalty than Xerxes; for he should be compelled (she said) to sail round Libya, until in sailing round it he came to the Arabian gulf. So then Xerxes having agreed upon these terms, Sataspes went to Egypt, and obtaining a ship and sailors from the Egyptians, he sailed to the Pillars of Heracles; and having sailed through them and turned the point of Libya which is called the promontory of Soloeis, he sailed on towards the South. Then after he had passed over

*vocabulary*

**ἄθλον** ἄέθλου prize ~athlete  
**ἄθλος** ἄέθλου contest, trial ~athlete  
**ἀνασκολοπίζω** impale  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float  
**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course  
 ~atrophy  
**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning  
 ~oligarch  
**βρωτός** food, meat  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**διαχρέομαι** use habitually; lend out;  
 reveal  
**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to  
 mind ~ion  
**ἐκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in  
 too easily

**ἐνίσχω** hold inside  
**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka  
**ἐπιλήθω** mp: forget ~Lethe  
**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty  
**ἐπιτιμάω** honor, blame  
**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest  
**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch  
**κατάγω** lead down/home; land  
 ~demagogue  
**παντελής** complete, absolute  
**παραπλέω** sail past ~float  
**περιπλώω** sail around  
**προβαίνω** surpass, continue ~basis  
**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far  
**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon  
**φοινικήιος** of palm trees

θάλασσαν πολλήν ἐν πολλοῖσι μῆσί, ἐπεῖτε τοῦ πλεῖνος αἰεὶ ἔδεε, ἀποστρέψας ὀπίσω ἀπέπλεε ἐς Αἴγυπτον. ἐκ δὲ ταύτης ἀπικόμενος παρὰ βασιλέα Χέρξεα ἔλεγε φὰς τὰ προσωτάτω ἀνθρώπους μικροὺς παραπλέειν ἐσθῆτι φοινικῆν διαχρεωμένους, οἳ ὅκως σφεῖς καταγοίατο τῇ νηὶ φεύγεσκον πρὸς τὰ ὄρεα λείποντες τὰς πόλεις· αὐτοὶ δὲ ἀδικέειν οὐδὲν ἐσιόντες, βρωτὰ δὲ μούνα ἐξ αὐτέων λαμβάνειν. τοῦ δὲ μὴ περιπλῶσαι Λιβύην παντελέως αἴτιον τόδε ἔλεγε, τὸ πλοῖον τὸ πρόσω οὐ δυνατόν ἔτι εἶναι προβαίνειν ἀλλ' ἐνίσχεσθαι. Χέρξης δὲ οὗ οἱ συγγινώσκων λέγειν ἀληθέα οὐκ ἐπιτελέσαντά τε τὸν προκείμενον ἄεθλον ἀνεσκολόπισε, τὴν ἀρχαίην δίκην ἐπιτιμῶν. τούτου δὲ τοῦ Σατάσπεος εὐνοῦχος ἀπέδρη ἐς Σάμον, ἐπεῖτε ἐπύθετο τάχιστα τὸν δεσπότηα τετελευτηκότα, ἔχων χρήματα μεγάλα, τὰ Σάμιος ἀνὴρ κατέσχε, τοῦ ἐπιστάμενος τὸ οὔνομα ἐκὼν ἐπιλήθομαι.

## 4.44

Τῆς δὲ Ἀσίης τὰ πολλὰ ὑπὸ Δαρείου ἐξευρέθη, ὅς



θάλασσαν πολλήν ἐν πολλοῖσι μῆσι, ἐπεῖτε τοῦ πλεῦνος  
αἰὲ ἔδεε, |turn back      ὀπίσω |sail away ἐς Αἴγυπτον. ἐκ  
δὲ ταύτης ἀπικόμενος παρὰ βασιλέα Χέρξεα ἔλεγε φὰς  
τὰ προσωτάτω ἀνθρώπους μικροὺς |sail past      |clothes  
|of palm|use habitually; οἷ ὅκως σφεῖς |lead down/home; land  
|trees |lend out; reveal  
νῆι φεύγεσκον πρὸς τὰ ὄρεα λείποντες τὰς πόλιας·  
αὐτοὶ δὲ ἀδικεῖν οὐδὲν |go in      , |food, meat μούνα ἐξ  
αὐτέων λαμβάνειν. τοῦ δὲ μὴ |sail around Λιβύην  
|complete, αἴτιον τόδε ἔλεγε, τὸ πλοῖον τὸ |forward, in the  
|absolute |lend out; reveal |future; far  
δυνατὸν ἔτι εἶναι |surpass ἄλλ' |hold inside . Χέρξης  
δὲ οὐ οἱ συγγινώσκων λέγειν ἀληθέα οὐκ |complete; do a  
|religious duty  
τε τὸν |be placed by; ἄεθλον |impale      , τὴν |ancient, from the be-  
|be devoted to |ginning  
δίκην |honor, . τούτου δὲ τοῦ Σατάσπεος |eunuch  
|blame  
ἀπέδρη ἐς Σάμον, ἐπεῖτε ἐπύθετο τάχιστα τὸν |master,  
|despot  
τετελευτηκότα, ἔχων χρήματα μεγάλα, τὰ Σάμιος ἀνὴρ  
κατέσχε, τοῦ ἐπιστάμενος τὸ οὖνομα |will- |mp: forget  
|ingly

4.44

Τῆς δὲ Ἀσίης τὰ πολλὰ ὑπὸ Δαρείου |find;      , ὅς  
|discover

much sea in many months, as there was needed ever more and more voyaging, he turned about and sailed back again to Egypt: and having come from thence into the presence of king Xerxes, he reported saying that at the furthest point which he reached he was sailing by dwarfish people, who used clothing made from the palm-tree, and who, whenever they came to land with their ship, left their towns and fled away to the mountains: and they, he said, did no injury when they entered into the towns, but took food from them only. And the cause, he said, why he had not completely sailed round Libya was that the ship could not advance any further but stuck fast. Xerxes however did not believe that he was speaking the truth, and since he had not performed the appointed task, he impaled him, inflicting upon him the penalty pronounced before. A eunuch belonging to this Sataspes ran away to Samos as soon as he heard that his master was dead, carrying with him large sums of money; and of this a man of Samos took possession, whose name I know, but I purposely pass it over without mention.

#### 4.44

Of Asia the greater part was explored by Dareios, who desiring to know of the

*vocabulary*

**ἀνατέλλω** cause to grow ~apostle  
**ἀνατολή** a rising in the sky ~apostle  
**ἀνευρίσκω** discover  
**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west

**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
 ~catastrophe  
**κροκόδειλος** lizard, crocodile  
**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone  
**περιπλώω** sail around  
**σκύλαξ** -κος (f) puppy  
**χῶρος** place ~heir

βουλόμενος Ἰνδὸν ποταμόν, ὃς κροκοδείλους δεύτερος οὗτος ποταμῶν πάντων παρέχεται, τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν εἰδέναι τῇ ἐς θάλασσαν ἐκδιδοί, πέμπει πλοίοισι ἄλλους τε τοῖσι ἐπίστευε τὴν ἀληθείην ἐρέειν καὶ δὴ καὶ Σκύλακα ἄνδρα Καρυανδέα. οἱ δὲ ὀρμηθέντες ἐκ Κασπατύρου τε πόλιος καὶ τῆς Πακτυκῆς γῆς ἔπλεον κατὰ ποταμὸν πρὸς ἡῶ τε καὶ ἡλίου ἀνατολὰς ἐς θάλασσαν, διὰ θαλάσσης δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρην πλέοντες τριηκοστῷ μηνὶ ἀπικνέονται ἐς τοῦτον τὸν χώρον ὅθεν ὁ Αἰγυπτίων βασιλεὺς τοὺς Φοίνικας τοὺς πρότερον εἶπα ἀπέστειλε περιπλώειν Λιβύην. μετὰ δὲ τούτους περιπλώσαντας Ἰνδοὺς τε κατεστρέψατο Δαρεῖος καὶ τῇ θαλάσῃ ταύτῃ ἐχρᾶτο. οὕτω καὶ τῆς Ἀσίας, πλὴν τὰ πρὸς ἡλίον ἀνίσχοντα, τὰ ἄλλα ἀνέύρηται ὅμοια παρεχομένη τῇ Λιβύῃ.

## 4.45

Ἡ δὲ Εὐρώπη πρὸς οὐδαμῶν φανερὴ ἐστὶ γνωσκομένη, οὔτε τὰ πρὸς ἡλίον ἀνατέλλοντα οὔτε τὰ πρὸς βορέην,

βουλόμενος Ἴνδον ποταμόν, ὃς |lizard, crocodile δεύτερος  
 οὗτος ποταμῶν πάντων παρέχεται, τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν  
 εἰδέναι τῇ ἐς θάλασσαν |hand over ἔμπει πλοίοισι ἄλλους  
 τε τοῖσι ἐπίστευε τὴν ἀληθείην ἐρέειν καὶ δὴ καὶ |puppy  
 ἄνδρα Καρυανδέα. οἱ δὲ ὀρμηθέντες ἐκ Κασπατύρου τε  
 πόλιος καὶ τῆς Πακτυκῆς γῆς ἔπλεον κατὰ ποταμὸν  
 πρὸς ἡῶ τε καὶ ἡλίου |a rising in the sky ἔλασσαν, διὰ  
 θαλάσσης δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρην πλέοντες τριηκοστῶ μηνὶ  
 ἀπικνέονται ἐς τοῦτον τὸν |place ὅθεν ὁ Αἰγυπτίων  
 βασιλεὺς τοὺς Φοίνικας τοὺς πρότερον εἶπα ἀπέστειλε  
 |sail around Λιβύην. μετὰ δὲ τούτους περιπλώσαντας  
 Ἰνδούς τε |overturn, subdue Δαρείος καὶ τῇ θαλάσῃ ταύτῃ  
 ἐχρᾶτο. οὕτω καὶ τῆς Ἀσίας, πλὴν τὰ πρὸς ἡλίον  
 ἀνίσχοντα, τὰ ἄλλα |discover ὅμοια παρεχομένη τῇ  
 Λιβύῃ.

4.45

Ἡ δὲ Εὐρώπη πρὸς |not anyone ῥανερχή ἐστι γνωσκομένη,  
 οὔτε τὰ πρὸς ἡλίον |cause to grow οὔτε τὰ πρὸς |north,  
 north  
 wind

river Indus, which is a second river producing crocodiles of all the rivers in the world,— to know, I say, of this river where it runs out into the sea, sent with ships, besides others whom he trusted to speak the truth, Skylax also, a man of Caryanda. These starting from the city of Caspatyros and the land of Pactyike, sailed down the river towards the East and the sunrising to the sea; and then sailing over the sea Westwards they came in the thirtieth month to that place from whence the king of the Egyptians had sent out the Phenicians of whom I spoke before, to sail round Libya. After these had made their voyage round the coast, Dareios both subdued the Indians and made use of this sea. Thus Asia also, excepting the parts of it which are towards the rising sun, has been found to be similar to Libya.

#### 4.45

As to Europe, however, it is clearly not known by any, either as regards the parts which are towards the rising sun or those towards the North, whether it be

*vocabulary*

**αὐτόχθων** native  
**διουρίζω** delimit; determine  
**Ἕλληγ** Greek  
**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named  
**μεταλαμβάνω** share in; swap  
**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature  
**ὁπόθεν** whence

**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone  
**οὕρισμα** border  
**παρήγω** lie along; of time: to be past  
**περίρρυτος** sea-girt ~rheostat  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
**τριφάσιος** triple  
**φυλή** (ῥ) tribe, military unit

εἰ περίρρυτος ἐστὶ· μήκει δὲ γινώσκεται παρ' ἀμφοτέρας  
 παρήκουσα. οὐδ' ἔχω συμβαλέσθαι ἐπ' ὅτεν μὴ εἰούση γῆ  
 οὐνόματα τριφάσια κέεται ἐπωνυμίας ἔχοντα γυναικῶν,  
 καὶ οὐρίσματα αὐτῇ Νεῖλός τε ὁ Αἰγύπτιος ποταμὸς  
 ἐτέθη καὶ Φᾶσις ὁ Κόλχος οἱ δὲ Τάναιν ποταμὸν τὸν  
 Μαιήτην καὶ πορθμῖα τὰ Κιμμέρια λέγουσι, οὐδὲ τῶν  
 διουρισάντων τὰ οὐνόματα πυθέσθαι, καὶ ὅθεν ἔθεντο  
 τὰς ἐπωνυμίας. ἤδη γὰρ Λιβύη μὲν ἐπὶ Λιβύης λέγεται  
 ὑπὸ τῶν πολλῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχειν τὸ οὔνομα γυναικὸς  
 αὐτόχθονος, ἡ δὲ Ἀσίη ἐπὶ τῆς Προμηθέος γυναικὸς  
 τὴν ἐπωνυμίην. καὶ τούτου μὲν μεταλαμβάνονται τοῦ  
 οὐνόματος Λυδοί, φάμενοι ἐπὶ Ἀσίᾳ τοῦ Κότυος τοῦ  
 Μάνεω κεκληῖσθαι τὴν Ἀσίην, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐπὶ τῆς Προμηθέος  
 Ἀσίης. ἀπ' ὅτεν καὶ τὴν ἐν Σάρδισι φυλὴν κεκληῖσθαι  
 Ἀσιάδα. ἡ δὲ δὴ Εὐρώπη οὔτε εἰ περίρρυτος ἐστὶ  
 γινώσκεται πρὸς οὐδαμῶν ἀνθρώπων, οὔτε ὁκόθεν τὸ  
 οὔνομα ἔλαβε τοῦτο, οὔτε ὅστις οἱ ἦν ὁ θέμενος φαίνεται,  
 εἰ μὴ ἀπὸ τῆς Τυρίας φήσομεν Εὐρώπης λαβεῖν τὸ οὔνομα



εἰ |sea-girt      ἐστὶ· |length, δὲ γινώσκεται παρ' ἀμφοτέρων  
    stature  
 παρήκουσα. οὐδ' ἔχω |pit against; compare; εὐ μὴ εἰσὶν γῆ  
    mp: meet, fall in with  
 οὐνόματα |triple      κέεται |called, ἔχοντα γυναικῶν,  
    named  
 καὶ |border      αὐτῇ Νεῖλός τε ὁ Αἰγύπτιος ποταμός  
 ἐτέθη καὶ Φᾶσις ὁ Κόλχος οἱ δὲ Τάναιν ποταμὸν τὸν  
 Μαιήτην καὶ πορθμήια τὰ Κιμμέρια λέγουσι, οὐδὲ τῶν  
 |delimit;      τὰ οὐνόματα πυθέσθαι, καὶ ὅθεν ἔθεντο  
 |determine  
 τὰς |called,      ἤδη γὰρ Λιβύη μὲν ἐπὶ Λιβύης λέγεται  
                          named  
 ὑπὸ τῶν πολλῶν |Greek      ἔχειν τὸ οὐνομα γυναικὸς  
 αὐτόχθονος, ἣ δὲ Ἀσίη ἐπὶ τῆς Προμηθέος γυναικὸς  
 τὴν |called,      καὶ τούτου μὲν |share in; swap      τοῦ  
                  named  
 οὐνόματος Λυδοί, φάμενοι ἐπὶ Ἀσίᾳ τοῦ Κότυος τοῦ  
 Μάνεω κεκληῆσθαι τὴν Ἀσίην, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐπὶ τῆς Προμηθέος  
 Ἀσίας. ἀπ' ὅτε καὶ τὴν ἐν Σάρδισι |tribe      κεκληῆσθαι  
 Ἀσιάδα. ἣ δὲ δὴ Εὐρώπη οὔτε εἰ |sea-girt      ἐστὶ  
 γινώσκεται πρὸς |not anyone ἰνθρώπων, οὔτε |whence τὸ  
 οὐνομα ἔλαβε τοῦτο, οὔτε ὅστις οἱ ἦν ὁ θέμενος φαίνεται,  
 εἰ μὴ ἀπὸ τῆς Τυρίας φήσομεν Εὐρώπης λαβεῖν τὸ οὐνομα

surrounded by sea: but in length it is known to stretch along by both the other divisions. And I am not able to understand for what reason it is that to the Earth, which is one, three different names are given derived from women, and why there were set as boundaries to divide it the river Nile of Egypt and the Phasis in Colchis (or as some say the Maiotian river Tanaïs and the Kimmerian ferry); nor can I learn who those persons were who made the boundaries, or for what reason they gave the names. Libya indeed is said by most of the Hellenes to have its name from Libya a woman of that country, and Asia from the wife of Prometheus: but this last name is claimed by the Lydians, who say that Asia has been called after Asias the son of Cotys the son of Manes, and not from Asia the wife of Prometheus; and from him too they say the Asian tribe in Sardis has its name. As to Europe however, it is neither known by any man whether it is surrounded by sea, nor does it appear whence it got this name or who he was who gave it, unless we shall say that the land received its name from Europa the Tyrian; and if so, it would appear that

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαμαι** wonder, admire; resent,  
 begrudge

**ἄμαθής** ignorant

**ἀνευρίσκω** discover

**ἀνθρωπῆιος** human

**ἄνώνυμος** nameless ~name

**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free

**Ἑλλήν** Greek

**ἐντός** within

**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

**λόγιος** learned, eloquent; oracle

**πάρεξ** alongside, diverging from; (+ῥ  
 or gen) except; (+acc) beyond,  
 alongside

**προβάλλω** throw before; propose;  
 (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate  
 ~ballistic

**σοφία** skill; wisdom ~sophistry

**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise

**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir

**χωρος** place ~heir

τὴν χώραν· πρότερον δὲ ἦν ἄρα ἀνώνυμος ὥσπερ αἱ ἕτεραι. ἀλλ' αὕτη γε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τε φαίνεται ἐοῦσα καὶ οὐκ ἀπικομένη ἐς τὴν γῆν ταύτην ἥτις νῦν ὑπὸ Ἑλλήνων Εὐρώπῃ καλέεται, ἀλλ' ὅσον ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐς Κρήτην, ἐκ Κρήτης δὲ ἐς Λυκίην. ταῦτα μὲν νυν ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον εἰρήσθω· τοῖσι γὰρ νομιζομένοισι αὐτῶν χρησόμεθα.

## 4.46

Ὁ δὲ Πόντος ὁ Εὐξείνιος, ἐπ' ὃν ἐστρατεύετο ὁ Δαρεῖος, χωρέων πασέων παρέχεται ἔξω τοῦ Σκυθικοῦ ἔθνεα ἀμαθέστατα. οὔτε γὰρ ἔθνος τῶν ἐντὸς τοῦ Πόντου οὐδὲν ἔχομεν προβαλέσθαι σοφίης πέρι οὔτε ἄνδρα λόγιον οἶδαμεν γενόμενον, πάρεξ τοῦ Σκυθικοῦ ἔθνους καὶ Ἀναχάρσιος. τῷ δὲ Σκυθικῷ γένει ἐν μὲν τὸ μέγιστον τῶν ἀνθρωπείων πρηγμάτων σοφώτατα πάντων ἐξεύρηται τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, τὰ μέντοι ἄλλα οὐκ ἄγαμαι· τὸ δὲ μέγιστον οὕτω σφι ἀνεύρηται ὥστε ἀποφυγεῖν τε μηδένα ἐπελθόντα ἐπὶ σφέας, μὴ βουλομένους τε ἐξευρεθῆναι καταλαβεῖν μὴ οἶον τε εἶναι. τοῖσι γὰρ μήτε ἄστεα μήτε

τὴν χώραν· πρότερον δὲ ἦν ἄρα |nameless ὥσπερ αἱ  
 ἕτεραι. ἀλλ' αὕτη γε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τε φαίνεται ἐοῦσα καὶ  
 οὐκ ἀπικομένη ἐς τὴν γῆν ταύτην ἥτις νῦν ὑπὸ |Greek  
 Εὐρώπῃ καλέεται, ἀλλ' ὅσον ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐς Κρήτην,  
 ἐκ Κρήτης δὲ ἐς Λυκίην. ταῦτα μὲν νυν ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον  
 εἰρήσθω· τοῖσι γὰρ νομιζομένοισι αὐτῶν χρῆσόμεθα.

4.46

Ὁ δὲ Πόντος ὁ Εὐξείνιος, ἐπ' ὃν ἐστρατεύετο ὁ Δαρείος,  
 χωρέων πασέων παρέχεται ἔξω τοῦ Σκυθικοῦ ἔθνεα  
 |ignorant οὔτε γὰρ ἔθνος τῶν |within τοῦ Πόντου  
 οὐδὲν ἔχομεν |throw before; propose; (mp) ῥι οὔτε ἄνδρα  
 |pretend, abandon, nominate  
 λόγιον οἶδαμεν γενόμενον, πάρεξ τοῦ Σκυθικοῦ ἔθνεος καὶ  
 Ἀναχάρσιος. τῷ δὲ Σκυθικῷ γένει ἐν μὲν τὸ μέγιστον τῶν  
 |human πρηγμάτων |skilled, πάντων |find;  
 |clever, wise |discover  
 τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, τὰ μέντοι ἄλλα οὐκ |admire; τὸ δὲ  
 |begrudge  
 μέγιστον οὕτω σφι |discover ὥστε |avoid, escape, εἰ μηδένα  
 |go free  
 ἐπελθόντα ἐπὶ σφέας, μὴ βουλομένους τε |find; discover  
 |seize, understand, catch, εἶναι. τοῖσι γὰρ μήτε ἄστυα μήτε  
 |overtake; (mp) happen

before this it was nameless like the rest. She however evidently belongs to Asia and did not come to this land which is now called by the Hellenes Europe, but only from Phenicia to Crete, and from Crete to Lykia. Let this suffice now which has been said about these matters; for we will adopt those which are commonly accepted of the accounts.

**4.46**

Now the region of the Euxine upon which Dareios was preparing to march has, apart from the Scythian race, the most ignorant nations within it of all lands: for we can neither put forward any nation of those who dwell within the region of Pontus as eminent in ability, nor do we know of any man of learning having arisen there, apart from the Scythian nation and Anacharsis. By the Scythian race one thing which is the most important of all human things has been found out more cleverly than by any other men of whom we know; but in other respects I have no great admiration for them: and that most important thing which they have discovered is such that none can escape again who has come to attack them, and if they do not desire to be found, it is not possible to catch them: for they who

*vocabulary***ἄμαχος** unconquerable; noncombatant**ἄπορος** impassable, difficult**ἀριθμός** number**ἄροτος** plowed field ~arable**διῶρυξ -χος (f)** ditch, canal**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka**εὐυδρος** well watered**ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3)** team of animals

~zygote

**θέρος -εος (n, 3)** summer ~thermos**κτῆνος -ους (n, 3)** herd animal**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin**κῶας κώως (n, 3)** fleece**οἶκημα -τος (n, 3)** room**ὀνομαίνω** to name ~name**ὀνομαστός** named ~name**πεντάστομος** with five mouths**προσμίγνυμι** reach out to, approach**προσμίσγω** reach out to, approach**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**χειμών -ος (m, 3)** winter, storm

τείχεα ἢ ἐκτισμένα, ἀλλὰ φερέοικοι ἐόντες πάντες ἔωσι  
 ἵπποτοξόται, ζῶντες μὴ ἀπ' ἀρότου ἀλλ' ἀπὸ κτηνέων,  
 οἰκήματα τε σφι ἦ ἐπὶ ζευγέων, κῶς οὐκ ἂν εἴησαν οὗτοι  
 ἄμαχοί τε καὶ ἄποροι προσμίσγειν;

## 4.47

Ἐξεύρηται δέ σφι ταῦτα τῆς τε γῆς ἐούσης ἐπιτηδέης καὶ  
 τῶν ποταμῶν ἐόντων σφι συμμάχων. ἥ τε γὰρ γῆ ἐούσα  
 πεδιάς αὕτη ποιώδης τε καὶ εὐνδρος ἐστί, ποταμοί τε δι'  
 αὐτῆς ῥέουσι οὐ πολλῶ τεῷ ἀριθμὸν ἐλάσσονες τῶν ἐν  
 Αἰγύπτῳ διωρύχων. ὅσοι δὲ ὀνομαστοί τε εἰσὶ αὐτῶν  
 καὶ προσπλωτοὶ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, τούτους ὀνομανέω....  
 Ἰστρος μὲν πεντάστομος, μετὰ δὲ Τύρης τε καὶ Ὑπανίς  
 καὶ Βορυσθένης καὶ Παντικάπης καὶ Ὑπάκυρις καὶ Γέρρος  
 καὶ Τάναις. ῥέουσι δὲ οἷδε κατὰ τάδε.

## 4.48

Ἰστρος μὲν, ἐὼν μέγιστος ποταμῶν πάντων τῶν ἡμεῖς  
 ἴδμεν, ἴσος αἰεὶ αὐτὸς ἐωυτῷ ῥέει καὶ θέρεος καὶ χειμῶνος,



τείχεα ἣ <sup>|</sup>found, <sup>|</sup>populate, ἀλλὰ φερέοικοι ἐόντες πάντες ἔωσι  
 ἵπποτοξόται, ζῶντες μὴ ἀπ' <sup>|</sup>plowed ἀλλ' ἀπὸ <sup>|</sup>herd animal  
<sup>|</sup>field  
<sup>|</sup>room τε σφι ἦ ἐπὶ <sup>|</sup>team, <sup>|</sup>fleece ἣκ ἂν εἴησαν οὔτοι  
<sup>|</sup>unconquerable; <sup>|</sup>impassable, <sup>|</sup>οσμίσγειν;  
<sup>|</sup>noncombatant <sup>|</sup>difficult

## 4.47

<sup>|</sup>find;  
<sup>|</sup>discover δέ σφι ταῦτα τῆς τε γῆς ἐούσης ἐπιτηδέης καὶ  
 τῶν ποταμῶν ἐόντων σφι συμμάχων. ἥ τε γὰρ γῆ ἐοῦσα  
 πεδιάς αὕτη ποιῶδης τε καὶ <sup>|</sup>well watered. ἴ, ποταμοί τε δι'  
 αὐτῆς <sup>|</sup>flow οὐ πολλῶ τεω <sup>|</sup>number ἐλάσσονες τῶν ἐν  
 Αἰγύπτῳ <sup>|</sup>ditch, canal ὅσοι δὲ <sup>|</sup>named τε εἰσὶ αὐτῶν  
 καὶ προσπλωτοὶ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, τούτους <sup>|</sup>to name ...  
 Ἰστρος μὲν <sup>|</sup>with five mouths, ἔτα δὲ Τύρης τε καὶ Ὑπανίς  
 καὶ Βορυσθένης καὶ Παντικάπης καὶ Ὑπάκυρις καὶ Γέρρος  
 καὶ Τάναϊς. <sup>|</sup>flow δὲ οἶδε κατὰ τάδε.

## 4.48

Ἰστρος μὲν, ἐὼν μέγιστος ποταμῶν πάντων τῶν ἡμῶν  
 ἴδμεν, ἴσος αἰεὶ αὐτὸς ἐωυτῷ ῥέει καὶ <sup>|</sup>sum- καὶ <sup>|</sup>winter,  
<sup>|</sup>mer <sup>|</sup>storm

have neither cities founded nor walls built, but all carry their houses with them and are mounted archers, living not by the plough but by cattle, and whose dwellings are upon cars, these assuredly are invincible and impossible to approach.

**4.47**

This they have found out, seeing that their land is suitable to it and at the same time the rivers are their allies: for first this land is plain land and is grassy and well watered, and then there are rivers flowing through it not much less in number than the channels in Egypt. Of these as many as are noteworthy and also can be navigated from the sea, I will name: there is Ister with five mouths, and after this Tyras, Hypanis, Borysthenes, Panticapes, Kypakyris, Gerros and Tanais. These flow as I shall now describe.

**4.48**

The Ister, which is the greatest of all the rivers which we know, flows always with equal volume in summer and winter alike.

*vocabulary*

**ἀνακοινῶ** communicate, impart  
**αὐθιγενής** native-born  
**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**κορυφή** peak, crown  
**κορυφῶ** break (of a wave), come to a

## head

**πυρετός** fever ~pyre  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**ῥοά** pl: waters of a river ~rheostat  
**ῥόος ῥοῦ** stream, flow, current  
 ~rheostat  
**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix  
**τοιόσδε** such

πρῶτος δὲ τὸ ἀπ' ἐσπέρης τῶν ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ ῥέων κατὰ τοιόνδε μέγιστος γέγονε· ποταμῶν καὶ ἄλλων ἐς αὐτὸν ἐκδιδόντων εἰσὶ δὴ οἶδε οἱ μέγαν αὐτὸν ποιεῦντες, διὰ μὲν γε τῆς Σκυθικῆς χώρας πέντε μὲν οἱ ῥέοντες, τὸν τε Σκύθαι Πόρατα καλέουσι Ἕλληνες δὲ Πυρετόν, καὶ ἄλλος Τιάραντος καὶ Ἄραρος τε καὶ Νάπαρις καὶ Ὀρδησσός. ὁ μὲν πρῶτος λεχθεὶς τῶν ποταμῶν μέγας καὶ πρὸς ἡῶ ῥέων ἀνακοινοῦται τῷ Ἰστρῷ τὸ ὕδωρ, ὁ δὲ δεύτερος λεχθεὶς Τιάραντος πρὸς ἐσπέρης τε μᾶλλον καὶ ἐλάσσων, ὁ δὲ δὴ Ἄραρός τε καὶ ὁ Νάπαρις καὶ ὁ Ὀρδησσός καὶ μέσου τούτων ἰόντες ἐσβάλλουσι ἐς τὸν Ἰστρον.

## 4.49

Οὔτοι μὲν αὐθιγενέες Σκυθικοὶ ποταμοὶ συμπληθύνουσι αὐτόν, ἐκ δὲ Ἀγαθύρσων Μάρις ποταμὸς ῥέων συμμίσγεται τῷ Ἰστρῷ, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ Αἴμου τῶν κορυφῶν τρεῖς ἄλλοι μεγάλοι ῥέοντες πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον ἐσβάλλουσι ἐς αὐτόν, Ἄτλας καὶ Αὔρας καὶ Τίβισις. διὰ δὲ Θρηίκης καὶ Θρηίκων τῶν Κροβύζων ῥέοντες Ἄθρυς

πρῶτος δὲ τὸ ἀπ' ἐσπέρης τῶν ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ ῥέων κατὰ  
 |such μέγιστος γέγονε· ποταμῶν καὶ ἄλλων ἐς αὐτὸν  
 |hand over εἰσὶ δὴ οἷδε οἱ μέγαν αὐτὸν ποιεῦντες, διὰ  
 μὲν γε τῆς Σκυθικῆς χώρας πέντε μὲν οἱ |flow , τὸν τε  
 Σκύθαι Πόρατα καλέουσι Ἕλληνες δὲ |fever , καὶ ἄλλος  
 Τιάραντος καὶ Ἄραρος τε καὶ Νάπαρις καὶ Ὀρδησσός.  
 ὁ μὲν πρῶτος λεχθεὶς τῶν ποταμῶν μέγας καὶ πρὸς ἡῶ  
 ῥέων |communicate, τῷ Ἰστρῷ τὸ ὕδωρ, ὁ δὲ δεύτερος  
 |impart λεχθεὶς Τιάραντος πρὸς ἐσπέρης τε μᾶλλον καὶ ἐλάσσων,  
 ὁ δὲ δὴ Ἄραρός τε καὶ ὁ Νάπαρις καὶ ὁ Ὀρδησσὸς καὶ  
 μέσου τούτων ἰόντες ἐσβάλλουσι ἐς τὸν Ἰστρὸν.

4.49

Οὗτοι μὲν |native-born Σκυθικοὶ ποταμοὶ συμπληθύνουσι  
 αὐτόν, ἐκ δὲ Ἀγαθύρσων Μάρις ποταμὸς ῥέων  
 |mix with τῷ Ἰστρῷ, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ Αἴμου τῶν κορυφέων  
 τρεῖς ἄλλοι μεγάλοι |flow πρὸς |north, ἄνεμον  
 ἐσβάλλουσι ἐς αὐτόν, Ἄτλας καὶ Αὔρας καὶ Γίβισις. διὰ  
 δὲ Θρηίκης καὶ Θρηίκων τῶν Κροβύζων |flow Ἄθρυς

It is the first towards the West of all the Scythian rivers, and it has become the greatest of all rivers because other rivers flow into it. And these are they which make it great: 46— five in number are those which flow through the Scythian land, namely that which the Scythians call Porata and the Hellenes Pyretos, and besides this, Tiarantos and Araros and Naparis and Ordessos. The first-mentioned of these is a great river lying towards the East, and there it joins waters with the Ister, the second Tiarantos is more to the West and smaller, and the Araros and Naparis and Ordessos flow into the Ister going between these two.

#### 4.49

These are the native Scythian rivers which join to swell its stream, while from the Agathyrsians flows the Maris and joins the Ister, and from the summits of Haimos flow three other great rivers towards the North Wind and fall into it, namely Atlas and Auras and Tibisis. Through Thrace and the Thracian Crobyzians flow the rivers Athrys and Noes and Artanes, running into

*vocabulary***βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**δυσμή** sunset**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**εὖς** good, brave, noble**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;

enroll ~legion

**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**ὄον** οὄ type of fruit**πλάγιος** sideways; treacherous**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**ῥοά** pl: waters of a river ~rheostat**ῥόος** ῥοῦ stream, flow, current

~rheostat

**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:

meet, fall in with ~ballistic

**σφέτερος** their**σχίζω** split ~schism

καὶ Νόης καὶ Ἀρτάνης ἐκδιδοῦσι ἐς τὸν Ἰστρον· ἐκ δὲ Παιόνων καὶ ὄρεος Ῥοδόπης Κίος ποταμὸς μέσον σχίζων τὸν Αἶμον ἐκδιδοί ἐς αὐτόν. ἐξ Ἰλλυριῶν δὲ ῥέων πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον Ἄγγρος ποταμὸς ἐσβάλλει ἐς πεδίον τὸ Τριβαλλικὸν καὶ ἐς ποταμὸν Βρόγγον, ὁ δὲ Βρόγγος ἐς τὸν Ἰστρον· οὕτω ἀμφοτέρους ἔοντας μεγάλους ὁ Ἰστρος δέκεται. ἐκ δὲ τῆς κατύπερθε χώρας Ὀμβρικῶν Κάρπιδος ποταμὸς καὶ ἄλλος Ἄλπις ποταμὸς πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον καὶ οὗτοι ῥέοντες ἐκδιδοῦσι ἐς αὐτόν· ῥέει γὰρ δὴ διὰ πάσης τῆς Εὐρώπης ὁ Ἰστρος, ἀρξάμενος ἐκ Κελτῶν, οἱ ἔσχατοι πρὸς ἡλίου δυσμέων μετὰ Κύνητας οἰκέουσι τῶν ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ· ῥέων δὲ διὰ πάσης τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐς τὰ πλάγια τῆς Σκυθίας ἐσβάλλει.

#### 4.50

Τούτων ὦν τῶν καταλεχθέντων καὶ ἄλλων πολλῶν συμβαλλομένων τὸ σφέτερον ὕδωρ γίνεται ὁ Ἰστρος ποταμῶν μέγιστος, ἐπεὶ ὕδωρ γε ἐν πρὸς ἐν συμβάλλειν ὁ Νεῖλος πλήθει ἀποκρατεί. ἴσος δὲ γὰρ δὴ τοῦτον



καὶ Νόης καὶ Ἀρτάνης |hand over ἐς τὸν Ἰστρον· ἐκ δὲ  
 Παιόνων καὶ ὄρεος Ῥοδόπης Κίος ποταμὸς μέσον |split  
 τὸν Αἶμον |hand over, αὐτόν. ἐξ Ἰλλυριῶν δὲ ῥέων πρὸς  
 |north, ἄνεμον Ἀγγρος ποταμὸς ἐσβάλλει ἐς πεδίον τὸ  
 |north  
 |wind Ἰριβαλλικὸν καὶ ἐς ποταμὸν Βρόγγον, ὁ δὲ Βρόγγος ἐς  
 τὸν Ἰστρον· οὕτω ἀμφοτέρους ἐόντας μεγάλους ὁ Ἰστρος  
 δέκεται. ἐκ δὲ τῆς |above, from ἀχόνε, ὁ Ὀμβρικῶν Κάρπις  
 ποταμὸς καὶ ἄλλος Ἀλπις ποταμὸς πρὸς |north, ἄνεμον  
 καὶ οὗτοι |flow |hand over ἐς αὐτόν· ῥέει γὰρ δὴ διὰ  
 |north  
 |wind πάσης τῆς Εὐρώπης ὁ Ἰστρος, ἀρξάμενος ἐκ Κελτῶν, οἷ  
 |farthest πρὸς ἡλίου |sunset μετὰ Κύνητας οἰκέουσι τῶν  
 ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ· ῥέων δὲ διὰ πάσης τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐς τὰ  
 πλάγια τῆς Σκυθίης ἐσβάλλει.

## 4.50

Τούτων ὦν τῶν |relate in detail, καὶ ἄλλων πολλῶν  
 |choose; enroll  
 |pit against; compare; mp:|their ὕδωρ γίνεται ὁ Ἰστρος  
 |meet, fall in with  
 ποταμῶν μέγιστος, ἐπεὶ ὕδωρ γε ἐν πρὸς ἐν |pit against; compare; mp:  
 |meet, fall in with  
 Νεῖλος πλήθει ἀποκρατέει. ἴσος δὲ γὰρ δὴ τοῦτον

the Ister; and from the Paionians and Mount Rhodope the river Kios, cutting through Haimos in the midst, runs into it also. From the Illyrians the river Angros flows Northwards and runs out into the Triballian plain and into the river Brongos, and the Brongos flows into the Ister; thus the Ister receives both these, being great rivers. From the region which is above the Ombricans, the river Carpis and another river, the Alpis, flow also towards the North Wind and run into it; for the Ister flows in fact through the whole of Europe, beginning in the land of the Keltoi, who after the Kynesians dwell furthest towards the sun-setting of all the peoples of Europe; and thus flowing through all Europe it falls into the sea by the side of Scythia.

#### 4.50

So then it is because these which have been named and many others join their waters together, that Ister becomes the greatest of rivers; since if we compare the single streams, the Nile is superior in volume of water;

*vocabulary*

ἀμφιλαφής spreading, abundant  
 ἀντιτίθημι oppose, balance  
 βορέας -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
 εἰσδίδωμι flow in, hand in  
 ἐφέλκω drag; (mid) influence  
 θέρος -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos  
 θέρω warm up ~thermos  
 κρήνη well, spring  
 λάβρος blustering, torrential  
 μίν him, her, it  
 νιφετός snow  
 ὄμβρος storm  
 οὐρίζω divide; ordain, define

πάμπαν completely  
 πάντοθεν from all directions  
 πολλαπλήσιος many times more  
 ῥέω flow ~rheostat  
 συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:  
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
 συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix  
 τήκω melt  
 τοιόσδε such  
 ὕω (ῥ) to rain  
 φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)  
 ~physics  
 χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
 χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow

οὔτε ποταμὸς οὔτε κρήνη οὐδεμία ἐσδιδοῦσα ἐς πλῆθος οἱ  
 συμβάλλεται. ἴσος δὲ αἰεὶ ῥέει ἐν τε θέρει καὶ χειμῶνι ὁ  
 Ἰστρος κατὰ τοιόνδε τι, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκέει· τοῦ μὲν χειμῶνος  
 ἐστὶ ὅσος περ ἐστι, ὀλίγω τε μέζων τῆς ἐωυτοῦ φύσιος  
 γίνεται· ἕεται γὰρ ἡ γῆ αὕτη τοῦ χειμῶνος πάμπαν ὀλίγω,  
 νιφετῷ δὲ πάντα χρᾶται· τοῦ δὲ θέρεος ἡ χιὼν ἡ ἐν τῷ  
 χειμῶνι πεσοῦσα, ἐοῦσα ἀμφιλαφής, τηκομένη πάντοθεν  
 ἐσδιδοῖ ἐς τὸν Ἰστρον. αὕτη τε δὴ ἡ χιὼν ἐσδιδοῦσα ἐς  
 αὐτὸν συμπληθίει καὶ ὄμβροι πολλοί τε καὶ λάβροι σὺν  
 αὐτῇ· ἕει γὰρ δὴ τὸ θέρος. ὅσω δὲ πλεον ἐπ' ἐωυτὸν ὕδωρ  
 ὁ ἥλιος ἐπέλκεται ἐν τῷ θέρει ἢ ἐν τῷ χειμῶνι, τοσούτω τὰ  
 συμμισγόμενα τῷ Ἰστρῳ πολλαπλήσια ἐστὶ τοῦ θέρεος  
 ἢ περ τοῦ χειμῶνος· ἀντιτιθέμενα δὲ ταῦτα ἀντισήκωσις  
 γίνεται, ὥστε ἴσον μιν αἰεὶ φαίνεσθαι ἐόντα.

## 4.51

Εἰς μὲν δὴ τῶν ποταμῶν τοῖσι Σκύθῃσι ἐστὶ ὁ Ἰστρος,  
 μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Τύρης, ὃς ἀπὸ βορρῆς μεγάλης ἡ οὐρίζει τήν  
 τε Σκυθικὴν καὶ Νευρίδα γῆν. ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ στόματι αὐτοῦ

οὔτε ποταμὸς οὔτε |well, οὐδεμία |flow in, hand in ληθός οἱ  
 |spring  
 |pit against; compare; δὲ αἰεὶ ῥέει ἐν τε θέρει καὶ χειμῶνι ὁ  
 |mp: meet, fall in with  
 Ἴστρος κατὰ τοιόνδε τι, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκέει· τοῦ μὲν χειμῶνος  
 ἐστὶ ὅσος περ ἐστὶ, ὀλίγω τε μέζων τῆς ἐωυτοῦ |nature (of a thing)  
 γίνεται· |to rain, ἀρ ἡ γῆ αὕτη τοῦ χειμῶνος |completely ἴγω,  
 |snow δὲ πάντα χρᾶται· τοῦ δὲ |sum- ἡ |snow ἡ ἐν τῷ  
 |mer  
 χειμῶνι πεσοῦσα, ἐοῦσα |spreading, , |melt |from all directions  
 |abundant  
 ἐσδιδοὶ ἐς τὸν Ἴστρον. αὕτη τε δὴ ἡ |snow |flow in, hand in  
 αὐτὸν συμπληθίνει καὶ |storm πολλοί τε καὶ |blustering, ἔν  
 |torrential  
 αὐτῇ· |to rain, δὴ τὸ |summer ἔσω δὲ πλέον ἐπ' ἐωυτὸν ὕδωρ  
 ὁ ἥλιος |drag; (mid) ἐν τῷ θέρει ἢ ἐν τῷ χειμῶνι, τοσούτῳ τὰ  
 |influence  
 συμμισγόμενα τῷ Ἴστρῳ |many times more ἐπὶ τοῦ |sum-  
 |mer  
 ἢ περ τοῦ χειμῶνος· |oppose, δὲ ταῦτα ἀντισήκωσις  
 |balance  
 γίνεται, ὥστε ἴσον μιν αἰεὶ φαίνεσθαι ἐόντα.

## 4.51

Εἰς μὲν δὴ τῶν ποταμῶν τοῖσι Σκύθῃσι ἐστὶ ὁ Ἴστρος,  
 μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Τύρης, ὃς ἀπὸ |north, μεγάλης ἡ |divide; ὁ-  
 |north |dain, define  
 |wind  
 τε Σκυθικὴν καὶ Νευρίδα γῆν· ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ στόματι αὐτοῦ

for into this no river or spring flows, to contribute to its volume. And the Ister flows at an equal level always both in summer and in winter for some such cause as this, as I suppose:— in winter it is of the natural size, or becomes only a little larger than its nature, seeing that this land receives very little rain in winter, but constantly has snow; whereas in summer the snow which fell in the winter, in quantity abundant, melts and runs from all parts into the Ister. This snow of which I speak, running into the river helps to swell its volume, and with it also many and violent showers of rain, for it rains during the summer: and thus the waters which mingle with the Ister are more copious in summer than they are in winter by about as much as the water which the Sun draws to himself in summer exceeds that which he draws in winter; and by the setting of these things against one another there is produced a balance; so that the river is seen to be of equal volume always.

**4.51**

One, I say, of the rivers which the Scythians have is the Ister; and after it the Tyras, which starts from the North and begins its course from a large lake which is the boundary between the land of the Scythians and that of the Neuroi. At its mouth

*vocabulary*

**ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture  
**ἀλαζών** -όνος (m, 3) charlatan, boaster  
**ἀνατέλλω** cause to grow ~apostle  
**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course  
 ~atrophy  
**ἀροτήρ** -ος (m) plowman ~arable  
**γλυκύς** sweet, pleasant ~glycerine  
**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**εὐρύνω** broaden  
**ἐύς** good, brave, noble  
**κιννάω** mix ~crater  
**κραίνω** accomplish; (rare) rule  
**κρήνη** well, spring

**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit  
**ὄρος** boundary marker ~horizon  
**οὔρον** boundary stone; unit of distance; limit  
**οὔρος** fair wind; guardian; hill  
**πέριξ** all around  
**πικρός** sharp, bitter ~picric  
**πλόος** -ῶ course, voyage ~float  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**τέρμα** -τος (n, 3) mark, turn-around point  
**χῶρος** place ~heir

κατοίκηνται Ἑλληνες οἳ Τυρίται καλέονται.

#### 4.52

Τρίτος δὲ Ὑπανις ποταμὸς ὀρμᾶται μὲν ἐκ τῆς Σκυθικῆς, ῥέει δὲ ἐκ λίμνης μεγάλης τὴν περίξ νέμονται ἵπποι ἄγριοι λευκοί· καλέεται δὲ ἡ λίμνη αὕτη ὀρθῶς μήτηρ Ὑπάνιος. ἐκ ταύτης ὧν ἀνατέλλων ὁ Ὑπανις ποταμὸς ῥέει ἐπὶ μὲν πέντε ἡμερέων πλόον βραχὺς καὶ γλυκὺς ἐστί, ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου πρὸς θαλάσσης τεσσέρων ἡμερέων πλόον πικρὸς δεινῶς· ἐκδιδοί γὰρ ἐς αὐτὸν κρήνη πικρή, οὕτω δὴ τι ἐοῦσα πικρή, ἣ μεγάθι σμικρὴ ἐοῦσα κινῶ τὸν Ὑπανιν ἐόντα ποταμὸν ἐν ὀλίγοις μέγαν. ἔστι δὲ ἡ κρήνη αὕτη ἐν οὖροις χώρης τῆς τε ἀροτήρων Σκυθέων καὶ Ἀλαζόνων· οὕνομα δὲ τῇ κρήνῃ καὶ ὅθεν ῥέει τῷ χώρῳ σκυθιστὶ μὲν Ἑξαμπαῖος, κατὰ δὲ τὴν Ἑλλήνων γλῶσσαν Ἰραὶ ὁδοί. συνάγουσι δὲ τὰ τέρματα ὃ τε Τύρης καὶ ὁ Ὑπανις κατὰ Ἀλαζόνας, τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου ἀποστρέψας ἐκάτερος ῥέει εὐρύνων τὸ μέσον.



κατοίκηνται |Greek οἱ Τυρίται καλέονται.

4.52

Τρίτος δὲ Ὑπανις ποταμὸς ὀρμᾶται μὲν ἐκ τῆς Σκυθικῆς,

ῥέει δὲ ἐκ |lake, marsh, ἰλῆς τὴν |all |distribute ἵπποι |wild,  
|basin, sea |around |savage

λευκοί· καλέεται δὲ ἡ |lake, marsh, ὀρθῶς μήτηρ Ὑπάνιος.  
|basin, sea

ἐκ ταύτης ὦν |cause to grow Ὑπανις ποταμὸς ῥέει ἐπὶ μὲν

πέντε ἡμερέων |course, βραχὺς καὶ |sweet, ἐστι, ἀπὸ δὲ  
|voyage |pleasant

τούτου πρὸς θαλάσσης τεσσέρων ἡμερέων |course, |sharp  
|voyage

δεινῶς· |hand over, ἰρ ἐς αὐτὸν |well, |sharp , οὕτω δὴ τι  
|spring

ἐοῦσα |sharp , ἡ |tall, big σμικρὴ ἐοῦσα |mix τὸν Ὑπανιν

έόντα ποταμὸν ἐν ὀλίγοις μέγαν. ἔστι δὲ ἡ |well, αὕτη ἐν  
|spring

οὔροισι χώρας τῆς τε |plowman Σκυθέων καὶ |charlatan,  
|boaster

οὔνομα δὲ τῇ κρήνῃ καὶ ὅθεν ῥέει τῷ |place σκυθιστὶ μὲν

Ἐξαμπαῖος, κατὰ δὲ τὴν |Greek |tongue, Ἰραὶ ὁδοί.  
|language

συνάγουσι δὲ τὰ |mark, turn- ἐ Τύρης καὶ ὁ Ὑπανις κατὰ  
|around point

|charlatan, , τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου |turn back ἐκάτερος ῥέει  
|boaster

|broaden τὸ μέσον.

are settled those Hellenes who are called Tyritai.

#### 4.52

The third river is the Hypanis, which starts from Scythia and flows from a great lake round which feed white wild horses; and this lake is rightly called “Mother of Hypanis.” From this then the river Hypanis takes its rise and for a distance of five days’ sail it flows shallow and with sweet water still; but from this point on towards the sea for four days’ sail it is very bitter, for there flows into it the water of a bitter spring, which is so exceedingly bitter that, small as it is, it changes the water of the Hypanis by mingling with it, though that is a river to which few are equal in greatness. This spring is on the border between the lands of the agricultural Scythians and of the Alazonians, and the name of the spring and of the place from which it flows is in Scythian Exampaïos, and in the Hellenic tongue Hierai Hodoi. Now the Tyras and the Hypanis approach one another in their windings in the land of the Alazonians, but after this each turns off and widens the space between them as they flow.

*vocabulary*

**ἄπλετος** boundless, immense,  
abundant

**αὐτόματος** self-willed, accidental  
~after

**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere

**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind

**διακριδόν** without doubt ~critic

**ἐρημος** empty

**ἐρημόω** raze, bereave; desert, isolate

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

**καθαρός** clean, pure

**κατύπερθε** above, from above

**κῆτος** -εος (n, 3) whale ~cetacean

**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal

**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing

**νομή** pasture; distribution

**οὔτις** nobody, nothing

**πήγνυμι** (ῥ) stick, set, build ~fang

**πλόος** -ῶ course, voyage ~float

**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat

**ῥοά** pl: waters of a river ~rheostat

**ῥόος** ῥοῦ stream, flow, current  
~rheostat

**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora

**σπόρος** sowing, seed

**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
meet, fall in with ~ballistic

**ταρίχευσις** (τι) embalming; pickling

**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid

**χῶρος** place ~heir

## 4.53

Τέταρτος δὲ Βορυσθένης ποταμός, ὃς ἐστὶ τε μέγιστος  
 μετὰ Ἰστρον τούτων καὶ πολυαρκέστατος κατὰ γνώμας  
 τὰς ἡμετέρας οὔτι μῦνον τῶν Σκυθικῶν ποταμῶν ἀλλὰ  
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων, πλὴν Νείλου τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου·  
 τούτῳ γὰρ οὐκ οἶά τε ἐστὶ συμβαλεῖν ἄλλον ποταμόν· τῶν  
 δὲ λοιπῶν Βορυσθένης ἐστὶ πολυαρκέστατος, ὃς νομάς τε  
 καλλίστας καὶ εὐκομιδεστάτας κτήνεσι παρέχεται ἰχθύας  
 τε ἀρίστους διακριδὸν καὶ πλείστους, πίνεσθαι τε ἥδιστος  
 ἐστὶ, ῥέει τε καθαρὸς παρὰ θολεροῖσι, σπόρος τε παρ'  
 αὐτὸν ἄριστος γίνεται, ποίη τε, τῇ οὐ σπείρεται ἢ χώρη,  
 βαθυτάτη· ἄλλες τε ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι αὐτοῦ αὐτόματοι  
 πηγνυνται ἄπλετοι· κήτεά τε μεγάλα ἀνάκानθα, τὰ  
 ἀντακαίους καλέουσι, παρέχεται ἐς ταρίχευσιν, ἄλλα τε  
 πολλὰ θωμάσαι ἄξια. μέχρι μὲν νυν Γερρέων χώρου, ἐς  
 τὸν τεσσεράκοντα ἡμερέων πλόος ἐστὶ, γινώσκεται ῥέων  
 ἀπὸ βορέω ἀνέμου· τὸ δὲ κατύπερθε δι' ὧν ῥέει ἀνθρώπων  
 οὐδεὶς ἔχει φράσαι· φαίνεται δὲ ῥέων δι' ἐρήμου

4.53

|fourth δὲ Βορυσθένης ποταμός, ὃς ἐστὶ τε μέγιστος  
 μετὰ Ἰστρον τούτων καὶ πολυαρκέστατος κατὰ γνώμας  
 τὰς ἡμετέρας |nobody, ὄνον τῶν Σκυθικῶν ποταμῶν ἀλλὰ  
 |nothing  
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων, πλὴν Νείλου τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου·  
 τούτῳ γὰρ οὐκ οἶά τε ἐστὶ |pit against; ὄμπαρον· τῶν  
 |mp: meet, fall in with  
 δὲ λοιπῶν Βορυσθένης ἐστὶ πολυαρκέστατος, ὃς νομάς τε  
 καλλίστας καὶ εὐκομιδεστάτας |herd animal, ῥέχεται ἰχθύας  
 τε ἀρίστους |without καὶ πλείστους, πίνεσθαι τε |sweet  
 |doubt  
 ἐστὶ, ῥέει τε |clean, pure γὰρ ἠεροῖσι, |sowing, seed παρ'  
 αὐτὸν ἄριστος γίνεται, ποίη τε, τῇ οὐ |sow ἡ χώρα,  
 |high, deep ἅλεις τε ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι αὐτοῦ |self-willed,  
 |accidental  
 |stick, set, |boundless, |whale τε μεγάλα ἀνάκανθα, τὰ  
 |build |immense,  
 |abundant  
 ἀντακαίους καλεοῦσι, παρέχεται ἐς |embalming; , ἅλλα τε  
 |pickling  
 πολλὰ θωμάσαι ἄξια. μέχρι μὲν νυν Γερρέων |place , ἐς  
 τὸν τεσσαράκοντα ἡμερέων |course, ἐστὶ, γινώσκεται ῥέων  
 |voyage  
 ἀπὸ |north, ἀνέμον· τὸ δὲ |above, from above ῥέει ἀνθρώπων  
 |north  
 οὐδὲ |wind  
 φράσαι· φαίνεται δὲ ῥέων δι' ἐρήμου

## 4.53

Fourth is the river Borysthenes, which is both the largest of these after the Ister, and also in our opinion the most serviceable not only of the Scythian rivers but also of all the rivers of the world besides, excepting only the Nile of Egypt, for to this it is not possible to compare any other river: of the rest however the Borysthenes is the most serviceable, seeing that it provides both pastures which are the fairest and the richest for cattle, and fish which are better by far and more numerous than those of any other river, and also it is the sweetest water to drink, and flows with clear stream, though others beside it are turbid, and along its banks crops are produced better than elsewhere, while in parts where it is not sown, grass grows deeper. Moreover at its mouth salt forms of itself in abundance, and it produces also huge fish without spines, which they call antacaioi, to be used for salting, and many other things also worthy of wonder. Now as far as the region of the Gerrians, to which it is a voyage of forty days, the Borysthenes is known as flowing from the North Wind; but above this none can tell through what nations it flows: it is certain however that it runs through

*vocabulary*

ἀγχοῦ near, nigh; like ~angina

ἄκρα at the edge, extreme ~acute

ἄκρη at the edge, extreme

ἄκρις -ός (f) hilltop ~acute

βορέας -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind

γεωργέω farm, till land

γεωργός farming

ἐκδίδωμι hand over ~donate

Ἑλλην Greek

ἔλος ἔλεος (n, 3) marsh

ἔμβολος insertable peg; ram; wedge  
formation; porch

ἐνιδρύω establish

λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic

μεταξύ between

νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

παραμείβω pass by ~amoeba

πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon

πέραν (ᾱ) on the other side, across

πηγή headwaters, fountain

πηγός stout, mighty

πλόος -ῶ course, voyage ~float

ῥέω flow ~rheostat

ῥοά pl: waters of a river ~rheostat

ῥόος ῥοῦ stream, flow, current  
~rheostat

συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix

ἐς τῶν γεωργῶν Σκυθέων τὴν χώραν· οὗτοι γὰρ οἱ Σκύθαι παρ' αὐτὸν ἐπὶ δέκα ἡμερέων πλόον νέμονται. μούνου δὲ τούτου τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ Νείλου οὐκ ἔχω φράσαι τὰς πηγάς, δοκέω δέ, οὐδὲ οὐδεὶς Ἑλλήνων. ἀγχοῦ τε δὴ θαλάσσης ὁ Βορυσθένης ῥέων γίνεται καὶ οἱ συμμίσγεται ὁ Ὑπανις ἐς τὠντὸ ἔλος ἐκδιδούς. τὸ δὲ μεταξὺ τῶν ποταμῶν τούτων, ἐὼν ἔμβολον τῆς χώρας, Ἰππόλεω ἄκρη καλέεται, ἐν δὲ αὐτῷ, ἱρὸν Διμήτρος ἐνίδρυται· πέρην δὲ τοῦ ἱροῦ ἐπὶ τῷ Ὑπάνι Βορυσθενεῖται κατοίκηνται.

## 4.54

Ταῦτα μὲν τὰ ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν ποταμῶν, μετὰ δὲ τούτους πέμπτος ποταμὸς ἄλλος, τῷ ὄννομα Παντικάπης, ῥέει μὲν καὶ οὗτος ἀπὸ βορέω τε καὶ ἐκ λίμνης, καὶ τὸ μεταξὺ τούτου τε καὶ τοῦ Βορυσθέneos νέμονται οἱ γεωργοὶ Σκύθαι, ἐκδιδοὶ δὲ ἐς τὴν Ὑβλαίνην, παραμειψάμενος δὲ ταύτην τῷ Βορυσθένει συμμίσγεται.



ἐς τῶν γεωργῶν Σκυθέων τὴν χώραν· οὔτοι γὰρ οἱ Σκύθαι  
 παρ' αὐτὸν ἐπὶ δέκα ἡμέρων |course, |distribute . μούνου  
 |voyage  
 δὲ τούτου τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ Νείλου οὐκ ἔχω φράσαι τὰς  
 πηγάς, δοκέω δέ, οὐδὲ οὐδεὶς |Greek . |near, nigh; likè  
 θαλάσσης ὁ Βορυσθένης ῥέων γίνεται καὶ οἱ |mix with  
 ὁ Ὑπανις ἐς τῷτο |marsh|hand over τὸ δὲ |between τῶν  
 ποταμῶν τούτων, ἐὼν |insertable . peg; ram; |ππόλεω ἄκρη  
 |wedge formation; porch  
 καλέεται, ἐν δὲ αὐτῷ, ἱρὸν Δήμητρος |establish |across δὲ  
 τοῦ ἱροῦ ἐπὶ τῷ Ὑπάνι Βορυσθενεῖται κατοίκηνται.

4.54

Ταῦτα μὲν τὰ ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν ποταμῶν, μετὰ δὲ τούτους  
 |fifth ποταμὸς ἄλλος, τῷ οὔνομα Παντικάπης, ῥέει  
 μὲν καὶ οὗτος ἀπὸ |north, τε καὶ ἐκ |lake, . marsh, |between  
 |north  
 |wind  
 τούτου τε καὶ τοῦ Βορυσθέneos |distribute οἱ |farming  
 Σκύθαι, |hand over` ἐς τὴν Ὑβλαίν, |pass by δὲ  
 ταύτην τῷ Βορυσθενεῖ |mix with .

desert to the land of the agricultural Scythians; for these Scythians dwell along its banks for a distance of ten days' sail. Of this river alone and of the Nile I cannot tell where the sources are, nor, I think, can any of the Hellenes. When the Borysthenes comes near the sea in its course, the Hypanis mingles with it, running out into the same marsh; and the space between these two rivers, which is as it were a beak of land, is called the point of Hippoles, and in it is placed a temple of the Mother, and opposite the temple upon the river Hypanis are settled the Borysthenites.

#### 4.54

This is that which has to do with these rivers; and after these there is a fifth river besides, called Panticapes. This also flows both from the North and from a lake, and in the space between this river and the Borysthenes dwell the agricultural Scythians: it runs out into the region of Hylaia, and having passed by this it mingles with the Borysthenes.

*vocabulary***ἀνέκαθεν** from the start**ἄπεργος** idle; obsolete**ἀποσχίζω** sever**βασίλειος** kingly**βασιλήιος** kingly**δρόμος** running, racing ground

~hippodrome

**ἑβδομος** seventh**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἕκτος** sixth ~hexagon**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**νομάς -δος** (m, 3) roaming, grazing**ὄγδοος** eighth ~octopus**οὐρίζω** divide; ordain, define**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**ῥοά** pl: waters of a river ~rheostat**ῥόος ῥοῦ** stream, flow, current

~rheostat

**χωρός** place ~heir

## 4.55

Ἐκτος δὲ Ὑπάκυρις ποταμός, ὃς ὀρμᾶται μὲν ἐκ λίμνης, διὰ μέσων δὲ τῶν νομάδων Σκυθέων ῥέων ἐκδιδοὶ κατὰ Καρκινίτιν πόλιν, ἐς δεξιὴν ἀπέργων τήν τε Ὑλαίην καὶ τὸν Ἀχιλλήιον δρόμον καλεόμενον.

## 4.56

Ἑβδομος δὲ Γέρρος ποταμός ἀπέσχισται μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ Βορυσθέneos κατὰ τοῦτο τῆς χώρας ἐς ὃ γινώσκεται ὁ Βορυσθένης· ἀπέσχισται μὲν νυν ἐκ τούτου τοῦ χώρου, οὖνομα δὲ ἔχει τό περ ὁ χώρος αὐτός, Γέρρος, ῥέων δὲ ἐς θάλασσαν οὐρίζει τήν τε τῶν νομάδων χώραν καὶ τὴν τῶν βασιληίων Σκυθέων, ἐκδιδοὶ δὲ ἐς τὸν Ὑπάκυριν.

## 4.57

Ὅγδοος δὲ δὴ Τάναϊς ποταμός, ὃς ῥέει τάνεκαθεν ἐκ λίμνης μεγάλης ὀρμώμενος, ἐκδιδοὶ δὲ ἐς μέζω ἔτι λίμνην καλεόμενον Μαιῆτιν, ἣ οὐρίζει Σκύθας τε τοὺς βασιλείους καὶ Σαυρομάτας. ἐς δὲ Τάναϊν τοῦτον ἄλλος ποταμός

4.55

|sixth δὲ Ὑπάκυρις ποταμός, ὃς ὀρμάται μὲν ἐκ |lake, marsh,  
 |basin, sea  
 διὰ μέσων δὲ τῶν |roaming, Σκυθέων ῥέων |hand over τὰ  
 |grazing  
 Καρκινίτιν πόλιν, ἐς δεξιὴν |idle; τήν τε Ὑλαίην καὶ  
 |obsolete  
 τὸν Ἀχιλλήιον |running καλεόμενον.

4.56

|seventh δὲ Γέρρος ποταμός |sever μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 Βορυσθέneos κατὰ τοῦτο τῆς χώρας ἐς ὃ γινώσκεται ὁ  
 Βορυσθένης· |sever μένιν ἐκ τούτου τοῦ |place ,  
 οὖνομα δὲ ἔχει τό περ ὃ |place αὐτός, Γέρρος, ῥέων δὲ ἐς  
 θάλασσαν |divide; ὁρ- τε τῶν |roaming, χώραν καὶ τήν τῶν  
 |dain, define |grazing  
 |kingly Σκυθέων, |hand over ἔς τὸν Ὑπάκυριν.

4.57

|eighth δὲ δὴ Τάναϊς ποταμός, ὃς ῥέει τάνεκαθεν ἐκ  
 |lake, marsh, ἱλῆς ὀρμώμενος, |hand over ἔς μέζω ἔτι |lake, marsh,  
 |basin, sea |basin, sea  
 καλεόμενον Μαιῆτιν, ἣ |divide; ὁρ- ἰθας τε τοὺς |kingly  
 |dain, define  
 καὶ Σαυρομάτας. ἐς δὲ Τάναϊν τοῦτον ἄλλος ποταμός

## 4.55

Sixth comes the river Hypakyris, which starts from a lake, and flowing through the midst of the nomad Scythians runs out into the sea by the city of Carkinitis, skirting on its right bank the region of Hylaia and the so-called racecourse of Achilles.

## 4.56

Seventh is the Gerros, which parts off from the Borysthenes near about that part of the country where the Borysthenes ceases to be known,— it parts off, I say, in this region and has the same name which this region itself has, namely Gerros; and as it flows to the sea it borders the country of the nomad and that of the Royal Scythians, and runs out into the Hypakyris.

## 4.57

The eighth is the river Tanaïs, which starts in its flow at first from a large lake, and runs out into a still larger lake called Maiotis, which is the boundary between the Royal Scythians and the Sauromatai. Into this Tanaïs falls

*vocabulary***ἀναφύω** grow back**ἀνοίγνυμι** (ὄ) open**βασιλῆος** kingly**διακέομαι** repair**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**εὐπορος** easily passed; rich**θύω** (ὄ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἱλάσκομαι** appease**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal**νόμαιο**s customary**οὐράνιος** heavenly**σταθμόομαι** judge, conclude

ἐσβάλλει τῷ οὐνομα ἐστὶ Ὑργις.

#### 4.58

Τοῖσι μὲν δὴ ὀνομαστοῖσι ποταμοῖσι οὕτω δὴ τι οἱ Σκύθαι ἐσκευάδεται, τοῖσι δὲ κτήνεσι ἡ ποίη ἀναφυομένη ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ ἐστὶ ἐπιχολωτάτη πασέων ποιέων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν· ἀνοιγομένοισι δὲ τοῖσι κτήνεσι ἐστὶ σταθμώσασθαι ὅτι τοῦτο οὕτω ἔχει.

#### 4.59

Τὰ μὲν δὴ μέγιστα οὕτω σφι εὖπορα ἐστί, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ νόμαια κατὰ τάδε σφι διακέεται. θεοὺς μὲν μούνοὺς τούσδε ἰλάσκονται, Ἰστίην μὲν μάλιστα, ἐπὶ δὲ Δία καὶ Γῆν, νομίζοντες τὴν Γῆν τοῦ Διὸς εἶναι γυναῖκα, μετὰ δὲ τούτους, Ἀπόλλωνά τε καὶ οὐρανίην Ἀφροδίτην καὶ Ἡρακλέα καὶ Ἄρεα. τούτους μὲν πάντες Σκύθαι νενομίκασι, οἱ δὲ καλεόμενοι βασιλῆιοι Σκύθαι καὶ τῷ Ποσειδέωνι θύουσι. ὀνομάζεται δὲ σκυθιστὶ Ἰστίη μὲν Ταβιτί, Ζεὺς δὲ ὀρθότατα κατὰ γνώμην γε τὴν



ἐσβάλλει τῷ οὐνομα ἐστὶ Ὑργις.

4.58

Τοῖσι μὲν δὴ ὀνομαστοῖσι ποταμοῖσι οὕτω δὴ τι οἱ Σκύθαι  
ἐσκευάδεται, τοῖσι δὲ |herd animal| γοίη |grow back| ἐν τῇ  
Σκυθικῇ ἐστι ἐπιχολωτάτη πασέων ποιέων τῶν ἡμεῖς  
ἴδμεν· ἀνοιγομένοισι δὲ τοῖσι |herd animal| ἰ |judge, conclude|  
ὅτι τοῦτο οὕτω ἔχει.

4.59

Τὰ μὲν δὴ μέγιστα οὕτω σφι |easily| ἐστί, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ  
|passed;|  
|customary|. πὰ τάδε σφι |repair| |rich|. θεοὺς μὲν μούρους  
τούσδε |appease|, Ἰστίην μὲν μάλιστα, ἐπὶ δὲ Δία  
καὶ Γῆν, νομίζοντες τὴν Γῆν τοῦ Διὸς εἶναι γυναῖκα,  
μετὰ δὲ τούτους, Ἀπόλλωνα τε καὶ |heavenly| Ἀφροδίτην  
καὶ Ἡρακλέα καὶ Ἄρεα. τούτους μὲν πάντες Σκύθαι  
νενομίκασι, οἱ δὲ καλεόμενοι |kingly| Σκύθαι καὶ τῷ  
Ποσειδέωνι |rush; sacrifice| μάζεται δὲ σκυθιστὶ Ἰστίη μὲν  
Ταβιτί, Ζεὺς δὲ ὀρθότατα κατὰ γνώμην γε τὴν

another river, whose name is Hyrgis.

**4.58**

So many are the rivers of note with which the Scythians are provided: and for cattle the grass which comes up in the land of Scythia is the most productive of bile of any grass which we know; and that this is so you may judge when you open the bodies of the cattle.

**4.59**

Thus abundant supply have they of that which is most important; and as for the rest their customs are as follows. The gods whom they propitiate by worship are these only:— Hestia most of all, then Zeus and the Earth, supposing that Earth is the wife of Zeus, and after these Apollo, and Aphrodite Urania, and Heracles, and Ares. Of these all the Scythians have the worship established, and the so-called Royal Scythians sacrifice also to Poseidon. Now Hestia is called in Scythian Tabiti, and Zeus, being most rightly named in my opinion, is called Papaïos, and Earth

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαλμα** -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory, statue  
**ἀνακαίω** light (a fire) ~caustic  
**ἄξυλος** thickly timbered ~xylophone  
**ἀποδέρω** flay completely  
**ἀποπνίγω** (i) strangle; stew; (p) drown  
**αὐχὴν** -ένος (m, 3) neck  
**βρόχος** rope, noose  
**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal  
**ἐμποδίζω** fetter, hinder  
**ἐμπρόσθιος** front, e.g., front feet  
**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka  
**ἐπικαλέω** call upon  
**ἐπισπένδω** pour over  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**εὖς** good, brave, noble

**θύον** kind of tree  
**θύσῖα** sacrifice  
**θύω** (i) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off ~ballistic  
**κατάρχω** hold ready (sacrificial materials) ~oligarch  
**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine  
**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal  
**μὴν** him, her, it  
**νηός** temple, shrine  
**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**οὐράνιος** heavenly  
**περιάγω** lead around  
**στρόφος** rope, cord ~atrophy

ἐμὴν καλεόμενος Παπαῖος, Γῇ δὲ Ἀπί. Ἀπόλλων δὲ  
Γοιτόσυρος, οὐρανίη δὲ Ἀφροδίτη Ἀργίμπασα, Ποσειδέων  
δὲ Θαγίμασάδας. ἀγάλματα δὲ καὶ βωμούς καὶ νηοὺς οὐ  
νομίζουσι ποιέειν πλὴν Ἄρεϊ. τούτῳ δὲ νομίζουσι.

## 4.60

Θυσίῃ δὲ ἡ αὐτὴ πᾶσι κατέστηκε περὶ πάντα τὰ ἱρὰ  
ὁμοίως, ἐρδομένη ὧδε· τὸ μὲν ἱρήιον αὐτὸ ἐμπεποδισμένον  
τοὺς ἐμπροσθίους πόδας ἔστηκε, ὁ δὲ θύων ὄπισθε  
τοῦ κτήνεος ἑστέως σπάσας τὴν ἀρχὴν τοῦ στρόφου  
καταβάλλει μιν, πίπτοντος δὲ τοῦ ἱρήιου ἐπικαλείει τὸν  
θεὸν τῷ ἂν θύῃ, καὶ ἔπειτα βρόχῳ περὶ ᾧ ἔβαλε τὸν  
αὐχένα, σκυταλίδᾳ δὲ ἐμβαλὼν περιάγει καὶ ἀποπνίγει,  
οὔτε πῦρ ἀνακαύσας οὔτε καταρξάμενος οὔτ' ἐπισπείσας·  
ἀποπνίξας δὲ καὶ ἀποδείρας τρέπεται πρὸς ἔψησιν.

## 4.61

Τῆς δὲ γῆς τῆς Σκυθικῆς αἰνῶς ἀξύλου ἐούσης ὧδε σφί ἐς  
τὴν ἔψησιν τῶν κρεῶν ἐξεύρηται· ἐπειδὰν ἀποδείρωσι τὰ

ἐμὴν καλεόμενος Παπαῖος, Γῇ δὲ Ἀπί. Ἀπόλλων δὲ  
 Γοιτόσυρος, |heavenly δὲ Ἀφροδίτη Ἀργίμπασα, Ποσειδέων  
 δὲ Θαγμιασάδας. |ornament, δὲ καὶ |altar καὶ |temple οὐ  
 |glory, statue  
 νομίζουσι ποιέειν πλὴν Ἄρεί. τούτῳ δὲ νομίζουσι.

## 4.60

Θυσίῃ δὲ ἡ αὐτὴ πᾶσι κατέστηκε περὶ πάντα τὰ ἱρὰ  
 ὁμοίως, |do ὧδε· τὸ μὲν ἱρήιον αὐτὸ |fetter, hinder  
 τοὺς |front, e.g., πόδας ἔστηκε, ὁ δὲ θύων ὅπισθε  
 |front feet  
 τοῦ |herd animal\_ τεὼς σπάσας τὴν ἀρχὴν τοῦ |rope, cord  
 |throw down, cast off ἵπτοντος δὲ τοῦ ἱρήιου |call upon τὸν  
 θεὸν τῷ ἂν θύῃ, καὶ ἔπειτα |rope, περὶ ὧν ἔβαλε τὸν  
 |noose  
 |neck , σκυταλίδα δὲ ἐμβαλὼν |lead around ἢ |strangle; stew;  
 |(p) drown  
 οὔτε πῦρ |light (a fire) οὔτε |hold ready οὔτ' |pour over  
 |strangle; stew; καὶ |flay completely ἵπεται πρὸς ἔψησιν.  
 |(p) drown

## 4.61

Τῆς δὲ γῆς τῆς Σκυθικῆς αἰνῶς |thickly ῥούσης ὧδε σφι ἐς  
 |timbered  
 τὴν ἔψησιν τῶν |meat |find; ἐπειδὰν |flay completely ἢ  
 |discover

Api, and Apollo Oitosyros, and Aphrodite Urania is called Argimpasa, and Poseidon Thagimasidas. It is not their custom however to make images, altars or temples to any except Ares, but to him it is their custom to make them.

#### 4.60

They have all the same manner of sacrifice established for all their religious rites equally, and it is thus performed:— the victim stands with its fore-feet tied, and the sacrificing priest stands behind the victim, and by pulling the end of the cord he throws the beast down; and as the victim falls, he calls upon the god to whom he is sacrificing, and then at once throws a noose round its neck, and putting a small stick into it he turns it round and so strangles the animal, without either lighting a fire or making any first offering from the victim or pouring any libation over it: and when he has strangled it and flayed off the skin, he proceeds to boil it.

#### 4.61

Now as the land of Scythia is exceedingly ill wooded, this contrivance has been invented for the boiling of the flesh:— having flayed the

*vocabulary***αἶθω** set on fire ~ether**ἀπάρχω** cut hairs ~oligarch**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric**γυμνός** strip, be defenseless  
~gymnasium**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐπιχώριος** native**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**εὐπετῆς** coming out well; (adv) fortunately**ἔψω** boil, be boiling**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**κρέας** -ως (n) meat ~creatine**κρητήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal**λέβης** -τος (m, 3) kettle, basin**μήκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature**νομός** home, district ~nemesis**ὀστέον** bone ~osteoporosis**παραμίγνυμι** mix in**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**προσεΐκελος** somewhat like**ρίπτέω** hurl**ρίπτω** hurl**σπλάγχνον** (pl) innards, (fig) feelings**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters**συννέω** swim together; pile together**τοιόσδε** such**φρύγανον** (ῥ) kindling**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
~heir**χωρίς** separately; except, other than  
~heir**φιλόω** (ῥ) strip bare ~epsilon

ἱρήια, γυμνοῦσι τὰ ὀστέα τῶν κρεῶν, ἔπειτα ἐσβάλλουσι,  
 ἣν μὲν τύχῳσι ἔχοντες, ἐς λέβητας ἐπιχωρίους, μάλιστα  
 Λεσβίοισι κρητήρσι προσεικέλους, χωρὶς ἢ ὅτι πολλῶ  
 μέζονας· ἐς τούτους ἐσβάλλοντες ἔψουσι ὑποκαίοντες τὰ  
 ὀστέα τῶν ἱρήϊων. ἣν δὲ μή σφι παρῇ, ὁ λέβης, οἱ δὲ ἐς  
 τὰς γαστέρας τῶν ἱρήϊων ἐσβάλλοντες τὰ κρέα πάντα καὶ  
 παραμίζαντες ὕδωρ ὑποκαίουσι τὰ ὀστέα· τὰ δὲ αἴθεται  
 κάλλιστα, αἱ δὲ γαστέρες χωρέουσι εὐπετέως τὰ κρέα  
 ἐπιλωμένα τῶν ὀστέων· καὶ οὕτω βοῦς τε ἑωυτὸν ἐξέψει  
 καὶ τᾶλλα ἱρήια ἑωυτὸ ἕκαστον. ἐπεὰν δὲ ἐψηθῇ τὰ κρέα,  
 ὁ θύσας τῶν κρεῶν καὶ τῶν σπλάγχχνων ἀπαρξάμενος  
 ρίπτει ἐς τὸ ἔμπροσθε. θύουσι δὲ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα πρόβατα  
 καὶ ἵππους μάλιστα.

## 4.62

Τοῖσι μὲν δὴ ἄλλοισι τῶν θεῶν οὕτω θύουσι καὶ ταῦτα  
 τῶν κτηνέων, τῷ δὲ Ἄρεϊ ᾧδε. κατὰ νομοὺς ἑκάστους  
 τῶν ἀρχέων ἐσίδρυται σφι Ἄρεος ἱρὸν τοιόνδε φρυγάνων  
 φάκελοι συννενέεται ὅσον τ' ἐπὶ σταδίους τρεῖς μῆκος



ἱρήια, |strip, be de-|bone τῶν |meat , ἔπειτα ἐσβάλλουσι,  
 |fenseless  
 ἦν μὲν τύχῳσι ἔχοντες, ἐς |kettle, |native , μάλιστα  
 |basin  
 Λεσβίοισι |mixing bowl|somewhat like , |separately; " ex-τολλῶ  
 |for wine |cept, other than  
 μέζονας· ἐς τούτους ἐσβάλλοντες ἔψουσι ὑποκαίοντες τὰ  
 |bone τῶν ἱρηίων. ἦν δὲ μή σφι παρῇ, ὁ |kettle, , οἱ δὲ ἐς  
 |basin  
 τὰς |belly τῶν ἱρηίων ἐσβάλλοντες τὰ |meat πάντα καὶ  
 |mix in ὕδωρ ὑποκαίουσι τὰ |bone τὰ δὲ |set on fire  
 κάλλιστα, αἱ δὲ |belly χωρέουσι |coming out well;|meat  
 |(adv) fortunately  
 |strip bare τῶν |bone καὶ οὕτω βούς τε ἑωυτὸν ἐξέψει  
 καὶ τὰλλα ἱρήια ἑωυτὸ ἕκαστον. ἐπεὰν δὲ |boil, . be|meat ,  
 |boiling  
 ὁ θύσας τῶν |meat καὶ τῶν |innards |cut hairs  
 ρίπτει ἐς τὸ ἔμπροσθε. θύουσι δὲ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα πρόβατα  
 καὶ ἵππους μάλιστα.

## 4.62

Τοῖσι μὲν δὴ ἄλλοισι τῶν θεῶν οὕτω θύουσι καὶ ταῦτα  
 τῶν κτηνέων, τῷ δὲ Ἄρει ᾧδε. κατὰ |home, ἐκάστους  
 |district  
 τῶν ἀρχέων ἐσίδρυται σφι Ἄρεος ἶρον τοιόνδε |kindling  
 φάκελοι |swim together;"σον τ' ἐπὶ σταδίους τρεῖς |length,  
 |pile together |stature

victims, they strip the flesh off the bones and then put it into caldrons, if they happen to have any, of native make, which very much resemble Lesbian mixing-bowls except that they are much larger,— into these they put the flesh and boil it by lighting under it the bones of the victim: if however they have not at hand the caldron, they put all the flesh into the stomachs of the victims and adding water they light the bones under them; and these blaze up beautifully, and the stomachs easily hold the flesh when it has been stripped off the bones: thus an ox is made to boil itself, and the other kinds of victims each boil themselves also. Then when the flesh is boiled, the sacrificer takes a first offering of the flesh and of the vital organs and casts it in front of him. And they sacrifice various kinds of cattle, but especially horses.

#### 4.62

To the others of the gods they sacrifice thus and these kinds of beasts, but to Ares as follows:— In each district of the several governments they have a temple of Ares set up in this way:— bundles of brushwood are heaped up for about three furlongs in length and in breadth, but

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαλμα** -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory, statue  
**ἄγγος** -εος (n, 3) container  
**ἄκινάκης** -ου (m, 1) Persian short sword  
**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀναφέρω** bring up ~bear  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
**ἄπεδος** level, flat  
**ἀποσφάζω** cut the throat  
**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure  
**ἀπότομος** cut off; severe  
**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning ~oligarch  
**ἐπέτειος** of one year  
**ἐπινέω** allot  
**ἐπισπένδω** pour over  
**ἐτεροῖος** different; diverse  
**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind  
**ἐφέτειος** of one year

**ζωγρέω** capture, give quarter; revive ~zoo  
**θυσία** sacrifice  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**ἰδρύω** establish  
**καταχεύω** pour onto  
**κῶλον** limb  
**ὄγκος** barb of an arrow  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds  
**προσάγω** bring to a place ~demagogue  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**πωλέω** sell  
**σηκός** livestock pen  
**σιδήρεος** of iron ~siderite  
**τετράγωνος** square  
**ὑπονοστέω** sink, settle  
**ὑψος** ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit  
**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry ~bear  
**φρύγανον** (ῥ) kindling  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

καὶ εὖρος, ὕψος δὲ ἔλασσον· ἄνω δὲ τούτου τετράγωνον ἄπεδον πεποιήται, καὶ τὰ μὲν τρία τῶν κώλων ἐστὶ ἀπότομα, κατὰ δὲ τὸ ἐν ἐπιβατόν. ἔτεος δὲ ἐκάστου ἀμάξας πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν ἐπινέουσι φρυγάνων· ὑπονοστέει γὰρ δὴ αἰεὶ ὑπὸ τῶν χειμώνων. ἐπὶ τούτου δὴ τοῦ σηκοῦ ἀκινάκης σιδήρεος ἵδρυται ἀρχαῖος ἐκάστοισι, καὶ τοῦτ' ἐστὶ τοῦ Ἄρεος τὸ ἄγαλμα. τούτῳ δὲ τῷ ἀκινάκῃ θυσίας ἐπετείους προσάγουσι προβάτων καὶ ἵππων, καὶ δὴ καὶ τοῖσιδ' ἔτι πλέω θύουσι ἢ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι θεοῖσι· ὅσους ἂν τῶν πολεμίων ζωγρήσωσι, ἀπὸ τῶν ἑκατὸν ἀνδρῶν ἄνδρα θύουσι τρόπῳ οὐ τῷ αὐτῷ καὶ τὰ πρόβατα, ἀλλ' ἑτεροίῳ. ἐπεὰν γὰρ οἶνον ἐπισπείσωσι κατὰ τῶν κεφαλέων, ἀποσφάζουσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐς ἄγγος καὶ ἔπειτα ἀνενείκαντες ἄνω ἐπὶ τὸν ὄγκον τῶν φρυγάνων καταχέουσι τὸ αἷμα τοῦ ἀκινάκεω. ἄνω μὲν δὴ φορέουσι τοῦτο, κάτω δὲ παρὰ τὸ ἱρὸν ποιεῦσι τάδε· τῶν ἀποσφαγέντων ἀνδρῶν τοὺς δεξιούς ὤμους πάντας ἀποταμόντες σὺν τῇσι χερσὶ ἐς τὸν ἡέρα ἰεῖσι, καὶ ἔπειτα

καὶ |width; |height, |ἔλασσον· ἄνω δὲ τούτου |square  
 (caps) |summit  
 ἄπειρος· |the east |πέποιήται, καὶ τὰ μὲν τρία τῶν |limb ἐστὶ  
 |wind  
 |cut off; severe |τὰ δὲ τὸ ἐν ἐπιβατόν. ἔτεος δὲ ἐκάστου  
 |wagon πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν |allot |kindling  
 |sink, settle γὰρ δὴ αἰεὶ ὑπὸ τῶν χειμώνων. ἐπὶ τούτου δὴ  
 τοῦ |live- |Persian |of iron |establish |ancient, from |στοῖσι,  
 |stock |short |the beginning  
 καὶ |pen |sword καὶ τοῦτ' ἐστὶ τοῦ Ἄρεος τὸ |ornament, |τούτῳ δὲ τῷ  
 |glory, statue  
 |Persian θυσίας ἐπετείους |bring to a place |cattle, flocks, καὶ  
 |short |herds  
 |sword ἵππων, καὶ δὴ καὶ τοῖσιδ' ἔτι πλέω θύουσι ἢ τοῖσι ἄλλοις  
 θεοῖσι· ὅσους ἂν τῶν πολεμίων |capture , ἀπὸ τῶν  
 ἑκατὸν ἀνδρῶν ἄνδρα θύουσι τρόπῳ οὐ τῷ αὐτῷ καὶ τὰ  
 |cattle, flocks, ἱλλ' |different; ἐπεὰν γὰρ οἶνον |pour over  
 |herds |diverse  
 κατὰ τῶν κεφαλῶν, |cut the throat τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐς  
 |container· καὶ ἔπειτα |bring up ἄνω ἐπὶ τὸν ὄγκον τῶν  
 |kindling καταχέουσι τὸ αἷμα τοῦ |Persian ἄνω μὲν  
 |short  
 δὴ |frequentative of ο, κάτω δὲ παρὰ τὸ ἵφρον ποιεῦσι τάδε·  
 |φέρω, to carry  
 τῶν |cut the throat ἀνδρῶν τοὺς δεξιὺς ὤμους πάντας  
 |cut off, sever σὺν τῇσι χερσὶ ἐς τὸν ἥερα ἰείσι, καὶ ἔπειτα

less in height; and on the top of this there is a level square made, and three of the sides rise sheer but by the remaining one side the pile may be ascended. Every year they pile on a hundred and fifty waggon-loads of brushwood, for it is constantly settling down by reason of the weather. Upon this pile of which I speak each people has an ancient iron sword set up, and this is the sacred symbol of Ares. To this sword they bring yearly offerings of cattle and of horses; and they have the following sacrifice in addition, beyond what they make to the other gods, that is to say, of all the enemies whom they take captive in war they sacrifice one man in every hundred, not in the same manner as they sacrifice cattle, but in a different manner: for they first pour wine over their heads, and after that they cut the throats of the men, so that the blood runs into a bowl; and then they carry this up to the top of the pile of brushwood and pour the blood over the sword. This, I say, they carry up; and meanwhile below by the side of the temple they are doing thus:— they cut off all the right arms of the slaughtered men with the hands and throw them up into the air, and then when they have

*vocabulary*

**ἀγάλλω** exalt; mp: exult in  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**ἀπάρχω** cut hairs ~oligarch  
**ἀπέργω** exclude; divide; confine  
**ἀπέρδω** end  
**ἀποδέρω** flay completely  
**ἀποέργω** exclude; divide; confine  
**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**δέρμα** -τος (n, 3) skin, hide  
 ~dermatology  
**δέψω** knead  
**διάκειμαι** be in a condition  
**ἐμπίνω** (ι) drink from, drink one's fill  
**ἐξάπτω** fasten to ~haptic

**θύσῖα** sacrifice  
**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off  
 ~ballistic  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**λήϊη** booty  
**μεταλαμβάνω** share in; swap  
**οὔς** οὔατος (n) ear  
**παράπαν** completely  
**περιτέμνω** surround to steal ~tonsure  
**πλευρά** rib, side ~pleurisy  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**φονεύω** kill  
**χαλινός** (ι) bit for a horse  
**χειρόμακτρον** towel, head-cloth  
**χωρίς** separately; except, other than  
 ~heir

καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἀπέρξαντες ἱρήια ἀπαλλάσσονται. χεὶρ δὲ τῇ  
 ἂν πέση κέεται, καὶ χωρὶς ὁ νεκρός.

## 4.63

Θυσίαι μὲν νυν αὐταί σφι κατεστᾶσι. ὑσὶ δὲ οὗτοι οὐδὲν  
 νομίζουσι, οὐδὲ τρέφειν ἐν τῇ χώρῃ τὸ παράπαν θέλουσι.

## 4.64

Τὰ δ' ἐς πόλεμον ἔχοντα ὧδέ σφι διακέαται· ἐπεὰν τὸν  
 πρῶτον ἄνδρα καταβάλῃ ἀνὴρ Σκύθης, τοῦ αἵματος  
 ἐμπίνει, ὅσους δ' ἂν φονεύσῃ ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, τούτων τὰς  
 κεφαλὰς ἀποφέρει τῷ βασιλεί. ἀπενείκας μὲν γὰρ  
 κεφαλὴν τῆς λήϊς μεταλαμβάνει τὴν ἂν λάβωσι, μὴ  
 ἐνείκας δὲ οὔ. ἀποδείρει δὲ αὐτὴν τρόπῳ τοιῷδε·  
 περιταμὼν κύκλῳ περὶ τὰ ὦτα καὶ λαβόμενος τῆς  
 κεφαλῆς ἐκσεΐει, μετὰ δὲ σαρκίσας βοὸς πλευρῇ δέψει  
 τῇσι χερσί, ὀργάσας δὲ αὐτὸ ἅτε χειρόμακτρον ἔκτηται,  
 ἐκ δὲ τῶν χαλινῶν τοῦ ἵππου τὸν αὐτὸς ἐλαύνει, ἐκ τούτου  
 ἐξάπτει καὶ ἀγάλλεται· ὅς γὰρ ἂν πλείστα δέρματα



καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἀπέρξαντες ἱρήια |free from, remove; χεῖρ δὲ τῇ  
|be freed, depart

ἂν πέσῃ κέεται, καὶ |separately; – ex-’s.  
|cept, other than

4.63

Θυσίαι μὲν νυν αὐταί σφι κατεστᾶσι. ὑσὶ δὲ οὗτοι οὐδὲν  
νομίζουσι, οὐδὲ τρέφειν ἐν τῇ χώρῃ τὸ |completely θέλουσι.

4.64

Τὰ δ’ ἐς πόλεμον ἔχοντα ὧδέ σφι |be in a condition. ἔν τὸν

πρῶτον ἄνδρα |throw down, cast, off Ἰκύθης, τοῦ αἵματος

|drink , from, s δ’ ἂν |kill ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, τούτων τὰς  
|drink one’s fill

κεφαλὰς |carry off τῷ βασιλεί. |carry off μὲν γὰρ

κεφαλὴν τῆς |booty |share in; swap τὴν ἂν λάβωσι, μὴ

ἐνείκας δὲ οὐ. ἀποδείρει δὲ αὐτὴν τρόπῳ |such

|surround to|circle, περὶ τὰ |ear καὶ λαβόμενος τῆς  
|steal |wheel

κεφαλῆς ἐκσείει, μετὰ δὲ σαρκίσας βοὸς |rib, side |knead

τῇσι χερσί, ὀργάσας δὲ αὐτὸ |as if;|towel, head-cloth ἔσθεται,  
|since

ἐκ δὲ τῶν |bit τοῦ ἵππου τὸν αὐτὸς ἐλαύνει, ἐκ τούτου

|fasten to καὶ ἀγάλλεται· ὅς γὰρ ἂν πλείστα |skin, hide

finished offering the other victims, they go away; and the arm lies wheresoever it has chanced to fall, and the corpse apart from it.

**4.63**

Such are the sacrifices which are established among them; but of swine these make no use, nor indeed are they wont to keep them at all in their land.

**4.64**

That which relates to war is thus ordered with them:— When a Scythian has slain his first man, he drinks some of his blood: and of all those whom he slays in the battle he bears the heads to the king; for if he has brought a head he shares in the spoil which they have taken, but otherwise not. And he takes off the skin of the head by cutting it round about the ears and then taking hold of the scalp and shaking it off; afterwards he scrapes off the flesh with the rib of an ox, and works the skin about with his hands; and when he has thus tempered it, he keeps it as a napkin to wipe the hands upon, and hangs it from the bridle of the horse on which he himself rides, and takes pride in it; for whosoever has the greatest number of skins to wipe the hands upon,

*vocabulary***ἀποδέρω** flay completely**δέρμα** -τος (n, 3) skin, hide

~dermatology

**διατείνω** extend; (mp) try hard**διάφορος** different; difference;  
disagreeing; balance, bill**ἐκδέρω** to skin ~dermatology**ἐκκαθαίρω** clear out**ἐνερθε** beneath, below**ἐξωθεν** from outside**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**καλύπτρα** head covering**καταχρυσόω** (ō) gild**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp**λευκότης** -τος (f, 3) whiteness**ὄνυξ** -χος (m) claw, nail, hoof, talon**οὔτις** nobody, nothing**ὄφρῦς** -ος (f) eyebrow**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm**πένης** -τος (m) poor**περιτείνω** stretch all around, over**περιφέρω** carry around**ποτήριον** cup**συρράπτω** stitch together**φαρέτρα** quiver**φαρετρεών** quiver**χειρόμακτρον** towel, head-cloth**χλαῖνα** men's cloak ~chlamydia

χειρόμακτρα ἔχῃ, ἀνὴρ ἄριστος οὗτος κέκριται. πολλοὶ δὲ αὐτῶν ἐκ τῶν ἀποδερμάτων καὶ χλαίνας ἐπείνυσθαι ποιεῦσι, συρράπτοντες κατὰ περ βαίτας. πολλοὶ δὲ ἀνδρῶν ἐχθρῶν τὰς δεξιὰς χεῖρας νεκρῶν ἐόντων ἀποδείραντες αὐτοῖσι ὄνυξι καλύπτρας τῶν φαρετρέων ποιεῦνται. δέρμα δὲ ἀνθρώπου καὶ παχὺ καὶ λαμπρὸν ἦν ἄρα, σχεδὸν δερμάτων πάντων λαμπρότατον λευκότητι. πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ὅλους ἄνδρας ἐκδείραντες καὶ διατείναντες ἐπὶ ξύλων ἐπ' ἵππων περιφέρουσι.

## 4.65

Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω σφι νενόμισται, αὐτὰς δὲ τὰς κεφαλὰς, οὔτι πάντων ἀλλὰ τῶν ἐχθίστων, ποιεῦσι τάδε· ἀποπρίσας ἕκαστος πᾶν τὸ ἔνερθε τῶν ὀφρύων ἐκκαθαίρει· καὶ ἦν μὲν ἡ πένης, ὁ δὲ ἔξωθεν ὠμοβοήην μούνην περιτείνας οὕτω χρᾶται, ἦν δὲ ἡ πλούσιος, τὴν μὲν ὠμοβοήην περιτείνει, ἔσωθεν δὲ καταχρυσώσας οὕτω χρᾶται ποτηρίῳ. ποιεῦσι δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ἐκ τῶν οἰκίῳν ἦν σφι διάφοροι γένωνται καὶ ἦν ἐπικρατήσῃ αὐτοῦ

|towel, head-cloth ἡ, ἀνὴρ ἄριστος οὗτος κέκριται. πολλοὶ  
 δὲ αὐτῶν ἐκ τῶν ἀποδερμάτων καὶ |cloak ἐπείνυσθαι  
 ποιεῦσι, |stitch together κατά περ βαίτας. πολλοὶ  
 δὲ ἀνδρῶν ἐχθρῶν τὰς δεξιὰς χεῖρας νεκρῶν ἐόντων  
 |flay completely αὐτοῖσι |claw, nail, ὑπτρας τῶν φαρετρέων  
 |hoof, talon ποιεῦνται. |skin, hide ἀνθρώπου καὶ |thick, stout, brilliant ἦν  
 |clotted ἄρα, σχεδὸν |skin, hide πάντων |brilliant |whiteness  
 πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ὅλους ἄνδρας |to skin καὶ |extend; (mp)  
 |try hard ἐπὶ ξύλων ἐπ' ἵππων |carry around

## 4.65

Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω σφι νενόμισται, αὐτὰς δὲ τὰς  
 κεφαλὰς, |nobody, ἴντων ἀλλὰ τῶν ἐχθίστων, ποιεῦσι  
 |nothing τάδε· ἀποπρίσας ἕκαστος πᾶν τὸ |beneath, τῶν |eyebrow  
 |below |clear out καὶ ἦν μὲν ἦ |poor, ὁ δὲ |from outside βοέην  
 μούνην |stretch all οὕτω χρᾶται, ἦν δὲ ἦ πλούσιος, τὴν  
 |around, over μὲν ὠμοβοέην |stretch all ὥσθθεν δὲ |gild οὕτω  
 |around, over χρᾶται |cup ποιεῦσι δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ἐκ τῶν οἰκηίων ἦν  
 σφι |different; , ἐνώνται καὶ ἦν |rule over αὐτοῦ  
 |disagreeing

he is judged to be the bravest man. Many also make cloaks to wear of the skins stripped off, sewing them together like shepherds' cloaks of skins; and many take the skin together with the finger-nails off the right hands of their enemies when they are dead, and make them into covers for their quivers: now human skin it seems is both thick and glossy in appearance, more brilliantly white than any other skin. Many also take the skins off the whole bodies of men and stretch them on pieces of wood and carry them about on their horses.

**4.65**

Such are their established customs about these things; and to the skulls themselves, not of all but of their greatest enemies, they do thus:— the man saws off all below the eyebrows and clears out the inside; and if he is a poor man he only stretches ox-hide round it and then makes use of it; but if he be rich, besides stretching the ox-hide he gilds it over within, and makes use of it as a drinking-cup. They do this also if any of their own family have been at variance with them and the man gets the better of his adversary in trial

*vocabulary***ἀνδραγαθία** bravery**ἅπαξ** once**ἀτιμόω** (i) punish, dishonor**γεύω** taste ~gusto**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid)  
think over**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**κατεργάζομαι** achieve; cultivate; get;  
kill**κιρνάω** mix ~crater**κρητήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine**κύλιξ** -κος (f) cup**μαντεύομαι** to divine ~mantis**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**νομάρχης** -ου (m, 1) governor**νομός** home, district ~nemesis**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**ὄνειδος** -εος (n, 3) blame; insult**παραφέρω** serve; carry past; outdo**ῥάβδος** (f) rod, wand**σύνδυο** in pairs**χαμαί** on/near the ground

παρὰ τῷ βασιλεί, ξείνων δέ οἱ ἐλθόντων τῶν ἂν λόγον ποιέηται, τὰς κεφαλὰς ταύτας παραφέρει καὶ ἐπιλέγει ὥς οἱ ἔόντες οἰκήιοι πόλεμον προσεθήκαντο καὶ σφεων αὐτὸς ἐπεκράτησε, ταύτην ἀνδραγαθίην λέγοντες.

## 4.66

Ἄπαξ δὲ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ ἐκάστου ὁ νομάρχης ἕκαστος ἐν τῷ ἑωυτοῦ νομῷ κινρᾶ κρητῆρα οἴνου, ἀπ' οὗ πίνουνσι τῶν Σκυθέων τοῖσι ἂν ἄνδρες πολέμοι ἀραιρημένοι ἔωσι. τοῖσι δ' ἂν μὴ κατεργασμένον ἦ τοῦτο, οὐ γεύονται τοῦ οἴνου τούτου, ἀλλ' ἡτιμωμένοι ἀποκατέαται· ὄνειδος δέ σφι ἐστὶ μέγιστον τοῦτο. ὅσοι δὲ ἂν αὐτῶν καὶ κάρτα πολλοὺς ἄνδρας ἀραιρηκότες ἔωσι, οὗτοι δὲ σύνδυο κύλικας ἔχοντες πίνουνσι ὁμοῦ.

## 4.67

Μάντιες δὲ Σκυθέων εἰσὶ πολλοί, οἳ μαντεύονται ῥάβδοισι ἰτεῖνῃσι πολλῇσι ᾧδε· ἐπεὰν φακέλους ῥάβδων μεγάλους ἐνείκωνται, θέντες χαμαὶ διεξειλίσσουσι αὐτούς, καὶ



παρὰ τῷ βασιλεί, ξείνων δέ οἱ ἐλθόντων τῶν ἂν λόγον  
 ποιέηται, τὰς κεφαλὰς ταύτας |serve; carry past; say, choose, |  
 |outdo |think over  
 οἱ ἔόντες οἰκῆιοι πόλεμον προσεθήκαντο καὶ σφεων αὐτὸς  
 |rule over , ταύτην ἀνδραγαθίην λέγοντες.

## 4.66

|once δὲ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ ἐκάστου ὁ |governor ἕκαστος ἐν  
 τῷ ἐωυτοῦ |home, |mix |mixing bowl for wine ὃ οὐ πίνουσι  
 |district  
 τῶν Σκυθέων τοῖσι ἂν ἄνδρες πολέμιοι ἀραιρημένοι ἔωσι.  
 τοῖσι δ' ἂν μὴ |achieve; cultivate; ἦ τοῦτο, οὐ γέγονται  
 |get; kill  
 τοῦ οἴνου τούτου, ἀλλ' |punish, ἀποκατέεται· |blame;  
 |dishonor |insult  
 δέ σφι ἐστὶ μέγιστον τοῦτο. ὅσοι δὲ ἂν αὐτῶν καὶ  
 |very much ἄλλους ἄνδρας ἀραιρηκότες ἔωσι, οὗτοι δὲ |in pairs  
 |cup ἔχοντες πίνουσι ὁμοῦ.

## 4.67

|seer δὲ Σκυθέων εἰςὶ πολλοί, οἳ |to divine |rod, wand  
 ἰτεῖνῃσι πολλῇσι ᾧδε· ἐπεὰν φακέλους |rod, wand, ἐγάλους  
 ἐνείκωνται, θέντες |on the ground ἴσσουσι αὐτούς, καὶ

before the king; and when strangers come to him whom he highly esteems, he sets these skulls before them, and adds the comment that they being of his own family had made war against him, and that he had got the better of them; and this they hold to be a proof of manly virtue.

**4.66**

Once every year each ruler of a district mixes in his own district a bowl of wine, from which those of the Scythians drink by whom enemies have been slain; but those by whom this has not been done do not taste of the wine, but sit apart dishonoured; and this is the greatest of all disgraces among them: but those of them who have slain a very great number of men, drink with two cups together at the same time.

**4.67**

Diviners there are many among the Scythians, and they divine with a number of willow rods in the following manner:— they bring large bundles of rods, and having laid them on the ground they unroll

*vocabulary*

ἀνδρόγυνος effeminate man  
 δάκτυλος finger, toe  
 διαλαμβάνω distribute  
 διαλύω break up; relax, weaken  
 ἐλέγχω shame; try, examine  
 ἐπιορκέω swear falsely ~oath  
 ἐπίπαν =ἐπί  
 ἐστία hearth ~Hestia  
 εὐδοκιμέω be esteemed  
 θεσπίζω prophecy  
 θρίξ hair ~tresses  
 κάμνω toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be  
 troubled; be sick

μαντεύομαι to divine ~mantis  
 μαντικός prophetic  
 μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
 μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon  
 ~pomp  
 πατρώιος of the father(s), ancestral  
 ~paternal  
 πατρῷος of the father(s), ancestral  
 ῥάβδος (f) rod, wand  
 συνειλέω crowd, bind together  
 συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis  
 σχίζω split ~schism  
 τρίχα divided into thirds ~three  
 φλοιός tree bark

ἐπὶ μίαν ἐκάστην ῥάβδον τιθέντες θεσπίζουσι, ἅμα τε λέγοντες ταῦτα συνειλέουσι τὰς ῥάβδους ὀπίσω καὶ αὐτὶς κατὰ μίαν συντιθείσι. αὕτη μὲν σφι ἡ μαντικὴ πατρῴη ἐστί. οἱ δὲ Ἑνάρεες οἱ ἀνδρόγυννοι τὴν Ἀφροδίτην σφίσι λέγουσι μαντικὴν δοῦναι· φιλύρης δ' ὦν φλοιῶ μαντεύονται· ἐπεὰν τὴν φιλύρην τρίχα σχίσῃ, διαπλέκων ἐν τοῖσι δακτύλοισι τοῖσι ἑωυτοῦ καὶ διαλύων χρᾶ.

## 4.68

Ἐπεὰν δὲ βασιλεὺς ὁ Σκυθέων κάμῃ, μεταπέμπεται τῶν μαντίων ἄνδρας τρεῖς τοὺς εὐδοκιμέοντας μάλιστα, οἳ τρόπῳ τῷ εἰρημένῳ μαντεύονται· καὶ λέγουσι οὗτοι ὡς τὸ ἐπίπαν μάλιστα τάδε, ὡς τὰς βασιληίας ἰστίας ἐπιώρηκε ὃς καὶ ὅς, λέγοντες τῶν ἀστῶν τὸν ἂν δὴ λέγωσι. τὰς δὲ βασιληίας ἰστίας νόμος Σκύθησι τὰ μάλιστα ἐστὶ ὁμνύναι τότε ἐπεὰν τὸν μέγιστον ὄρκον ἐθέλωσι ὁμνύναι. αὐτίκα δὲ διαλελαμμένος ἄγεται οὗτος τὸν ἂν δὴ φῶσι ἐπιορκῆσαι, ἀπιγμένον δὲ ἐλέγχουσι οἱ μάντιες ὡς ἐπιορκήσας φαίνεται ἐν τῇ μαντικῇ τὰς βασιληίας

ἐπὶ μίαν ἐκάστην |rod, wand |ιθέντες |prophecy , ἅμα τε  
 λέγοντες ταῦτα συνειλέουσι τὰς |rod, wand ὑπίσω καὶ αὐτίς  
 κατὰ μίαν |hearken, mark ἵτη μὲν σφι ἡ |prophetic πατρῴῃ  
 ἐστί. οἱ δὲ Ἑνάρεες οἱ |effeminate man ἦν Ἀφροδίτην  
 σφίσι λέγουσι |prophetic δοῦναι· φιλύρης δ' ὦν φλοιῶ  
 |to divine ἐπεὰν τὴν φιλύρην τρίχα |split , διαπλέκων  
 ἐν τοῖσι |finger, toe τοῖσι ἑωυτοῦ καὶ |break up; re-  
 |lax, weaken

4.68

Ἐπεὰν δὲ βασιλεὺς ὁ Σκυθέων |toil, , |send; (mid) summon  
 |seer ἄνδρας τρεῖς τοὺς |acquire,  
 |be tired μάλιστα, οἱ  
 |be esteemed  
 τρόπῳ τῷ εἰρημένῳ |to divine καὶ λέγουσι οὗτοι ὡς τὸ  
 |ἐπὶ μάλιστα τάδε, ὡς τὰς βασιληίας |hearth |swear falsely  
 ὅς καὶ ὅς, λέγοντες τῶν ἀστῶν τὸν ἄν δὴ λέγωσι.  
 τὰς δὲ βασιληίας |hearth νόμος Σκύθησι τὰ μάλιστα  
 ἐστὶ ὁμνύναι τότε ἐπεὰν τὸν μέγιστον ὄρκον ἐθέλωσι  
 ὁμνύναι. αὐτίκα δὲ |distribute ἄγεται οὗτος τὸν ἄν  
 δὴ φῶσι |swear falsely , ἀπιγμένον δὲ |shame; try, ex-  
 |amine  
 ὡς |swear falsely φαίνεται ἐν τῇ |prophetic τὰς βασιληίας

them, and setting each rod by itself apart they prophesy; and while speaking thus, they roll the rods together again, and after that they place them in order a second time one by one. This manner of divination they have from their fathers: but the Enareēs or “man-women” say that Aphrodite gave them the gift of divination, and they divine accordingly with the bark of the linden-tree. Having divided the linden-bark into three strips, the man twists them together in his fingers and untwists them again, and as he does this he utters the oracle.

#### 4.68

When the king of the Scythians is sick, he sends for three of the diviners, namely those who are most in repute, who divine in the manner which has been said: and these say for the most part something like this, namely that so and so has sworn falsely by the hearth of the king, and they name one of the citizens, whosoever it may happen to be: now it is the prevailing custom of the Scythians to swear by the hearth of the king at the times when they desire to swear the most solemn oath. He then who they say has sworn falsely, is brought forthwith held fast on both sides; and when he has come the diviners charge him with this, that he is shown by their divination to have sworn falsely by the hearth of the king, and

*vocabulary***ἀλγέω** suffer ~analgesic**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free**ἄρνέομαι** deny, refuse, repudiate**δεινολογέομαι** complain loudly**δήτα** emphatic δῆ**διαλαγχάνω** divide, share**διπλήσιος** twofold, double**εἰσοράω** look at, see; treat with respect

~panorama

**ἐμποδίζω** fetter, hinder**ἐπιορκέω** swear falsely ~oath**ἑστία** hearth ~Hestia**ἐύς** good, brave, noble**καταδέω** tie up; fall short**μαντικός** prophetic**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**συγκατακαίω** burn along with**τοιόσδε** such**ὕποζεύγνυμι** (υῦ) to yoke ~zygote**ὑποπίμπρημι** set on fire; burn on a

pyre

**φρύγανον** (ϕ) kindling

ιστίας καὶ διὰ ταῦτα ἀλγέει ὁ βασιλεὺς· ὁ δὲ ἀρνέεται,  
 οὐ φάμενος ἐπιορκῆσαι, καὶ δεινολογέεται. ἀρνεομένου  
 δὲ τούτου ὁ βασιλεὺς μεταπέμπεται ἄλλους διπλησίους  
 μάντιας· καὶ ἦν μὲν καὶ οὗτοι ἐσορῶντες ἐς τὴν μαντικὴν  
 καταδήσωσι ἐπιορκῆσαι, τοῦ δὲ ἰθέως τὴν κεφαλὴν  
 ἀποτάμνουσι, καὶ τὰ χρήματα αὐτοῦ διαλαγχάνουσι  
 οἱ πρῶτοι τῶν μαντίων· ἦν δὲ οἱ ἐπελθόντες μάντιες  
 ἀπολύσωσι, ἄλλοι πάρεισι μάντιες καὶ μάλα ἄλλοι. ἦν  
 ὦν οἱ πλεῖνες τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἀπολύσωσι, δέδοκται τοῖσι  
 πρῶτοις τῶν μαντίων αὐτοῖσι ἀπόλλυσθαι.

## 4.69

Ἀπολλῦσι δῆτα αὐτοὺς τρόπῳ τοιῷδε· ἐπεὰν  
 ἄμαξαν φρυγάνων πλήσωσι καὶ ὑποξεύξωσι βοῦς,  
 ἐμποδίσαντες τοὺς μάντιας καὶ χεῖρας ὀπίσω δῆσαντες  
 καὶ στομώσαντες κατεργνῶσι ἐς μέσα τὰ φρύγανα,  
 ὑποπρήσαντες δὲ αὐτὰ ἀπιεῖσι φοβήσαντες τοὺς βοῦς.  
 πολλοὶ μὲν δὴ συγκατακαίονται τοῖσι μάντισι βόες,  
 πολλοὶ δὲ περικεκαυμένοι ἀποφεύγουσι, ἐπεὰν αὐτῶν ὁ



|hearth καὶ διὰ ταῦτα |suffer ὁ βασιλεύς· ὁ δὲ |deny,  
 |refuse  
 οὐ φάμενος |swear falsely , καὶ |complain loudly. |deny, refuse  
 δὲ τούτου ὁ βασιλεὺς |send; (mid) summon`ους |twofold,  
 |double  
 |seer καὶ ἦν μὲν καὶ οὗτοι |look at, see; treat with|prophetic  
 |respect  
 |tie up; fall short |swear falsely , τοῦ δὲ ἰθέως τὴν κεφαλὴν  
 ἀποτάμνουσι, καὶ τὰ χρήματα αὐτοῦ |divide, share  
 οἱ πρῶτοι τῶν |seer ἦν δὲ οἱ ἐπελθόντες |seer  
 ἀπολύσωσι, ἄλλοι πάρεισι |seer καὶ μάλα ἄλλοι. ἦν  
 ὦν οἱ πλεῖνες τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἀπολύσωσι, δέδοκται τοῖσι  
 πρῶτοις τῶν |seer αὐτοῖσι ἀπόλλυσθαι.

## 4.69

Ἀπολλῦσι |emphatic δὴ οὓς τρόπῳ |such ἐπεὰν  
 |wagon |kindling πλήσωσι καὶ |to yoke βοῦς,  
 |fetter, hinder τοὺς |seer καὶ χεῖρας ὀπίσω δῆσαντες  
 καὶ στομώσαντες κατεργνῶσι ἐς μέσα τὰ |kindling ,  
 ὑποπρήσαντες δὲ αὐτὰ ἀπιεῖσι φοβήσαντες τοὺς βοῦς.  
 πολλοὶ μὲν δὴ συγκατακαίονται τοῖσι |seer βόες,  
 πολλοὶ δὲ περικεκαυμένοι |avoid, escape, ἐπεὰν αὐτῶν ὁ  
 |go free

that for this reason the king is suffering pain: and he denies and says that he did not swear falsely, and complains indignantly: and when he denies it, the king sends for other diviners twice as many in number, and if these also by looking into their divination pronounce him guilty of having sworn falsely, at once they cut off the man's head, and the diviners who came first part his goods among them by lot; but if the diviners who came in afterwards acquit him, other diviners come in, and again others after them. If then the greater number acquit the man, the sentence is that the first diviners shall themselves be put to death.

**4.69**

They put them to death accordingly in the following manner:— first they fill a waggon with brushwood and yoke oxen to it; then having bound the feet of the diviners and tied their hands behind them and stopped their mouths with gags, they fasten them down in the middle of the brushwood, and having set fire to it they scare the oxen and let them go: and often the oxen are burnt to death together with the diviners, and often they escape after being scorched, when the pole

*vocabulary*

ἀκινάκης -ου (m, 1) Persian short sword

ἀκόντιον diminutive of javelin

ἐγχέω pour into

ἐνθαῦτα there, here

ἐπιτέμνω cut into; shorten

ἔρσην male

θηλὺς female; (rare) abundant ~female

κατακαίω burn down ~caustic

κατεύχομαι pray, vow, curse

κεράμινος earthen, ceramic

κύλιξ -κος (f) cup

μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis

μάχαιρα knife, dagger

οἰστός arrow

ὄρκιον oath ~orc

ῥυμός (ῥ) chariot pole

συμμίγνυμι mix with ~mix

ταφή burial, grave

τέμνω cut, sacrifice, solemnize

~tonsure

τύπτω beat, smite ~stupid

ῥυμὸς κατακαυθῇ. κατακαίουσι δὲ τρόπῳ τῷ εἰρημένῳ καὶ δι' ἄλλας αἰτίας τοὺς μάντιας, ψευδομάντιας καλέοντες. τοὺς δ' ἂν ἀποκτείνῃ βασιλεὺς, τούτων οὐδὲ τοὺς παῖδας λείπει, ἀλλὰ πάντα τὰ ἔρσενα κτείνει, τὰ δὲ θήλεα οὐκ ἀδικέει.

## 4.70

Ὅρκια δὲ ποιεῖνται Σκύθαι ὧδε πρὸς τοὺς ἂν ποιέωνται· ἐς κύλικα μεγάλην κεραμίνην οἶνον ἐγχέαντες αἷμα συμμίσγουσι τῶν τὸ ὄρκιον ταμνομένων, τύψαντες ὑπέατι ἢ ἐπιταμόντες μαχαίρῃ σμικρὸν τοῦ σώματος, καὶ ἔπειτα ἀποβράψαντες ἐς τὴν κύλικα ἀκινάκην καὶ ὀιστοὺς καὶ σάγαριν καὶ ἀκόντιον· ἐπεὰν δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσωσι, κατεύχονται πολλὰ καὶ ἔπειτα ἀποπίνουσι αὐτοί τε οἱ τὸ ὄρκιον ποιούμενοι καὶ τῶν ἐπομένων οἱ πλείστου ἄξιοι.

## 4.71

Ταφαὶ δὲ τῶν βασιλέων ἐν Γέρροισι εἰσὶ ἐς ὃ ὁ Βορυσθένης ἐστὶ προσπλωτός· ἐνθαῦτα, ἐπεὰν σφὶ ἀποθάνῃ ὁ

|chariot |burn down . |burn down δὲ τρόπον τῷ εἰρημένῳ  
 |pole  
 καὶ δι' ἄλλας αἰτίας τοὺς |seer , ψευδομάντιας  
 καλέοντες. τοὺς δ' ἂν ἀποκτείνει βασιλεύς, τούτων οὐδὲ  
 τοὺς παῖδας λείπει, ἀλλὰ πάντα τὰ |male κτείνει, τὰ δὲ  
 |female; (rare) ὀικέει.  
 |abundant

4.70

Ὅρκια δὲ ποιέονται Σκύθαι ὧδε πρὸς τοὺς ἂν ποιέωνται·  
 ἐς |cup μεγάλην |earthen, οἶνον |pour into αἶμα  
 |ceramic  
 συμμίσγουσι τῶν τὸ ὄρκιον ταμνομένων, |smite ὑπέατι  
 ἢ |cut into; shorten|knife σμικρὸν τοῦ σώματος, καὶ  
 ἔπειτα ἀποβάψαντες ἐς τὴν |cup |Persian καὶ |arrow  
 |short  
 καὶ σάγαριν καὶ |diminutive ἐπεὰν |sword  
 |of javelin  
 |pray, vow, curse. ἄλλὰ καὶ ἔπειτα ἀποπίνουσι αὐτοί τε οἱ τὸ  
 ὄρκιον ποιούμενοι καὶ τῶν ἐπομένων οἱ πλείστου ἄξιοι.

4.71

|burial, δὲ τῶν βασιλέων ἐν Γέρροισι εἰς ἐς ὃ ὁ Βορυσθένης  
 |grave  
 ἐστὶ προσπλωτός· |there, here ὑπεάν σφι ἀποθάνῃ ὃ

to which they are fastened has been burnt: and they burn the diviners in the manner described for other causes also, calling them false prophets. Now when the king puts any to death, he does not leave alive their sons either, but he puts to death all the males, not doing any hurt to the females.

**4.70**

In the following manner the Scythians make oaths to whomsoever they make them:— they pour wine into a great earthenware cup and mingle with it blood of those who are taking the oath to one another, either making a prick with an awl or cutting with a dagger a little way into their body, and then they dip into the cup a sword and arrows and a battle-axe and a javelin; and having done this, they invoke many curses on the breaker of the oath, and afterwards they drink it off, both they who are making the oath and the most honourable of their company.

**4.71**

The burial-place of the kings is in the land of the Gerrians, the place up to which the Borysthenes is navigable. In this place, when their

*vocabulary*

αἰχμή spear point ~acute

ἄμαξα wagon

ἄμαξα wagon

ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume

ἀνασχίζω rip/open up

ἀποτέμνω cut off, sever ~tonsure

ἀριστερός left-hand

βασιλῆος kingly

βραχίων -ovos (m, 3) upper arm, shoulder

ἐνθεν thence, whence

ἐνθεῦτεν thence

ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

ἐσχατάω be at the edge

ἔσχατος farthest, last

ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled

θρίξ hair ~tresses

θυμῖμα incense

καθαίρω clean

κατακηρώ cover with wax

καταμύσσω tear, scratch

κόπτω beat, cut, strike

μέτωπον forehead, front

νέκυς (ῥ) corpse, ghost ~necro

νηδύς -ος (f) belly, womb

οἰστός arrow

ὄρυγμα -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel

ὀρύσσω dig

οὖς οὖατος (n) ear

παραδείκνυμι (ῥ) receive, admit

πελάζω bring/come to, near, into contact with

περιέρχομαι go around; come next to

περιτάμνω surround to steal

ῥίς ῥινός (ῖ, f) nose, nostrils

σέλινον (ῖ) wild celery?

στιβάς -δος (f, 3) mattress

συρράπτω stitch together

ταφή burial, grave

τετράγωνος square

βασιλεύς, ὄρυγμα γῆς μέγα ὀρύσσουσι τετράγωνον,  
 ἔτοιμον δὲ τοῦτο ποιήσαντες ἀναλαμβάνουσι τὸν  
 νεκρόν, κατακεκρωμένον μὲν τὸ σῶμα, τὴν δὲ  
 νηδὺν ἀνασχιθεῖσαν καὶ καθαρθεῖσαν, πλέην κυπέρου  
 κεκομμένου καὶ θυμῆματος καὶ σελίνου σπέρματος  
 καὶ ἀννήσου, συνερραμμένην ὀπίσω, καὶ κομίζουσι ἐν  
 ἀμάξῃ ἐς ἄλλο ἔθνος. οἱ δὲ ἂν παραδέξωνται κομισθέντα  
 τὸν νεκρόν, ποιεῦσι τά περ οἱ βασιλῆιοι Σκύθαι· τοῦ  
 ὠτὸς ἀποτάμνονται, τρίχας περικείρονται, βραχίονας  
 περιτάμνονται, μέτωπον καὶ ῥῖνα καταμύσσονται, διὰ  
 τῆς ἀριστερῆς χειρὸς ὀιστοὺς διαβυνέονται. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ  
 κομίζουσι ἐν τῇ ἀμάξῃ τοῦ βασιλέως τὸν νέκυν ἐς ἄλλο  
 ἔθνος τῶν ἄρχουσι· οἱ δέ σφι ἔπονται ἐς τοὺς πρότερον  
 ἦλθον. ἐπεὰν δὲ πάντας περιέλθωσι τὸν νέκυν κομίζοντες,  
 ἐν τε Γέρροισι ἔσχατα κατοικημένοισι εἰσὶ τῶν ἐθνέων  
 τῶν ἄρχουσι καὶ ἐν τῇσι ταφῇσι. καὶ ἔπειτα, ἐπεὰν θέωσι  
 τὸν νέκυν ἐν τῇσι θήκησι ἐπὶ στιβάδος, παραπήξαντες  
 αἰχμὰς ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν τοῦ νεκροῦ ξύλα



βασιλεύς, |trench, γῆς μέγα |dig |square ,  
 |tunnel  
 ἔτοιμον δὲ τοῦτο ποιήσαντες |take up, recover, τὸν  
 |resume  
 νεκρόν, κατακεκηρωμένον μὲν τὸ σῶμα, τὴν δὲ  
 |belly, |rip/open up καὶ |clean , |bring/come to, near, into con-  
 |womb |contact with  
 |beat, cut, strike :αἱ |incense καὶ |wild celery? τέρματος  
 καὶ ἀννήσου, |stitch together ὀπίσω, καὶ κομίζουσι ἐν  
 |wagon ἐς ἄλλο ἔθνος. οἳ δὲ ἂν παραδέξωνται κομισθέντα  
 τὸν νεκρόν, ποιεῦσι τά περ οἱ |kingly Σκύθαι· τοῦ  
 ὥτος ἀποτάμνονται, |hair περικείμενοι, |upper arm, shoulder  
 |surround to steal, |forehead, καὶ |nose, |tear, scratch , διὰ  
 |front |nostrils  
 τῆς |left-hand χειρὸς |arrow διαβυνέονται. |thence δὲ  
 κομίζουσι ἐν τῇ |wagon τοῦ βασιλέως τὸν νέκυν ἐς ἄλλο  
 ἔθνος τῶν ἄρχουσι· οἳ δὲ σφί ἐπονται ἐς τοὺς πρότερον  
 ἦλθον. ἐπεὰν δὲ πάντας |go around; τὸν νέκυν κομίζοντες,  
 |come next to  
 ἔν τε Γέρροισι ἔσχατα κατοικημένοισι εἰς τῶν ἐθνέων  
 τῶν ἄρχουσι καὶ ἐν τῇσι |burial, καὶ ἔπειτα, ἐπεὰν θέωσι  
 |grave  
 τὸν νέκυν ἐν τῇσι θήκησι ἐπὶ |mattress , παραπήξαντες  
 |spear ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τοῦ νεκροῦ ξύλα  
 |point

king has died, they make a large square excavation in the earth; and when they have made this ready, they take up the corpse (the body being covered over with wax and the belly ripped up and cleansed, and then sewn together again, after it has been filled with kyperos cut up and spices and parsley-seed and anise), and they convey it in a waggon to another nation. Then those who receive the corpse thus conveyed to them do the same as the Royal Scythians, that is they cut off a part of their ear and shave their hair round about and cut themselves all over the arms and tear their forehead and nose and pass arrows through their left hand. Thence they convey in the waggon the corpse of the king to another of the nations over whom they rule; and they to whom they came before accompany them: and when they have gone round to all conveying the corpse, then they are in the land of the Gerrians, who have their settlements furthest away of all the nations over whom they rule, and they have reached the spot where the burial place is. After that, having placed the corpse in the tomb upon a bed of leaves, they stick spears along on this side and that of the corpse

*vocabulary*

ἀγγελιηφόρος messenger

ἀμιλλάομαι contend

ἀπαρχή ἀπόρχης first offering

ἀποπνίγω (ι) strangle; stew; (π) drown

ἄργυρος silver, money ~Argentina

ἀψίς -ος (ι, f) mesh of a net

ἐγγενής native, kindred; innate

ἐμπίμπλημι fill with

ἐξαιρέω pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
~heresy

εὖς good, brave, noble

ἥμισυς half ~hemisphere

θάπτω bury ~epitaph

θεράπων -οντος (m, 3) helper,  
henchman, servant ~therapy

θήκη chest, grave

ἵπποκόμος horse groom

καθαίρω clean

κοιλίη belly; cavity

μάγειρος butcher

οἶνοχόος -ῶ cupbearer ~wine

ὄον οὶ type of fruit

παλλακή sex slave

περιφέρω carry around

προθυμέομαι (ῶ) be eager

ρίψ ρίπестτός (f) wicker

συρράπτω stitch together

τοιόσδε such

ὑπτίος lying on one's back; flipped; flat

φιάλη jar ~vial

χῶμα -τος (n, 3) mound of dirt

ὑπερτείνουνσι καὶ ἔπειτα ῥύβι καταστεγάζουσι, ἐν δὲ τῇ  
λοιπῇ εὐρυχωρίῃ τῆς θήκης τῶν παλλακέων τε μίαν  
ἀποπνίζαντες θάπτουσι καὶ τὸν οἶνοχόον καὶ μάγειρον  
καὶ ἵπποκόμον καὶ διήκονον καὶ ἀγγελιηφόρον καὶ ἵππους  
καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πάντων ἀπαρχὰς καὶ φιάλας χρυσέας·  
ἀργύρῳ δὲ οὐδὲν οὐδὲ χαλκῷ χρέωνται. ταῦτα δὲ  
ποιήσαντες χοῦσι πάντες χῶμα μέγα, ἀμιλλώμενοι καὶ  
προθυμεόμενοι ὥς μέγιστον ποιῆσαι.

## 4.72

Ἐνιαντοῦ δὲ περιφερομένου αὐτὶς ποιεῦσι τοιόνδε·  
λαβόντες τῶν λοιπῶν θεραπόντων τοὺς ἐπιτηδεοτάτους  
οἱ δὲ εἰσὶ Σκύθαι ἐγγενέες· οὗτοι γὰρ θεραπεύουσι τοὺς  
ἂν αὐτὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς κελεύσῃ ἀργυρώνητοι δὲ οὐκ εἰσὶ σφι  
θεράποντες, τούτων ὦν τῶν διηκόνων ἐπεὰν ἀποπνίζωσι  
πεντήκοντα καὶ ἵππους τοὺς καλλίστους πεντήκοντα,  
ἐξελόντες αὐτῶν τὴν κοιλίην καὶ καθήραντες ἐμπιπλάσι  
ἀχύρων καὶ συρράπτουσι. ἀψίδος δὲ ἥμισυ ἐπὶ δύο ξύλα  
στήσαντες ὕπτιον καὶ τὸ ἕτερον ἥμισυ

ὑπερτείνουσι καὶ ἔπειτα |wicker πταστεγάζουσι, ἐν δὲ τῇ  
 λοιπῇ εὐρυχωρίῃ τῆς |chest, τῶν |sex slave τε μίαν  
 |grave  
 |strangle; stew; (p)|bury καὶ τὸν |cupbearer καὶ |butcher  
 |drown  
 καὶ |horse groom καὶ διήκονον καὶ |messenger καὶ ἵππους  
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πάντων |first καὶ |jar χρυσέας·  
 |offering  
 |silver, δὲ οὐδὲν οὐδὲ χαλκῷ χρέωνται. ταῦτα δὲ  
 |money  
 ποιήσαντες χοῦσι πάντες |mound of dirt |contend καὶ  
 |be eager ὥς μέγιστον ποιῆσαι.

## 4.72

Ἐνιαυτοῦ δὲ |carry around αὖτις ποιεῦσι |such  
 λαβόντες τῶν λοιπῶν |companion τοὺς ἐπιτηδεοτάτους  
 οἱ δὲ εἰσὶ Σκύθαι |native, kin- ὅτοι γὰρ θεραπεύουσι τοὺς  
 |dred; innate  
 ἂν αὐτὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς κελεύσῃ ἀργυρώνητοι δὲ οὐκ εἰσὶ σφι  
 |companion , τούτων ὧν τῶν διηκόνων ἐπεὰν |strangle; stew;  
 |(p) drown  
 πεντήκοντα καὶ ἵππους τοὺς καλλίστους πεντήκοντα,  
 |pick, steal; dedi- ὦν τὴν |belly; καὶ |clean |fill with  
 |cate; destroy |cavity  
 ἀχύρων καὶ |stitch together |mesh δὲ |half ἐπὶ δύο ξύλα  
 στήσαντες |supine καὶ τὸ ἕτερον |half

and stretch pieces of wood over them, and then they cover the place in with matting. Then they strangle and bury in the remaining space of the tomb one of the king's mistresses, his cup-bearer, his cook, his horse-keeper, his attendant, and his bearer of messages, and also horses, and a first portion of all things else, and cups of gold; for silver they do not use at all, nor yet bronze. Having thus done they all join together to pile up a great mound, vying with one another and zealously endeavouring to make it as large as possible.

#### 4.72

Afterwards, when the year comes round again, they do as follows:— they take the most capable of the remaining servants,— and these are native Scythians, for those serve him whom the king himself commands to do so, and his servants are not bought for money,— of these attendants then they strangle fifty and also fifty of the finest horses; and when they have taken out their bowels and cleansed the belly, they fill it with chaff and sew it together again. Then they set the half of a wheel upon two stakes with the hollow side upwards, and the other half

*vocabulary*

**ἄκανθα** thorn bush; (pl) thistledown  
 ~pyracantha  
**ἀναβιβάζω** make to mount, promote  
**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
 (intrans) ride away  
**ἀποπνίγω** (i) strangle; stew; (p) drown  
**ἀψίς** -ος (i, f) mesh of a net  
**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric  
**διελαύνω** drive through, over ~elastic  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**κατακρεμάννυμι** hang up  
**καταπήγνυμι** (ū) to stick, plant ~fang  
**κατατείνω** stretch out  
**κάτωθεν** below, from below  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**μετέωρος** up in the air ~meteor  
**μήκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature

**μηρός** thigh, femur  
**νεηνίσκος** young man  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**πάσσαλος** hook, peg  
**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm  
**πήγνυμι** (ū) stick, set, build ~fang  
**σήμα** -τος (n, 3) mark, sign, grave  
 mound ~semaphore  
**σκέλος** -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis  
**στόμιον** aperture; bit  
**τράχηλος** neck ~trachea  
**ὑπερέχω** be over; protect  
**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;  
 submit to  
**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's  
 support, seize; speak up; imagine  
 ~epilepsy  
**χαλινός** (i) bit for a horse

τῆς ἀψίδος ἐπ' ἕτερα δύο, καταπήξαντες τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ  
πολλὰ ταῦτα, ἔπειτα τῶν ἵππων κατὰ τὰ μήκεα ξύλα  
παχέα διελάσαντες μέχρι τῶν τραχήλων ἀναβιβάζουσι  
αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὰς ἀψίδας· τῶν δὲ αἱ μὲν πρότεραι ἀψίδες  
ὑπέχουσι τοὺς ὤμους τῶν ἵππων, αἱ δὲ ὀπισθε παρὰ  
τοὺς μηροὺς τὰς γαστέρας ὑπολαμβάνουσι· σκέλεα δὲ  
ἀμφοτέρα κατακρέμαται μετέωρα. χαλινοὺς δὲ καὶ  
στόμια ἐμβαλόντες ἐς τοὺς ἵππους κατατείνουνσι ἐς τὸ  
πρόσθε αὐτῶν καὶ ἔπειτα ἐκ πασσάλων δέουσι. τῶν δὲ  
δὴ νεηνίσκων τῶν ἀποπεπνιγμένων τῶν πεντήκοντα ἕνα  
ἕκαστον ἀναβιβάζουσι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον, ὧδε ἀναβιβάζοντες,  
ἐπεὰν νεκροῦ ἐκάστου παρὰ τὴν ἄκανθαν ξύλον ὀρθὸν  
διελάσωσι μέχρι τοῦ τραχήλου· κάτωθεν δὲ ὑπερέχει τοῦ  
ξύλου τούτου τὸ ἐς τὸρμον πηγνύουσι τοῦ ἐτέρου ξύλου τοῦ  
διὰ τοῦ ἵππου. ἐπιστήσαντες δὲ κύκλῳ τὸ σῆμα ἰππέας  
τοιούτους ἀπελαύνουσι.

## 4.73

Οὕτω μὲν τοὺς βασιλέας θάπτουσι· τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους



τῆς |mesh ἐπ' ἕτερα δύο, |to stick, plant τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ  
πολλὰ ταῦτα, ἔπειτα τῶν ἵππων κατὰ τὰ |length, ξύλα  
|stature  
|thick, |drive through, μέχρι τῶν |neck |make to mount,  
|stout, |over |promote  
|clotted  
αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὰς |mesh τῶν δὲ αἱ μὲν πρότεραι ἀψίδες  
|promise τοὺς ὤμους τῶν ἵππων, αἱ δὲ ὅπισθε παρὰ  
τοὺς |thigh τὰς γαστέρας |take under one's|leg δὲ  
|support, seize; speak  
ἀμφοτέρα |hang up |up in the air |bit δὲ καὶ  
|aperture; bit, ἰαλόντες ἐς τοὺς ἵππους |stretch out ἐς τὸ  
πρόσθε αὐτῶν καὶ ἔπειτα ἐκ |hook, peg δέουσι. τῶν δὲ  
δὴ |young man τῶν |strangle; stew; (p) τῶν πεντήκοντα ἓνα  
|drown  
ἕκαστον |make to mount, ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον, ὧδε |make to mount,,  
|promote |promote  
ἐπεὰν νεκροῦ ἐκάστου παρὰ τὴν |thorn bush; (pl) ὀρθὸν  
|thistledown  
|drive μέχρι τοῦ |neck κάτωθεν δὲ |be over; protect  
|through, |over  
ξύλου τούτου τὸ ἐς τόρμον |stick, set, build ἑτέρου ξύλου τοῦ  
διὰ τοῦ ἵππου. ἐπιστήσαντες δὲ |circle, τὸ |mark, ὁ sign, ὁ  
|wheel |grave mound  
τοιούτους |expel, exclude, ward off;  
|(intrans) ride away

4.73

Οὕτω μὲν τοὺς βασιλέας θάπτουσι· τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους

of the wheel upon other two stakes, and in this manner they fix a number of these; and after this they run thick stakes through the length of the horses as far as the necks, and they mount them upon the wheels; and the front pieces of wheel support the shoulders of the horses, while those behind bear up their bellies, going by the side of the thighs; and both front and hind legs hang in the air. On the horses they put bridles and bits, and stretch the bridles tight in front of them and then tie them up to pegs: and of the fifty young men who have been strangled they mount each one upon his horse, having first run a straight stake through each body along by the spine up to the neck; and a part of this stake projects below, which they fasten into a socket made in the other stake that runs through the horse. Having set horsemen such as I have described in a circle round the tomb, they then ride away.

#### 4.73

Thus they bury their kings; but as for the other Scythians, when they die

*vocabulary***ἀγχοτάτω** nearest**ἄμαξα** wagon**αὐτόματος** self-willed, accidental

~after

**διαφανής** transparent**εἶμα** -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἐκπλύνω** (ῥ) wash dirt out; wash thoroughly**ἐμφορής** similar**εὖωχέω** fete, feed well**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman**καθαίρω** clean**κάνναβις** hemp**κλίνω** (ι) lean, recline ~incline**λίνεος** linen**λίνον** cord, net, linen**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**παραπλήσιος** similar to**παρατίθημι** put near, put at risk

~thesis

**παχύτης** -τος (f, 3) thickness**περιάγω** lead around**περιτείνω** stretch all around, over**πίλος** felt**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems**σκάπτω** dig**σκάφη** trough, tray**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora**τοιόσδε** such**ὑπερφέρω** carry over; surpass**ὑποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

Σκύθας, ἐπεὰν ἀποθάνωσι, περιάγουσι οἱ ἀγχοτάτω  
 προσήκοντες κατὰ τοὺς φίλους ἐν ἀμάξῃσι κειμένους.  
 τῶν δὲ ἕκαστος ὑποδεκόμενος εὐωχέει τοὺς ἐπομένους,  
 καὶ τῷ νεκρῷ ἀπάντων παραπλησίως παρατίθῃσι ὅσα  
 τοῖσι ἄλλοισι. ἡμέρας δὲ τεσσαράκοντα οὕτω οἱ  
 ἰδιῶται περιάγονται, ἔπειτα θάπτονται. θάψαντες δὲ  
 οἱ Σκύψαι καθαίρονται τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. σμησάμενοι τὰς  
 κεφαλὰς καὶ ἐκπλυνάμενοι ποιεῦσι περὶ τὸ σῶμα τάδε  
 ἐπεὰν ξύλα στήσωσι τρία ἐς ἄλληλα κεκλιμένα, περὶ  
 ταῦτα πῖλους εἰρινέους περιτείνουσι, συμφράξαντες δὲ  
 ὥς μάλιστα λίθους ἐκ πυρὸς διαφανέας ἐσβάλλουσι ἐς  
 σκάφην κειμένην ἐν μέσῳ τῶν ξύλων τε καὶ τῶν πέλων.

## 4.74

Ἔστι δέ σφι κάνναβις φυομένη ἐν τῇ χώρῃ πλὴν  
 παχύτητος καὶ μεγάλθους τῷ λίνῳ ἐμφερεστάτη· ταύτη  
 δὲ πολλῷ ὑπερφέρει ἢ κάνναβις. αὕτη καὶ αὐτομάτη καὶ  
 σπειρομένη φύεται, καὶ ἐξ αὐτῆς Θρήικες μὲν καὶ εἴματα  
 ποιεῦνται τοῖσι λινέοισι ὁμοιότατα· οὐδ' ἄν, ὅστις

Σκύθας, ἐπεὰν ἀποθάνωσι, |lead around οἱ |nearest

|belong to, it be- κατὰ τοὺς φίλους ἐν |wagon κειμένους.  
|seems

τῶν δὲ ἕκαστος |welcome, accept, |fete, feed well ἔπομένους,  
|suffer

καὶ τῷ νεκρῷ ἀπάντων |similar to |put near, put ὅσα  
|at risk

τοῖσι ἄλλοισι. ἡμέρας δὲ τεσσαράκοντα οὕτω οἱ

|private; a|lead around , ἔπειτα θάπτονται. θάψαντες δὲ  
|layman

οἱ Σκύθαι |clean τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. σμησάμενοι τὰς

κεφαλὰς καὶ |wash dirt out; |τοιεῦσι περὶ τὸ σῶμα τάδε  
|wash thoroughly

ἐπεὰν ξύλα στήσωσι τρία ἐς ἄλληλα |lean, recline, περὶ

ταῦτα |felt εἰρινέους |stretch all, συμφράξαντες δὲ  
|around, over

ὥς μάλιστα λίθους ἐκ πυρὸς |transparent ἐσβάλλουσι ἐς

σκάφην κειμένην ἐν μέσῳ τῶν ξύλων τε καὶ τῶν |felt

#### 4.74

Ἔστι δέ σφι |hemp |produce, ἔν τῇ χώρῃ πλὴν  
|beget; clasp

|thickness καὶ μεγάθεος τῷ |cord, |similar ταύτῃ  
|net,  
|linen

δὲ πολλῶ |carry over; su- |hemp αὕτη καὶ |self-willed, καὶ  
|pass |accidental

|sow |produce, ἔξ αὐτῆς Θρήκες μὲν καὶ |garment  
|beget; clasp

ποιεῦνται τοῖσι |linen ὁμοιότατα· οὐδ' ἄν, ὅστις

their nearest relations carry them round laid in waggons to their friends in succession; and of them each one when he receives the body entertains those who accompany it, and before the corpse they serve up of all things about the same quantity as before the others. Thus private persons are carried about for forty days, and then they are buried: and after burying them the Scythians cleanse themselves in the following way:— they soap their heads and wash them well, and then, for their body, they set up three stakes leaning towards one another and about them they stretch woollen felt coverings, and when they have closed them as much as possible they throw stones heated red-hot into a basin placed in the middle of the stakes and the felt coverings.

#### 4.74

Now they have hemp growing in their land, which is very like flax except in thickness and in height, for in these respects the hemp is much superior. This grows both of itself and with cultivation; and of it the Thracians even make garments, which are very like those made of flaxen thread, so that he who was not specially conversant with it would

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαμαι** wonder, admire; resent,  
begrudge

**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy

**διάγναια** deliberation

**διαφανής** transparent

**εἶμα** -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest

**ἐπιβάλλω** throw upon, head for  
~ballistic

**εὖς** good, brave, noble

**εὐωδία** sweet smell

**θυμιάω** (ῶ) burn for smoke

**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops

**ἴσχω** restrain, hold back ~ischemia

**κάνναβις** hemp

**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος

**κατάρα** curse

**κέδρος** (f) cedar ~cedar

**κυπάρισσος** (f) cypress

**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp

**λίνεος** linen

**λίνον** cord, net, linen

**λουτρόν** bathing water

**λούω** wash, bathe

**μίν** him, her, it

**ὄον** οὔ type of fruit

**παράπαν** completely

**παραχέω** pour in, beside

**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm

**πίλος** felt

**τραχύς** (ᾱ) rough ~trachea

**τρίβω** (ῖ) rub; (mid) be worn out  
~tribulation

**ὑποδύνω** (mp) get under; play a  
character

μὴ κάρτα τρίβων εἴη αὐτῆς, διαγνοίη λίνου ἢ καννάβιος ἐστί· ὃς δὲ μὴ εἶδε κω τὴν κανναβίδα, λίνεον δοκήσει εἶναι τὸ εἶμα.

## 4.75

Ταύτης ὦν οἱ Σκύθαι τῆς καννάβιος τὸ σπέρμα ἐπεὰν λάβωσι, ὑποδύνουσι ὑπὸ τοὺς πέλους, καὶ ἔπειτα ἐπιβάλλουσι τὸ σπέρμα ἐπὶ τοὺς διαφανέας λίθους τῷ πυρί· τὸ δὲ θυμᾶται ἐπιβαλλόμενον καὶ ἀτμίδα παρέχεται τοσαύτην ὥστε Ἑλληνικὴ οὐδεμία ἂν μιν πυρὶν ἀποκρατήσῃ. οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι ἀγάμενοι τῇ πυρὶν ὠρύονται. τοῦτό σφι ἀντὶ λουτροῦ ἐστι. οὐ γὰρ δὴ λούονται ὕδατι τὸ παράπαν τὸ σῶμα. αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες αὐτῶν ὕδωρ παραχέουσαι κατασώχουσι περὶ λίθον τρηχὺν τῆς κυπαρίσσου καὶ κέδρου καὶ λιβάνου ξύλου, καὶ ἔπειτα τὸ κατασωχόμενον τοῦτο παχὺ ἐὼν καταπλάσσονται πᾶν τὸ σῶμα καὶ τὸ πρόσωπον· καὶ ἅμα μὲν εὐωδίη σφέας ἀπὸ τούτου ἴσχει, ἅμα δὲ ἀπαιρέουσαι τῇ δευτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ τὴν καταπλαστὴν γίνονται καθαραὶ καὶ λαμπραί.





not be able to decide whether the garments were of flax or of hemp; and he who had not before seen stuff woven of hemp would suppose that the garment was made of flax.

**4.75**

The Scythians then take the seed of this hemp and creep under the felt coverings, and then they throw the seed upon the stones which have been heated red-hot: and it burns like incense and produces a vapour so thick that no vapour-bath in Hellas would surpass it: and the Scythians being delighted with the vapour-bath howl like wolves. This is to them instead of washing, for in fact they do not wash their bodies at all in water. Their women however pound with a rough stone the wood of the cypress and cedar and frankincense tree, pouring in water with it, and then with this pounded stuff, which is thick, they plaster over all their body and also their face; and not only does a sweet smell attach to them by reason of this, but also when they take off the plaster on the next day, their skin is clean and shining.

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαλμα** -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory,  
 statue  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine  
**ἀπονοστέω** go home  
**δένδρεον** -οῦ tree  
**δένδρον** tree  
**δένδρος** tree  
**διαδέχομαι** be next, succeed ~doctrine  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**ἐκδέω** attach, hang on  
**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty

**ἦθος ἥθεος** (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos  
**ἥκιστος** least; above all  
**θύω** (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος  
**καταδύω** enter, sink  
**μεγαλοπρεπής** befitting greatness  
**νόμιος** customary  
**ὁρτή** holiday, feast  
**παννυχίς** night party, vigil  
**παντοῖος** all kinds of  
**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into  
 contact with  
**σοφία** skill; wisdom ~sophistry  
**ὕγιής** sound, profitable ~hygiene

## 4.76

Ξεινικοῖσι δὲ νομαίοισι καὶ οὗτοι φεύγουσι αἰνῶς χρᾶσθαι, μήτε τεῶν ἄλλων, Ἑλληνικοῖσι δὲ καὶ ἥκιστα, ὥς διέδεξαν Ἀνάχαρσις τε καὶ δεύτερα αὐτὶς Σκύλης. τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ Ἀνάχαρσις ἐπείτε γῆν πολλὴν θεωρήσας καὶ ἀποδεξάμενος κατ' αὐτὴν σοφίην πολλὴν ἐκομίζετο ἐς ἥθεα τὰ Σκυθέων, πλέων δι' Ἑλλησπόντου προσίσχει ἐς Κύζικον. καὶ εὔρε γὰρ τῇ μητρὶ τῶν θεῶν ἀνάγοντας τοὺς Κυζικηνοὺς ὀρθὴν μεγαλοπρεπέως κάρτα, εὔξατο τῇ μητρὶ ὃ Ἀνάχαρσις, ἣν σῶς καὶ ὑγιὲς ἀπονοστήσῃ ἐς ἑωυτοῦ, θύσειν τε κατὰ ταῦτα κατὰ ὥρα τοὺς Κυζικηνοὺς ποιεῦντας καὶ παννυχίδα στήσειν. ὥς δὲ ἀπίκητο ἐς τὴν Σκυθικὴν καταδὺς ἐς τὴν καλεομένην Ὑλαίην ἣ δ' ἔστι μὲν παρὰ τὸν Ἀχιλλήιον δρόμον, τυγχάνει δὲ πᾶσα ἐοῦσα δενδρέων παντοίων πλέη, ἐς ταύτην δὴ καταδὺς ὃ Ἀνάχαρσις τὴν ὀρθὴν ἐπετέλεε πᾶσαν τῇ θεῷ, τύμπανον τε ἔχων καὶ ἐκδησάμενος ἀγάλματα. καὶ τῶν τις Σκυθέων καταφρασθεὶς αὐτὸν ταῦτα ποιεῦντα

4.76

Ξεινικοῖσι δὲ νομαίοισι καὶ οὗτοι φεύγουσι αἰνῶς χρᾶσθαι,  
 μήτε τεῶν ἄλλων, Ἑλληνικοῖσι δὲ καὶ <sup>least; , ὥς</sup>  
<sup>above</sup>  
<sup>all</sup>  
 |be next, succeed| μρσις τε καὶ δεύτερα αὐτις Σκυλῆς. τοῦτο  
 μὲν γὰρ Ἀνάχαρσις ἐπείτε γῆν πολλὴν θεωρήσας καὶ  
 ἀποδεξάμενος κατ' αὐτὴν σοφίην πολλὴν ἐκομίζετο ἐς  
 |habit, . ἅ | Σκυθέων, πλέων δι' Ἑλλησπόντου προσίσχει ἐς  
 |habitat  
 Κύζικον. καὶ εὔρε γὰρ τῇ μητρὶ τῶν θεῶν ἀνάγοντας  
 τοὺς Κυζικηνοὺς |holiday, |befitting greatness |very much ἕξατο  
 |feast  
 τῇ μητρὶ ὁ Ἀνάχαρσις, ἦν σῶς καὶ |sound, |go home ἐς  
 |profitable  
 ἑωντοῦ, |rush; sacrifice . ἅ ταῦτά κατὰ ὥρα τοὺς Κυζικηνοὺς  
 ποιέοντας καὶ |night party, στήσειν. ὥς δὲ ἀπύκετο ἐς  
 |vigil  
 τὴν Σκυθικὴν |enter, sink ἐς τὴν καλεομένην Ὑλαίην ἥ δ'  
 ἔστι μὲν παρὰ τὸν Ἀχιλλήιον |running, τυγχάνει δὲ πᾶσα  
 εὐοῦσα δενδρέων |all kinds of |bring/come to, 'near, in|enter, sink |  
 |contact with  
 Ἀνάχαρσις τὴν |holiday, |complete; do ᾧ αὐτῇ θεῷ, τύμπανον  
 |feast |religious duty  
 τε ἔχων καὶ |attach, hang on |ornament, . καὶ τῶν τις Σκυθέων  
 |glory, statue  
 καταφρασθεὶς αὐτὸν ταῦτα ποιέοντα

## 4.76

This nation also is very averse to adopting strange customs, rejecting even those of other tribes among themselves, but especially those of the Hellenes, as the history of Anacharsis and also afterwards of Skyles proved. For as to Anacharsis first, when he was returning to the abodes of the Scythians, after having visited many lands and displayed in them much wisdom, as he sailed through the Hellespont he put in to Kyzikos: and since he found the people of Kyzikos celebrating a festival very magnificently in honour of the Mother of the gods, Anacharsis vowed to the Mother that if he should return safe and sound to his own land, he would both sacrifice to her with the same rites as he saw the men of Kyzikos do, and also hold a night festival. So when he came to Scythia he went down into the region called Hylaia (this is along by the side of the racecourse of Achilles and is quite full, as it happens, of trees of all kinds),— into this, I say, Anacharsis went down, and proceeded to perform all the ceremonies of the festival in honour of the goddess, with a kettle-drum and with images hung about himself. And one of the Scythians perceived him doing this and declared it

*vocabulary*

**ἀπονοστέω** go home

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp

**ἄσχολος** busy

**διαχράομαι** use habitually; lend out;  
reveal

**διαχρέομαι** use habitually; lend out;  
reveal

**ἔθος** ἔθεος (n, 3) custom, habit  
~ethology

**ἐκδημέω** be abroad

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ἐπίτροπος** agent, officer

**εὖς** good, brave, noble

**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although

**μίν** him, her, it

**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit

**πάτρων** -ος (m, 3) patron

**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore

**σοφία** skill; wisdom ~sophistry

**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy

**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic

ἐσήμηνε τῷ βασιλεί Σαυλίῳ· ὁ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπικόμενος ὥς εἶδε τὸν Ἀνάχαρσιν ποιεῦντα ταῦτα, τοξεύσας αὐτὸν ἀπέκτεινε. καὶ νῦν ἦν τις εἴρηται περὶ Ἀναχάρσιος, οὐ φασί μιν Σκύθαι γινώσκειν, διὰ τοῦτο ὅτι ἐξεδήμησέ τε ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ ξεινικοῖσι ἔθεσι διεχρήσατο. ὥς δ' ἐγὼ ἤκουσα Τύμνεω τοῦ Ἀριαπείθεος ἐπιτρόπου, εἶναι αὐτὸν Ἰδανθύρσου τοῦ Σκυθέων βασιλέος πάτρων, παῖδα δὲ εἶναι Γνούρου τοῦ Λύκου τοῦ Σπαργαπείθεος. εἰ ὦν ταύτης ἦν τῆς οἰκίης ὁ Ἀνάχαρσις, ἴστω ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀδελφεοῦ ἀποθανών· Ἰδάνθυρσος γὰρ ἦν παῖς Σαυλίου, Σαύλιος δὲ ἦν ὁ ἀποκτείνας Ἀνάχαρσιν.

## 4.77

Καίτοι τινὰ ἤδη ἤκουσα λόγον ἄλλον ὑπὸ Πελοποννησίων λεγόμενον, ὥς ὑπὸ τοῦ Σκυθέων βασιλέος Ἀνάχαρσις ἀποπεμφθεὶς τῆς Ἑλλάδος μαθητὴς γένοιτο, ὀπίσω τε ἀπονοστήσας φαίη πρὸς τὸν ἀποπέμψαντα Ἕλληνας πάντας ἀσχόλους εἶναι ἐς πᾶσαν σοφίην πλὴν Λακεδαιμονίων, τούτοις δὲ εἶναι μούνοισι σωφρόνως



|give orders to; βασιλεί Σαυλίω· ὁ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπικόμενος  
|show; mark

ὥς εἶδε τὸν Ἀνάχαρσιν ποιεῦντα ταῦτα, |shoot an arrow at  
ἀπέκτεινε. καὶ νῦν ἦν τις εἴρηται περὶ Ἀναχάρσιος, οὐ  
φασί μιν Σκύθαι γινώσκειν, διὰ τοῦτο ὅτι |be abroad τε  
ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ ξεινικοῖσι |custom, |habit ἐχρήσατο. ὥς δ'  
ἐγὼ ἤκουσα Τύμνεω τοῦ Ἀριαπίθεος |agent, officer, εἶναι  
αὐτὸν Ἰδανθύρσου τοῦ Σκυθέων βασιλέος |patron , παῖδα  
δὲ εἶναι Γνούρου τοῦ Λύκου τοῦ Σπαργαπίθεος. εἰ ὦν  
ταύτης ἦν τῆς οἰκίης ὁ Ἀνάχαρσις, ἴστω ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀδελφεοῦ  
ἀποθανόν· Ἰδάνθυρσος γὰρ ἦν παῖς Σαυλίου, Σαύλιος δὲ  
ἦν ὁ ἀποκτείνας Ἀνάχαρσιν.

#### 4.77

|and yet; and in ἤδη ἤκουσα λόγον ἄλλον ὑπὸ Πελοποννησίων  
|fact; although

λεγόμενον, ὥς ὑπὸ τοῦ Σκυθέων βασιλέος Ἀνάχαρσις

|send away τῆς Ἑλλάδος μαθητῆς γένοιτο, ὀπίσω τε

|go home φαίη πρὸς τὸν |send away |Greek

πάντας |busy εἶναι ἐς πᾶσαν σοφίην πλὴν

Λακεδαιμονίων, τούτοις δὲ εἶναι μούνοισι |sensible,  
|prudent

to Saulios the king; and the king came himself also, and when he saw Anacharsis doing this, he shot him with an arrow and killed him. Accordingly at the present time if one asks about Anacharsis, the Scythians say that they do not know him, and for this reason, because he went out of his own country to Hellas and adopted foreign customs. And as I heard from Tymnes the steward of Ariapeithes, he was the uncle on the father's side of Idanthysos king of the Scythians, and the son of Gnuros, the son of Lycos, the son of Spargapeithes. If then Anacharsis was of this house, let him know that he died by the hand of his brother, for Idanthysos was the son of Saulios, and Saulios was he who killed Anacharsis.

#### 4.77

However I have heard also another story, told by the Peloponnesians, that Anacharsis was sent out by the king of the Scythians, and so made himself a disciple of Hellas; and that when he returned back he said to him that had sent him forth, that the Hellenes were all busied about every kind of cleverness except the Lacedemonians; but these alone

*vocabulary*

**ἄρέσκω** please, satisfy; make amends  
**ἄσκη** inhabitant  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary  
**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter  
**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration  
**δόλος** trick, bait

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος  
**νόμαιο** customary  
**ὁμιλία** (τι) intercourse, company  
**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone  
**παραπλήσιος** similar to  
**πλάζω** make to wander ~plankton  
**πλάσσω** form ~plaster

δοῦναι τε καὶ δέξασθαι λόγον. ἀλλ' οὗτος μὲν ὁ λόγος  
ἄλλως πέπλασται ὑπ' αὐτῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὁ δ' ὦν ἀνὴρ  
ὥσπερ πρότερον εἰρέθη διεφθάρη.

## 4.78

Οὗτος μὲν νυν οὕτω δὴ ἔπρηξε διὰ ξεινικά τε νόμια  
καὶ Ἑλληνικὰς ὁμιλίας. πολλοῖσι δὲ κάρτα ἔτεσι  
ὕστερον Σκύλης ὁ Ἀριαπίθεος ἔπαθε παραπλήσια τούτῳ.  
Ἀριαπίθει γὰρ τῷ Σκυθέων βασιλεί γίνεται μετ' ἄλλων  
παίδων Σκύλης· ἐξ Ἰστριηνῆς δὲ γυναικὸς οὗτος γίνεται  
καὶ οὐδαμῶς ἐγχωρίας· τὸν ἢ μήτηρ αὕτη γλῶσσάν τε  
Ἑλλάδα καὶ γράμματα ἐδίδαξε. μετὰ δὲ χρόνῳ ὕστερον  
Ἀριαπίθης μὲν τελευτᾷ δόλῳ ὑπὸ Σπαργαπίθεος τοῦ  
Ἀγαθύρσων βασιλέος, Σκύλης δὲ τήν τε βασιληίην  
παρέλαβε καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα τοῦ πατρός, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν  
Ὀποίη· ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἢ Ὀποίη ἀστή, ἐξ ἧς ἦν Ὀρικος  
Ἀριαπίθει παῖς. βασιλεύων δὲ Σκυθέων ὁ Σκύλης  
διαίτη οὐδαμῶς ἠρέσκετο Σκυψικῇ, ἀλλὰ πολλὸν πρὸς τὰ  
Ἑλληνικὰ μᾶλλον τετραμμένος ἦν ἀπὸ παιδεύσιος

δοῦναι τε καὶ δέξασθαι λόγον. ἀλλ' οὗτος μὲν ὁ λόγος  
ἄλλως πέπλασται ὑπ' αὐτῶν |Greek , ὁ δ' ὦν ἀνὴρ  
ὥσπερ πρότερον εἰρέθη διεφθάρη.

4.78

Οὗτος μὲν νυν οὕτω δὴ ἔπραξε διὰ ξεινικά τε |customary  
καὶ Ἑλληνικὰς ὁμιλίας. πολλοῖσι δὲ |very much εἰσι  
ὔστερον Σκύλης ὁ Ἀριαπείθεος ἔπαθε |similar to τούτῳ.  
Ἀριαπείθει γὰρ τῷ Σκυθέων βασιλεί γίνεται μετ' ἄλλων  
παίδων Σκύλης· ἐξ Ἰστριηνῆς δὲ γυναικὸς οὗτος γίνεται  
καὶ |not anyone ἡ γχωρήης· τὸν ἢ μήτηρ αὕτη |tongue, τε  
|language  
Ἑλλάδα καὶ |writing, ἐδίδαξε. μετὰ δὲ χρόνῳ ὔστερον  
|letter  
Ἀριαπείθης μὲν τελευτᾷ |trick, bait. ὁ Σπαργαπείθεος τοῦ  
Ἀγαθύρσων βασιλέος, Σκύλης δὲ τήν τε βασιληίην  
παρέλαβε καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα τοῦ πατρός, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν  
Ὀποίη· ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἢ Ὀποίη |inhabitant, ἥς ἦν Ὀρικός  
Ἀριαπείθει παῖς. |be king δὲ Σκυθέων ὁ Σκύλης  
|way of life; |not anyone please, satisfy; ψικῇ, ἀλλὰ πολλὸν πρὸς τὰ  
|home; |make amends  
|arbitra-  
tion  
Ἑλληνικὰ μᾶλλον τετραμμένος ἦν ἀπὸ παιδεύσιος

knew how to exchange speech sensibly. This story however has been invented without any ground by the Hellenes themselves; and however that may be, the man was slain in the way that was related above.

#### 4.78

This man then fared thus badly by reason of foreign customs and communication with Hellenes; and very many years afterwards Skyles the son of Ariapeithes suffered nearly the same fate as he. For Ariapeithes the king of the Scythians with other sons had Skyles born to him: and he was born of a woman who was of Istria, and certainly not a native of Scythia; and this mother taught him the language and letters of Hellas. Afterwards in course of time Ariapeithes was brought to his end by treachery at the hands of Spargapeithes the king of the Agathyrans, and Skyles succeeded to the kingdom; and he took not only that but also the wife of his father, whose name was Opoia: this Opoia was a native Scythian and from her was born Oricos to Ariapeithes. Now when Skyles was king of the Scythians, he was by no means satisfied with the Scythian manner of life, but was much more inclined towards Hellenic ways because of the

*vocabulary*

**ἀγοράζω** do commerce ~agora  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be  
 freed, depart  
**ἀποτίθημι** put away ~thesis  
**δέμω** build ~domicile  
**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration  
**διατρίβω** (ι) wear down, delay  
 ~tribology  
**δορυφόρος** spear-bearing  
**ἐκκλείω** shut out; prevent  
**Ἑλληγν** Greek

**ἐνδύω** go into, put on  
**ἐπιχώριος** native  
**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest  
**εὔτε** when, as, since  
**μίν** him, her, it  
**παιδεύω** raise; train  
**προάστειον** suburb  
**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;  
 prediction ~fame  
**στολή** equipment  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**τοιόσδε** such

τῆς ἐπεπαίδευτο, ἐποίεέ τε τοιοῦτο· εὖτε ἀγάγοι τὴν στρατιὴν τὴν Σκυθέων ἐς τὸ Βορυσθενειτέων ἄστυ οἱ δὲ Βορυσθενεῖται οὗτοι λέγουσι σφέας αὐτοὺς εἶναι Μιλησίους, ἐς τούτους ὅκως ἔλθοι ὁ Σκύλης, τὴν μὲν στρατιὴν καταλίπεσκε ἐν τῷ προαστείῳ, αὐτὸς δὲ ὅκως ἔλθοι ἐς τὸ τεῖχος καὶ τὰς πύλας ἐγκλήσειε, τὴν στολὴν ἀποθέμενος τὴν Σκυθικὴν λάβεσκε ἂν Ἑλληνίδα ἐσθῆτα, ἔχων δ' ἂν ταύτην ἡγόραζε οὔτε δορυφόρων ἐπομένων οὔτε ἄλλου οὐδενός· τὰς δὲ πύλας ἐφύλασσον, μή τίς μιν Σκυθέων ἴδοι ἔχοντα ταύτην τὴν στολὴν· καὶ τά τε ἄλλα ἐχρᾶτο διαίτη Ἑλληνικῇ καὶ θεοῖσι ἱρὰ ἐποίεε κατὰ νόμους τοὺς Ἑλλήνων. ὅτε δὲ διατρίψειε μῆνα ἢ πλεόν τούτου, ἀπαλλάσσετο ἐνδὺς τὴν Σκυθικὴν στολὴν. ταῦτα ποίεσκε πολλάκις καὶ οἰκία τε ἐδείματο ἐν Βορυσθένει καὶ γυναῖκα ἔγημε ἐς αὐτὰ ἐπιχωρίην.

## 4.79

Ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἔδεέ οἱ κακῶς γενέσθαι, ἐγίνετο ἀπὸ προφάσιος τοιῆσδε. ἐπεθύμησε Διονύσω Βακχεῖω τελεσθῆναι·



τῆς |raise; train , ἐποίεε τε τοιοῦτο· |when, as, since τὴν  
στρατιὴν τὴν Σκυθέων ἐς τὸ Βορυσθενειτέων ἄστυ  
οἱ δὲ Βορυσθενεῖται οὗτοι λέγουσι σφέας αὐτοὺς εἶναι  
Μιλησίους, ἐς τούτους ὅπως ἔλθοι ὁ Σκύλης, τὴν μὲν  
στρατιὴν καταλίπεσκε ἐν τῷ |suburb , αὐτὸς δὲ ὅπως  
ἔλθοι ἐς τὸ τεῖχος καὶ τὰς πύλας |shut out; prevent |equipment  
|put away τὴν Σκυθικὴν λάβεσκε ἂν Ἑλληνίδα |clothes ,  
ἔχων δ' ἂν ταύτην |do commerce' ε |spear-bearing ἐπομένων  
οὔτε ἄλλου οὐδενός· τὰς δὲ πύλας ἐφύλασσον, μή τίς  
μιν Σκυθέων ἴδοι ἔχοντα ταύτην τὴν |equipment .αὶ τὰ τε  
ἄλλα ἐχράτο |way of life; home; |καὶ θεοῖσι ἱρὰ ἐποίεε κατὰ  
|arbitration  
νόμους τοὺς |Greek ὅτε δὲ |wear down, delay ἡ πλέον  
τούτου, |free from, re-go into, put on .θικὴν |equipment αὐτα  
|move; be freed,  
ποιέεσκε πολλάκις καὶ οἰκία τε |build ἐν Βορυσθενεί καὶ  
|depart  
γυναιῖκα ἔγημε ἐς αὐτὰ |native

4.79

Ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἔδεε οἱ κακῶς γενέσθαι, ἐγίνετο ἀπὸ |pretext; motive;  
|prediction  
|such ἐπεθύμησε Διονύσω Βακχείῳ τελεσθῆναι·

training with which he had been brought up, and he used to do somewhat as follows:— When he came with the Scythians in arms to the city of the Borysthenites (now these Borysthenites say that they are of Miletos),— when Skyles came to these, he would leave his band in the suburbs of the city and go himself within the walls and close the gates. After that he would lay aside his Scythian equipments and take Hellenic garments, and wearing them he would go about in the market-place with no guards or any other man accompanying him (and they watched the gates meanwhile, that none of the Scythians might see him wearing this dress): and while in other respects too he adopted Hellenic manners of life, he used also to perform worship to the gods according to the customs of the Hellenes. Then having stayed a month or more than that, he would put on the Scythian dress and depart. This he did many times, and he both built for himself a house in Borysthenes and also took to it a woman of the place as his wife.

#### 4.79

Since however it was fated that evil should happen to him, it happened by an occasion of this kind:— he formed a desire to be initiated in

*vocabulary*

**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve ~stand  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**γρύψ** griffin  
**δαίμων** -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom  
 ~demon  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐνάγω** lead in/on; arraign  
**ἐνσκήπτω** throw, fall at  
**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka  
**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty  
**καταγελάω** laugh at, deride  
**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic  
**λάθρα** secretly

**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad  
**μνήμη** reminder, memorial  
**ὀνειδίζω** upbraid, reproach  
**περιβολή** a covering; an interior  
**πέριξ** all around  
**πολυτελής** very expensive; (person)  
 extravagant  
**προίστημι** put forward; (+gen) be  
 head of, guard ~station  
**πύργος** ramparts, tower; line of troops  
**σφίγγω** bind  
**τελετή** rite, festival  
**φάσμα** phantom, apparition

μέλλοντι δέ οἱ ἐς χεῖρας ἄγεσθαι τὴν τελετὴν ἐγένετο  
φάσμα μέγιστον. ἦν οἱ ἐν Βορυσθενείτων τῇ πόλι  
οἰκίης μεγάλης καὶ πολυτελέος περιβολή, τῆς καὶ ὀλίγω  
τι πρότερον τούτων μνήμην εἶχον, τὴν πέριξ λευκοῦ  
λίθου σφίγγες τε καὶ γρύπες ἔστασαν· ἐς ταύτην ὁ θεὸς  
ἐνέσκηψε βέλος. καὶ ἡ μὲν κατεκάη πᾶσα, Σκύλης δὲ  
οὐδὲν τούτου εἶνεκα ἦσσαν ἐπετέλεσε τὴν τελετὴν. Σκύθαι  
δὲ τοῦ βακχεύειν πέρι Ἑλλησι ὀνειδίζουσι· οὐ γὰρ φασὶ  
οἶκος εἶναι θεὸν ἐξευρίσκειν τοῦτον ὅστις μαίνεσθαι ἐνάγει  
ἀνθρώπους. ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐτελέσθη τῷ Βακχείῳ ὁ Σκύλης,  
διεπρήστευσε τῶν τις Βορυσθενειτέων πρὸς τοὺς Σκύθας  
λέγων «ἡμῖν γὰρ καταγελᾶτε, ὦ Σκύθαι, ὅτι βακχεύομεν  
καὶ ἡμέας ὁ θεὸς λαμβάνει· νῦν οὗτος ὁ δαίμων καὶ τὸν  
ὑμέτερον βασιλέα λελάβηκε, καὶ βακχεύει τε καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ  
θεοῦ μαίνεται. εἰ δέ μοι ἀπιστέετε, ἔπεσθε, καὶ ὑμῖν ἐγὼ  
δέξω.» εἶποντο τῶν Σκύθεων οἱ προεστεῶτες, καὶ αὐτοὺς  
ἀναγαγὼν ὁ Βορυσθενείτης λάθρῃ ἐπὶ πύργον κατεῖσε.  
ἐπεῖτε δὲ παρήιε σὺν τῷ θιάσῳ ὁ Σκύλης καὶ εἰδόν

μέλλοντι δέ οἱ ἐς χεῖρας ἄγεσθαι τὴν |rite, ἐγένετο  
 |phantom, apparition, ἐγίστον. ἦν οἱ ἐν Βορυσθενείτων τῇ πόλι  
 οἰκίῃς μεγάλης καὶ |expensive; ex- |a covering; τῆς καὶ ὀλίγω  
 |travagant |an interior  
 τι πρότερον τούτων |reminder, ἔχον, τὴν |all around κοῦ  
 |memorial  
 λίθου |bind τε καὶ |griffin ἔστασαν· ἐς ταύτην ὁ θεὸς  
 |throw, fall |missile. καὶ ἡ μὲν |burn down ἄσα, Σκύλης δὲ  
 |at  
 οὐδὲν τούτου εἵνεκα ἦσσαν |complete; do, |rite, Σκύθαι  
 |religious duty |festival  
 δὲ τοῦ βακχεύειν πέρι |Greek |reproach οὐ γὰρ φασὶ  
 οἶκός εἶναι θεὸν |find; τοῦτον ὅστις |be berserk |lead in/on; arraign  
 |discover  
 ἀνθρώπους. ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐτελέσθη τῷ Βακχεῖῳ ὁ Σκύλης,  
 διεπρήστευσε τῶν τις Βορυσθενειτέων πρὸς τοὺς Σκύθας  
 λέγων «ἡμῖν γὰρ |laugh at, deride ᾗ Σκύθαι, ὅτι βακχεύομεν  
 καὶ ἡμέας ὁ θεὸς λαμβάνει· νῦν οὗτος ὁ |a god, fate, doom  
 ὑμέτερον βασιλέα λελάβηκε, καὶ βακχεύει τε καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ  
 θεοῦ |be berserk εἰ δέ μοι |disbelieve , ἔπεσθε, καὶ ὑμῖν ἐγὼ  
 δέξω.» εἶποντο τῶν Σκύθεων οἱ προεστέωτες, καὶ αὐτοὺς  
 ἀναγαγὼν ὁ Βορυσθενεΐτης |secretly ἐπὶ |wall, κατεῖσε.  
 |tower  
 ἐπεῖτε δὲ παρήγε σὺν τῷ θιάσῳ ὁ Σκύλης καὶ εἰδόν

the rites of Bacchus-Dionysos, and as he was just about to receive the initiation, there happened a very great portent. He had in the city of the Borysthenites a house of great size and built with large expense, of which also I made mention a little before this, and round it were placed sphinxes and griffins of white stone: on this house Zeus caused a bolt to fall; and the house was altogether burnt down, but Skyles none the less for this completed his initiation. Now the Scythians make the rites of Bacchus a reproach against the Hellenes, for they say that it is not fitting to invent a god like this, who impels men to frenzy. So when Skyles had been initiated into the rites of Bacchus, one of the Borysthenites went off to the Scythians and said: "Whereas ye laugh at us, O Scythians, because we perform the rite of Bacchus and because the god seizes us, now this divinity has seized also your king; and he is both joining in the rite of Bacchus and maddened by the influence of the god. And if ye disbelieve me, follow and I will show you." The chief men of the Scythians followed him, and the Borysthenite led them secretly into the town and set them upon a tower. So when Skyles passed by with the company of revellers, and the Scythians saw him joining in

*vocabulary***ἀδελφεή** sister**ἀντιάζω** meet, fight, join**ἀντιάω** meet, fight, join**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπικηρυκεύω** send a herald,  
ambassador**ἥθος ἥθεος** (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to

~fugitive

**μίν** him, her, it**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συμφορά** collecting; accident,  
misfortune**συνάπτω** join, partake; adjoin; consult;

fight ~haptic

**τοιόσδε** such

μιν βακχεύοντα οἱ Σκύθαι, κάρτα συμφορὴν μεγάλην ἐποιήσαντο, ἐξελθόντες δὲ ἐσήμαινον πάσῃ τῇ στρατιῇ τὰ ἴδοιεν.

## 4.80

Ὡς δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξήλαυνε ὁ Σκύλης ἐς ἡθεα τὰ ἔωντοῦ, οἱ Σκύθαι προστησάμενοι τὸν ἀδελφεὸν αὐτοῦ Ὀκταμασάδην, γεγονότα ἐκ τῆς Τήρεω θυγατρός, ἐπανιστέατο τῷ Σκύλῃ. ὁ δὲ μαθὼν τὸ γινόμενον ἐπ' ἔωντῷ καὶ τὴν αἰτίην δι' ἣν ἐποιέετο, καταφεύγει ἐς τὴν Θρηίκην. πυθόμενος δὲ ὁ Ὀκταμασάδης ταῦτα ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν Θρηίκην. ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ Ἰστρω ἐγένετο, ἡντίασάν μιν οἱ Θρήικες, μελλόντων δὲ αὐτῶν συνάψειν ἔπεμψε Σιτάλκης παρὰ τὸν Ὀκταμασάδην λέγων τοιάδε. «τι δεῖ ἡμέας ἀλλήλων πειρηθῆναι; εἰς μέν μεν τῆς ἀδελφεῆς παῖς, ἔχεις δέ μεν ἀδελφεόν. σὺ δέ μοι ἀπόδος τοῦτον, καὶ ἐγὼ σοὶ τὸν σὸν Σκύλην παραδίδωμι· στρατιῇ δὲ μήτε σὺ κινδυνεύσης μήτ' ἐγώ.» ταῦτά οἱ πέμψας ὁ Σιτάλκης ἐπεκηρυκεύετο·



μιν βακχεύοντα οἱ Σκύθαι, |very much μφορὴν μεγάλην  
ἐποιήσαντο, ἐξελθόντες δὲ |give orders to; ἴση τῇ στρατιῇ τὰ  
|show; mark  
ἴδοιεν.

4.80

Ὡς δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα |drive out ὁ Σκύλης ἐς |habit, τὰ  
|habitat  
έωντοῦ, οἱ Σκύθαι προστησάμενοι τὸν ἀδελφεὸν αὐτοῦ  
Ὁκταμασάδην, γεγονότα ἐκ τῆς Τήρεω θυγατρός,  
ἐπανιστέατο τῷ Σκύλῃ. ὁ δὲ μαθὼν τὸ γινόμενον ἐπ’  
έωντῷ καὶ τὴν αἰτίην δι’ ἣν ἐποιέετο, |resort to, flee ἐς  
|to, appeal to  
τὴν Θρηίκην. πυθόμενος δὲ ὁ Ὁκταμασάδης ταῦτα  
έστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν Θρηίκην. ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ Ἰστρω  
έγένετο, ἡντίασάν μιν οἱ Θρήικες, μελλόντων δὲ αὐτῶν  
|join, partake; ad-<sup>τ</sup>έ Σιτάλκης παρὰ τὸν Ὁκταμασάδην  
|join; consult; fight  
λέγων |such «τι δεῖ ἡμέας ἀλλήλων πειρηθῆναι; εἰς μὲν  
μεν τῆς |sister παῖς, ἔχεις δέ μεν ἀδελφεόν. σὺ δέ μοι  
ἀπόδος τοῦτον, καὶ ἐγὼ σοὶ τὸν σὸν Σκύλην παραδίδωμι·  
στρατιῇ δὲ μήτε σὺ κινδυνεύσης μήτ’ ἐγώ.» ταῦτά οἱ  
πέμψας ὁ Σιτάλκης |send a herald,  
|ambassador

the rite of Bacchus, they were exceedingly grieved at it, and they went out and declared to the whole band that which they had seen.

#### 4.80

After this when Skyles was riding out again to his own abode, the Scythians took his brother Octamasades for their leader, who was a son of the daughter of Teres, and made insurrection against Skyles. He then when he perceived that which was being done to his hurt and for what reason it was being done, fled for refuge to Thrace; and Octamasades being informed of this, proceeded to march upon Thrace. So when he had arrived at the river Ister, the Thracians met him; and as they were about to engage battle, Sitalkes sent a messenger to Octamasades and said: "Why must we make trial of one another in fight? Thou art my sister's son and thou hast in thy power my brother. Do thou give him back to me, and I will deliver to thee thy brother Skyles: and let us not either of us set our armies in peril, either thou or I." Thus Sitalkes proposed

*vocabulary*

**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀπορρέω** flow, fall off  
**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure  
**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare  
**ἀριθμέω** to count ~arithmetic  
**ἀριθμός** number  
**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain  
**διάφορος** different; difference;  
 disagreeing; balance, bill  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος  
**καταινέω** agree, promise, grant

**κρήνη** well, spring  
**μεταξύ** between  
**μήτρως** (m) maternal uncle ~maternal  
**μνήμη** reminder, memorial  
**νόμαιο** customary  
**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view  
 ~thanatopsis  
**περιστέλλω** lay out  
**πικρός** sharp, bitter ~picric  
**σφέτερος** their  
**τοσόσδε** this much  
**χῶρος** place ~heir

ἦν γὰρ παρὰ τῷ Ὀκταμασάδῃ ἀδελφεὸς Σιτάλκεω πεφευγώς. ὁ δὲ Ὀκταμασάδης καταινέει ταῦτα, ἐκδοὺς δὲ τὸν ἐωντοῦ μήτρωα Σιτάλκη ἔλαβε τὸν ἀδελφεὸν Σκύλην. καὶ Σιτάλκης μὲν παραλαβὼν τὸν ἀδελφεὸν ἀπήγετο, Σκύλεω δὲ Ὀκταμασάδης αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ ἀπέταμε τὴν κεφαλὴν. οὕτω μὲν περιστέλλουσι τὰ σφέτερα νόμαια Σκύθαι, τοῖσι δὲ παρακτωμένοισι ξεινικοὺς νόμους τοιαῦτα ἐπιτίμια διδοῦσι.

## 4.81

Πλῆθος δὲ τὸ Σκυθέων οὐκ οἶος τε ἐγενόμην ἀτρεκέως πυθέσθαι, ἀλλὰ διαφόρους λόγους περὶ τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ ἤκουον· καὶ γὰρ κάρτα πολλοὺς εἶναι σφέας καὶ ὀλίγους ὡς Σκύθας εἶναι. τοσόνδε μέντοι ἀπέφαινόν μοι ἐς ὄψιν. ἔστι μεταξὺ Βορυσθένεός τε ποταμοῦ καὶ Ὑπάνιος χώρος, οὖνομα δέ οἱ ἐστὶ Ἐξαμπαῖος· τοῦ καὶ ὀλίγῳ τι πρότερον τούτων μνήμην εἶχον, φάμενος ἐν αὐτῷ κρήνην ὕδατος πικροῦ εἶναι, ἀπ' ἧς τὸ ὕδωρ ἀπορρέον τὸν Ὑπανιν ἄποτον ποιέειν. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χώρῳ κέεται χαλκήιον,

ἦν γὰρ παρὰ τῷ Ὀκταμασάδῃ ἀδελφεὸς Σιτάλκεω  
 πεφευγώς. ὁ δὲ Ὀκταμασάδης |agree, promise, τα, |hand over  
 |grant  
 δὲ τὸν ἐωντοῦ |maternal Σιτάλκη ἔλαβε τὸν ἀδελφεὸν  
 |uncle  
 Σκύλην. καὶ Σιτάλκης μὲν παραλαβὼν τὸν ἀδελφεὸν  
 |lead away, back ἔειπε δὲ Ὀκταμασάδῃς αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ |cut off, sever  
 τὴν κεφαλὴν. οὕτω μὲν |lay out τὰ |their  
 |customary εἶναι, τοῖσι δὲ παρακτωμένοισι ξεινικοὺς νόμους  
 τοιαῦτα ἐπιτίμια διδοῦσι.

4.81

Πλήθος δὲ τὸ Σκυθέων οὐκ οἶος τε ἐγενόμην |precise,  
 |certain  
 πυθέσθαι, ἀλλὰ |different; λόγους περὶ τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ  
 |disagreeing  
 ἤκουον· καὶ γὰρ |very much ἄλλους εἶναι σφέας καὶ ὀλίγους  
 ὥς Σκύθας εἶναι. |this much μέντοι |display, μοι ἐς |sight  
 |declare  
 ἔστι |between Βορυσθένης τε ποταμοῦ καὶ Ὑπάνιος |place  
 οὖνομα δέ οἱ ἐστὶ Ἐξαμπαῖος· τοῦ καὶ ὀλίγω τι πρότερον  
 τούτων |reminder, ἔχον, φάμενος ἐν αὐτῷ |well, ὕδατος  
 |memorial |spring  
 |sharp εἶναι, ἀπ' ἧς τὸ ὕδωρ |flow, fall off τὸν Ὑπανιν  
 ἄποτον ποιέειν. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ |place κέεται χαλκίον,

to him by a herald; for there was with Octamasades a brother of Sitalkes, who had gone into exile for fear of him. And Octamasades agreed to this, and by giving up his own mother's brother to Sitalkes he received his brother Skyles in exchange: and Sitalkes when he received his brother led him away as a prisoner, but Octamasades cut off the head of Skyles there upon the spot. Thus do the Scythians carefully guard their own customary observances, and such are the penalties which they inflict upon those who acquire foreign customs besides their own.

#### 4.81

How many the Scythians are I was not able to ascertain precisely, but I heard various reports of the number: for reports say both that they are very many in number and also that they are few, at least as regards the true Scythians. Thus far however they gave me evidence of my own eyesight:— there is between the river Borysthenes and the Hypanis a place called Exampaïos, of which also I made mention somewhat before this, saying that there was in it a spring of bitter water, from which the water flows and makes the river Hypanis unfit to drink. In this place there is set a bronze bowl, in size at least six times as

*vocabulary***ἀμφορεύς** -ος (m) amphora**ἀνατίθῃμι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
(mp) reproach**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast**ἄρδις** arrowhead**ἀριθμός** number**δάκτυλος** finger, toe**ἕξ** six ~hexagon**ἑξακόσιοι** 600**ἐπιχώριος** native**εὐπετής** coming out well; (adv)  
fortunately**εὖς** good, brave, noble**κρητήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**μῖν** him, her, it**μνημόσυνον** memorial**οἰστός** arrow**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**πάρεξ** alongside, diverging from; (+ῥ  
or gen) except; (+acc) beyond,  
alongside**πάχος** -εος (n, 3) thickness

~pachyderm

**σφέτερος** their**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
~heir**χωρίς** separately; except, other than  
~heir

μεγάθει καὶ ἐξαπλήσιον τοῦ ἐπὶ στόματι τοῦ Πόντου κρητῆρος, τὸν Πανσανίης ὁ Κλεομβρότου ἀνέθηκε. ὃς δὲ μὴ εἶδε κω τοῦτον, ὥδε δηλώσω. ἐξακοσίους ἀμφορέας εὐπετέως χωρέει τὸ ἐν Σκύθησι χαλκήιον, πάχος δὲ τὸ Σκυθικὸν τοῦτο χαλκήιον ἐστὶ δακτύλων ἑξ. τοῦτο ὦν ἔλεγον οἱ ἐπιχώριοι ἀπὸ ἀρδίων γενέσθαι. βουλόμενον γὰρ τὸν σφέτερον βασιλέα, τῷ οὖνομα εἶναι Ἀριάνταν, τοῦτον εἰδέναι τὸ πλῆθος τὸ Σκυθέων κελεύειν μιν πάντας Σκύθας ἄρδιον ἕκαστον μίαν ἀπὸ τοῦ ὀιστοῦ κομίσαι. ὃς δ' ἂν μὴ κομίσῃ, θάνατον ἀπειλεε. κομισθῆναι τε δὴ χρήμα πολλὸν ἀρδίων καὶ οἱ δόξαι ἐξ αὐτέων μνημόσυνον ποιήσαντι λιπέσθαι. ἐκ τουτέων δὴ μιν τὸ χαλκήιον ποιῆσαι τοῦτο καὶ ἀναθεῖναι ἐς τὸν Ἑξαμπαῖον τοῦτον. ταῦτα δὲ περὶ τοῦ πλήθους τοῦ Σκυθέων ἤκουον.

## 4.82

Θωμάσια δὲ ἡ χώρα αὕτη οὐκ ἔχει, χωρὶς ἢ ὅτι ποταμούς τε πολλῶ μεγίστους καὶ ἀριθμὸν πλείστους. τὸ δὲ ἀποθωμάσαι ἄξιον καὶ πάρεξ τῶν ποταμῶν καὶ



|tall, big καὶ ἑξαπλήσιον τοῦ ἐπὶ στόματι τοῦ Πόντου

|mixing bowl for wine γανίης ὁ Κλεομβρότου |consecrate, lay on, impute; (mp) reproach

μὴ εἶδε κω τοῦτον, ὧδε δηλώσω. |600 |amphora

|coming out|withdraw, give Σκύθησι χαλκήιον, |thickness τὸ well; (adv)|way to (+dat) Σκυθικόν τοῦτο χαλκήιον ἐστὶ |finger, toe ἕξ. τοῦτο ὦν

ἔλεγον οἱ |native ἀπὸ |arrowhead νέσθαι. βουλόμενον

γὰρ τὸν |their βασιλέα, τῷ οὖνομα εἶναι Ἀριάνταν,

τοῦτον εἰδέναι τὸ πλῆθος τὸ Σκυθέων κελεύειν μιν πάντας

Σκύθας |arrowhead πτον μίαν ἀπὸ τοῦ |arrow κομίσαι. ὅς

δ' ἂν μὴ κομίση, θάνατον |vow, threaten, boast εἶναι τε δὴ

χρῆμα πολλὸν |arrowhead ἵ οἱ δόξαι ἐξ αὐτέων |memorial

ποιήσαντι λιπέσθαι. ἐκ τουτέων δὴ μιν τὸ χαλκήιον

ποιῆσαι τοῦτο καὶ |consecrate, lay on, impute; (mp) reproach ξαμπαῖον τοῦτον.

ταῦτα δὲ περὶ τοῦ πλῆθους τοῦ Σκυθέων ἤκουον.

4.82

Θωμάσια δὲ ἡ χώρα αὕτη οὐκ ἔχει, |separately; ex- |ταμούς τε πολλῶ μεγίστους καὶ |number πλείστους. τὸ δὲ

ἀποθωμάσαι ἄξιον καὶ πάρεξ τῶν ποταμῶν καὶ

large as the mixing-bowl at the entrance of the Pontus, which Pausanias the son of Cleombrotos dedicated: and for him who has never seen that, I will make the matter clear by saying that the bowl in Scythia holds easily six hundred amphors, and the thickness of this Scythian bowl is six fingers. This then the natives of the place told me had been made of arrow-heads: for their king, they said, whose name was Ariantas, wishing to know how many the Scythians were, ordered all the Scythians to bring one arrow-head, each from his own arrow, and whosoever should not bring one, he threatened with death. So a great multitude of arrow-heads was brought, and he resolved to make of them a memorial and to leave it behind him: from these then, they said, he made this bronze bowl and dedicated it in this place Exampaïos.

#### 4.82

This is what I heard about the number of the Scythians. Now this land has no marvellous things except that it has rivers which are by far larger and more numerous than those of any other land. One thing however shall be mentioned which it has to show, and which is worthy of wonder even besides the rivers and

*vocabulary***ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce**βῆμα** -τος (n, 3) step, pace**δίπηγος** 2 cubits long**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion**ἐνός** speechless, dumbfounded**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπιπέμπω** send after, again, to, besides**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**ἵχνος** -εος (n, 3) track, trace**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;

enroll ~legion

**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**μηδამός** no one**Πέρσης** Persian**σοῦσον** lily**στρατηίη** expedition, campaign**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

**χρηστός** useful; brave, worthy

τοῦ μεγάθεος τοῦ πεδίου παρέχεται, εἰρήσεται. ἵχνος Ἡρακλέος φαίνουσι ἐν πέτρῃ ἐνεόν, τὸ ἔοικε μὲν βήματι ἀνδρός, ἔστι δὲ τὸ μέγαθος δίπηχυ, παρὰ τὸν Τύρην ποταμόν. τοῦτο μὲν νυν τοιοῦτο ἐστί, ἀναβήσομαι δὲ ἐς τὸν κατ' ἀρχὰς ἥια λέξων λόγον.

## 4.83

Παρασκευαζομένου Δαρείου ἐπὶ τοὺς Σκύθας καὶ ἐπιπέμποντος ἀγγέλους ἐπιτάξοντας τοῖσι μὲν πεζὸν στρατόν, τοῖσι δὲ νέας παρέχειν, τοῖσι δὲ ζεύγνυσθαι τὸν Θρηίκιον Βόσπορον Ἀρτάβανος ὁ Ὑστάσπεος, ἀδελφεὸς ἐὼν Δαρείου, ἐχρήιζε μηδαμῶς αὐτὸν στρατηγὴν ἐπὶ Σκύθας ποιέεσθαι, καταλέγων τῶν Σκυθέων τὴν ἀπορίην. ἀλλ' οὐ γὰρ ἔπειθε συμβουλευόν οἱ χρηστά, ὃ μὲν ἐπέπαυτο, ὃ δέ, ἐπειδὴ οἱ τὰ ἅπαντα παρεσκεύαστο, ἐξήλαυνε τὸν στρατὸν ἐκ Σούσων.

## 4.84

Ἐνθαῦτα τῶν Περσέων Οἰόβαζος ἐδεήθη Δαρείου τριῶν

τοῦ |tall, big τοῦ πεδίου παρέχεται, εἰρήσεται. |track,  
|trace  
Ἡρακλέος φαίνουσι ἐν πέτρῃ ἐνεόν, τὸ ἔοικε μὲν |step, pace  
ἀνδρός, ἔστι δὲ τὸ |tall, big |2 cubits ἀρὰ τὸν Τύρην  
|long  
ποταμόν. τοῦτο μὲν νυν τοιοῦτο ἐστί, ἀναβήσομαι δὲ ἐς  
τὸν κατ' ἀρχὰς ἥια λέξων λόγον.

4.83

Παρασκευαζομένου Δαρείου ἐπὶ τοὺς Σκύθας καὶ  
|send after, again, ἀγγέλους |enjoin; place τοῖσι μὲν πεζὸν  
|to, besides |near  
|army , τοῖσι δὲ νέας παρέχειν, τοῖσι δὲ ζεύγνυσθαι τὸν  
Θρηήκιον Βόσπορον Ἀρτάβανος ὁ Ὑστάσπεος, ἀδελφεὸς  
ἐὼν Δαρείου, ἐχρήριζε |no one αὐτὸν |expedition, ἐπὶ  
|campaign  
Σκύθας ποιέεσθαι, |relate in detail, τῶν Σκυθέων τὴν  
|choose; enroll  
ἀπορίην. ἀλλ' οὐ γὰρ ἔπειθε |give advice; (mid)|useful; brave,  
|consult |worthy  
μὲν ἐπέπαυτο, ὁ δέ, ἐπειδὴ οἱ τὰ ἅπαντα παρεσκεύαστο,  
|drive out τὸν |army ἐκ |lily .

4.84

|there, here γῶν Περσέων Οἰόβαζος ἐδεήθη Δαρείου τριῶν

the greatness of the plain, that is to say, they point out a footprint of Heracles in the rock by the bank of the river Tyras, which in shape is like the mark of a man's foot but in size is two cubits long. This then is such as I have said; and I will go back now to the history which I was about to tell at first.

#### 4.83

While Dareios was preparing to go against the Scythians and was sending messengers to appoint to some the furnishing of a land-army, to others that of ships, and to others the bridging over of the Thracian Bosphorus, Artabanos, the son of Hystaspes and brother of Dareios, urged him by no means to make the march against the Scythians, telling him how difficult the Scythians were to deal with. Since however he did not persuade him, though he gave him good counsel, he ceased to urge; and Dareios, when all his preparations had been made, began to march his army forth from Susa.

#### 4.84

Then one of the Persians, Oiobazos, made request to Dareios that

*vocabulary***ἄξιοθέητος** well worth seeing**ἀποσφάζω** cut the throat**αὐχὴν** -ένος (m, 3) neck**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**εἰσβαίνω** enter, board ~basis**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
wind**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote**θαυμάσιος** wonderful**θέομαι** look at, behold, consider  
~theater**κύνεος** dark ~cyan**μέτριος** medium, moderate**μήκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature**μυρίος** (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea  
~pelagic**περιχαρής** very glad**πλαγκτός** wandering, demented

~plankton

**ῥίον** summit, headland**σοῦσον** lily**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters**στρατηγή** expedition, campaign**τριηκόσιοι** three hundred**τρισχίλιοι** 3000 ~kilo-**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χίλιοι** (τι) thousand ~kilo-

έόντων οί παίδων καί πάντων στρατευομένων ένα αὐτῷ καταλειφθῆναι. ὁ δὲ ἔφη ὡς φίλῳ έόντι καί μετρίων δεομένῳ πάντας τοὺς παίδας καταλείψειν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Οἰόβαζος περιχαρῆς ἦν, ἐλπίζων τοὺς υἱέας στρατηίης ἀπολελύσθαι. ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ἐπὶ τούτων ἐπεστεῶτας ἀποκτείνειν πάντας τοὺς Οἰοβάζου παίδας.

## 4.85

Καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἀποσφαγέντες αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ ἐλείποντο· Δαρείος δὲ ἐπεῖτε πορευόμενος ἐκ Σούσων ἀπίκητο τῆς Καλχηδονίης ἐπὶ τὸν Βόσπορον ἵνα ἔξευκτο ἡ γέφυρα, ἐνθεῦτεν ἐσβὰς ἐς νέα ἔπλεε ἐπὶ τὰς Κυανέας καλυμένας, τὰς πρότερον πλαγκτὰς Ἑλλήνες φασὶ εἶναι, ἐζόμενος δὲ ἐπὶ ρίῳ ἐθγείτο τὸν Πόντον έόντα ἀξιοθέητον. πελαγέων γὰρ ἀπάντων πέφυκε θωμασιώτατος· τοῦ τὸ μὲν μῆκος στάδιοι εἰσὶ ἑκατὸν καὶ χίλιοι καὶ μύριοι, τὸ δὲ εὖρος, τῇ εὐρύτατος αὐτὸς έωυτοῦ, στάδιοι τριηκόσιοι καὶ τρισχίλιοι. τούτου τοῦ πελάγεος τὸ στόμα έστὶ εὖρος τέσσερες στάδιοι· μῆκος δὲ, τοῦ στόματος ὁ αὐχὴν, τὸ



έόντων οί παίδων καὶ πάντων στρατευομένων ἕνα αὐτῷ  
καταλειφθῆναι. ὁ δὲ ἔφη ὡς φίλῳ έόντι καὶ <sup>medium,</sup><sub>moderate</sub>  
δεομένῳ πάντας τοὺς παῖδας καταλείψειν. ὁ μὲν δὴ  
Οἰόβαζος <sup>very glad</sup> ἦν, ἐλπίζων τοὺς νείας <sup>expedition,</sup><sub>campaign</sub>  
ἀπολελύσθαι. ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ἐπὶ τούτων ἐπεστεῶτας  
ἀποκτείνειν πάντας τοὺς Οἰοβάζου παῖδας.

4.85

Καὶ οὗτοι μὲν <sup>cut the throat</sup> αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ ἐλείποντο·  
Δαρείῳ δὲ ἐπίτε πορευόμενος ἐκ <sup>lily</sup> ἀπίκετο τῆς  
Καλχηδονίης ἐπὶ τὸν Βόσπορον ἵνα <sup>yoke, join</sup> ἵ <sup>dam, dike; bridge</sup>  
<sup>thence</sup> <sup>enter,</sup><sub>board</sub> ἐς νέα ἔπλεε ἐπὶ τὰς <sup>dark</sup> καλυμένας,  
τὰς πρότερον <sup>wandering,</sup><sub>demented</sub> <sup>Greek</sup> φασὶ εἶναι, ἐζόμενος δὲ  
ἐπὶ <sup>summit</sup> <sup>at,</sup> <sup>be-</sup> <sup>Πόντον</sup> <sup>έόντα</sup> <sup>well worth see-</sup> <sup>the open sea</sup>  
<sup>head</sup> <sup>hold,</sup> <sup>consider</sup> <sup>ing</sup>  
γὰρ ἀπάντων πέφυκε θωμασιώτατος· τοῦ τὸ μὲν <sup>length,</sup><sub>stature</sub>  
στάδιοι εἰς ἑκατὸν καὶ χίλιοι καὶ μύριοι, τὸ δὲ <sup>width; (caps) the</sup><sub>east wind</sub>  
τῇ εὐρύτατος αὐτὸς έωντοῦ, στάδιοι <sup>three</sup><sub>hundred</sub> καὶ  
<sup>3000</sup> τούτου τοῦ <sup>the open sea</sup> ὃ στόμα <sup>width; (caps) the</sup><sub>east wind</sub> <sup>έστι</sup>  
τέσσερες στάδιοι· <sup>length,</sup><sub>stature</sub> δὲ, τοῦ στόματος ὁ <sup>neck</sup> , τὸ

as he had three sons and all were serving in the expedition, one might be left behind for him: and Dareios said that as he was a friend and made a reasonable request, he would leave behind all the sons. So Oiobazos was greatly rejoiced, supposing that his sons had been freed from service, but Dareios commanded those who had the charge of such things to put to death all the sons of Oiobazos.

#### 4.85

These then were left, having been slain upon the spot where they were: and Dareios meanwhile set forth from Susa and arrived at the place on the Bosphorus where the bridge of ships had been made, in the territory of Chalcedon; and there he embarked in a ship and sailed to the so-called Kyanean rocks, which the Hellenes say formerly moved backwards and forwards; and taking his seat at the temple he gazed upon the Pontus, which is a sight well worth seeing. Of all seas indeed it is the most marvellous in its nature. The length of it is eleven thousand one hundred furlongs, and the breadth, where it is broadest, three thousand three hundred: and of this great Sea the mouth is but four furlongs broad, and the length of the mouth, that is of the neck of

*vocabulary***γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἐνδεκα** eleven ~decimal**ἐννέα** nine**ἐπίπαν** =ἐπί**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote**κατανύω** accomplish, arrive,perpetrate**μετρέω** measure, traverse ~metric**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature**μυριάς** -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad**μυρίος** (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**ὄργυια** fathom, arm's length ~reach**ὄργυιά** fathom, arm's length**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea

~pelagic

**πεντακόσιοι** 500**πλόος** -ῥ course, voyage ~float**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**τείνω** stretch, tend ~tense**τετρακόσιοι** 400**χάσμα** -τος (n, 3) chasm, gaping opening**χίλιοι** (τι) thousand ~kilo-

δὴ Βόσπορος κέκληται, κατ' ὃ δὴ ἔζευκτο ἡ γέφυρα,  
ἐπὶ σταδίου εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν ἐστι. τείνει δ' ἐς τὴν  
Προποντίδα ὁ Βόσπορος· ἡ δὲ Προποντὶς εὐρύς ἐστι  
μὲν σταδίων πεντακοσίων, μῆκος δὲ τετρακοσίων καὶ  
χιλίων, καταδιδόι ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ὅντα στενότητα  
μὲν ἑπτὰ σταδίου, μῆκος δὲ τετρακοσίου. ἐκδιδόι δὲ ὁ  
Ἑλλήσποντος ἐς χάσμα πελάγεος τὸ δὴ Αἰγαῖον καλέεται.

## 4.86

Μεμέτρηται δὲ ταῦτα ὧδε. νηὺς ἐπίπαν μάλιστα κη  
κατανύει ἐν μακρημερίῃ ὀργυιάς ἑπτακισμυρίας, νυκτὸς  
δὲ ἑξακισμυρίας. ἤδη ὦν ἐς μὲν Φᾶσιν ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος  
τοῦτο γὰρ ἐστὶ τοῦ Πόντου μακρότατον ἡμερέων ἑννέα  
πλόος ἐστὶ καὶ νυκτῶν ὀκτώ· αὗται ἑνδεκα μυριάδες καὶ  
ἑκατὸν ὀργυιέων γίνονται, ἐκ δὲ τῶν ὀργυιέων τουτέων  
στάδιοι ἑκατὸν καὶ χίλιοι καὶ μύριοι εἰσί. ἐς δὲ Θεμισκύρην  
τὴν ἐπὶ Θερμώδοντι ποταμῷ ἐκ τῆς Σινδικῆς κατὰ τοῦτο  
γὰρ ἐστὶ τοῦ Πόντου εὐρύτατον τριῶν τε ἡμερέων καὶ δύο  
νυκτῶν πλόος· αὗται δὲ τρεῖς μυριάδες καὶ τριήκοντα

δὴ Βόσπορος κέκληται, κατ' ὃ δὴ |yoke, join ἢ |dam, dike; bridge

ἐπὶ σταδίους εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν ἐστι. |stretch, tēd τὴν

Προποντίδα ὃ Βόσπορος· ἣ δὲ Προποντὶς ἐοῦσα |width; (caps) the  
east wind

μὲν σταδίων |500 , |length, δὲ |400 καὶ  
|stature

χιλίων, καταδιδοὶ ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἐόντα στευνότητα

μὲν ἐπτα σταδίους, |length, δὲ |400 . |hand over ὃ  
|stature

Ἑλλήσποντος ἐς |chasm, |the open sea ὃ δὴ Αἰγαῖον καλέεται.  
|gaping  
|opening

4.86

|measure, δὲ ταῦτα ὥδε. νηῦς |=ἐπὶ μάλιστα κη  
|traverse

|accomplish, 'ar- ἀκρημερίῃ ὀργυιάς ἐπτακισμυρίας, νυκτὸς  
|rive,perpetrate

δὲ ἑξακισμυρίας. ἤδη ὦν ἐς μὲν Φᾶσιν ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος

τοῦτο γὰρ ἐστὶ τοῦ Πόντου μακρότατον ἡμερέων |nine

|course, ἐστὶ καὶ νυκτῶν |eight αὗται |eleven |countless, καὶ  
|voyage |myriad

ἑκατόν ὀργυιέων γίνονται, ἐκ δὲ τῶν ὀργυιέων τουτέων

στάδιοι ἑκατόν καὶ χίλιοι καὶ μύριοι εἰσί. ἐς δὲ Θεμισκύρην

τὴν ἐπὶ Θερμώδοντι ποταμῷ ἐκ τῆς Σινδικῆς κατὰ τοῦτο

γὰρ ἐστὶ τοῦ Πόντου εὐρύτατον τριῶν τε ἡμερέων καὶ δύο

νυκτῶν |course, αὗται δὲ τρεῖς |countless, καὶ τριήκοντα  
|voyage |myriad

water which is called Bosphorus, where, as I said, the bridge of ships had been made, is not less than a hundred and twenty furlongs. This Bosphorus extends to the Propontis; and the Propontis, being in breadth five hundred furlongs and in length one thousand four hundred, has its outlet into the Hellespont, which is but seven furlongs broad at the narrowest place, though it is four hundred furlongs in length: and the Hellespont runs out into that expanse of sea which is called the Egean.

#### 4.86

These measurements I have made as follows:— a ship completes on an average in a long day a distance of seventy thousand fathoms, and in a night sixty thousand. Now we know that to the river Phasis from the mouth of the Sea (for it is here that the Pontus is longest) is a voyage of nine days and eight nights, which amounts to one hundred and eleven myriads of fathoms; and these fathoms are eleven thousand one hundred furlongs. Then from the land of the Sindians to Themiskyra on the river Thermodon (for here is the broadest part of the Pontus) it is a voyage of three days and two nights, which amounts to thirty-three myriads of fathoms

*vocabulary*

**ἀρχιτέκτων** -τος (m, 3) master, architect  
**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter  
**ἐβδομήκοντα** 70  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**ἐντέμνω** engrave, cut up  
**ἐξαριθμέω** count up; recount  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater  
**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic

**μυριάς** -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad  
**ὄργυια** fathom, arm's length ~reach  
**ὀργυιά** fathom, arm's length  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στήλη** post, column  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**τρηκόσιοι** three hundred  
**τρισχίλιοι** 3000 ~kilo-  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χωρίς** separately; except, other than  
 ~heir

ὀργυιέων γίνονται, στάδιοι δὲ τριηκόσιοι καὶ τρισχίλιοι. ὁ μὲν νυν Πόντος οὗτος καὶ Βόσπορός τε καὶ Ἑλλήσποντος οὕτω τέ μοι μεμετρέαται καὶ κατὰ τὰ εἰρημένα πεφύκασι, παρέχεται δὲ καὶ λίμνην ὁ Πόντος οὗτος ἐκδιδοῦσαν ἐς αὐτὸν οὐ πολλῶ τεω ἐλάσσω ἑωντοῦ, ἥ Μαιῆτις τε καλέεται καὶ μήτηρ τοῦ Πόντου.

## 4.87

Ὁ δὲ Δαρεῖος ὥς ἐθέσατο τὸν Πόντον, ἔπλεε ὀπίσω ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν, τῆς ἀρχιτέκτων ἐγένετο Μανδροκλῆς Σάμιος· θεησάμενος δὲ καὶ τὸν Βόσπορον στήλας ἔστησε δύο ἐπ' αὐτοῦ λίθου λευκοῦ, ἐνταμὼν γράμματα ἐς μὲν τὴν Ἀσσύρια ἐς δὲ τὴν Ἑλληνικά, ἔθνεα πάντα ὅσα περ ἦγε· ἦγε δὲ πάντα τῶν ἦρχε. τούτων μυριάδες ἐξηριθμήθησαν, χωρὶς τοῦ ναυτικοῦ, ἐβδομήκοντα σὺν ἱππεῦσι, νέες δὲ ἑξακόσiai συνελέχθησαν. τῇσι μὲν νυν στήλῃσι ταύτησι Βυζάντιοι κομίσαντες ἐς τὴν πόλιν ὕστερον τούτων ἐχρήσαντο πρὸς τὸν βωμὸν τῆς Ὀρθωσίης Ἀρτέμιδος, χωρὶς ἑνὸς λίθου· οὗτος δὲ κατελείφθη παρὰ τοῦ Διονύσου



ὀργυιέων γίνονται, στάδιοι δὲ <sup>three</sup>καὶ <sup>hundred</sup>3000 ὁ  
 μέν νυν Πόντος οὗτος καὶ Βόσπορός τε καὶ Ἑλλήσποντος  
 οὕτω τέ μοι μεμετρεύεται καὶ κατὰ τὰ εἰρημμένα πεφύκασι,  
 παρέχεται δὲ καὶ <sup>lake, marsh,</sup>Πόντος οὗτος <sup>hand over</sup>ἐς  
<sup>basin, sea</sup>  
 αὐτὸν οὐ πολλῶ τεω ἐλάσσω ἑωυτοῦ, ἥ Μαίητις τε  
 καλέεται καὶ μήτηρ τοῦ Πόντου.

4.87

Ὁ δὲ Δαρεῖος ὥς ἐθέησατο τὸν Πόντον, ἔπλεε ὀπίσω  
 ἐπὶ τὴν <sup>dam,</sup> <sup>dike;</sup> <sup>master,</sup> <sup>bridge</sup> <sup>architect</sup> ἐγένετο Μανδροκλέης  
 Σάμιος· θεησάμενος δὲ καὶ τὸν Βόσπορον <sup>post,</sup> <sup>column</sup> ἔστησε  
 δύο ἐπ' αὐτοῦ λίθου λευκοῦ, <sup>engrave,</sup> <sup>writing,</sup> <sup>cut up</sup> <sup>letter</sup> ἐς μὲν τὴν  
 Ἀσσύρια ἐς δὲ τὴν Ἑλληνικά, ἔθνεα πάντα ὅσα περ ἦγε·  
 ἦγε δὲ πάντα τῶν ἡρχε. τούτων <sup>countless,</sup> <sup>count up; recount,</sup> <sup>myriad</sup>  
<sup>separately;</sup> <sup>ex-</sup> <sup>70</sup> <sup>cept, other than</sup> σὺν ἱππεῦσι, νέες δὲ  
 ἑξακόσiai <sup>collect, assemble.</sup> τῇσι μὲν νυν <sup>post,</sup> <sup>column</sup> ταύτῃσι  
 Βυζάντιοι κομίσαντες ἐς τὴν πόλιν ὕστερον τούτων  
 ἐχρήσαντο πρὸς τὸν <sup>altar</sup> τῆς Ὁρθωσίης Ἀρτέμιδος,  
<sup>separately;</sup> <sup>ex-</sup> <sup>ου·</sup> οὗτος δὲ κατελείφθη παρὰ τοῦ Διονύσου  
<sup>cept, other than</sup>

or three thousand three hundred furlongs. This Pontus then and also the Bosphorus and the Hellespont have been measured by me thus, and their nature is such as has been said: and this Pontus also has a lake which has its outlet into it, which lake is not much less in size than the Pontus itself, and it is called Maiotis and “Mother of the Pontus.”

#### 4.87

Dareios then having gazed upon the Pontus sailed back to the bridge, of which Mandrocles a Samian had been chief constructor; and having gazed upon the Bosphorus also, he set up two pillars by it of white stone with characters cut upon them, on the one Assyrian and on the other Hellenic, being the names of all the nations which he was leading with him: and he was leading with him all over whom he was ruler. The whole number of them without the naval force was reckoned to be seventy myriads including cavalry, and ships had been gathered together to the number of six hundred. These pillars the Byzantians conveyed to their city after the events of which I speak, and used them for the altar of Artemis Orthosia, excepting one stone, which was left standing by the side of

*vocabulary*

**ἀνατίθῃμι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
 (mp) reproach  
**ἀπαρχή** ἀπώρχης first offering  
**ἀρχιτέκτων** -τος (m, 3) master,  
 architect  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**γεφυρόω** (ῥ) dam, move earth  
**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter  
**γραμματεὺς** -ος (m) clerk,  
 schoolmaster  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**δωρέω** give ~donate  
**ἐκτελέω** complete, bring about  
 ~apostle  
**ἐπιγράφω** scratch, graze ~photograph  
**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote  
**ζῶον** being, animal; picture

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἰχθυόεις** full of fish  
**καταμένω** stay; not change  
**κῦδος** -εος (n, 3) glory, renown  
 ~kudos  
**μνημόσυνον** memorial  
**νηός** temple, shrine  
**περιτίθῃμι** put around, endow with  
 ~thesis  
**προεδρία** pride of place  
**στέφανος** ring  
**στρατός** common people/soldiers  
 ~strategy  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
**σχεδία** raft  
**σχεδίην** at close quarters ~ischemia  
**χῶρος** place ~heir

τὸν νηὸν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, γραμμάτων Ἀσσυρίων πλέος. τοῦ δὲ Βοσπόρου ὁ χώρος τὸν ἔζευξε βασιλεὺς Δαρεῖος, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκέει συμβαλλομένῳ, μέσον ἐστὶ Βυζαντίου τε καὶ τοῦ ἐπὶ στόματι ἱροῦ.

## 4.88

Δαρεῖος δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα ἡσθεὶς τῇ σχεδίῃ τὸν ἀρχιτέκτονα αὐτῆς Μανδροκλέα τὸν Σάμιον ἐδωρήσατο πᾶσι δέκα· ἀπ' ὧν δὴ Μανδροκλῆς ἀπαρχὴν ζῶα γραψάμενος πᾶσαν τὴν ζεύξιν τοῦ Βοσπόρου καὶ βασιλέα τε Δαρεῖον ἐν προεδρίῃ κατήμενον καὶ τὸν στρατὸν αὐτοῦ διαβαίνοντα ταῦτα γραψάμενος ἀνέθηκε ἔς τὸ Ἥραιον, ἐπιγράψας τάδε.

Βόσπορον ἰχθυόεντα γεφυρώσας ἀνέθηκε Μανδροκλῆς Ἥρῃ μνημόσυνον σχεδίσς, αὐτῷ μὲν στέφανον περιθείς, Σαμίοισι δὲ κῦδος, Δαρείου βασιλέος ἐκτελέσας κατὰ νοῦν.

## 4.89

Ταῦτα μὲν νυν τοῦ ζεύξαντος τὴν γέφυραν μνημόσυνα

τὸν |temple.ῶν Βυζαντίῳ, γραμμάτων Ἀσσυρίων πλέος. τοῦ  
 δὲ Βοσπόρου ὁ |place τὸν |yoke, join...σιλεὺς Δαρείος, ὥς  
 ἔμοι δοκέει |pit against; compare; |τον ἐστὶ Βυζαντίου τε καὶ  
 |mp: meet, fall in with  
 τοῦ ἐπὶ στόματι ἱρού.

## 4.88

Δαρείος δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα |be pleased, enjoy... τὸν |master,  
 |architect  
 αὐτῆς Μανδροκλέα τὸν Σάμιον ἐδωρήσατο πᾶσι δέκα· ἀπ'  
 ὧν δὴ Μανδροκλῆς |first ζῶα γραψάμενος πᾶσαν τὴν  
 |offering  
 ζεύξιν τοῦ Βοσπόρου καὶ βασιλέα τε Δαρείον ἐν προεδρίῃ  
 |stay; not change ` τὸν |army αὐτοῦ |pass over, cross αὐτά  
 γραψάμενος |consecrate, lay ὄν, impute;graze τάδε.  
 |(mp) reproach  
 Βόσπορον |full of fish |dam |consecrate, lay ὄν, im-  
 |pute; (mp) reproach  
 Ἡρῇ |memorial σχεδίσ, αὐτῷ μὲν |ring |put around,  
 |endow with  
 Σαμίοισι δὲ |glory, Δαρείου βασιλέος |complete κατὰ  
 |renown  
 νοῦν.

## 4.89

Ταῦτα μὲν νυν τοῦ |yoke, join τῇν |dam, dike;|memorial  
 |bridge

the temple of Dionysos in Byzantion, covered over with Assyrian characters. Now the place on the Bosphorus where Dareios made his bridge is, as I conclude, midway between Byzantion and the temple at the mouth of the Pontus.

#### 4.88

After this Dareios being pleased with the floating bridge rewarded the chief constructor of it, Mandrocles the Samian, with gifts tenfold; and as an offering from these Mandrocles had a painting made of figures to present the whole scene of the bridge over the Bosphorus and king Dareios sitting in a prominent seat and his army crossing over; this he caused to be painted and dedicated it as an offering in the temple of Hera, with the following inscription:

“Bosphorus having bridged over, the straits fish-abounding, to Hera Mandrocleës dedicates this, of his work to record; A crown on himself he set, and he brought to the Samians glory, And for Dareios performed everything after his mind.”

#### 4.89

This memorial was made of him who constructed the bridge: and Dareios,

*vocabulary*

**ἄκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἄκος ἄκεος** (n, 3) cure, remedy  
**ἀναπλώω** unfold; explain; simplify  
**ἀναπλώω** sail up, through  
**αὐχὴν** -ένος (m, 3) neck  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**δωρέω** give ~donate  
**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here  
**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote  
**κυάνεος** dark ~cyan  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage

**περιμένω** wait for  
**περίοικος** dwelling around  
**πηγή** headwaters, fountain  
**πηγός** stout, mighty  
**πλόος** -ῦ course, voyage ~float  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
**στρατός** common people/soldiers  
 ~strategy  
**σχεδία** raft  
**σχεδίην** at close quarters ~ischemia  
**σχίζω** split ~schism

ἐγένετο. Δαρείος δὲ δωρησάμενος Μανδροκλέα διέβαινε ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, τοῖσι Ἴωσι παραγγείλας πλέειν ἐς τὸν Πόντον μέχρι Ἰστροῦ ποταμοῦ, ἐπεὰν δὲ ἀπίκωνται ἐς τὸν Ἰστρον, ἐνθαῦτα αὐτὸν περιμένειν ζευγνύντας τὸν ποταμόν. τὸ γὰρ δὴ ναυτικὸν ἦγον Ἴωνές τε καὶ Αἰολέες καὶ Ἑλλησπόντιοι. ὁ μὲν δὴ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς Κυανέας διεκπλώσας ἔπλεε ἰθὺ τοῦ Ἰστροῦ, ἀναπλώσας δὲ ἀνὰ ποταμὸν δυὼν ἡμερέων πλόον ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸν αὐχένα, ἔκ τοῦ σχίζεται τὰ στόματα τοῦ Ἰστροῦ, ἐξεύγνυε. Δαρείος δὲ ὡς διέβη τὸν Βόσπορον κατὰ τὴν σχεδίην, ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς Θρηίκης, ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐπὶ Τέαρου ποταμοῦ τὰς πηγὰς ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο ἡμέρας τρεῖς.

#### 4.90

Ὁ δὲ Τέαρος λέγεται ὑπὸ τῶν περιοίκων εἶναι ποταμῶν ἄριστος τὰ τε ἄλλα τὰ ἐς ἄκεσιν φέροντα καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀνδράσι καὶ ἵπποισι ψώρην ἀκέσασθαι. εἰσὶ δὲ αὐτοῦ αἱ πηγαὶ δυὼν δέουσαι τεσσαεράκοντα, ἐκ πέτρης τῆς αὐτῆς



ἐγένετο. Δαρείος δὲ δωρησάμενος Μανδροκλέα |pass over, cross  
 εἰς τὴν Εὐρώπην, τοῖσι Ἰωσι |transmit; order, summon, <sup>s</sup>  
 |recommend, encourage  
 τὸν Πόντον μέχρι Ἰστρου ποταμοῦ, ἐπεὰν δὲ ἀπίκωνται  
 εἰς τὸν Ἰστρον, |there, here ὡτὸν |wait for |yoke, join  
 τὸν ποταμόν. τὸ γὰρ δὴ ναυτικὸν ἤγον Ἰωνές τε καὶ  
 Αἰολέες καὶ Ἑλλησπόντιοι. ὁ μὲν δὴ ναυτικὸς |army  
 |dark διεκπλώσας ἔπλεε ἰθὺ τοῦ Ἰστρου, ἀναπλώσας  
 δὲ ἀνὰ ποταμὸν δυῶν ἡμερέων |course, ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, τοῦ  
 |voyage  
 ποταμοῦ τὸν |neck , ἔκ τοῦ |split τὰ στόματα τοῦ  
 Ἰστρου, ἐξεύγνυε. Δαρείος δὲ ὡς |pass over, cross ἔμπορον  
 κατὰ τὴν σχεδίνην, ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς Θρηάκης, ἀπικόμενος  
 δὲ ἐπὶ Τεάρου ποταμοῦ τὰς πηγὰς |encamp or take up sta-  
 |tion  
 ἡμέρας τρεῖς.

4.90

Ὁ δὲ Τέαρὸς λέγεται ὑπὸ τῶν |dwelling εἶναι ποταμῶν  
 |around  
 ἄριστος τὰ τε ἄλλα τὰ εἰς ἅκεσιν φέροντα καὶ δὴ καὶ  
 ἀνδράσι καὶ ἵπποισι ψώρην |heal, fix εἰς δὲ αὐτοῦ αἱ  
 πηγαὶ δυῶν δέουσαι τεσσαράκοντα, ἔκ πέτρης τῆς αὐτῆς

after he had rewarded Mandrocles with gifts, passed over into Europe, having first commanded the Ionians to sail into the Pontus as far as the river Ister, and when they arrived at the Ister, there to wait for him, making a bridge meanwhile over the river; for the chief of his naval force were the Ionians, the Aiolians and the Hellespontians. So the fleet sailed through between the Kyanean rocks and made straight for the Ister; and then they sailed up the river a two days' voyage from the sea and proceeded to make a bridge across the neck, as it were, of the river, where the mouths of the Ister part off. Dareios meanwhile, having crossed the Bosphorus on the floating bridge, was advancing through Thrace, and when he came to the sources of the river Tearos he encamped for three days.

#### 4.90

Now the Tearos is said by those who dwell near it to be the best of all rivers, both in other respects which tend to healing and especially for curing diseases of the skin both in men and in horses: and its springs are thirty-eight in number, flowing all from

*vocabulary***γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter**ἐγγράφω** engrave, enroll**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**θερμός** warm, hot ~thermos**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**Πέρσης** Persian**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**στήλη** post, column**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
station ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers  
~strategy**ψυχρός** (ῥ) cold ~psychology

ρέουσai, καὶ αἱ μὲν αὐτέων εἰσὶ ψυχραὶ αἱ δὲ θερμαί.  
 ὁδὸς δ' ἐπ' αὐτάς ἐστι ἴση ἐξ Ἡραίου τε πόλιος τῆς παρὰ  
 Περὶνθω καὶ ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίης τῆς ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ,  
 δυὼν ἡμερέων ἑκατέρῃ. ἐκδιδοὶ δὲ ὁ Τέαρὸς οὗτος ἐς  
 τὸν Κοντάδεσδον ποταμόν, ὁ δὲ Κοντάδεσδος ἐς τὸν  
 Ἀγριάνην, ὁ δὲ Ἀγριάνης ἐς τὸν Ἑβρον, ὁ δὲ ἐς θάλασσαν  
 τὴν παρ' Αἴνῳ πόλι.

## 4.91

Ἐπὶ τοῦτον ὦν τὸν ποταμόν ἀπικόμενος ὁ Δαρείος ὡς  
 ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο, ἤσθεις τῷ ποταμῷ στήλην ἔστησε καὶ  
 ἐνθαῦτα, γράμματα ἐγγράψας λέγοντα τάδε. «Τέαρου  
 ποταμοῦ κεφαλὰ ὕδωρ ἄριστόν τε καὶ κάλλιστον  
 παρέχονται πάντων ποταμῶν· καὶ ἐπ' αὐτὰς ἀπύκετο  
 ἐλαύνων ἐπὶ Σκύθας στρατὸν ἀνὴρ ἄριστος τε καὶ  
 κάλλιστος πάντων ἀνθρώπων, Δαρείος ὁ Ὑστάσπεος,  
 Περσέων τε καὶ πάσης τῆς ἡπείρου βασιλεύς.» ταῦτα δὲ  
 ἐνθαῦτα ἐγράφη.

|flow , καὶ αἱ μὲν αὐτέων εἰσὶ |cold αἱ δὲ |warm, hot  
 ὁδὸς δ' ἐπ' αὐτάς ἐστι ἴση ἐξ Ἡραίου τε πόλιος τῆς παρὰ  
 Περίνθω καὶ ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίης τῆς ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ πόντῳ,  
 δυῶν ἡμερέων ἑκατέρῃ. |hand over ὁ Τέαρὸς οὗτος ἐς  
 τὸν Κοντάδεσδον ποταμόν, ὁ δὲ Κοντάδεσδος ἐς τὸν  
 Ἀγριάνην, ὁ δὲ Ἀγριάνης ἐς τὸν Ἑβρον, ὁ δὲ ἐς θάλασσαν  
 τὴν παρ' Αἴνῳ πόλι.

4.91

Ἐπὶ τοῦτον ὦν τὸν ποταμὸν ἀπικόμενος ὁ Δαρεῖος ὡς  
 |encamp or take up sta- |be pleased, enjoy--|μῶ |post, ἔστησε καὶ  
 |tion |column  
 |there, here |writing, |engrave, λέγοντα τάδε. «Τέαρου  
 |letter |enroll  
 ποταμοῦ κεφαλὰ ὕδωρ ἄριστόν τε καὶ κάλλιστον  
 παρέχονται πάντων ποταμῶν· καὶ ἐπ' αὐτὰς ἀπύκετο  
 ἐλαύνων ἐπὶ Σκύθας |army ἀνὴρ ἄριστος τε καὶ  
 κάλλιστος πάντων ἀνθρώπων, Δαρεῖος ὁ Ὑστάσπεος,  
 Περσέων τε καὶ πάσης τῆς |mainland, |ἡ-|ασιλεύς.» ταῦτα δὲ  
 |continent  
 |there, here' /ράφη.

the same rock, of which some are cold and others warm. The way to them is of equal length from the city of Heraion near Perinthos and from Apollonia upon the Euxine Sea, that is to say two days' journey by each road. This Tearos runs into the river Contadesdos and the Contadesdos into the Agrianes and the Agrianes into the Hebros, which flows into the sea by the city of Ainos.

#### 4.91

Dareios then, having come to this river and having encamped there, was pleased with the river and set up a pillar there also, with an inscription as follows: "The head-springs of the river Tearos give the best and fairest water of all rivers; and to them came leading an army against the Scythians the best and fairest of all men, Dareios the son of Hystaspes, of the Persians and of all the Continent king." These were the words which were there written.

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνωμοσύνη** senselessness, ignorance,  
folly

**ἄθανατίζω** make immortal

**ἄμαχητί** without a fight

**ἄπελάνυνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
(intrans) ride away

**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὄ) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare

**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine

**δουλόω** enslave

**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here

**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence

**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty

**κολωνός** hill, mound

**μεσαμβρίη** midday; the south

**παρέξιμι** pass by; transgress

**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat

**στρατιά** army ~strategy

**τοιόσδε** such

## 4.92

Δαρείος δὲ ἐνθεῦτεν ὀρμηθεὶς ἀπίκητο ἐπ' ἄλλον ποταμὸν τῷ οὖνομα Ἀρτησκός ἐστι, ὃς διὰ Ὀδρυσέων ῥέει. ἐπὶ τοῦτον δὴ τὸν ποταμὸν ἀπικόμενος ἐποίησε τοιόνδε· ἀποδέξας χωρίον τῇ στρατιῇ ἐκέλευε πάντα ἄνδρα λίθον ἓνα παρεξιώντα τιθέναι ἐς τὸ ἀποδεδεγμένον τοῦτο χωρίον. ὥς δὲ ταῦτα ἡ στρατιὴ ἐπετέλεσε, ἐνθαῦτα κολωνοὺς μεγάλους τῶν λίθων καταλιπὼν ἀπήλαυνε τὴν στρατιήν.

## 4.93

Πρὶν δὲ ἀπικέσθαι ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰστρον, πρώτους αἰρέει Γέτας τοὺς ἀθανατίζοντας. οἱ μὲν γὰρ τὸν Σαλμυδησσὸν ἔχοντες Θρήικες καὶ ὑπὲρ Ἀπολλωνίης τε καὶ Μεσαμβρίας πόλιος οἰκημένοι, καλούμενοι δὲ Κυρμιάναι καὶ Νιψαῖοι, ἀμαχητὶ σφέας αὐτοὺς παρέδωσαν Δαρείῳ· οἱ δὲ Γέται πρὸς ἀγνωμοσύνην τραπόμενοι αὐτίκα ἐδουλώθησαν, Θρηίκων ἐόντες ἀνδρηότατοι καὶ δικαιοτάτοι.



4.92

Δαρείος δὲ |thence ὁρμηθεὶς ἀπὶκετο ἐπ' ἄλλον ποταμὸν  
 τῷ οὖνομα Ἀρτησκός ἐστι, ὃς διὰ Ὀδρυσέων ῥέει. ἐπὶ  
 τοῦτον δὴ τὸν ποταμὸν ἀπικόμενος ἐποίησε |such  
 ἀποδέξας χωρίον τῇ στρατιῇ ἐκέλευε πάντα ἄνδρα  
 λίθον ἓνα |pass by; transgress' μι ἐς τὸ |show, point out; ap- ὕπο  
 |point; (mid) declare  
 χωρίον. ὥς δὲ ταῦτα ἡ στρατιὴ |complete; do|there, here  
 |a religious  
 |hill, mound μεγάλους τῶν λίθων καταλίπων |duty  
 |expel, exclude, ward off; (in-  
 |trans) ride away  
 στρατιήν.

4.93

Πρὶν δὲ ἀπικέσθαι ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰστρον, πρώτους αἰρέει Γέτας  
 τοὺς |make immortal . οἱ μὲν γὰρ τὸν Σαλμυδησὸν ἔχοντες  
 Θρήικες καὶ ὑπὲρ Ἀπολλωνίης τε καὶ |midday; the south ἡλίου  
 οἰκημένοι, καλεύμενοι δὲ Κυρμιάναι καὶ Νυφαῖοι, |without a fight  
 σφέας αὐτοὺς παρέδοσαν Δαρείῳ· οἱ δὲ Γέται πρὸς  
 |senselessness, τραπόμενοι αὐτίκα |enslave , Θρηίκων  
 |ignorance, folly  
 ἐόντες ἀνδρηιότατοι καὶ δικαιοτάτοι.

## 4.92

Dareios then set out from thence and came to another river whose name is Artescos, which flows through the land of the Odrysians. Having come to this river he did as follows:— he appointed a place for his army and bade every man as he passed out by it place one stone in this appointed place: and when the army had performed this, then he marched away his army leaving behind great mounds of these stones.

## 4.93

But before he came to the Ister he conquered first the Getai, who believe in immortality: for the Thracians who occupy Salmydessos and are settled above the cities of Apollonian and Mesambria, called the Kyrmianai and the Nipsaioi, delivered themselves over to Dareios without fighting; but the Getai, who are the bravest and the most upright in their dealings of all the Thracians, having betaken themselves to obstinacy were forthwith subdued.

*vocabulary*

**ἀθανατίζω** make immortal  
**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology  
**ἄκόντιον** diminutive of javelin  
**ἀναπείρω** pierce on a spit ~pierce  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**ἀστραπή** lightning  
**βροντή** thunder ~brontosaurus  
**δαίμων** -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom  
 ~demon  
**διαλαμβάνω** distribute

**ἐκάστοτε** each time  
**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command  
**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-  
 forms) allot; receive  
**λόγχη** spear point; lot  
**μετέωρος** up in the air ~meteor  
**μίν** him, her, it  
**πάλος** lot; ballot  
**πεντετηρίς** five-year festival  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**ρίπτω** hurl  
**σφέτερος** their  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic

## 4.94

Ἀθανατίζουσι δὲ τόνδε τὸν τρόπον· οὔτε ἀποθνήσκειν  
 ἑωυτοὺς νομίζουσι ἶναι τε τὸν ἀπολλύμενον παρὰ  
 Σάλμοξιν δαίμονα· οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον  
 ὀνομάζουσι Γεβελείζιν· διὰ πεντετηρίδος τε τὸν πάλω  
 λαχόντα αἰεὶ σφέων αὐτῶν ἀποπέμπουσι ἄγγελον παρὰ  
 τὸν Σάλμοξιν, ἐντελλόμενοι τῶν ἂν ἐκάστοτε δέωνται,  
 πέμπουσι δὲ ὧδε· οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ταχθέντες ἀκόντια τρία  
 ἔχουσι, ἄλλοι δὲ διαλαβόντες τοῦ ἀποπεμπομένου παρὰ  
 τὸν Σάλμοξιν τὰς χεῖρας καὶ τοὺς πόδας, ἀνακινήσαντες  
 αὐτὸν μετέωρον ρίπτουσι ἐς τὰς λόγχας. ἦν μὲν δὴ  
 ἀποθάνη ἀναπαρεῖς, τοῖσι δὲ ἵλεος ὁ θεὸς δοκέει εἶναι· ἦν  
 δὲ μὴ ἀποθάνη, αἰτιῶνται αὐτὸν τὸν ἄγγελον, φάμενοί  
 μιν ἄνδρα κακὸν εἶναι, αἰτιησάμενοι δὲ τοῦτον ἄλλον  
 ἀποπέμπουσι· ἐντέλλονται δὲ ἔτι ζῶντι. οὗτοι οἱ αὐτοὶ  
 Θρήικες καὶ πρὸς βροντήν τε καὶ ἀστραπὴν τοξεύοντες  
 ἄνω πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν ἀπειλέουσι τῷ θεῷ, οὐδένα ἄλλον  
 θεὸν νομίζοντες εἶναι εἰ μὴ τὸν σφέτερον.

4.94

|make immortal δὲ τόνδε τὸν τρόπον· οὔτε ἀποθνήσκειν  
 ἑωυτοὺς νομίζουσι ἶέναι τε τὸν ἀπολλύμενον παρὰ  
 Σάλμοξιν |a god, fate, doom<sup>1</sup> αὐτῶν τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον  
 ὀνομάζουσι Γεβελείζιν· διὰ |five-year festival ἔ τὸν πάλω  
 |be allotted; (esp. λέλα- forms) al-|send away ἄγγελον παρὰ  
 |lot; receive  
 τὸν Σάλμοξιν, ἐντελλόμενοι τῶν ἂν |each time δέωνται,  
 πέμπουσι δὲ ὧδε· οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ταχθέντες |diminutive. ρία  
 |of javelin  
 ἔχουσι, ἄλλοι δὲ |distribute τοῦ |send away παρὰ  
 τὸν Σάλμοξιν τὰς χεῖρας καὶ τοὺς πόδας, ἀνακινήσαντες  
 αὐτὸν |up in the air|hurl ἐς τὰς |spear  
 |point;  
 ἀποθάνῃ ἀναπαρεῖς, τοῖσι δὲ ἴλεος οὐ θεὸς δοκέει εἶναι· ἦν  
 |lot  
 δὲ μὴ ἀποθάνῃ, |blame αὐτὸν τὸν ἄγγελον, φάμενοί  
 μιν ἄνδρα κακὸν εἶναι, αἰτιησάμενοι δὲ τοῦτον ἄλλον  
 |send away ἐντέλλονται δὲ ἔτι ζῶντι. οὗτοι οἱ αὐτοὶ  
 Θρήικες καὶ πρὸς |thunder τε καὶ |lightning |shoot an arrow at  
 ἄνω πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν |vow, threaten, bōast ᾧ, οὐδένα ἄλλον  
 θεὸν νομίζοντες εἶναι εἰ μὴ τὸν |their .

## 4.94

And their belief in immortality is of this kind, that is to say, they hold that they do not die, but that he who is killed goes to Salmoxis, a divinity, whom some of them call Gebeleizis; and at intervals of four years they send one of themselves, whomsoever the lot may select, as a messenger to Salmoxis, charging him with such requests as they have to make on each occasion; and they send him thus:— certain of them who are appointed for this have three javelins, and others meanwhile take hold on both sides of him who is being sent to Salmoxis, both by his hands and his feet, and first they swing him up, then throw him into the air so as to fall upon the spear-points: and if when he is pierced through he is killed, they think that the god is favourable to them; but if he is not killed, they find fault with the messenger himself, calling him a worthless man, and then having found fault with him they send another: and they give him the charge beforehand, while he is yet alive. These same Thracians also shoot arrows up towards the sky when thunder and lightning come, and use threats to the god, not believing that there exists any other god except their own.

*vocabulary***ἀναδιδάσχω** teach, teach better**ἀσθενής** weak**ἄτε** as if; since**ἀφανίζω** do away with, make off with;  
(pass) disappear**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**δουλεύω** serve, be a slave**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**εὖωχέω** fete, feed well**ἦθος ἥθεος** (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos**κατάγαιος** at ground level;  
underground**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;  
enroll ~legion**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**οἶκημα** -τος (n, 3) room**ὁμιλέω** (i) associate with ~homily**παντελής** complete, absolute**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;  
still exist**σοφιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) expert**συμπότης** drinking companion, buddy**χῶρος** place ~heir

## 4.95

Ὡς δὲ ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι τῶν τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκεόντων Ἑλλήνων καὶ Πόντον, τὸν Σάλμοξιν τοῦτον ἐόντα ἄνθρωπον δουλεῦσαι ἐν Σάμῳ, δουλεῦσαι δὲ Πυθαγόρῃ τῷ Μνησάρχῳ, ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ αὐτὸν γενόμενον ἐλεύθερον χρήματα κτήσασθαι μεγάλα, κτησάμενον δὲ ἀπελθεῖν ἐς τὴν ἑωυτοῦ. ἅτε δὲ κακοβίων τε ἐόντων τῶν Θρηίκων καὶ ὑπαφρονεστέρων, τὸν Σάλμοξιν τοῦτον ἐπιστάμενον δίαίταν τε Ἰάδα καὶ ἥθεα βαθύτερα ἢ κατὰ Θρηίκας, οἶα Ἑλλησι τε ὁμιλήσαντα καὶ Ἑλλήνων οὐ τῷ ἀσθενεστάτῳ σοφιστῇ Πυθαγόρῃ, κατασκευάσασθαι ἀνδρεῶνα, ἐς τὸν πανδοκεύοντα τῶν ἀστῶν τοὺς πρώτους καὶ εὐωχέοντα ἀναδιδάσκειν ὥς οὔτε αὐτὸς οὔτε οἱ συμπόται αὐτοῦ οὔτε οἱ ἐκ τούτων αἰεὶ γινόμενοι ἀποθανέονται, ἀλλ' ἥξουσι ἐς χῶρον τοῦτον ἵνα αἰεὶ περιέοντες ἔξουσι τὰ πάντα ἀγαθὰ. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ἐποίεε τὰ καταλεχθέντα καὶ ἔλεγε ταῦτα, ἐν τούτῳ κατάγαιον οἴκημα ἐποιέετο. ὥς δὲ οἱ παντελέως εἶχε τὸ οἶκημα, ἐκ μὲν τῶν Θρηίκων ἠφανίσθη, καταβὰς δὲ κάτω



4.95

Ὡς δὲ ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι τῶν τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον οἰκεόντων

|Greek καὶ Πόντον, τὸν Σάλμοξιν τοῦτον ἐόντα

ἄνθρωπον |serve, be a slave Σάμω, |serve, be a slave Πυθαγόρη

τῷ Μνησάρχῳ, |thence δὲ αὐτὸν γενόμενον |not enslaved

χρήματα κτήσασθαι μεγάλα, κτησάμενον δὲ ἀπελθεῖν ἐς

τὴν ἑωυτοῦ. |as if; since...κοβίων τε ἐόντων τῶν Θρηίκων

καὶ ὑπαφρονεστέρων, τὸν Σάλμοξιν τοῦτον ἐπιστάμενον

|way of life; home; καὶ |habit, |high, deep ἢ κατὰ Θρήικας, οἶα  
|arbitration |habitat

|Greek τε |associate with καὶ |Greek οὐ τῷ |weak

|expert Πυθαγόρη, |equip, build ἀνδρεῶνα, ἐς τὸν

πανδοκεύοντα τῶν ἀστῶν τοὺς πρώτους καὶ |fete, feed well

|teach, teach ὥς οὔτε αὐτὸς οὔτε οἱ συμπόται αὐτοῦ οὔτε  
|better

οἱ ἐκ τούτων αἰεὶ γινόμενοι ἀποθανέονται, ἀλλ' ἥξουσιν ἐς

|place τοῦτον ἵνα αἰεὶ |be superior to; be |τὰ πάντα ἀγαθὰ.  
|left over; still exist

ἐν ᾧ δὲ ἐποίεε τὰ |relate in detail, καὶ ἔλεγε ταῦτα, ἐν τούτῳ  
|choose; enroll

|at ground|room ἐποίεετο. ὥς δέ οἱ |complete, εἶχε τὸ  
|level; under- |absolute

|ground room, ἐκ μὲν τῶν Θρηίκων |do away with, make off  
|with; (pass) disappear

## 4.95

This Salmoxis I hear from the Hellenes who dwell about the Hellespont and the Pontus, was a man, and he became a slave in Samos, and was in fact a slave of Pythagoras the son of Mnesarchos. Then having become free he gained great wealth, and afterwards returned to his own land: and as the Thracians both live hardly and are rather simple-minded, this Salmoxis, being acquainted with the Ionian way of living and with manners more cultivated than the Thracians were used to see, since he had associated with Hellenes (and not only that but with Pythagoras, not the least able philosopher of the Hellenes), prepared a banqueting-hall, where he received and feasted the chief men of the tribe and instructed them meanwhile that neither he himself nor his guests nor their descendants in succession after them would die; but that they would come to a place where they would live for ever and have all things good. While he was doing that which has been mentioned and was saying these things, he was making for himself meanwhile a chamber under the ground; and when his chamber was finished, he disappeared from among the Thracians and went down into the

*vocabulary***ἀπιστέω** disbelieve ~stand**δαίμων** -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom  
~demon**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**διστάω** treat; live; arbitrate**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐπιχώριος** native**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**κατάγειος** at ground level;  
underground**λίην** very**μίν** him, her, it**οἶκημα** -τος (n, 3) room**ὄον** οὔ type of fruit**πενθέω** grieve ~Nepenthe**Πέρσης** Persian**πιθανός** persuasive**ποθέω** miss, long for, notice an  
absence; lose ~bid**στρατός** common people/soldiers  
~strategy**στρατώ** be on a campaign ~strategy**σχεδία** raft**σχεδίην** at close quarters ~ischemia**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid**χειρώ** dominate, subdue

ἐς τὸ κατάγαιον οἶκημα διαιτᾶτο ἐπ' ἕτεα τρία· οἳ δὲ μιν ἐπόθεόν τε καὶ ἐπένθεον ὥς τεθνεῶτα. τετάρτῳ δὲ ἕτεϊ ἐφάνη τοῖσι Θρήϊξι, καὶ οὕτω πιθανά σφι ἐγένετο τὰ ἔλεγε ὁ Σάλμοξις. ταῦτα φασί μιν ποιῆσαι.

## 4.96

Ἐγὼ δὲ περὶ μὲν τούτου καὶ τοῦ καταγαίου οἰκήματος οὔτε ἀπιστέω οὔτε ὦν πιστεύω τι λήην, δοκέω δὲ πολλοῖσι ἕτεσι πρότερον τὸν Σάλμοξιν τοῦτον γενέσθαι Πυθαγόρεω. εἴτε δὲ ἐγένετό τις Σάλμοξις ἄνθρωπος, εἴτ' ἐστὶ δαίμων τις Γέτησι οὗτος ἐπιχώριος, χαίρέτω. οὔτοι μὲν δὴ τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ χρεώμενοι ὥς ἐχειρώθησαν ὑπὸ Περσέων, εἵποντο τῷ ἄλλῳ στρατῷ.

## 4.97

Δαρείος δὲ ὥς ἀπύκετο καὶ ὁ πεζὸς ἅμ' αὐτῷ στρατὸς ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰστρον, ἐνθαῦτα διαβάντων πάντων Δαρείος ἐκέλευσε τοὺς τε Ἴωνας τὴν σχεδὴν λύσαντας ἔπεσθαι κατ' ἡπειρον ἑωυτῷ καὶ τὸν ἐκ τῶν νεῶν στρατόν.

ἐς τὸ |at ground|room δαιτᾶτο ἐπ' ἕτα τρία· οἱ δὲ μιν  
 level; under-  
 ground  
 |miss, long for|grieve ὥς τεθνεῶτα. |fourth δὲ ἔτει  
 notice an absence;  
 lose  
 ἐφάνη τοῖσι Θρήξι, καὶ οὕτω |persuasive ἥ ἐγένετο τὰ ἔλεγε  
 ὁ Σάλμοξις. ταῦτα φασί μιν ποιῆσαι.

## 4.96

Ἐγὼ δὲ περὶ μὲν τούτου καὶ τοῦ |at ground|room  
 level; under-  
 ground  
 οὔτε |disbelieve οὔτε ὧν πιστεύω τι |very, δοκέω δὲ  
 πολλοῖσι ἔτεσι πρότερον τὸν Σάλμοξιν τοῦτον γενέσθαι  
 Πυθαγόρεω. εἴτε δὲ ἐγένετό τις Σάλμοξις ἄνθρωπος, εἴτ'  
 ἐστὶ |a god, fate, doom „σι οὗτος |native, χαιρέτω. οὔτοι  
 μὲν δὴ τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ χρεώμενοι ὥς |χειρώ?: dominatè, subdue; or  
 |χειρώ?: dominate, subdue  
 Περσέων, εἶποντο τῷ ἄλλῳ στρατῷ.

## 4.97

Δαρείος δὲ ὥς ἀπύκετο καὶ ὁ πεζὸς ἅμ' αὐτῷ |army  
 ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰστρον, |there, here |pass over, cross. ἔντων Δαρείος  
 ἐκέλευσε τοὺς τε Ἴωνας τὴν σχεδὴν λύσαντας ἔπεσθαι  
 κατ' |mainland, ἑωυτῷ καὶ τὸν ἐκ τῶν νεῶν |army  
 continent

underground chamber, where he continued to live for three years: and they grieved for his loss and mourned for him as dead. Then in the fourth year he appeared to the Thracians, and in this way the things which Salmoxis said became credible to them.

#### 4.96

Thus they say that he did; but as to this matter and the chamber under ground, I neither disbelieve it nor do I very strongly believe, but I think that this Salmoxis lived many years before Pythagoras. However, whether there ever lived a man Salmoxis, or whether he is simply a native deity of the Getai, let us bid farewell to him now.

#### 4.97

These, I say, having such manners as I have said, were subdued by the Persians and accompanied the rest of the army: and when Dareios and with him the land-army arrived at the Ister, then after all had passed over, Dareios commanded the Ionians to break up the floating bridge and to accompany him by land, as well as the rest of the troops which

*vocabulary*

**ἀλάομαι** wander, rove, roam ~Fr. aller  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀποδέχομαι** accept  
**ἀρόω** plow ~arable  
**γέφυρα** (ὅ) dam, dike; bridge  
**ἐμεωυτοῦ** myself

**ζεύγνυμι** (ὅ) yoke, join ~zygote  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος  
**καταμένω** stay; not change  
**κῶας κώως** (n, 3) fleece  
**μίν** him, her, it  
**φυλακός** guard; sentry

μελλόντων δὲ τῶν Ἰώνων λύειν καὶ ποιέειν τὰ κελευόμενα, Κώης ὁ Ἐρξάνδρου στρατηγὸς ἐὼν Μυτιληναίων ἔλεξε Δαρείῳ τάδε, πυθόμενος πρότερον εἰ οἱ φίλον εἶη γνώμην ἀποδέκεσθαι παρὰ τοῦ βουλομένου ἀποδείκνυσθαι. «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπὶ γῆν γὰρ μέλλεις στρατεύεσθαι τῆς οὔτε ἀρηρομένον φανήσεται οὐδὲν οὔτε πόλις οἰκομένη· σύ νυν γέφυραν ταύτην ἔα κατὰ χώρην ἐστάναι, φυλάκους αὐτῆς λιπὼν τούτους οἵπερ μιν ἔζευξαν. καὶ ἦν τε κατὰ νόον πρήξωμεν εὐρόντες Σκύθας, ἔστι ἄποδος ἡμῖν, ἦν τε καὶ μή σφεας εὐρεῖν δυνώμεθα, ἥ γε ἄποδος ἡμῖν ἀσφαλής· οὐ γὰρ ἔδεισά κω μὴ ἐσσωθέωμεν ὑπὸ Σκυθέων μάχῃ, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον μὴ οὐ δυνάμενοι σφέας εὐρεῖν πάθωμεν τι ἀλώμενοι. καὶ τάδε λέγειν φαίη τις ἂν με ἐμεωντοῦ εἶνεκεν, ὥς καταμένω· ἐγὼ δὲ γνώμην μὲν τὴν εὕρισκον ἀρίστην σοί, βασιλεῦ, ἐς μέσον φέρω, αὐτὸς μέντοι ἔψομαί τοι καὶ οὐκ ἂν λειφθείην.» κάρτα τε ἦσθη τῇ γνώμῃ Δαρείος καὶ μιν ἀμείψατο τοῖσιδε. «ξείνε Λέσβιε, σωθέντος ἐμεῦ ὀπίσω ἐς οἶκον τὸν ἐμὸν ἐπιφάνηθί



μελλόντων δὲ τῶν Ἰώνων λύειν καὶ ποιέειν τὰ κελευόμενα,

|fleece ὁ Ἐρξάνδρου στρατηγὸς ἐὼν Μυτιληναίων ἔλεξε

Δαρείῳ τάδε, πυθόμενος πρότερον εἰ οἱ φίλον εἴη γνώμην

|accept παρὰ τοῦ βουλομένου |show, point out; ap- ᾧ  
|point; (mid) declare

βασιλεῦ, ἐπὶ γῆν γὰρ μέλλεις στρατεύεσθαι τῆς οὔτε

|plow φανήσεται οὐδὲν οὔτε πόλις οἰκεομένη· σύ νυν

|dam, dike; bridge. ἕα κατὰ χώραν ἐστάναι, |guard; αὐτῆς  
|sentry

λιπὼν τούτους οἵπερ μιν |yoke, join καὶ ἦν τε κατὰ νόον

πρήξωμεν εὐρόντες Σκύθας, ἔστι ἄποδος ἡμῖν, ἦν τε καὶ

μή σφεας εὐρεῖν δυνώμεθα, ἥ γε ἄποδος ἡμῖν ἀσφαλής·

οὐ γὰρ ἔδειςά κω μὴ ἐσωθέωμεν ὑπὸ Σκυθέων μάχῃ,

ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον μὴ οὐ δυνάμενοι σφέας εὐρεῖν πάθωμεν τι

|rove καὶ τάδε λέγειν φαίη τις ἂν με |myself

εἵνεκεν, ὥς καταμένω· ἐγὼ δὲ γνώμην μὲν τὴν εὕρισκον

ἀρίστην σοί, βασιλεῦ, ἐς μέσον φέρω, αὐτὸς μέντοι

ἔψομαί τοι καὶ οὐκ ἂν λειφθείην.» |very much |be pleased, enjoy

γνώμη Δαρείος καὶ μιν ἀμείψατο τοῖσιδε. «ξείνε Λέσβιε,

σωθέντος ἐμεῦ ὀπίσω ἐς οἶκον τὸν ἐμὸν ἐπιφάνηθί

were in the ships: and when the Ionians were just about to break it up and to do that which he commanded, Coës the son of Erxander, who was commander of the Mytilenians, said thus to Dareios, having first inquired whether he was disposed to listen to an opinion from one who desired to declare it: "O king, seeing that thou art about to march upon a land where no cultivated ground will be seen nor any inhabited town, do thou therefore let this bridge remain where it is, leaving to guard it those same men who constructed it. Then, if we find the Scythians and fare as we desire, we have a way of return; and also even if we shall not be able to find them, at least our way of return is secured: for that we should be worsted by the Scythians in fight I never feared yet, but rather that we might not be able to find them, and might suffer some disaster in wandering about. Perhaps some one will say that in speaking thus I am speaking for my own advantage, in order that I may remain behind; but in truth I am bringing forward, O king, the opinion which I found best for thee, and I myself will accompany thee and not be left behind." With this opinion Dareios was very greatly pleased and made answer to him in these words: "Friend from Lesbos, when I have returned safe to my house, be sure that

*vocabulary*

**ἄμμα** -τος (n, 3) knot, cord  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ū) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float  
**ἀφάπτω** hang from, fasten to  
**γέφυρα** (ū) dam, dike; bridge  
**διεξέρχομαι** go through  
**ἑξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἐπείγω** weigh upon, drive; (mid) hurry  
**ἱμάς** -ντος (ī, m, 3) strap

**μεταδοκέω** change one's mind  
**μέτεμι** be among, go, follow ~ion  
**πάντως** by all means  
**προθυμία** (ū) zeal, alacrity ~fume  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far  
**συμβουλή** advice; consultation  
**σχεδία** raft  
**σχεδίην** at close quarters ~ischemia  
**σωτηρία** saving, preservation  
**τύραννος** tyrant  
**χρηστός** useful; brave, worthy

μοι πάντως, ἵνα σε ἀντὶ χρηστῆς συμβουλῆς χρηστοῖσι  
ἔργοισι ἀμείψωμαι.»

## 4.98

Ταῦτα δὲ εἶπας καὶ ἀπάψας ἅμματα ἐξήκοντα ἐν ἱμάντι  
καλέσας ἐς λόγους τοὺς Ἰώνων τυράννους ἔλεγε τάδε.  
«ἄνδρες Ἴωνες, ἡ μὲν πρότερον γνώμη ἀποδεχθεῖσα ἐς  
τὴν γέφυραν μετείσθω μοι, ἔχοντες δὲ τὸν ἱμάντα τόνδε  
ποιέετε τάδε. ἐπεὰν ἐμὲ ἴδητε τάχιστα πορευόμενον  
ἐπὶ Σκύθας, ἀπὸ τούτου ἀρξάμενοι τοῦ χρόνου λύετε  
ἅμμα ἐν ἐκάστης ἡμέρης· ἣν δὲ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ μὴ  
παρέω ἀλλὰ διεξέλθωσι ὑμῖν αἱ ἡμέραι τῶν ἀμμάτων,  
ἀποπλέετε ἐς τὴν ὑμετέρεν αὐτῶν. μέχρι δὲ τούτου,  
ἐπεῖτε οὕτω μετέδοξε, φυλάσσετε τὴν σχεδὴν, πᾶσαν  
προθυμίην σωτηρίας τε καὶ φυλακῆς παρεχόμενοι. ταῦτα  
δὲ ποιεῦντες ἐμοὶ μεγάλως χαριεῖσθε.» Δαρεῖος μὲν ταῦτα  
εἶπας ἐς τὸ πρόσω ἐπείγετο.

μοι |by all means : σε ἀντὶ |useful; |advice; consultation οἷσι  
 ἔργοισι ἀμεύβωμαι.» |brave,  
 |worthy

4.98

Ταῦτα δὲ εἶπας καὶ |hang |knot, cord|sixty ἐν |strap  
 καλέσας ἐς λόγους |from, |fasten to  
 τοὺς Ἰώνων |tyrant ἔλεγε τάδε.

«ἄνδρες Ἴωνες, ἡ μὲν πρότερον γνώμη |show, point out; |appoint;  
 (mid) declare

τὴν |dam, dike;|be among μοι, ἔχοντες δὲ τὸν |strap τόνδε  
 |bridge

ποιέετε τάδε. ἐπεὰν ἐμὲ ἴδητε τάχιστα πορευόμενον

ἐπὶ Σκύθας, ἀπὸ τούτου ἀρξάμενοι τοῦ χρόνου λύετε

|knot, cord ἑκάστης ἡμέρης· ἣν δὲ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ μὴ

παρέω ἀλλὰ |go through ὑμῖν αἱ ἡμέραι τῶν |knot, cord ,

|sail away ἐς τὴν ὑμετέραν αὐτῶν. μέχρι δὲ τούτου,

ἐπείτε οὕτω |change one's mind |σετε τὴν σχεδὴν, πᾶσαν

προθυμίην σωτηρίας τε καὶ φυλακῆς παρεχόμενοι. ταῦτα

δὲ ποιῶντες ἐμοὶ μεγάλως χαριεῖσθε.» Δαρεῖος μὲν ταῦτα

εἶπας ἐς τὸ |forward, |weigh upon, drive;  
 |in the (mid) hurry  
 |future;  
 |far

thou appear before me, in order that I may requite thee with good deeds for good counsel.”

**4.98**

Having thus said and having tied sixty knots in a thong, he called the despots of the Ionians to speak with him and said as follows: “Men of Ionia, know that I have given up the opinion which I formerly declared with regard to the bridge; and do ye keep this thong and do as I shall say:— so soon as ye shall have seen me go forward against the Scythians, from that time begin, and untie a knot on each day: and if within this time I am not here, and ye find that the days marked by the knots have passed by, then sail away to your own lands. Till then, since our resolve has thus been changed, guard the floating bridge, showing all diligence to keep it safe and to guard it. And thus acting, ye will do for me a very acceptable service.” Thus said Dareios and hastened on his march forwards.

*vocabulary*

**ἀπηνλιώτης** -ου (m, 1) east wind  
**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning  
 ~oligarch  
**ἀπηνλιώτης** -ου (m, 1) east wind  
**γουνός** fruitful terrace  
**ἐκδέχομαι** receive; succeed to a  
 position  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**κατάκειμαι** lie down  
**κόλπος** bosom, lap-fold; gulf  
**κολπώω** swell, fold  
**μεσαμβρίη** midday; the south

**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**νότος** south, south wind  
**ὄρεινός** mountainous  
**ὄρεύς** -ος (m) mule ~hormone  
**ὄρος** boundary marker ~horizon  
**οὔρον** boundary stone; unit of  
 distance; limit  
**οὔρος** fair wind; guardian; hill  
**παραπλήσιος** similar to  
**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore

## 4.99

Τῆς δὲ Σκυθικῆς γῆς ἡ Θρηϊκή τὸ ἐς θάλασσαν πρόκειται· κόλπου δὲ ἀγομένου τῆς γῆς ταύτης, ἡ Σκυθική τε ἐκδέκεται καὶ ὁ Ἰστρος ἐκδιδοῖ ἐς αὐτήν, πρὸς εὖρον ἄνεμον τὸ στόμα τετραμμένος. τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ Ἰστρου ἔρχομαι σημανέων τὸ πρὸς θάλασσαν αὐτῆς τῆς Σκυθικῆς χώρας ἐς μέτρησιν. ἀπὸ Ἰστρου αὕτη ἤδη ἡ ἀρχαίη Σκυθίη ἐστί, πρὸς μεσαμβρίην τε καὶ νότον ἄνεμον κειμένη, μέχρι πόλιος Καρκινίτιδος καλεομένης. τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ θάλασσαν τὴν αὐτὴν φέρουσιν, εὐῶσαν ὀρεινὴν τε χώραν καὶ προκειμένην τὸ ἐς Πόντον, νέμεται τὸ Ταυρικὸν ἔθνος μέχρι χερσονήσου τῆς τρηχέως καλεομένης· αὕτη δὲ ἐς θάλασσαν τὴν πρὸς ἀπηλιώτην ἄνεμον κατήκει. ἔστι γὰρ τῆς Σκυθικῆς τὰ δύο μέρη τῶν οὖρων ἐς θάλασσαν φέροντα, τὴν τε πρὸς μεσαμβρίην καὶ τὴν πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ, κατὰ περ τῆς Ἀττικῆς χώρας· καὶ παραπλήσια ταύτῃ καὶ οἱ Ταῦροι νέμονται τῆς Σκυθικῆς, ὥς εἰ τῆς Ἀττικῆς ἄλλο ἔθνος καὶ μὴ Ἀθηναῖοι νεμοίατο τὸν γουνὸν τὸν Σουνιακόν,



4.99

Τῆς δὲ Σκυθικῆς γῆς ἡ Θρηίκη τὸ ἐς θάλασσαν <sup>|be placed by;</sup>  
<sup>|be devoted to</sup>  
 κόλπου δὲ ἀγομένου τῆς γῆς ταύτης, ἡ Σκυθική τε  
<sup>|receive; succeed</sup> ὁ Ἰστρος <sup>|hand over</sup> αὐτήν, πρὸς εὖρον  
<sup>|to a position</sup>  
 ἄνεμον τὸ στόμα τετραμμένος. τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ Ἰστρου ἔρχομαι  
<sup>|give orders to;</sup> πρὸς θάλασσαν αὐτῆς τῆς Σκυθικῆς χώρας  
<sup>|show; mark</sup>  
 ἐς μέτρησιν. ἀπὸ Ἰστρου αὕτη ἤδη ἡ <sup>|ancient, from</sup> θίη  
<sup>|the beginning</sup>  
 ἐστί, πρὸς <sup>|midday; the south</sup> αὐτὴν <sup>|south,</sup> ἄνεμον κειμένη, μέχρι  
<sup>|south</sup>  
<sup>|wind</sup> πόλιος Καρκινίδος καλεομένης. τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης τὴν  
 μὲν ἐπὶ θάλασσαν τὴν αὐτὴν φέρουσιν, εὐοῦσαν ὀρεινὴν τε  
 χώραν καὶ <sup>|be placed by;</sup> τὸ ἐς Πόντον, <sup>|distribute</sup> ὁ Ταυρικὸν  
<sup>|be devoted to</sup>  
 ἔθνος μέχρι χερσονήσου τῆς τρηχέης καλεομένης· αὕτη δὲ  
 ἐς θάλασσαν τὴν πρὸς ἀπηλιώτην ἄνεμον <sup>|lie down</sup> ἔστι  
 γὰρ τῆς Σκυθικῆς τὰ δύο μέρη τῶν οὖρων ἐς θάλασσαν  
 φέροντα, τὴν τε πρὸς <sup>|midday; the south</sup> αὐτὴν πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ,  
 κατὰ περ τῆς Ἀττικῆς χώρας· καὶ <sup>|similar to</sup> ταύτη καὶ  
 οἱ Ταῦροι <sup>|distribute</sup> τῆς Σκυθικῆς, ὡς εἰ τῆς Ἀττικῆς ἄλλο  
 ἔθνος καὶ μὴ Ἀθηναῖοι <sup>|distribute</sup> τὸν <sup>|fruitful</sup> τὸν Σουνιακόν,  
<sup>|terrace</sup>

## 4.99

Now in front of Scythia in the direction towards the sea lies Thrace; and where a bay is formed in this land, there begins Scythia, into which the Ister flows out, the mouth of the river being turned towards the South-East Wind. Beginning at the Ister then I am about to describe the coast land of the true Scythia, with regard to measurement. At once from the Ister begins this original land of Scythia, and it lies towards the midday and the South Wind, extending as far as the city called Carkinitis. After this the part which lies on the coast of the same sea still, a country which is mountainous and runs out in the direction of the Pontus, is occupied by the Tauric race, as far as the peninsula which is called the "Rugged Chersonese"; and this extends to the sea which lies towards the East Wind: for two sides of the Scythian boundaries lie along by the sea, one by the sea on the South, and the other by that on the East, just as it is with Attica: and in truth the Tauroi occupy a part of Scythia which has much resemblance to Attica; it is as if in Attica another race and not the Athenians occupied the hill region of Sunion, supposing

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**άνδροφάγος** man-eating  
**ἀποκλήϊω** shut out; close up  
**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**ἡοῖος** eastern, the morning ~Eocene  
**κατύπερθε** above, from above

**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**μεσόγαια** inland  
**μυχός** recess, nook  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**νευρή** bowstring ~neuro  
**παρόμοιος** closely resembling  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
**τελευταῖος** last, final

μᾶλλον ἐς τὸν πόντον τὴν ἄκρην ἀνέχοντα, τὸν ἀπὸ  
 Θορικοῦ μέχρι Ἀναφλύστου δήμον· λέγω δὲ ὡς εἶναι  
 ταῦτα σμικρὰ μέγαλοισι συμβάλλειν· τοιοῦτον ἡ Ταυρική  
 ἐστι. ὃς δὲ τῆς Ἀττικῆς ταῦτα μὴ παραπέπλωκε, ἐγὼ δὲ  
 ἄλλως δηλώσω· ὡς εἰ τῆς Ἰηπυγίης ἄλλο ἔθνος καὶ μὴ  
 Ἰήπυγες ἀρξάμενοι ἐκ Βρεντεσίου λιμένος ἀποταμοίατο  
 μέχρι Τάραντος καὶ νεμοίατο τὴν ἄκρην. δύο δὲ λέγων  
 ταῦτα πολλὰ λέγω παρόμοια, τοῖσι ἄλλοισι ἔοικε ἡ  
 Ταυρική.

#### 4.100

Τὸ δ' ἀπὸ τῆς Ταυρικῆς ἤδη Σκύθαι τὰ κατύπερθε τῶν  
 Ταύρων καὶ τὰ πρὸς θαλάσσης τῆς ἡοίης νέμονται, τοῦ  
 τε Βοσπόρου τοῦ Κιμμερίου τὰ πρὸς ἐσπέρης καὶ τῆς  
 λίμνης τῆς Μαιήτιδος μέχρι Τανάιδος ποταμοῦ, ὃς ἐκδιδοῖ  
 ἐς μυχὸν τῆς λίμνης ταύτης. ἤδη ὦν ἀπὸ μὲν Ἰστρου  
 τὰ κατύπερθε ἐς τὴν μεσόγαιαν φέροντα ἀποκλήϊεται  
 ἡ Σκυθικὴ ὑπὸ πρώτων Ἀγαθύρσων, μετὰ δὲ Νευρῶν,  
 ἔπειτα δὲ Ἀνδροφάγων, τελευταίων δὲ Μελαγχλαίνων.

μάλλον ἐς τὸν πόντον τὴν |at the edge, extreme, τὸν ἀπὸ  
 Θορικοῦ μέχρι Ἀναφλύστου δήμου· λέγω δὲ ὡς εἶναι  
 ταῦτα σμικρὰ μεγάλοισι |pit against; compare; οὐ ἡ Ταυρική  
 |mp: meet, fall in with  
 ἐστι. ὅς δὲ τῆς Ἀττικῆς ταῦτα μὴ παραπέπλωκε, ἐγὼ δὲ  
 ἄλλως δηλώσω· ὡς εἰ τῆς Ἰηπυγίης ἄλλο ἔθνος καὶ μὴ  
 Ἰήπυγες ἀρξάμενοι ἐκ Βρεντεσίου λιμένος |cut off, sever  
 μέχρι Τάραντος καὶ |distribute τὴν |at the edge, extrême - /ων  
 ταῦτα πολλὰ λέγω |closely , τοῖσι ἄλλοις ἔοικε ἡ  
 |resembling  
 Ταυρική.

4.100

Τὸ δ' ἀπὸ τῆς Ταυρικῆς ἤδη Σκύθαι τὰ |above, from above  
 Ταύρων καὶ τὰ πρὸς θαλάσσης τῆς |east- |distribute , τοῦ  
 |ern, |the  
 τε Βοσπόρου τοῦ Κιμμερίου τὰ πρὸς ἑσπέρης καὶ τῆς |morn-  
 |ing  
 |lake, marsh, Μαιήτιδος μέχρι Τανάιδος ποταμοῦ, ὅς |hand over  
 |basin, sea  
 ἐς |recess, nook |lake, marsh, τῆς. ἤδη ὦν ἀπὸ μὲν Ἰστρου  
 |basin, sea  
 τὰ |above, from above. ἔν μασόγαιαν φέροντα ἀποκληίεται  
 ἡ Σκυθική ὑπὸ πρώτων Ἀγαθύρων, μετὰ δὲ |bowstring  
 ἔπειτα δὲ |man-eating , |last, final δὲ Μελαγχλαίων.

it to project more at the point into the sea, that region namely which is cut off by a line from Thoricos to Anaphlystos. Such I say, if we may be allowed to compare small things such as this with great, is the form of the Tauric land. For him however who has not sailed along this part of the coast of Attica I will make it clear by another comparison:— it is as if in Iapygia another race and not the Iapygians had cut off for themselves and were holding that extremity of the land which is bounded by a line beginning at the harbour of Brentesion and running to Taras. And in mentioning these two similar cases I am suggesting many other things also to which the Tauric land has resemblance.

#### 4.100

After the Tauric land immediately come Scythians again, occupying the parts above the Tauroi and the coasts of the Eastern sea, that is to say the parts to the West of the Kimmerian Bosphorus and of the Maiotian lake, as far as the river Tanaïs, which runs into the corner of this lake. In the upper parts which tend inland Scythia is bounded (as we know) by the Agathyrsians first, beginning from the Ister, and then by the Neuroi, afterwards by the Androphagoi, and lastly by the Melanchlainoi.

*vocabulary***διωθέω** tear, rend**ἐπικάρσιος** running headlong**εὖς** good, brave, noble**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; be proper**κατύπερθεν** above, from above**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**μεσόγαια** inland**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**ὄρθιος** shrill; steep, straight**πάντη** everywhere**πλησιόχωρος** adjacent**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στρατός** common people/soldiers  
~strategy**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
meet, fall in with ~ballistic**τετράγωνος** square**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000 ~kilo-

## 4.101

Ἔστι ὦν τῆς Σκυθικῆς ὡς εἰσὸς τετραγώνου, τῶν δύο μερέων κατηκόντων ἐς θάλασσαν, πάντῃ ἴσον τό τε ἐς τὴν μεσόγαιαν φέρον καὶ τὸ παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν. ἀπὸ γὰρ Ἰστρου ἐπὶ Βορυσθένα δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδὸς ἀπὸ Βορυσθέneos τε ἐπὶ τὴν λίμνην τὴν Μαιῆτιν ἑτέρων δέκα· καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἐς μεσόγαιαν ἐς τοὺς Μελαγχλαίνους τοὺς κατύπερθε Σκυψέων οἰκημένους εἴκοσι ἡμερέων ὁδὸς. ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς ἡ ἡμερησίῃ ἀνὰ διηκόσια στάδια συμβέβληται μοι. οὕτω ἂν εἴη τῆς Σκυθικῆς τὰ ἐπικάρσια τετρακισχιλίων σταδίων καὶ τὰ ὄρθια τὰ ἐς τὴν μεσόγαιαν φέροντα ἑτέρων τοσούτων σταδίων. ἡ μὲν νυν γῆ αὕτη ἐστὶ μέγαθος τοσαύτη.

## 4.102

Οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι δόντες σφίσι λόγον ὡς οὐκ οἶοί τε εἰσὶ τὸν Δαρείου στρατὸν ἰθυμαχίῃ διώσασθαι μόνοι, ἔπεμπον ἐς τοὺς πλησιοχώρους ἀγγέλους· τῶν δὲ καὶ



## 4.101

Ἦστί ὦν τῆς Σκυθικῆς ὡς εὐρύσεως |square, τῶν δύο  
μερέων |come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; |everywhere... τό τε ἐς  
|be proper  
τὴν μεσόγαιαν φέρον καὶ τὸ παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν. ἀπὸ  
γὰρ Ἰστρου ἐπὶ Βορυσθέnea δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδὸς ἀπὸ  
Βορυσθέneos τε ἐπὶ τὴν |lake, marsh, Μαιῆτιν ἐτερέων  
|basin, sea  
δέκα· καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἐς μεσόγαιαν ἐς τοὺς  
Μελαγχλαίνους τοὺς |above, from above ῥέων οἰκημένους  
εἴκοσι ἡμερέων ὁδὸς. ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς ἡ ἡμερησίῃ ἀνὰ διηκόσια  
στάδια |pit against; compare; ὥτῳ ἂν εἴη τῆς Σκυθικῆς τὰ  
|mp: meet, fall in with  
|running |4000 σταδίων καὶ τὰ |shrill; steep, τὴν  
|headlong |straight  
μεσόγαιαν φέροντα ἐτέρων τοσούτων σταδίων. ἡ μὲν νυν  
γῆ αὕτη ἐστὶ |tall, big τοσαύτη.

## 4.102

Οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι δόντες σφίσι λόγον ὡς οὐκ οἶοί τε εἰσὶ τὸν  
Δαρείου |army ἰθυμαχίῃ |tear, rend μῶνοι, ἔπεμπον ἐς  
τοὺς |adjacent ἀγγέλους· τῶν δὲ καὶ

**4.101**

Scythia then being looked upon as a four-sided figure with two of its sides bordered by the sea, has its border lines equal to one another in each direction, that which tends inland and that which runs along by the sea: for from Ister to the Borysthenes is ten days' journey, and from the Borysthenes to the Maiotian lake ten days' more; and the distance inland to the Melanchlainoi, who are settled above the Scythians, is a journey of twenty days. Now I have reckoned the day's journey at two hundred furlongs: and by this reckoning the cross lines of Scythia would be four thousand furlongs in length, and the perpendiculars which tend inland would be the same number of furlongs. Such is the size of this land.

**4.102**

The Scythians meanwhile having considered with themselves that they were not able to repel the army of Dareios alone by a pitched battle, proceeded to send messengers to those who dwelt near them: and already the kings

*vocabulary***ἀνασταυρόω** impale**ἀνδροφάγος** man-eating**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**δαίμων** -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom  
~demon**Ἕλλην** Greek**ἐπανάγω** sit up, bring up; retreat; set  
sail**ἐπελαύνω** beat out ~elastic**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἰδρύω** establish**κατάρχω** hold ready (sacrificial

materials) ~oligarch

**κρημνός** riverside cliff**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic**νευρή** bowstring ~neuro**παίω** hit**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon**ρόπαλον** club, staff**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

**στρατώω** be on a campaign ~strategy**συνέρχομαι** come together**τοιόσδε** such**χειρόω** dominate, subdue**ώθέω** push

δὴ οἱ βασιλεῖς συνελθόντες ἐβουλευόντο ὡς στρατοῦ  
ἐπελαύνοντος μεγάλου. ἦσαν δὲ οἱ συνελθόντες βασιλεῖς  
Ταύρων καὶ Ἀγαθύρσων καὶ Νευρῶν καὶ Ἀνδροφάγων  
καὶ Μελαγχλαίων καὶ Γελωνῶν καὶ Βουδίνων καὶ  
Σαυροματέων.

## 4.103

Τούτων Ταῦροι μὲν νόμοισι τοιοῖσινδε χρέωνται· θύουσι  
μὲν τῇ, παρθένῳ τούς τε ναυηγούς καὶ τοὺς ἂν λάβωσι  
Ἑλλήνων ἐπαναχθέντες τρόπῳ τοιῷδε· καταρξάμενοι  
ρόπάλῳ παίουσι τὴν κεφαλὴν. οἱ μὲν δὴ λέγουσι ὡς τὸ  
σῶμα ἀπὸ τοῦ κρημνοῦ ὠθέουσι κάτω ἐπὶ γὰρ κρημνοῦ  
ἴδρυται τὸ ἱρόν, τὴν δὲ κεφαλὴν ἀνασταυροῦσι· οἱ δὲ  
κατὰ μὲν τὴν κεφαλὴν ὁμολογέουσι, τὸ μέντοι σῶμα οὐκ  
ὠθέεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ κρημνοῦ λέγουσι ἀλλὰ γῇ κρύπτεσθαι.  
τὴν δὲ δαίμονα ταύτην τῇ θύουσι λέγουσι αὐτοὶ Ταῦροι  
Ἴφιγένειαν τὴν Ἀγαμέμνονος εἶναι. πολεμίους δὲ ἄνδρας  
τοὺς ἂν χειρώσωνται ποιεῦσι τάδε· ἀποταμὼν ἕκαστος  
κεφαλὴν ἀποφέρεται ἐς τὰ οἰκία, ἔπειτα ἐπὶ ξύλου

δὴ οἱ βασιλείες |come together ἐβουλεύοντο ὡς στρατοῦ  
 |beat out μέγαλον. ἦσαν δὲ οἱ |come together ,βασιλείες  
 Ταύρων καὶ Ἀγαθύρσων καὶ |bowstring καὶ |man-eating  
 καὶ Μελαγχλαίνων καὶ Γελωνῶν καὶ Βουδίνων καὶ  
 Σαυροματέων.

4.103

Τούτων Ταῦροι μὲν νόμοισι |such χρέωνται· |rush; sacrifice  
 μὲν τῇ, |girl, virgin τούς τε ναυηγούς καὶ τοὺς ἄν λάβωσι  
 |Greek |sit up, bring up; retreat; set|such |hold ready  
 |sail  
 |club, staff |hit τὴν κεφαλὴν. οἱ μὲν δὴ λέγουσι ὡς τὸ  
 σῶμα ἀπὸ τοῦ |riverside |push κάτω ἐπὶ γὰρ |riverside  
 |cliff |cliff  
 |establish τὸ ἱρόν, τὴν δὲ κεφαλὴν |impale οἱ δὲ  
 κατὰ μὲν τὴν κεφαλὴν ὁμολογέουσι, τὸ μέντοι σῶμα οὐκ  
 |push ἀπὸ τοῦ |riverside λέγουσι ἀλλὰ γῇ |hide, cover  
 |cliff  
 τὴν δὲ |a god, fate, doom, τῇ |rush; sacrifice -σι αὐτοὶ Ταῦροι  
 Ἰφιγένειαν τὴν Ἀγαμέμνονος εἶναι. πολεμίους δὲ ἄνδρας  
 τοὺς ἄν |χειρώω?: dominate, subdue; or|cut off, sever ἕκαστος  
 |χειρώω?: dominate, subdue  
 κεφαλὴν |carry off εἰς τὰ οἰκία, ἔπειτα ἐπὶ ξύλου

of these nations had come together and were taking counsel with one another, since so great an army was marching towards them. Now those who had come together were the kings of the Tauroi, Agathyrsians, Neuroi, Androphagoi, Melanchlainoi, Gelonians, Budinoi and Sauromatai.

#### 4.103

Of these the Tauroi have the following customs:— they sacrifice to the “Maiden” both ship-wrecked persons and also those Hellenes whom they can capture by putting out to sea against them; and their manner of sacrifice is this:— when they have made the first offering from the victim they strike his head with a club: and some say that they push the body down from the top of the cliff (for it is upon a cliff that the temple is placed) and set the head up on a stake; but others, while agreeing as to the heads, say nevertheless that the body is not pushed down from the top of the cliff, but buried in the earth. This divinity to whom they sacrifice, the Tauroi themselves say is Iphigeneia the daughter of Agamemnon. Whatsoever enemies they have conquered they treat in this fashion:— each man cuts off a head and bears it away to his house; then he impales it on a long

*vocabulary*

**ἄβρός** graceful, delicate, pretty  
**ἀναφαίνω** reveal, shine ~phenomenon  
**ἄνωθεν** from above, the beginning  
**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over  
**ἐπίκοινος** in common  
**ἐπιπίπτω** fall upon, attack  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἔχθος** -εος (n, 3) hatred ~external  
**κασίγνητος** brother, sister  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,

overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**λήϊη** booty  
**μίξις** mixing; sex, commerce  
**νόμαιο**s customary  
**ὄφις** ὄφεως (m) serpent ~ophidian  
**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
**προσχωρέω** go to, join, support  
**στρατηλασίη** expedition, campaign  
**ὑπερέχω** be over; protect  
**φθόνος** malice, envy  
**φυλακός** guard; sentry

μεγάλου ἀναπείρας ἰστᾶ ὑπὲρ τῆς οἰκίης ὑπερέχουσαν  
πολλόν, μάλιστα δὲ ὑπὲρ τῆς καπνοδόκης. φασὶ δὲ  
τούτους φυλάκους τῆς οἰκίης πάσης ὑπεραιωρέεσθαι.  
ζῶσι δὲ ἀπὸ ληΐης τε καὶ πολέμου.

## 4.104

Ἀγάθурсοι δὲ ἀβρότατοι ἀνδρῶν εἰσι καὶ χρυσοφόροι τὰ  
μάλιστα, ἐπίκεινον δὲ τῶν γυναικῶν τὴν μίξιν ποιεῖνται,  
ἵνα κασίγνητοι τε ἀλλήλων ἔωσι καὶ οἰκῆιοι ἐόντες πάντες  
μήτε φθόνῳ μήτε ἔχθει χρέωνται ἐς ἀλλήλους. τὰ δὲ ἄλλα  
νόμαϊα Θρήξι προσκεχωρήκασι.

## 4.105

Νευροὶ δὲ νόμοισι μὲν χρέωνται Σκυθικοῖσι, γενεῇ δὲ  
μῆ πρότερον σφέας τῆς Δαρείου στρατηλασίης κατέλαβε  
ἐκλιπεῖν τὴν χώραν πᾶσαν ὑπὸ ὀφίων· ὄφιας γάρ σφι  
πολλοὺς μὲν ἢ χώρα ἀνέφαινε, οἱ δὲ πλεῖνες ἄνωθὲν σφι  
ἐκ τῶν ἐρήμων ἐπέπεσον, ἐς ὃ πιεζόμενοι οἴκησαν μετὰ  
Βουδίνων τὴν ἐωυτῶν ἐκλιπόντες. κινδυνεύουσι δὲ οἱ



μεγάλου ἀναπείρας ἰστᾶ ὑπὲρ τῆς οἰκίης |be over; protect  
πολλόν, μάλιστα δὲ ὑπὲρ τῆς καπνοδόκης. φασὶ δὲ  
τούτους |guard; τῆς οἰκίης πάσης ὑπεραιωρέεσθαι.  
|sentry  
ζῶσι δὲ ἀπὸ |booty τε καὶ πολέμου.

## 4.104

Ἀγάθυρσοι δὲ |graceful, deli- ἱνδρῶν εἰσι καὶ χρυσοφόροι τὰ  
|cate, pretty  
μάλιστα, |in common ἵε τῶν γυναικῶν τὴν |mixing; sex, ἵται,  
|commerce  
ἵνα |brother, τε ἀλλήλων ἕωσι καὶ οἰκίηιοι ἑόντες πάντες  
|sister  
μήτε |malice, envy - |hatred ῥέωνται ἐς ἀλλήλους. τὰ δὲ ἄλλα  
|customary ἵ, ἵξι |go to, join, support

## 4.105

Νευροὶ δὲ νόμοισι μὲν χρέωνται Σκυθικοῖσι, γενεῇ δὲ  
μῆ πρότερον σφέας τῆς Δαρείου |expedition, |seize, understand,  
|campaign |catch, overtake; (mp)  
|leave out, pass over, ἵ, ἵν πᾶσαν ὑπὸ |serpent |serpent |happen γὰρ σφι  
πολλοὺς μὲν ἵ χώρη |reveal, , οἱ δὲ πλεῦνες |from above,  
|shine |the beginning  
ἐκ τῶν ἐρήμων |fall upon, attack ἵ |press, οἶκισαν μετὰ  
|squeeze  
Βουδίνων τὴν ἑωυτῶν |leave out, pass over ἵ ἑύουσι δὲ οἱ

stake and sets it up above his house raised to a great height, generally above the chimney; and they say that these are suspended above as guards to preserve the whole house. This people has its living by plunder and war.

**4.104**

The Agathyrsians are the most luxurious of men and wear gold ornaments for the most part: also they have promiscuous intercourse with their women, in order that they may be brethren to one another and being all nearly related may not feel envy or malice one against another. In their other customs they have come to resemble the Thracians.

**4.105**

The Neuroi practise the Scythian customs: and one generation before the expedition of Dareios it so befell them that they were forced to quit their land altogether by reason of serpents: for their land produced serpents in vast numbers, and they fell upon them in still larger numbers from the desert country above their borders; until at last being hard pressed they left their own land and settled among the Budinoi. These men

*vocabulary***ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture**άνδροφάγος** man-eating**ἅπαξ** once**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary**γόης γῶτος** (m, 3) sorcerer, trickster**εἶμα** -τος (n, 3) garment ~vest**Ἑλλην** Greek**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest**ἦθος ἦθεος** (n, 3) habit, habitat ~ethos**λύκος** wolf ~lycanthropy**νευρή** bowstring ~neuro**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry

~bear

ἄνθρωποι οὗτοι γόητες εἶναι. λέγονται γὰρ ὑπὸ Σκυθέων καὶ Ἑλλήνων τῶν ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ κατοικημένων ὡς ἕτεος ἐκάστου ἅπαξ τῶν Νευρῶν ἕκαστος λύκος γίνεται ἡμέρας ὀλίγας καὶ αὖτις ὀπίσω ἐς τὸντὸ κατίσταται. ἐμὲ μὲν νυν ταῦτα λέγοντες οὐ πείθουσι, λέγουσι δὲ οὐδὲν ἦσσαν, καὶ ὁμνῶσι δὲ λέγοντες.

## 4.106

Ἄνδροφάγοι δὲ ἀγριώτατα πάντων ἀνθρώπων ἔχουσι ἥθεα, οὔτε δίκην νομίζοντες οὔτε νόμῳ οὐδενὶ χρεώμενοι· νομάδες δὲ εἰσι, ἐσθῆτά τε φορέουσι τῇ Σκυθικῇ ὁμοίην, γλῶσσαν δὲ ἰδίην, ἀνδροφαγέουσι δὲ μοῦνοι τούτων.

## 4.107

Μελάγχλαινοι δὲ εἵματα μὲν μέλανα φορέουσι πάντες, ἐπ' ὧν καὶ τὰς ἐπωνυμίας ἔχουσι, νόμοισι δὲ Σκυθικοῖσι χρέωνται.

ἄνθρωποι οὗτοι |sorcerer, |trickster ἵναι. λέγονται γὰρ ὑπὸ Σκυθέων  
καὶ |Greek τῶν ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ κατοικημένων ὡς ἔτεος  
ἐκάστου |once τῶν |bowstring ἵκαστος |wolf γίνεται ἡμέρας  
ὀλίγας καὶ αὗτις ὀπίσω ἐς τὸν αὐτὸ κατίσταται. ἐμὲ μὲν νυν  
ταῦτα λέγοντες οὐ πείθουσι, λέγουσι δὲ οὐδὲν ἥσσον, καὶ  
ὀμνῦσι δὲ λέγοντες.

## 4.106

|man-eating δὲ |wild, savage πάντων ἀνθρώπων ἔχουσι  
|habit, |habitat οὔτε δίκην νομίζοντες οὔτε νόμον οὐδενὶ χρεώμενοι·  
|roaming, δὲ εἰσι, |clothes τε |frequentative of |Σκυθικῇ ὁμοίην,  
|grazing |φέρω, to carry  
|tongue, δὲ ἰδίην, ἀνδροφαγέουσι δὲ μῦνοι τούτων.  
|language

## 4.107

Μεγάγλαινοι δὲ |garment μὲν μέλανα |frequentative of |γες,  
|φέρω, to carry  
ἐπ' ὧν καὶ τὰς |called, |named ἔχουσι, νόμοισι δὲ Σκυθικοῖσι  
χρέωνται.

it would seem are wizards; for it is said of them by the Scythians and by the Hellenes who are settled in the Scythian land that once in every year each of the Neuroi becomes a wolf for a few days and then returns again to his original form. For my part I do not believe them when they say this, but they say it nevertheless, and swear it moreover.

**4.106**

The Androphagoi have the most savage manners of all human beings, and they neither acknowledge any rule of right nor observe any customary law. They are nomads and wear clothing like that of the Scythians, but have a language of their own; and alone of all these nations they are man-eaters.

**4.107**

The Melanchlainoi wear all of them black clothing, whence also they have their name; and they practise the customs of the Scythians.

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαλμα** -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory, statue

**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning  
~oligarch

**αὐτόθι** on the spot

**αὐτόχθων** native

**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal

**γλαυκός** bright, gleaming ~glaucoma

**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary

**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration

**δισαίτῳ** treat; live; arbitrate

**Ἑλλήν** Greek

**ἐμπόριον** immigrant, metic, trading post

**ἐμπόριος** immigrant, metic, trading post

**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out

**κατασκευάζω** equip, build

**κῶλον** limb

**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)

**νηός** temple, shrine

**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing

**ξύλινος** wooden

**πολίζω** build a wall, city ~Minneapolis

**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

## 4.108

Βουδῖνοι δὲ ἔθνος ἐὼν μέγα καὶ πολλὸν γλαυκὸν τε πᾶν ἰσχυρῶς ἐστὶ καὶ πυρρόν· πόλις δὲ ἐν αὐτοῖσι πεπόλισται ξυλίνη, οὖνομα δὲ τῇ πόλει ἐστὶ Γελωνός. τοῦ δὲ τείχεος μέγαθος κῶλον ἕκαστον τριήκοντα σταδίων ἐστὶ, ὑψηλὸν δὲ καὶ πᾶν ξύλινον, καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι αὐτῶν ξύλιναι καὶ τὰ ἱρά. ἔστι γὰρ δὴ αὐτόθι Ἑλληνικῶν θεῶν ἱρὰ Ἑλληνικῶς κατεσκευασμένα ἀγάλμασί τε καὶ βωμοῖσι καὶ νηοῖσι ξυλίνοισι, καὶ τῷ Διονύσῳ τριετηρίδας ἀνάγουσι καὶ βακχεύουσι. εἰσὶ γὰρ οἱ Γελωνοὶ τὸ ἀρχαῖον Ἕλληνες, ἐκ τῶν δὲ ἐμπορίων ἐξαναστάντες οἴκησαν ἐν τοῖσι Βουδῖνοισι· καὶ γλώσση τὰ μὲν Σκυθικῇ, τὰ δὲ Ἑλληνικῇ χρέωνται.

## 4.109

Βουδῖνοι δὲ οὐ τῇ αὐτῇ γλώσση χρέωνται καὶ Γελωνοί, οὐδὲ δίαίτα ἢ αὐτή. οἱ μὲν γὰρ Βουδῖνοι ἐόντες αὐτόχθονες νομάδες τε εἰσὶ καὶ φθειροτραγέουσι μῶνοι τῶν ταύτη,



4.108

Βουδῖνοι δὲ ἔθνος ἐὼν μέγα καὶ πολλὸν |bright, |gleaming τε πᾶν  
 ἰσχυρῶς ἐστὶ καὶ πυρρόν· πόλις δὲ ἐν αὐτοῖσι |build a wall, city  
 |wooden, οὕνομα δὲ τῇ πόλι ἐστὶ Γελωνός. τοῦ δὲ τείχεος  
 |tall, big |limb ἕκαστον τριήκοντα σταδίων ἐστὶ, ὑψηλὸν  
 δὲ καὶ πᾶν |wooden , καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι αὐτῶν |wooden καὶ τὰ  
 ἱρά. ἔστι γὰρ δὴ |on the spot Ἀθηναίων θεῶν ἱρὰ Ἑλληνικῶς  
 |equip, build |ornament, τε καὶ |altar καὶ |temple  
 |glory, statue  
 |wooden , καὶ τῷ Διονύσῳ τριετηρίδας ἀνάγουσι καὶ  
 βακχεύουσι. εἰσὶ γὰρ οἱ Γελωνοὶ τὸ |ancient, |Greek ,  
 ἐκ τῶν δὲ ἐμπορίων |raise, bring/send |beginning οὐκ ἔσαν ἐν τοῖσι  
 |out  
 Βουδῖνοισι· καὶ |tongue, τὰ μὲν Σκυθικῇ, τὰ δὲ Ἑλληνικῇ  
 |language  
 χρέωνται.

4.109

Βουδῖνοι δὲ οὐ τῇ αὐτῇ |tongue, χρέωνται καὶ Γελωνοί,  
 |language  
 οὐδὲ δίαίτα ἢ αὐτή. οἱ μὲν γὰρ Βουδῖνοι ἑόντες |native  
 |roaming, τε εἰσὶ καὶ φθειροτραγέουσι μῦνοι τῶν ταύτη,  
 |grazing

**4.108**

The Budinoi are a very great and numerous race, and are all very blue-eyed and fair of skin: and in their land is built a city of wood, the name of which is Gelonos, and each side of the wall is thirty furlongs in length and lofty at the same time, all being of wood; and the houses are of wood also and the temples; for there are in it temples of Hellenic gods furnished after Hellenic fashion with sacred images and altars and cells, all of wood; and they keep festivals every other year to Dionysos and celebrate the rites of Bacchus: for the Gelonians are originally Hellenes, and they removed from the trading stations on the coast and settled among the Budinoi; and they use partly the Scythian language and partly the Hellenic. The Budinoi however do not use the same language as the Gelonians, nor is their manner of living the same:

**4.109**

For the Budinoi are natives of the soil and a nomad people, and alone of the nations in these parts feed on fir-cones; but the Gelonians are tillers of the ground and

*vocabulary*

**ἄκος** ἄκεος (n, 3) cure, remedy  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float  
**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary  
**δασύς** hairy, brushy  
**δέρμα** -τος (n, 3) skin, hide  
 ~dermatology  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐλος** ἔλεος (n, 3) marsh  
**ἐνυδρις** otter  
**ἐργάτης** -ου (ᾱ, m, 1) worker  
**ζωγρέω** capture, give quarter; revive

## ~ZOO

**ἰδέα** ἰδῆς semblance; kind, style  
**κάλαμος** reed  
**κῆπος** garden, orchard  
**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**ὄρχις** -τος (m) testicle ~orchid  
**παντοῖος** all kinds of  
**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea  
 ~pelagic  
**σιτοφάγος** (ι) eating food, grain  
 ~parasite  
**χρήσιμος** useful  
**χρῶμα** -τος (n, 3) color

Γελωνοὶ δὲ γῆς τε ἐργάται καὶ σιτοφάγοι καὶ κήπους ἐκτημένοι, οὐδὲν τὴν ἰδέην ὅμοιοι οὐδὲ τὸ χρώμα. ὑπὸ μέντοι Ἑλλήνων καλέονται καὶ οἱ Βουδῖνοι Γελωνοί, οὐκ ὀρθῶς καλούμενοι. ἡ δὲ χώρα σφέων πᾶσα ἐστὶ δασέα ἴδησι παντοίησι· ἐν δὲ τῇ ἴδῃ τῇ πλείστη ἐστὶ λίμνη μεγάλη τε καὶ πολλή καὶ ἔλος καὶ κάλαμος περὶ αὐτήν. ἐν δὲ ταύτῃ ἐνύδριες ἀλίσκονται καὶ κάστορες καὶ ἄλλα θηρία τετραγωνοπρόσωπα, τῶν τὰ δέρματα παρὰ τὰς σισύρνας παραρράπτεται, καὶ οἱ ὄρχιες αὐτοῖσι εἰσὶ χρήσιμοι ἐς ὑστερέων ἄκεσιν.

## 4.110

Σαυροματέων δὲ περὶ ᾧδε λέγεται. ὅτε Ἕλληνες Ἀμαζόσι ἐμαχέσαντο τὰς δὲ Ἀμαζόνας καλέουσι Σκύθαι Οἰόρπατα, δύναται δὲ τὸ οὖνομα τοῦτο κατὰ Ἑλλάδα γλῶσσαν ἀνδροκτόνοι· οἷορ γὰρ καλέουσι ἄνδρα, τὸ δὲ πατὰ κτείνειν, τότε λόγος τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικήσαντας τῇ ἐπὶ Θερμώδοντι μάχῃ ἀποπλέειν ἄγοντας τρισὶ πλοίοισι τῶν Ἀμαζόνων ὅσας ἐδυνάετο ζωγρῆσαι, τὰς δὲ ἐν τῷ πελάγει

Γελωνοὶ δὲ γῆς τε |worker καὶ |eating food, grain |garden,  
 |orchard  
 ἐκτημένοι, οὐδὲν τὴν |semblance; .οι οὐδὲ τὸ |color ὑπὸ  
 |kind, style  
 μέντοι |Greek καλέονται καὶ οἱ Βουδῖνοι Γελωνοί, οὐκ  
 ὀρθῶς καλεόμενοι. ἡ δὲ χώρα σφέων πᾶσα ἐστὶ |hairy,  
 |brushy  
 ἴδησι |all kinds of ἐν δὲ τῇ ἴδῃ τῇ πλείστῃ ἐστὶ |lake, marsh, ἡ  
 |basin, sea  
 τε καὶ πολλὴ καὶ |marsh :αὶ |reed περὶ αὐτήν. ἐν δὲ  
 ταύτῃ |otter |be captured καὶ κάστορες καὶ ἄλλα θηρία  
 τετραγωνοπρόσωπα, τῶν τὰ |skin, hide παρὰ τὰς σισύρνας  
 παραρράπτεται, καὶ οἱ |testicle αὐτοῖσι εἰς |useful ἐς  
 ὑστερέων ἄκεσιν.

## 4.110

Σαυροματέων δὲ περὶ ᾧδε λέγεται. ὅτε |Greek Ἀμαζόσι  
 ἐμαχέσαντο τὰς δὲ Ἀμαζόνας καλέουσι Σκύθαι Οἰόρπατα,  
 δύναται δὲ τὸ οὖνομα τοῦτο κατὰ Ἑλλάδα |tongue,  
 |language  
 ἀνδροκτόνοι· οἰὸρ γὰρ καλέουσι ἄνδρα, τὸ δὲ πατὰ  
 κτείνειν, τότε λόγος τοῦς |Greek νικήσαντας τῇ ἐπὶ  
 Θερμώδοντι μάχῃ |sail away ἄγοντας τρισὶ πλοίοισι τῶν  
 Ἀμαζόνων ὅσας ἐδυνέατο |capture , τὰς δὲ ἐν τῷ |the open sea

feed on corn and have gardens, and resemble them not at all either in appearance or in complexion of skin. However by the Hellenes the Budinoi also are called Gelonians, not being rightly so called. Their land is all thickly overgrown with forests of all kinds of trees, and in the thickest forest there is a large and deep lake, and round it marshy ground and reeds. In this are caught otters and beavers and certainly other wild animals with square-shaped faces. The fur of these is sewn as a fringe round their coats of skin, and the testicles are made use of by them for curing diseases of the womb.

#### 4.110

About the Sauromatai the following tale is told:— When the Hellenes had fought with the Amazons,— now the Amazons are called by the Scythians Oiorpata, which name means in the Hellenic tongue “slayers of men,” for “man” they call oior, and pata means “to slay,”— then, as the story goes, the Hellenes, having conquered them in the battle at the Thermodon, were sailing away and conveying with them in three ships as many Amazons as they were able to take prisoners. These in the open sea set

*vocabulary*

**διαρπάζω** make prey of ~harpoon  
**εἰρεσία** rowing ~row  
**ἐκκόπτω** cut out, down, off  
**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved  
**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here  
**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest  
**ἐύς** good, brave, noble  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**θῶμα** a wonder, feeling of surprise  
 ~theater

**ἱππάζομαι** drive a chariot ~hippo  
**ἱστίον** sail ~stand  
**κρημνός** riverside cliff  
**ληίζομαι** plunder ~lucre  
**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**ὁδοιπορέω** walk over  
**ὄον** οὔ type of fruit  
**ὀπόθεν** whence  
**πηδάλιον** rudder  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic

ἐπιθεμένας ἐκκόψαι τοὺς ἄνδρας. πλοῖα δὲ οὐ γνώσκων  
 αὐτὰς οὐδὲ πηδαλίοισι χρᾶσθαι οὐδὲ ἰστίοισι οὐδὲ εἰρεσίῃ·  
 ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἐξέκοψαν τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐφέροντο κατὰ κῦμα  
 καὶ ἄνεμον, καὶ ἀπικνέονται τῆς λίμνης τῆς Μαιήτιδος  
 ἐπὶ Κρημνούς· οἱ δὲ Κρημνοὶ εἰσὶ γῆς τῆς Σκυθέων  
 τῶν ἐλευθέρων. ἐνθαῦτα ἀποβᾶσαι ἀπὸ τῶν πλοίων αἱ  
 Ἀμαζόνες ὁδοιπόρεον ἐς τὴν οἰκομένην. ἐντυχοῦσαι δὲ  
 πρῶτῳ ἵπποφορβίῳ τοῦτο διήρπασαν, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτων  
 ἱππαζόμεναι ἐληίζοντο τὰ τῶν Σκυθέων.

#### 4.111

Οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι οὐκ εἶχον συμβαλέσθαι τὸ πρῆγμα· οὔτε  
 γὰρ φωνὴν οὔτε ἐσθῆτα οὔτε τὸ ἔθνος ἐγίνωσκον,  
 ἀλλ' ἐν θώματι ἦσαν ὁκόθεν ἔλθοιεν, ἐδόκεον δ' αὐτὰς  
 εἶναι ἄνδρας τὴν αὐτὴν ἡλικίην ἔχοντας, μάχην τε δὴ  
 πρὸς αὐτὰς ἐποιεῦντο. ἐκ δὲ τῆς μάχης τῶν νεκρῶν  
 ἐκράτησαν οἱ Σκύθαι, καὶ οὕτω ἔγνωσαν εἰσὶν γυναικάς.  
 βουλευομένοισι ὧν αὐτοῖσι ἔδοξε κτείνειν μὲν οὐδενὶ  
 τρόπῳ ἔτι αὐτάς, ἐωυτῶν δὲ τοὺς νεωτάτους



ἐπιθεμένας |cut out, down, off δρας. πλοῖα δὲ οὐ γινώσκειν  
 αὐτὰς οὐδὲ |rudder χρᾶσθαι οὐδὲ |sail οὐδὲ εἰρεσίη·  
 ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ |cut out, down, off ἵνδρας ἐφέροντο κατὰ κῦμα  
 καὶ ἄνεμον, καὶ ἀπικνέονται τῆς |lake, marsh, Μαιήτιδος  
 |basin, sea  
 ἐπὶ |riverside οἱ δὲ |riverside εἰς γῆς τῆς Σκυθέων  
 |cliff |cliff  
 τῶν |not enslaved |there, here ὑποβᾶσαι ἀπὸ τῶν πλοίων αἱ  
 Ἀμαζόνες |walk over ἐς τὴν οἰκομένην. ἐντυχοῦσαι δὲ  
 πρῶτον ἵπποφορβίῳ τοῦτο |make prey of καὶ ἐπὶ τούτων  
 |drive a chariot |ληίζομαι?: plunder; or |κυθέων.  
 |ληίζομαι?: plunder

4.111

Οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι οὐκ εἶχον |pit against; compare; |ρήγμα· οὔτε  
 |mp: meet, fall in with  
 γὰρ φωνὴν οὔτε |clothes οὔτε τὸ ἔθνος ἐγίνωσκον,  
 ἀλλ' ἐν |wonder, ἦσαν |whence ἔλθοιεν, ἐδόκεον δ' αὐτὰς  
 |surprise  
 εἶναι ἄνδρας τὴν αὐτὴν |time of life, |con- |ις, μάχην τε δὴ  
 |temporaries  
 πρὸς αὐτὰς ἐποιεῦντο. ἐκ δὲ τῆς μάχης τῶν νεκρῶν  
 ἐκράτησαν οἱ Σκύθαι, καὶ οὕτω ἔγνωσαν εἰσάσας γυναῖκας.  
 βουλευομένοισι ὦν αὐτοῖσι ἔδοξε κτείνειν μὲν οὐδενὶ  
 τρόπῳ ἔτι αὐτάς, ἐωυτῶν δὲ τοὺς νεωτάτους

upon the men and cast them out of the ships; but they knew nothing about ships, nor how to use rudders or sails or oars, and after they had cast out the men they were driven about by wave and wind and came to that part of the Maiotian lake where Cremnoi stands; now Cremnoi is in the land of the free Scythians. There the Amazons disembarked from their ships and made their way into the country, and having met first with a troop of horses feeding they seized them, and mounted upon these they plundered the property of the Scythians.

#### 4.111

The Scythians meanwhile were not able to understand the matter, for they did not know either their speech or their dress or the race to which they belonged, but were in wonder as to whence they had come and thought that they were men, of an age corresponding to their appearance; and finally they fought a battle against them, and after the battle the Scythians got possession of the bodies of the dead, and thus they discovered that they were women. They took counsel therefore and resolved by no means to go on trying to kill them, but to send against them the youngest men from among themselves,

*vocabulary*

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**δῆλῃσις** mischief; harm  
**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture  
**ἐκγίγνομαι** be born; be by birth  
 ~genus  
**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command  
**θηρεύω** hunt, fish ~fierce

**ληίζομαι** plunder ~lucre  
**μεσσαμβρίη** midday; the south  
**νεηνίσκος** young man  
**προσχωρέω** go to, join, support  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὕποφεύγω** flee before ~fugitive

ἀποπέμψαι ἐς αὐτάς, πλῆθος εἰκάσαντας ὅσαι περ ἐκείναι ἦσαν τούτους δὲ στρατοπεδεύεσθαι πλησίον ἐκεινῶν καὶ ποιέειν τὰ περ ἂν καὶ ἐκείναι ποιέωσι. ἦν δὲ αὐτοὺς διώκωσι, μάχεσθαι μὲν μή, ὑποφεύγειν δέ· ἐπεὰν δὲ παύσωνται, ἐλθόντας αὐτὶς πλησίον στρατοπεδεύεσθαι. ταῦτα ἐβουλεύσαντο οἱ Σκύθαι βουλόμενοι ἐξ αὐτέων παῖδας ἐκγενήσεσθαι. ἀποπεμφθέντες δὲ οἱ νεηνίσκοι ἐποίουν τὰ ἐντεταλμένα.

## 4.112

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔμαθον αὐτοὺς αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἐπ' οὐδεμιῇ δηλήσι ἀπιγμένους, ἔων χαίρειν· προσεχώρεον δὲ πλησιαιτέρω τὸ στρατόπεδον τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐπ' ἡμέρη ἐκάστη. εἶχον δὲ οὐδὲν οὐδ' οἱ νεηνίσκοι, ὥσπερ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες, εἰ μὴ τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, ἀλλὰ ζόην ἔζωνον τὴν αὐτὴν ἐκείνησι, θηρεύοντές τε καὶ ληιζόμενοι.

## 4.113

Ἐποίουν δὲ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἐς τὴν μεσαμβρίην τοιόνδε·

|send away ἔς αὐτάς, πληθός |liken; conjecture ὅσαι περ ἐκεῖναι  
 ἦσαν τούτους δὲ |encamp or take up station πλησίον ἐκεινέων καὶ  
 ποιέειν τὰ περ ἂν καὶ ἐκεῖναι ποιέωσι. ἦν δὲ αὐτοὺς  
 διώκωσι, μάχεσθαι μὲν μή, |flee before δέ· ἐπεὰν δὲ  
 παύσωνται, ἐλθόντας αὐτὶς πλησίον |encamp or take up station  
 ταῦτα ἐβουλεύσαντο οἱ Σκύθαι βουλόμενοι ἐξ αὐτέων  
 παῖδας |be born; be by birth|send away δὲ οἱ |young man  
 ἐποίουν τὰ ἐντεταλμένα.

## 4.112

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔμαθον αὐτοὺς αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἐπ' οὐδεμιῇ |mischief; harm  
 ἀπιγμένους, ἔων χαίρειν· |go to, join, support· λησιαιτέρω τὸ  
 στρατόπεδον τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐπ' ἡμέρῃ ἐκάστη. εἶχον δὲ  
 οὐδὲν οὐδ' οἱ |young man, ὥσπερ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες, εἰ μὴ τὰ ὅπλα  
 καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, ἀλλὰ ζόην ἔζωον τὴν αὐτὴν ἐκείνησι,  
 |hunt, fish τε καὶ |ληίζομαι?: plunder; or  
 |ληίζομαι?: plunder

## 4.113

Ἐποίουν δὲ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἐς τὴν |midday; the|such  
 |south

making conjecture of the number so as to send just as many men as there were women. These were told to encamp near them, and do whatsoever they should do; if however the women should come after them, they were not to fight but to retire before them, and when the women stopped, they were to approach near and encamp. This plan was adopted by the Scythians because they desired to have children born from them.

**4.112**

The young men accordingly were sent out and did that which had been commanded them: and when the Amazons perceived that they had not come to do them any harm, they let them alone; and the two camps approached nearer to one another every day: and the young men, like the Amazons, had nothing except their arms and their horses, and got their living, as the Amazons did, by hunting and by taking booty.

**4.113**

Now the Amazons at midday used to scatter abroad either one by one

*vocabulary***ἀποσκήδναμαι** be dispersed**ἀπωθέω** repel, reject**ἐγγρίμπτω** to near, bring near to**εὐμάρεια** ease, opportunity**νεηνίσκος** young man**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**περιοράω** look around; watch; permit**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

**συνίημι** send together; hear, notice,  
understand ~jet**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later

ἐγίνοντο σποράδες κατὰ μίαν τε καὶ δύο, πρόσω δὴ ἀπ' ἀλληλέων ἐς εὐμαρείην ἀποσκιδνάμεναι. μαθόντες δὲ καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι ἐποίευν τὸν αὐτὸ τοῦτο. καὶ τις μουνωθεισέων τινὲς αὐτέων ἐνεχρίμπετο, καὶ ἡ Ἀμαζὼν οὐκ ἀπωθέετο ἀλλὰ περιεῖδε χρήσασθαι. καὶ φωνῆσαι μὲν οὐκ εἶχε, οὐ γὰρ συνίεσαν ἀλλήλων, τῇ δὲ χειρὶ ἔφραζε ἐς τὴν ὑστεραίην ἐλθεῖν ἐς τὸν αὐτὸ χωρίον καὶ ἕτερον ἄγειν, σημαίνουσα δύο γενέσθαι καὶ αὐτὴν ἑτέραν ἄξειν. ὁ δὲ νεηνίσκος, ἐπεὶ ἀπῆλθε, ἔλεξε ταῦτα πρὸς τοὺς λοιπούς· τῇ δὲ δευτεραίῃ ἦλθε ἐς τὸ χωρίον αὐτός τε οὗτος καὶ ἕτερον ἦγε, καὶ τὴν Ἀμαζόνα εὗρε δευτέρην αὐτὴν ὑπομένουσαν. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ νεηνίσκοι ὥς ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐκτιλώσαντο τὰς λοιπὰς τῶν Ἀμαζόνων.

#### 4.114

Μετὰ δὲ συμμίζαντες τὰ στρατόπεδα οἴκεον ὁμοῦ, γυναῖκα ἔχων ἕκαστος ταύτην τῇ τὸ πρῶτον συνεμίχθη. τὴν δὲ φωνὴν τὴν μὲν τῶν γυναικῶν οἱ ἄνδρες οὐκ ἐδυνάετο μαθεῖν, τὴν δὲ τῶν ἀνδρῶν αἱ γυναῖκες



ἐγίνοντο σποράδες κατὰ μίαν τε καὶ δύο, <sup>|forward, in, the r'</sup>  
<sup>|future; far</sup>  
 ἀλληλέων ἐς <sup>|ease, oppor-|be dispersed</sup> . μαθόντες δὲ καὶ  
<sup>|tunity</sup>  
 οἱ Σκύθαι ἐποίουν τὸν τοῦτο. καὶ τις μουνωθεισέων τινὶ  
 αὐτέων <sup>|to near, bring</sup> καὶ ἡ Ἀμαζὼν οὐκ <sup>|repel, reject</sup> ἀλλὰ  
<sup>|near to</sup>  
 περιείδε χρήσασθαι. καὶ φωνῆσαι μὲν οὐκ εἶχε, οὐ γὰρ  
<sup>|send together; hear...</sup>, τῇ δὲ χειρὶ ἔφραζε ἐς τὴν <sup>|the next; later</sup>  
 ἐλθεῖν ἐς τὸν χωρίον καὶ ἕτερον ἄγειν, <sup>|give orders to;</sup>  
<sup>|show; mark</sup>  
 δύο γενέσθαι καὶ αὐτὴν ἑτέραν ἄξειν. ὁ δὲ <sup>|young man</sup>, ἐπεὶ  
 ἀπῆλθε, ἔλεξε ταῦτα πρὸς τοὺς λοιπούς· τῇ δὲ δευτεραίῃ  
 ἦλθε ἐς τὸ χωρίον αὐτός τε οὗτος καὶ ἕτερον ἦγε, καὶ τὴν  
 Ἀμαζόνα εὗρε δευτέρην αὐτὴν <sup>|stay behind, await</sup>· δὲ λοιποὶ  
<sup>|young man</sup> ὅς ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐκτιλώσαντο τὰς  
 λοιπὰς τῶν Ἀμαζόνων.

## 4.114

Μετὰ δὲ συμμίζαντες τὰ στρατόπεδα οἶκεον ὁμοῦ,  
 γυναῖκα ἔχων ἕκαστος ταύτην τῇ τὸ πρῶτον συνεμίχθη.  
 τὴν δὲ φωνὴν τὴν μὲν τῶν γυναικῶν οἱ ἄνδρες οὐκ  
 ἔδυνάτο μαθεῖν, τὴν δὲ τῶν ἀνδρῶν αἱ γυναῖκες

or by two together, dispersing to a distance from one another to ease themselves; and the Scythians also having perceived this did the same thing: and one of the Scythians came near to one of those Amazons who were apart by themselves, and she did not repulse him but allowed him to lie with her: and she could not speak to him, for they did not understand one another's speech, but she made signs to him with her hand to come on the following day to the same place and to bring another with him, signifying to him that there should be two of them, and that she would bring another with her. The young man therefore, when he returned, reported this to the others; and on the next day he came himself to the place and also brought another, and he found the Amazon awaiting him with another in her company. Then hearing this the rest of the young men also in their turn tamed for themselves the remainder of the Amazons;

#### 4.114

And after this they joined their camps and lived together, each man having for his wife her with whom he had had dealings at first; and the men were not able to learn the speech of the women, but the women came to comprehend

*vocabulary***ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀπολαγχάνω** get by lot**γυναικίος** of women**διστάω** treat; live; arbitrate**εὖς** good, brave, noble**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**ἵππάζομαι** drive a chariot ~hippo**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;  
enroll ~legion**κτῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possession**κτῆσις** -ος (f) chattels**μηκέτι** no more**νεηνίσκος** young man**νόμαιοις** customary**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**οὐδαμῇ** nowhere**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;

understand ~epilepsy

**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;

agree; (mp) happen ~bear

**συνίημι** send together; hear, notice,  
understand ~jet**τοιόσδε** such**τοκεύς** -ος (m) parent ~oxytocin**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic

συνέλαβον. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήκαν ἀλλήλων, ἔλεξαν πρὸς τὰς Ἀμαζόνας τάδε οἱ ἄνδρες. «ἡμῖν εἰσὶ μὲν τοκέες, εἰσὶ δὲ κτήσιες· νῦν ὦν μηκέτι πλεῦνα χρόνον ζόην τοιήνδε ἔχωμεν, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες ἐς τὸ πλῆθος διαιτώμεθα. γυναῖκας δὲ ἔξομεν ὑμέας καὶ οὐδαμὰς ἄλλας.» αἱ δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα ἔλεξαν τάδε. «ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα οἰκέειν μετὰ τῶν ὑμετερέων γυναικῶν· οὐ γὰρ τὰ αὐτὰ νόμαια ἡμῖν τε κακείνησι ἐστί. ἡμεῖς μὲν τοξεύομέν τε καὶ ἀκοντίζομεν καὶ ἵππαζόμεθα, ἔργα δὲ γυναικῆα οὐκ ἐμάθομεν· αἱ δὲ ὑμέτεραι γυναῖκες τούτων μὲν οὐδὲν τῶν ἡμεῖς κατελέξαμεν ποιεῦσι, ἔργα δὲ γυναικῆα ἐργάζονται μένουσαι ἐν τῇσι ἀμάξῃσι, οὐτ' ἐπὶ θήρην ἰοῦσαι οὔτε ἄλλη οὐδαμῇ. οὐκ ἂν ὦν δυναίμεθα ἐκείνησι συμφέρεσθαι. ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε γυναῖκας ἔχειν ἡμέας καὶ δοκέειν εἶναι δίκαιοι, ἐλθόντες παρὰ τοὺς τοκέας ἀπολάχετε τῶν κτημάτων τὸ μέρος, καὶ ἔπειτα ἐλθόντες οἰκέωμεν ἐπὶ ἡμέων αὐτῶν.» ἐπεΐθοντο καὶ ἐποίησαν ταῦτα οἱ νεηνίσκοι.

|seize, capture; ἐπεὶ δὲ |send together; ἤραρ ', ἔλεξαν πρὸς τὰς  
 |understand  
 Ἀμαζόνιας τάδε οἱ ἄνδρες. «ἡμῖν εἰσὶ μὲν |parent , εἰσὶ  
 δὲ |chattels νῦν ὧν |no more πλεῖνα χρόνον ζόην |such  
 ἔχωμεν, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες ἐς τὸ πλῆθος διαιτώμεθα.  
 γυναῖκας δὲ ἔξομεν ὑμέας καὶ |not anyone Ἰλλας.» αἱ  
 δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα ἔλεξαν τάδε. «ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα  
 οἰκέειν μετὰ τῶν ὑμετερέων γυναικῶν· οὐ γὰρ τὰ αὐτὰ  
 |customary, ὡν τε κακείνησι ἐστί. ἡμεῖς μὲν |shoot an arrow at  
 καὶ |throw, (+gen) at ... |drive a chariot ἔργα δὲ γυναικῆα οὐκ  
 ἐμάθομεν· αἱ δὲ ὑμέτεραι γυναῖκες τούτων μὲν οὐδὲν τῶν  
 ἡμεῖς |relate in detail, ποιῶσι, ἔργα δὲ γυναικῆα ἐργάζονται  
 |choose; enroll  
 μένουσαι ἐν τῇσι |wagon , οὐτ' ἐπὶ θήρην ἰοῦσαι οὔτε ἄλλῃ  
 |nowhere. οὐκ ἂν ὧν δυναίμεθα ἐκείνησι |bring together; ἢ βέ' expedient;  
 |agree; (mp) happen  
 εἰ βούλεσθε γυναῖκας ἔχειν ἡμέας καὶ δοκέειν εἶναι δίκαιοι,  
 ἐλθόντες παρὰ τοὺς |parent |get by lot τῶν |possession τὸ  
 μέρος, καὶ ἔπειτα ἐλθόντες οἰκέωμεν ἐπὶ ἡμέων αὐτῶν.»  
 ἐπείθοντο καὶ ἐποίησαν ταῦτα οἱ |young man

that of the men. So when they understood one another, the men spoke to the Amazons as follows: "We have parents and we have possessions; now therefore let us no longer lead a life of this kind, but let us go away to the main body of our people and dwell with them; and we will have you for wives and no others." They however spoke thus in reply: "We should not be able to live with your women, for we and they have not the same customs. We shoot with bows and hurl javelins and ride horses, but the works of women we never learnt; whereas your women do none of these things which we said, but stay in the waggons and work at the works of women, neither going out to the chase nor anywhere else. We therefore should not be able to live in agreement with them: but if ye desire to keep us for your wives and to be thought honest men, go to your parents and obtain from them your share of the goods, and then let us go and dwell by ourselves."

*vocabulary***ἀπολαγχάνω** get by lot**ἀποστερέω** despoil, defraud**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**δέος** fear ~Deimos**δηλέομαι** hurt, spoil, steal ~delenda**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**δίαιτα** way of life; home; arbitration**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out**ἐπιβάλλω** throw upon, head for

~ballistic

**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**κτῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possession**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**νεηνίσκος** young man**ὁδοιπορέω** walk over**περάω** cross over, drive across; sell as a slave ~pierce**χῶρος** place ~heir

## 4.115

Ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἀπολαχόντες τῶν κτημάτων τὸ ἐπιβάλλον ἦλθον ὀπίσω παρὰ τὰς Ἀμαζόνας, ἔλεξαν αἱ γυναῖκες πρὸς αὐτοὺς τάδε. «ἡμέας ἔχει φόβος τε καὶ δέος ὅπως χρὴ οἰκέειν ἐν τῷδε τῷ χώρῳ, τοῦτο μὲν ὑμέας ἀποστερησάσας πατέρων, τοῦτο δὲ γῆν τὴν ὑμετέρην δηλησαμένας πολλά. ἀλλ' ἐπεῖτε ἀξιούτε ἡμέας γυναῖκας ἔχειν, τάδε ποιέετε ἅμα ἡμῖν· φέρετε ἐξαναστέωμεν ἐκ τῆς γῆς τῆσδε καὶ περήσαντες Τάναϊν ποταμὸν οἰκέωμεν.»

## 4.116

Ἐπεῖθοντο καὶ ταῦτα οἱ νεηνίσκοι, διαβάντες δὲ τὸν Τάναϊν ὁδοιπόρεον πρὸς ἥλιον ἀνίσχοντα τριῶν μὲν ἡμερέων ἀπὸ τοῦ Τανάιδος ὁδόν, τριῶν δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς λίμνης τῆς Μαιήτιδος πρὸς βορέην ἄνεμον. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐς τοῦτον τὸν χώρον ἐν τῷ νυν κατοίκηνται, οἴκησαν τοῦτον. καὶ διαίτῃ ἀπὸ τούτου χρέωνται τῇ παλαιῇ τῶν Σαυροματέων αἱ γυναῖκες, καὶ ἐπὶ θήρην ἐπ' ἵππων



4.115

Ἐπεῖτε δὲ |get by lot τῶν |possession τὸ |throw upon  
 ἦλθον ὀπίσω παρὰ τὰς Ἀμαζόνας, ἔλεξαν αἱ γυναῖκες  
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς τάδε. «ἡμέας ἔχει φόβος τε καὶ |fear  
 ὅκως χρὴ οἰκέειν ἐν τῷδε τῷ |place, τοῦτο μὲν ὑμέας  
 |despoil, defraud πατέρων, τοῦτο δὲ γῆν τὴν ὑμετέρεην  
 |hurt, spoil, steal πολλά. ἀλλ' ἐπεῖτε ἀξιούτε ἡμέας γυναῖκας  
 ἔχειν, τάδε ποιέετε ἅμα ἡμῖν· φέρετε |raise, bring/send ἐκ τῆς  
 |out  
 γῆς τῆσδε καὶ |cross; sell as a Τάναιιν ποταμὸν οἰκέωμεν.»  
 |slave

4.116

Ἐπεΐθοντο καὶ ταῦτα οἱ |young man |pass over, cross τὸν  
 Τάναιιν |walk over πρὸς ἥλιον ἀνίσχοντα τριῶν μὲν  
 ἡμερέων ἀπὸ τοῦ Τανάιδος ὁδόν, τριῶν δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς  
 |lake, marsh, Μαιήτιδος πρὸς |north, ἄνεμον. ἀπικόμενοι  
 |basin, sea |north  
 δὲ ἐς τοῦτον τὸν |place ἐν τῷ νῦν κατοίκηνται, οἴκησαν  
 |wind  
 τοῦτον. καὶ |way of life; home; ου χρέωνται τῇ παλαιῇ τῶν  
 |arbitration  
 Σαυροματέων αἱ γυναῖκες, καὶ ἐπὶ θήρην ἐπ' ἵππων

**4.115**

The young men agreed and did this; and when they had obtained the share of the goods which belonged to them and had returned back to the Amazons, the women spoke to them as follows: “We are possessed by fear and trembling to think that we must dwell in this place, having not only separated you from your fathers, but also done great damage to your land. Since then ye think it right to have us as your wives, do this together with us,— come and let us remove from this land and pass over the river Tanaïs and there dwell.”

**4.116**

The young men agreed to this also, and they crossed over the Tanaïs and made their way towards the rising sun for three days’ journey from Tanaïs, and also towards the North Wind for three days’ journey from the Maiotian lake: and having arrived at the place where they are now settled, they took up their abode there: and from thenceforward the women of the Sauromatai practise their ancient way of living, going out regularly on horseback to the chase both

*vocabulary***ἀλίζω** gather, assemble**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning  
~oligarch**αὐχὴν** -ένος (m, 3) neck**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**γηραιός** old**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**διακέομαι** repair**ἐκδιδάσκω** teach, explain**ἐκμανθάνω** know by heart**ἐκπλέω** sail away ~float**ἐκφοιτάω** habitually go out**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;  
enroll ~legion**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
~catastrophe**ὄον** οῦ type of fruit**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**Πέρσης** Persian**στολή** equipment**φοιτάω** go back and forth**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
~bear**χρηστός** useful; brave, worthy**χωρίς** separately; except, other than  
~heir

ἐκφοιτῶσαι ἄμα τοῖσι ἀνδράσι καὶ χωρὶς τῶν ἀνδρῶν, καὶ ἐς πόλεμον φοιτῶσαι καὶ στολὴν τὴν αὐτὴν τοῖσι ἀνδράσι φορέουσαι.

## 4.117

Φωνῇ δὲ οἱ Σαυρομάται νομίζουσι Σκυθικῇ, σολοικίζοντες αὐτῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἀρχαίου, ἐπεὶ οὐ χρηστῶς ἐξέμαθον αὐτὴν αἱ Ἀμαζόνες. τὰ περὶ γάμων δὲ ὧδέ σφι διακέεται. οὐ γαμέεται παρθένος οὐδεμία πρὶν ἂν τῶν πολεμίων ἄνδρα ἀποκτείνῃ· αἱ δὲ τινὲς αὐτέων καὶ τελευτῶσι γηραιαὶ πρὶν γήμασθαι, οὐ δυνάμεναι τὸν νόμον ἐκπλήσαι,

## 4.118

Ἐπὶ τούτων ὦν τῶν καταλεχθέντων ἐθνέων τοὺς βασιλέας ἀλισμένους ἀπικόμενος τῶν Σκυθέων οἱ ἄγγελοι ἔλεγον ἐκδιδάσκοντες ὡς ὁ Πέρσης, ἐπειδὴ οἱ τὰ ἐν τῇ ἡπείρῳ τῇ ἐτέρῃ πάντα κατέστραπται, γέφυραν ζεύξας ἐπὶ τῷ αὐχένι τοῦ Βοσπόρου διαβέβηκε ἐς τήνδε τὴν ἡπειρον, διαβὰς δὲ καὶ καταστρεψάμενος Θρήκας

|habitually go οὕτ ... τοῖσι ἀνδράσι καὶ |separately; ex-ρῶν, καὶ  
 |cept, other than  
 ἐς πόλεμον |go back and |equipment ἢν αὐτὴν τοῖσι ἀνδράσι  
 |forth  
 |frequentative of  
 |φέρω, to carry

4.117

Φωνῇ δὲ οἱ Σανρομάται νομίζουσι Σκυθικῇ, σολοικίζοντες  
 αὐτῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ |ancient, from the be- |useful; |know by heart ἦν  
 |ginning |brave,  
 αἱ Ἀμαζόνες. τὰ περὶ |wedding, sex |worthy  
 |repair οὐ  
 γαμέεται |girl, virgin οὐδεμία πρὶν ἂν τῶν πολεμίων ἄνδρα  
 ἀποκτείνῃ· αἱ δὲ τινὲς αὐτέων καὶ τελευτῶσι |old πρὶν  
 γήμασθαι, οὐ δυνάμεναι τὸν νόμον |sail away

4.118

Ἐπὶ τούτων ὧν τῶν |relate in detail, ἐθνέων τοὺς  
 |choose; enroll  
 βασιλέας ἀλίσμενους ἀπικόμενος τῶν Σκυθέων οἱ ἄγγελοι  
 ἔλεγον |teach, explain ὥς ὁ Πέρσης, ἐπειδὴ οἱ τὰ ἐν τῇ  
 |mainland, ἥ ἑτέρῃ πάντα |overturn, subdue, |dam, dike; |yoke, join  
 |continent |bridge  
 ἐπὶ τῷ |neck τοῦ Βοσπόρου |pass over, cross τήνδε τὴν  
 |mainland, |pass over, cross |overturn, subdue Θρήκας  
 |continent

in company with the men and apart from them, and going regularly to war, and wearing the same dress as the men.

**4.117**

And the Sauromatai make use of the Scythian tongue, speaking it barbarously however from the first, since the Amazons did not learn it thoroughly well. As regards marriages their rule is this, that no maiden is married until she has slain a man of their enemies; and some of them even grow old and die before they are married, because they are not able to fulfil the requirement of the law.

**4.118**

To the kings of these nations then, which have been mentioned in order, the messengers of the Scythians came, finding them gathered together, and spoke declaring to them how the Persian king, after having subdued all things to himself in the other continent, had laid a bridge over the neck of the Bosphorus and had crossed over to that continent, and having crossed over and subdued the Thracians,

*vocabulary***ἀντιάζω** meet, fight, join**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**γεφυρόω** (ῥ) dam, move earth**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**δουλοσύνη** slavery**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**ἐλαφρός** nimble, light on one's feet; light, bearable ~elevator**ἐμποδών** getting in the way**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἡμερόω** tame**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue  
~catastrophe**καταχράομαι** (mp) abuse, use up;

(act) be enough

**μαρτύριον** testimony, proof**ὁμολογίη** agreement, consent**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**οὐκω** no longer**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**περίοιδα** have great, greater skill**περιοράω** look around; watch; permit**Πέρσης** Persian**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**στρατηλατέω** lead an army**τιμωρέω** (i) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked**τίνω** (i) pay, atone for; (mp) punish**τίω** value, honor; mp: exact  
recompense for

γεφυροῖ ποταμὸν Ἰστρον, βουλόμενος καὶ τάδε πάντα ὑπ' ἐωυτῷ ποιήσασθαι. «ὕμεῖς ὦν μηδενὶ τρόπῳ ἐκ τοῦ μέσου κατήμενοι περιύδητε ἡμέας διαφθαρέντας, ἀλλὰ τὸν νοήσαντες ἀντιάζωμεν τὸν ἐπιόντα. οὐκὼν ποιήσετε ταῦτα; ἡμεῖς μὲν πιεζόμενοι ἢ ἐκλείβομεν τὴν χώραν ἢ μένοντες ὁμολογίῃ χρησόμεθα. τί γὰρ πάθωμεν μὴ βουλομένων ὑμέων τιμωρέειν; ὑμῖν δὲ οὐδὲν ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔσται ἐλαφρότερον. ἥκει γὰρ ὁ Πέρσης οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον ἐπ' ἡμέας ἢ οὐ καὶ ἐπ' ὑμέας, οὐδέ οἱ καταχρήσει ἡμέας καταστρεψαμένῳ ὑμέων ἀπέχεσθαι. μέγα δὲ ὑμῖν λόγων τῶνδε μαρτύριον ἐρέομεν. εἰ γὰρ ἐπ' ἡμέας μούρους ἐστρατηλάτῃ ὁ Πέρσης τίσασθαι τῆς πρόσθε δουλοσύνης βουλόμενος, χρῆν αὐτὸν πάντων τῶν ἄλλων ἀπεχόμενον ἵεναι οὕτῳ ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν, καὶ ἂν ἐδήλου πᾶσι ὥς ἐπὶ Σκύθας ἐλαύνει καὶ οὐκ ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄλλους. νῦν δὲ ἐπεῖτε τάχιστα διέβη ἐς τήνδε τὴν ἡπειρον, τοὺς αἰεὶ ἐμποδῶν γινομένους ἡμεροῦται πάντας· τοὺς τε δὴ ἄλλους ἔχει ὑπ' ἐωυτῷ Θρήκας καὶ δὴ καὶ τοὺς ἡμῖν ἐόντας



|dam ποταμὸν Ἰστρον, βουλόμενος καὶ τάδε πάντα ὑπ'  
 έωντῶ ποιήσασθαι. «ὕμεῖς ὦν μηδενὶ τρόπῳ ἐκ τοῦ μέσου  
 κατήμενοι περιύδητε ἡμέας διαφθαρέντας, ἀλλὰ τῶντὸ  
 νοήσαντες |meet, fight, τὸν ἐπιόντα. |no longer οἰήσετε  
 |join  
 ταῦτα; ἡμεῖς μὲν |press, ἢ |leave out, pass οὐκ ἠώρην  
 |squeeze  
 ἢ μένοντες |agreement, χρησόμεθα. τί γὰρ πάθωμεν μὴ  
 |consent  
 βουλομένων ὑμέων |take vengeance, ἢ δὲ οὐδὲν ἐπὶ τούτῳ  
 |punish, aid  
 ἔσται |light in weight ἥκει γὰρ ὁ Πέρσης οὐδέν τι μάλλον  
 ἐπ' ἡμέας ἢ οὐ καὶ ἐπ' ὑμέας, οὐδέ οἱ καταχρήσει ἡμέας  
 |overturn, subdue ὑμέων |ward off, drive off, refrain, ἢν λόγων  
 |be at some distance  
 τῶνδε |testimony, ἔρομεν. εἰ γὰρ ἐπ' ἡμέας μούνους  
 |proof  
 |lead an army ὁ Πέρσης τίσασθαι τῆς πρόσθε |slavery  
 βουλόμενος, χρῆν αὐτὸν πάντων τῶν ἄλλων |ward off, drive off, refrain,  
 |be at some distance  
 ἰέναι οὕτῳ ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν, καὶ ἂν ἐδήλου πᾶσι ὥς ἐπὶ  
 Σκύθας ἐλαύνει καὶ οὐκ ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄλλους. νῦν δὲ ἐπείτε  
 τάχιστα |pass over, cross τὴν |mainland, τοὺς αἰεὶ |getting in the way  
 |continent  
 γινομένους |tame πάντας· τοὺς τε δὴ ἄλλους ἔχει ὑπ'  
 έωντῶ Θρήικας καὶ δὴ καὶ τοὺς ἡμῖν έόντας

was making a bridge over the river Ister, desiring to bring under his power all these regions also. "Do ye therefore," they said, "by no means stand aloof and allow us to be destroyed, but let us become all of one mind and oppose him who is coming against us. If ye shall not do so, we on our part shall either be forced by necessity to leave our land, or we shall stay in it and make a treaty with the invader; for what else can we do if ye are not willing to help us? and for you after this it will be in no respect easier; for the Persian has come not at all less against you than against us, nor will it content him to subdue us and abstain from you. And of the truth of that which we say we will mention a strong evidence: if the Persian had been making his expedition against us alone, because he desired to take vengeance for the former servitude, he ought to have abstained from all the rest and to have come at once to invade our land, and he would thus have made it clear to all that he was marching to fight against the Scythians and not against the rest. In fact however, ever since he crossed over to this continent, he has compelled all who came in his way to submit to him, and he holds under him now not only the other Thracians but also the Getai, who are

*vocabulary***άνδροφάγος** man-eating**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin**άνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet**άπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel**είσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**έπικρατέω** rule over**Πέρσης** Persian**πλησιόχωρος** adjacent**προσδοκάω** expect**σχίζω** split ~schism**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,  
punish; aid one who has been attacked**ύπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**ύποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer**ύποκρίνομαι** (ι) answer; pretend

πλησιοχώρους Γέτας.»

#### 4.119

Ταῦτα Σκυθέων ἐπαγγελλομένων ἐβουλευόντο οἱ βασιλεῖς οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐθνέων ἦκοντες, καὶ σφεων ἐσχίσθησαν αἱ γνώμαι· ὁ μὲν γὰρ Γελωνὸς καὶ ὁ Βουδῖνος καὶ ὁ Σαυρομάτης κατὰ τῶντὸ γεινόμενοι ὑπέδεκοντο Σκύθησι τιμωρήσιν, ὁ δὲ Ἀγάθурсος καὶ Νευρὸς καὶ Ἀνδροφάγος καὶ οἱ τῶν Μελαγχλαίνων καὶ Ταύρων τάδε Σκύθησι ὑπεκρίναντο. «εἰ μὲν μὴ ὑμεῖς ἔατε οἱ πρότεροι ἀδικήσαντες Πέρσας καὶ ἄρξαντες πολέμου, τούτων δεόμενοι τῶν νῦν δέεσθε λέγειν τε ἂν ἐφαίνεσθε ἡμῖν ὀρθά, καὶ ἡμεῖς ὑπακούσαντες τῶντὸ ἂν ὑμῖν ἐπρήσσομεν. νῦν δὲ ὑμεῖς τε ἐς τὴν ἐκείνων ἐσβαλόντες γῆν ἄνευ ἡμέων ἐπεκρατέετε Περσέων ὅσον χρόνον ὑμῖν ὁ θεὸς παρεδίδου, καὶ ἐκεῖνοι, ἐπεὶ σφεας ὧντὸς θεὸς ἐγείρει, τὴν ὁμοίην ὑμῖν ἀποδιδούσι. ἡμεῖς δὲ οὔτε τι τότε ἡδικήσαμεν τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους οὐδὲν οὔτε νῦν πρότεροι πειρησόμεθα ἀδικεῖν. ἦν μέντοι ἐπὶ καὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν ἄρξῃ τε ἀδικέων, καὶ ἡμεῖς

|adjacent Γέτας.»

4.119

Ταῦτα Σκυθέων ἐπαγγελλομένων ἐβουλευόντο οἱ βασιλεῖς

οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐθνέων ἤκοντες, καὶ σφεων |split

αἱ γινώμαι· ὁ μὲν γὰρ Γελωνὸς καὶ ὁ Βουδίνος καὶ ὁ

Σαυρομάτης κατὰ τῶντὸ γενόμενοι |welcome, ac- Σκύθησι  
|cept, suffer

|take vengeance, δὲ Ἀγάθυρσος καὶ Νευρὸς καὶ |man-eating  
|punish, aid

καὶ οἱ τῶν Μελαγχλαίνων καὶ Ταύρων τάδε Σκύθησι

|answer; «εἰ μὲν μὴ ὑμεῖς ἔατε οἱ πρότεροι  
|pretend

ἀδικήσαντες Πέρσας καὶ ἄρξαντες πολέμου, τούτων

δεόμενοι τῶν νῦν δέεσθε λέγειν τε ἂν ἐφαίνεσθε ἡμῖν ὀρθά,

καὶ ἡμεῖς |listen, reply τῶντὸ ἂν ὑμῖν ἐπρήσσομεν. νῦν

δὲ ὑμεῖς τε ἐς τὴν ἐκείνων |throw into γῆν ἄνευ ἡμέων

|rule over Περσέων ὅσον χρόνον ὑμῖν ὁ θεὸς παρεδίδου,

καὶ ἐκεῖνοι, ἐπεὶ σφεας ὡντὸς θεὸς ἐγείρει, τὴν ὁμοίην ὑμῖν

ἀποδιδούσι. ἡμεῖς δὲ οὔτε τι τότε ἡδικήσαμεν τοὺς ἄνδρας

τούτους οὐδὲν οὔτε νῦν πρότεροι πειρησόμεθα ἀδικεῖν. ἦν

μέντοι ἐπὶ καὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν ἄρξῃ τε ἀδικέων, καὶ ἡμεῖς

our nearest neighbours.”

#### 4.119

When the Scythians proposed this, the kings who had come from the various nations took counsel together, and their opinions were divided. The kings of the Gelonians, of the Budinoi and of the Sauromatai agreed together and accepted the proposal that they should help the Scythians, but those of the Agathyrsians, Neuroi, Androphagoi, Melanchlainoi and Tauroi returned answer to the Scythians as follows: “If ye had not been the first to do wrong to the Persians and to begin war, then we should have surely thought that ye were speaking justly in asking for those things for which ye now ask, and we should have yielded to your request and shared your fortunes. As it is however, ye on the one hand made invasion without us into their land, and bare rule over the Persians for so long a time as God permitted you; and they in their turn, since the same God stirs them up, are repaying you with the like. As for us however, neither at that time did we do any wrong to these men nor now shall we attempt to do any wrong to them unprovoked: if however the Persians shall come against our land also, and do wrong first to us, we also

*vocabulary***ἀδικία** injustice, offence**ἀπελάνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
(intrans) ride away**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**βασιλεις** kingly**βασιλεύω** be king**διαιρέω** divide, distinguish, distribute**ἐκτρίβω** (t) rub out**ἐμφανής** visible**κραίνω** accomplish; (rare) rule**κρήνη** well, spring**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**Πέρσης** Persian**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to**προσχωρέω** go to, join, support**συγχέω** entangle, destroy, confound**συνέρχομαι** come together**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
from ~demagogue**ὑπέξιμι** withdraw; go out**ὑποφεύγω** flee before ~fugitive**φρέαρ** well

οὐ πεισόμεθα, μέχρι δὲ τοῦτο ἴδωμεν, μενέομεν παρ' ἡμῖν  
αὐτοῖσι· ἥκειν γὰρ δοκέομεν οὐκ ἐπ' ἡμέας Πέρσας ἀλλ'  
ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰτίους τῆς ἀδικίης γενομένους.»

## 4.120

Ταῦτα ὡς ἀπενειχθέντα ἐπύθοντο οἱ Σκύθαι, ἐβουλεύοντο  
ἰθυμαχίην μὲν μηδεμίαν ποιέεσθαι ἐκ τοῦ ἐμφανέος, ὅτε δὴ  
σφι οὗτοι γε σύμμαχοι οὐ προσεγίνοντο, ὑπεξιόντες δὲ καὶ  
ὑπεξελαύνοντες τὰ φρέατα τὰ παρεξίοιεν αὐτοὶ καὶ τὰς  
κρήνας συγχοῦν, τὴν ποίην τε ἐκ τῆς γῆς ἐκτρίβειν, διχοῦ  
σφέας διελόντες. καὶ πρὸς μὲν τὴν μίαν τῶν μοιρέων,  
τῆς ἐβασίλευε Σκώπασις, προσχωρέειν Σαυρομάτας·  
τούτους μὲν δὴ ὑπάγειν, ἣν ἐπὶ τοῦτο τράπηται ὁ  
Πέρσης ἰθὺ Τανάιδος ποταμοῦ παρὰ τὴν Μαιῆτιν λίμνην  
ὑποφεύγοντας, ἀπελαύνοντος τε τοῦ Πέρσεω ἐπιόντας  
διώκειν. αὕτη μὲν σφι μία ἦν μοῖρα τῆς βασιλείης,  
τεταγμένη ταύτην τὴν ὁδὸν ἣ περ εἴρηται· τὰς δὲ δύο τῶν  
βασιληίων, τὴν τε μεγάλην τῆς ἥρχε Ἰδάνθурсος καὶ τὴν  
τρίτην τῆς ἐβασίλευε Τάξακις, συνελθούσας ἐς τὸ αὐτὸ



οὐ πεισόμεθα, μέχρι δὲ τοῦτο ἴδωμεν, μένομεν παρ' ἡμῖν  
αὐτοῖσι· ἦκειν γὰρ δοκέομεν οὐκ ἐπ' ἡμέας Πέρσας ἀλλ'  
ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰτίους τῆς ἀδικίης γενομένους.»

4.120

Ταῦτα ὥς |carry off ἐπύθοντο οἱ Σκύθαι, ἐβουλεύοντο  
ἰθυμαχίην μὲν μηδεμίαν ποιέεσθαι ἐκ τοῦ |visible , ὅτε δὴ  
σφι οὗτοι γε σύμμαχοι οὐ προσεγίνοντο, |withdraw; go out ἰ  
ὑπεξελαύνοντες τὰ |well τὰ παρεξίοιεν αὐτοὶ καὶ τὰς  
κρήνας |entangle, de- τοίην τε ἐκ τῆς γῆς |rub out , διχοῦ  
|stroy, confound  
σφέας |divide, distin- ἄ πρὸς μὲν τὴν μίαν τῶν μοιρέων,  
|guish, distribute  
τῆς |be king Σκώπασις, |go to, join, support ὑρομάτας·  
τούτους μὲν δὴ |lead , ἦν ἐπὶ τοῦτο τράπηται ὁ  
Πέρσης ἰθὺ Τανάιδος ποταμοῦ παρὰ τὴν Μαιῆτιν |lake, marsh,  
|basin, sea  
|flee before , |expel, exclude, ward off; (in-Persian ἐπιόντας  
|trans) ride away  
διώκειν. αὕτη μὲν σφι μία ἦν μοῖρα τῆς βασιληίης,  
τεταγμένη ταύτην τὴν ὁδὸν ἣ περ εἴρηται· τὰς δὲ δύο τῶν  
|kingly , τὴν τε μεγάλην τῆς ἡρχε Ἰδάνθурсος καὶ τὴν  
τρίτην τῆς |be king Τάξakis, |come together ἐς τῶντὸ

shall refuse to submit 111: but until we shall see this, we shall remain by ourselves, for we are of opinion that the Persians have come not against us, but against those who were the authors of the wrong.”

#### 4.120

When the Scythians heard this answer reported, they planned not to fight a pitched battle openly, since these did not join them as allies, but to retire before the Persians and to drive away their cattle from before them, choking up with earth the wells and the springs of water by which they passed and destroying the grass from off the ground, having parted themselves for this into two bodies; and they resolved that the Sauromatai should be added to one of their divisions, namely that over which Scopasis was king, and that these should move on, if the Persians turned in that direction, straight towards the river Tanaïs, retreating before him by the shore of the Maiotian lake; and when the Persian marched back again, they should come after and pursue him. This was one division of their kingdom, appointed to go by the way which has been said; and the other two of the kingdoms, the large one over which Idanthyrsos was king, and the third of which Taxakis was king, were to join together in one, with the Gelonians and

*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀπεῖπον** refuse, renounce, declare  
**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
**διαιτάω** treat; live; arbitrate  
**ἐκπολεμώ** antagonize to war  
**ἐκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily  
**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ὁδός** lead well  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds  
**πρόδρομος** running ahead  
**προέχω** be ahead, jut forward; mid: have before one  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp  
**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to

**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συμμαχία** alliance  
**σφέτερος** their  
**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue  
**ὑπαντιάζω** take a stand against  
**ὑπείμι** be under  
**ὑπεξάγω** lead to safety ~demagogue  
**ὑποδύω** (mp) get under; play a character  
**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse  
**ὑποστρέφω** turn around, go back ~atrophy  
**φορβή** food, pasture ~euphorbia  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat) ~heir  
**χώρος** place ~heir

καὶ Γελωνῶν τε καὶ Βουδίνων προσγενομένων, ἡμέρης  
καὶ τούτους ὁδῶ προέχοντας τῶν Περσέων ὑπεξάγειν,  
ὑπιόντας τε καὶ ποιεῦντας τὰ βεβουλευμένα· πρῶτα μὲν  
νυν ὑπάγειν σφέας ἰθὺ τῶν χωρέων τῶν ἀπειπαμένων  
τὴν σφετέρην συμμαχίην, ἵνα καὶ τούτους ἐκπολεμώσωσι·  
εἰ γὰρ μὴ ἐκόντες γε ὑπέδυσαν τὸν πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς  
Πέρσας, ἀλλ' ἀέκοντας ἐκπολεμώσιν· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο  
ὑποστρέφειν ἐς τὴν σφετέρην καὶ ἐπιχειρέειν, ἣν δὴ  
βουλευομένοισι δοκέη.

## 4.121

Ταῦτα οἱ Σκύθαι βουλευσάμενοι ὑπηντίαζον τὴν Δαρείου  
στρατιήν, προδρόμους ἀποστέιλαντες τῶν ἱππέων τοὺς  
ἀρίστους. τὰς δὲ ἀμάξας ἐν τῇσι σφι διαιτᾶτο τὰ τέκνα  
καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες πάσας καὶ τὰ πρόβατα πάντα, πλὴν ὅσα  
σφι ἐς φορβὴν ἱκανὰ ἦν τοσαῦτα ὑπολιπόμενοι, τὰ ἄλλα  
ἅμα τῇσι ἀμάξῃσι προέπεμψαν, ἐντειλάμενοι αἰεὶ τὸ πρὸς  
βορέω ἐλαύνειν.

καὶ Γελωνῶν τε καὶ Βουδίνων |become ally to , ἡμέρης  
καὶ τούτους ὁδῶ |be ahead, τῶν Περσέων |lead to safety  
|have before  
|be under τε καὶ ποιεῦντας τὰ βεβουλευμένα· πρῶτα μέν  
νυν |lead σφέας ἰθὺ τῶν χωρέων τῶν |refuse, re-  
|nounce, declare  
τῇν |their συμμαχήν, ἵνα καὶ τούτους |antagonize to war  
εἰ γὰρ μὴ |willingly γε |(mp) get under; πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς  
|play a character  
Πέρσας, ἀλλ' |unwilling |antagonize to war ,μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο  
|go back ἐς τὴν |their καὶ |do, try, attack ἦν δὴ  
βουλευομένοισι δοκέη.

## 4.121

Ταῦτα οἱ Σκύθαι βουλευσάμενοι |take a stand against· ἡρείου  
στρατιήν, |running ἀποστείλαντες τῶν ἱππέων τοὺς  
|ahead  
ἀρίστους. τὰς δὲ |wagon ἐν τῇσι σφι διαιτᾶτο τὰ τέκνα  
καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες πάσας καὶ τὰ |cattle, flocks, ἵντα, πλὴν ὅσα  
|herds  
σφι ἐς |food ἱκανὰ ἦν τοσαῦτα |leave (food, person)· ἄλλα  
ἅμα τῇσι |wagon |send, send ahead· γειλάμενοι αἰεὶ τὸ πρὸς  
|north, ἐλαύνειν.  
|north  
|wind

the Budinoi added to them, and they also were to retire before the Persians one day's march in front of them, going on out of their way and doing that which had been planned. First they were to move on straight for the countries which had refused to give their alliance, in order that they might involve these also in the war, and though these had not voluntarily undertaken the war with the Persians, they were to involve them in it nevertheless against their will; and after that they were to return to their own land and attack the enemy, if it should seem good to them in council so to do.

**4.121**

Having formed this plan the Scythians went to meet the army of Dareios, sending off the best of their horsemen before them as scouts; but all the waggons in which their children and their women lived they sent on, and with them all their cattle (leaving only so much as was sufficient to supply them with food), and charged them that they should proceed continually towards the North Wind. These, I say, were being carried on before:

*vocabulary*

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**ἄτε** as if; since

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**διεξέρχομαι** go through

**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic

**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here

**ἐπιφαίνω** display ~photon

**ἰθύω** (ι) charge at, head for ~justice

**λεαίνω** to smooth, polish

**ξύλινος** wooden

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πρόδρομος** running ahead

**προέχω** be ahead, jut forward; mid: have before one

**σίνομαι** (ι) rob, damage

**στίβος** trail

**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy

**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue

**ὑφαίνω** weave

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

**χέρσος** (f) dry land

## 4.122

Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ προεκομίζετο. τῶν δὲ Σκυθέων οἱ πρόδρομοι ὥς εἶρον τοὺς Πέρσας ὅσον τε τριῶν ἡμερέων ὁδὸν ἀπέχοντας ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἰστρον, οὗτοι μὲν τούτους εὐρόντες, ἡμέρης ὁδῷ προέχοντες, ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο τὰ ἐκ τῆς γῆς φύμενα λεαίνοντες, οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ὥς εἶδον ἐπιφανείσαν τῶν Σκυθέων τὴν ἵππον, ἐπήισαν κατὰ στίβον αἰεὶ ὑπαγόντων· καὶ ἔπειτα πρὸς γὰρ τὴν μίαν τῶν μοιρέων ἴθυσαν οἱ Πέρσαι ἐδίωκον πρὸς ἧν τε καὶ ἰθὺ Τανάιδος. διαβάντων δὲ τούτων τὸν Τάναιν ποταμὸν οἱ Πέρσαι ἐπιδιαβάντες ἐδίωκον, ἐς ὃ τῶν Σαυροματέων τὴν χώραν διεξελθόντες ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὴν τῶν Βουδίνων.

## 4.123

Ὅσον μὲν δὴ χρόνον οἱ Πέρσαι ἦσαν διὰ τῆς Σκυθικῆς καὶ τῆς Σαυρομάτιδος χώρας, οἱ δὲ εἶχον οὐδὲν σίνεσθαι ἅτε τῆς χώρας εὐούσης χέρσου· ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐς τὴν τῶν Βουδίνων χώραν ἐσέβαλλον, ἐνθαῦτα δὴ ἐντυχόντες τῷ ξυλίνῳ



4.122

Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ προεκομίζετο. τῶν δὲ Σκυθέων οἱ

|running ahead ὥς εὗρον τοὺς Πέρσας ὅσον τε τριῶν ἡμερέων

ὁδὸν |ward off, drive off, refrain, Ἵστρου, οὗτοι μὲν τούτους  
|be at some distance

εὐρόντες, ἡμέρης ὁδῶ |be ahead, have|encamp or take up τὰ  
|before |station

ἐκ τῆς γῆς |produce, |smooth , οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ὥς εἶδον  
|beget;  
|clasp

|display τῶν Σκυθέων τὴν ἵππον, ἐπήισαν κατὰ

|trail αἰεὶ ὑπαγόντων· καὶ ἔπειτα πρὸς γὰρ τὴν μίαν

τῶν μοιρέων |charge at, head|for ... ἐδίωκον πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ

ἰθὺ Τανάιδος. |pass over, cross τούτων τὸν Τάναιν ποταμὸν

οἱ Πέρσαι ἐπιδιαβάντες ἐδίωκον, ἐς ὃ τῶν Σαυροματέων

τὴν χώραν |go through ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὴν τῶν Βουδίνων.

4.123

Ὅσον μὲν δὴ χρόνον οἱ Πέρσαι ἦσαν διὰ τῆς Σκυθικῆς καὶ

τῆς Σαυρομάτιδος χώρας, οἱ δὲ εἶχον οὐδὲν |rob, dam-|as if; since  
|age

τῆς χώρας ἐούσης |dry land ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐς τὴν τῶν Βουδίνων

χώραν ἐσέβαλλον, |there, here ἡ ἐντυχόντες τῷ |wooden

**4.122**

But when the scouts who went in front of the Scythians discovered the Persians distant about three days' march from Ister, then the Scythians having discovered them continued to pitch their camp one day's march in front, destroying utterly that which grew from the ground: and when the Persians saw that the horsemen of the Scythians had made their appearance, they came after them following in their track, while the Scythians continually moved on. After this, since they had directed their march towards the first of the divisions, the Persians continued to pursue towards the East and the river Tanaïs; and when the Scythians crossed over the river Tanaïs, the Persians crossed over after them and continued still to pursue, until they had passed quite through the land of the Sauromatai and had come to that of the Budinoi.

**4.123**

Now so long as the Persians were passing through Scythia and the land of the Sauromatai, they had nothing to destroy, seeing that the land was bare, but when they invaded the land of the Budinoi, then they fell in with the wooden wall, which had

*vocabulary*

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**ἀφανίζω** do away with, make off with; (pass) disappear

**διεξέρχομαι** go through

**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
~hippodrome

**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate

**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over

**ἐμπύμπρημι** burn up ~pyre

**ἐμπρήθω** burn up

**ἐξήκοντα** sixty

**ἐρείπιον** ruin, wreckage

**ἐρείπιος** wrecked, ruined

**ἐρήμιος** empty

**ἐρημόω** raze, bereave; desert, isolate

**εύς** good, brave, noble

**ἰδρύω** establish

**κατύπερθε** above, from above

**κενόω** make empty

**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic

**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

**ὄαρ** wife

**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus

**ὄον** οὐ type of fruit

**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone

**περιέρχομαι** go around; come next to

**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far

**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat

**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters

**στίβος** trail

**στρατιά** army ~strategy

**σῶς** safe, alive

**τειχέω** build

**ὑποστρέφω** turn around, go back  
~atrophy

τείχεϊ, ἐκλελοιπότην τῶν Βουδίνων καὶ κεκενωμένου τοῦ  
 τείχεος πάντων, ἐνέπρησαν αὐτό. τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσαντες  
 εἶποντο αἰεὶ τὸ πρόσω κατὰ στίβον, ἐς ὃ διεξελθόντες  
 ταύτην ἐς τὴν ἔρημον ἀπίκοντο. ἡ δὲ ἔρημος αὕτη ὑπὸ  
 οὐδαμῶν νέμεται ἀνδρῶν, κέεται δὲ ὑπὲρ τῆς Βουδίνων  
 χώρας ἐοῦσα πλῆθος ἑπτὰ ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ. ὑπὲρ δὲ  
 τῆς ἐρήμου Θυσσαγέται οἰκέουσι, ποταμοὶ δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν  
 τέσσερες μεγάλοι ῥέοντες διὰ Μαιητέων ἐκδιδοῦσι ἐς τὴν  
 λίμνην τὴν καλεομένην Μαιήτιν, τοῖσι οὐνόματα κέεται  
 τάδε, Λύκος Ὅαρος Τάναις Σύργις.

## 4.124

Ἐπεὶ ὦν ὁ Δαρεῖος ἦλθε ἐς τὴν ἔρημον, πανσάμενος  
 τοῦ δρόμου ἴδρυσε τὴν στρατιὴν ἐπὶ ποταμῷ Ὅάρῳ.  
 τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσας ὁκτὼ τείχεα ἐτείχεε μεγάλα, ἴσον ἀπ’  
 ἀλλήλων ἀπέχοντα, σταδίους ὡς ἐξήκοντα μάλιστα κη’  
 τῶν ἔτι ἐς ἐμὲ τὰ ἐρείπια σόα ἦν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ οὗτος πρὸς  
 ταῦτα ἐτράπετο, οἱ διωκόμενοι Σκύθαι περιελθόντες τὰ  
 κατύπερθε ὑπέστρεφον ἐς τὴν Σκυθικὴν. ἀφανισθέντων

τείχει, |leave out, pass over ἢ Βουδίνων καὶ |make empty τοῦ  
 τείχεος πάντων, ἐνέπρησαν αὐτό. τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσαντες  
 εἶποντο αἰεὶ τὸ |forward, in the|trail , ἐς ὃ |go through  
 |future; far  
 ταύτην ἐς τὴν ἔρημον ἀπίκοντο. ἡ δὲ ἔρημος αὕτη ὑπὸ  
 |not anyone |distribute ἰνδρῶν, κέεται δὲ ὑπὲρ τῆς Βουδίνων  
 χώρας ἐοῦσα πλήθος ἑπτὰ ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ. ὑπὲρ δὲ  
 τῆς ἐρήμου Θυσσαγέται οἰκέουσι, ποταμοὶ δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν  
 τέσσερες μεγάλοι |flow διὰ Μαιητέων |hand over ἐς τὴν  
 |lake, marsh, |basin, sea καλεομένην Μαιῆτιν, τοῖσι οὐνόματα κέεται  
 τάδε, Λύκος Ὅαρος Τάναις Σύργις.

## 4.124

Ἐπεὶ ὦν ὁ Δαρεῖος ἦλθε ἐς τὴν ἔρημον, παυσάμενος  
 τοῦ |running |establish τὴν στρατιὴν ἐπὶ ποταμῷ Ὅάρῳ.  
 τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσας |eight τείχεα |build μεγάλα, ἴσον ἀπ’  
 ἀλλήλων |ward off, drive off, |refrain, be|sixty μάλιστα κη’  
 |at some distance  
 τῶν ἔτι ἐς ἐμὲ τὰ ἐρείπια |safe ἦν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ οὗτος πρὸς  
 ταῦτα ἐτράπετο, οἱ διωκόμενοι Σκύθαι |go around; τὰ  
 |come next to  
 |above, from|go back ἐς τὴν Σκυθικὴν. |do away with, make off with;  
 |above (pass) disappear

been deserted by the Budinoi and left wholly unoccupied, and this they destroyed by fire. Having done so they continued to follow on further in the tracks of the enemy, until they had passed through the whole of this land and had arrived at the desert. This desert region is occupied by no men, and it lies above the land of the Budinoi, extending for a seven days' journey; and above this desert dwell the Thyssagetai, and four large rivers flow from them through the land of the Maiotians and run into that which is called the Maiotian lake, their names being as follows,— Lycos, Oaros, Tanaïs, Syrgis.

#### 4.124

When therefore Dareios came to the desert region, he ceased from his course and halted his army upon the river Oaros. Having so done he began to build eight large fortifications at equal distances from one another, that is to say about sixty furlongs, of which the ruins still existed down to my time; and while he was occupied in this, the Scythians whom he was pursuing came round by the upper parts and returned back to Scythia. Accordingly, since

*vocabulary*

**άνδροφάγος** man-eating  
**άνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet  
**ἀπείπον** refuse, renounce, declare  
**ἐγχύρω** (ῥ) encounter  
**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**καθηγέομαι** lead  
**μεθίημι** let go, cease; (mid) speed off  
 ~jet  
**ὄμιυρος** bordering  
**παράπαν** completely  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

**συμμαχία** alliance  
**σφέτερος** their  
**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea  
**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
 from ~demagogue  
**ὑπεκφέρω** move out, outward, onward  
 ~bear  
**ὑποστρέφω** turn around, go back  
 ~atrophy  
**ὑποφεύγω** flee before ~fugitive  
**φαντάζω** make visible; imagine  
**χῶρος** place ~heir

δὲ τούτων τὸ παράπαν, ὥς οὐκέτι ἐφαντάζοντό σφι, οὕτω δὴ ὁ Δαρεῖος τείχεα μὲν ἐκεῖνα ἡμίεργα μετῆκε, αὐτὸς δὲ ὑποστρέψας ἦγε πρὸς ἐσπέρην, δοκέων τούτους τε πάντας τοὺς Σκύθας εἶναι καὶ πρὸς ἐσπέρην σφέας φεύγειν.

## 4.125

Ἐλαύνων δὲ τὴν ταχίστην τὸν στρατὸν ὥς ἐς τὴν Σκυθικὴν ἀπίκητο, ἐνέκυρσε ἀμφοτέρησι τῇσι μοίρησι τῶν Σκυθέων, ἐντυχὼν δὲ ἐδίωκε ὑπεκφέροντας ἡμέρης ὁδῶ. καὶ οὐ γὰρ ἀνίει ἐπιῶν ὁ Δαρεῖος, οἱ Σκύθαι κατὰ τὰ βεβουλευμένα ὑπέφευγον ἐς τῶν ἀπειπαμένων τὴν σφετέρην συμμαχίην, πρώτην δὲ ἐς τῶν Μελαγχλαίνων τὴν γῆν. ὥς δὲ ἐσβαλόντες τούτους ἐτάραξαν οἱ τε Σκύθαι καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι, κατηγέοντο οἱ Σκύθαι ἐς τῶν Ἀνδροφάγων τοὺς χώρους· παραχθέντων δὲ καὶ τούτων ὑπῆγον ἐπὶ τὴν Νευρίδα· ταρασσομένων δὲ καὶ τούτων ἦισαν ὑποφεύγοντες οἱ Σκύθαι ἐς τοὺς Ἀγαθύρσους. Ἀγαθύρσοι δὲ ὀρέοντες καὶ τοὺς ὁμούρους φεύγοντας ὑπὸ Σκυθέων καὶ τεταραγμένους, πρὶν ἢ σφι ἐμβαλεῖν τοὺς Σκύθας



δὲ τούτων τὸ |completely, ὥς οὐκέτι |make visible; σφι, οὕτω  
 |imagine  
 δὴ ὁ Δαρεῖος τείχεα μὲν ἐκεῖνα ἡμίεργα |let go, , cease; δὲ  
 |(mid) speed off  
 |go back ἤιε πρὸς ἐσπέρην, δοκέων τούτους τε πάντας  
 τοὺς Σκύθας εἶναι καὶ πρὸς ἐσπέρην σφέας φεύγειν.

## 4.125

Ἐλαύνων δὲ τὴν ταχίστην τὸν |army ὥς ἐς τὴν  
 Σκυθικὴν ἀπύκετο, |encounter ἀμφοτέρησι τῇσι μοίρησι  
 τῶν Σκυθέων, ἐντυχὼν δὲ ἐδίωκε |move out ἡμέρης  
 ὁδῶ. καὶ οὐ γὰρ |urge, ἐπιὼν ὁ Δαρεῖος, οἱ Σκύθαι κατὰ  
 |impel;  
 τὰ βεβουλευμένα |release |flee before ἐς τῶν |refuse, re- τὴν  
 |nounce, declare  
 |their συμμαχίην, πρώτην δὲ ἐς τῶν Μελαγχλαίνων  
 τὴν γῆν. ὥς δὲ |throw into τούτους |mess things up τε  
 Σκύθαι καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι, κατηγέοντο οἱ Σκύθαι ἐς τῶν  
 |man-eating τοὺς |place |mess things up δὲ καὶ τούτων  
 |lead ἐπὶ τὴν Νευρίδα· |mess things up δὲ καὶ τούτων  
 ἦσαν |flee before οἱ Σκύθαι ἐς τοὺς Ἀγαθύρους.  
 Ἀγαθύροι δὲ ὀρέοντες καὶ τοὺς |bordering φεύγοντας ὑπὸ  
 Σκυθέων καὶ |mess things up , πρὶν ἢ σφι ἐμβαλεῖν τοὺς  
 Σκύθας

these had altogether disappeared and were no longer seen by the Persians at all, Dareios left those fortifications half finished, and turning back himself began to go towards the West, supposing that these were the whole body of the Scythians and that they were flying towards the West.

#### 4.125

And marching his army as quickly as possible, when he came to Scythia he met with the two divisions of the Scythians together, and having fallen in with these he continued to pursue them, while they retired out of his way one day's journey in advance: and as Dareios did not cease to come after them, the Scythians according to the plan which they had made continued to retire before him towards the land of those who had refused to give their alliance, and first towards that of the Melanchlainoi; and when Scythians and Persians both together had invaded and disturbed these, the Scythians led the way to the country of the Androphagoi; and when these had also been disturbed, they proceeded to the land of the Neuroi; and while these too were being disturbed, the Scythians went on retiring before the enemy to the Agathyrsians. The Agathyrsians however, seeing that their next neighbours also were flying from the Scythians and had been disturbed,

*vocabulary***ἀλκή** prowess, defense, victory

~Alexander

**άνδροφάγος** man-eating**άντιόω** meet, fight, join**άπαγορεύω** forbid; fail, be worn out**άπειλή** boast, threat**άπεῖπον** refuse, renounce, declare**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**δαιμόνιος** voc: you crazy guy**διαμάχομαι** fight hard, contend**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐπιλανθάνω** mp: forget ~Lethe**ἐρῆμος** empty**ἐρύκω** (ῑ) hold back ~serve**καθηγέομαι** lead**ὄρεῦς** -ος (m) mule ~hormone**ὄρος** boundary marker ~horizon**οὔρον** boundary stone; unit of distance; limit**οὔρος** fair wind; guardian; hill**Πέρσης** Persian**πλάνη** wandering**πλάνης** -τος (m, 3) wanderer**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order before**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect ~legion**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon**σφέτερος** their**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea

πέμψαντες κήρυκα ἀπηγόρευον Σκύθησι μὴ ἐπιβαίνειν τῶν σφετέρων οὖρων, προλέγοντες ὥς εἰ πειρήσονται ἐσβαλόντες, σφίσι πρῶτα διαμαχήσονται. Ἀγαθύρσοι μὲν προείπαντες ταῦτα ἐβόηθον ἐπὶ τοὺς οὖρους, ἐρύκειν ἐν νόῳ ἔχοντες τοὺς ἐπιόντας· Μελάγχλαινοι δὲ καὶ Ἀνδροφάγοι καὶ Νευροὶ ἐσβαλόντων τῶν Περσέων ἅμα Σκύθησι οὔτε πρὸς ἀλκὴν ἐτράποντο ἐπιλαθόμενοί τε τῆς ἀπειλῆς ἔφευγον αἰεὶ τὸ πρὸς βορέῳ ἐς τὴν ἔρημον τεταραγμένοι. οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι ἐς μὲν τοὺς Ἀγαθύρσους οὐκέτι ἀπείπαντας ἀπικνέοντο, οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῆς Νευρίδος χώρας ἐς τὴν σφετέρην κατηγέοντο τοῖσι Πέρσησι.

## 4.126

Ὡς δὲ πολλὸν τοῦτο ἐγίνετο καὶ οὐκ ἐπαύετο, πέμψας Δαρεῖος ἱππέα παρὰ τὸν Σκυθέων βασιλέα Ἰδάνθυρσον ἔλεγε τάδε. «δαιμόνιε ἀνδρῶν, τί φεύγεις αἰεὶ, ἐξεόν τοι τῶνδε τὰ ἕτερα ποιεῖν; εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἀξιοχρεὸς δοκέεις εἶναι σεωντῷ τοῖσι ἐμοῖσι πρήγμασι ἀντιωθῆναι, σὺ δὲ τὰς τε καὶ παυσάμενος πλάνης μάχεσθαι· εἰ δὲ συγγινώσκειαι

πέμψαντες κήρυκα |forbid; fail, be |Σκύθησι μὴ ἐπιβαίνειν  
 |worn out  
 τῶν |their οὔρων, |prophecy, pro- ὥς εἰ πειρήσονται  
 |claim; preselect  
 |throw into , σφίσι πρῶτα |fight hard, contend Ἀγάθουρσοι  
 μὲν |foretell, proclaim, ἵτα ἐβοήθειον ἐπὶ τοὺς οὔρους, |hold back  
 |order before  
 ἐν νόῳ ἔχοντες τοὺς ἐπιόντας· Μελάγχλαινοι δὲ καὶ  
 |man-eating καὶ Νευροὶ |throw into τῶν Περσέων ἅμα  
 Σκύθησι οὔτε πρὸς |strength ἐτράποντο ἐπιλαθόμενοι τε  
 τῆς |boast, ἔφευγον αἰεὶ τὸ πρὸς |north, ἐς τὴν ἔρημον  
 |threat |north  
 |mess things up οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι ἐς μὲν τοὺς Ἀγαθούρους  
 οὐκέτι |refuse, re- πικνέοντο, οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῆς Νευρίδος  
 |nounce, declare  
 χώρας ἐς τὴν |their κατηγέοντο τοῖσι Πέρσησι.

4.126

Ὡς δὲ πολλὸν τοῦτο ἐγίνετο καὶ οὐκ ἐπαύετο, πέμψας  
 Δαρείος ἱππέα παρὰ τὸν Σκυθέων βασιλέα Ἰδάνθουρσον  
 ἔλεγε τάδε. «|voc: you crazy guy , τί φεύγεις αἰεὶ, |go forth;  
 |is possible  
 τῶνδε τὰ ἕτερα ποιεῖν; εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἀξιόχρεος δοκέεις εἶναι  
 σεωυτῷ τοῖσι ἐμοῖσι πρήγμασι |meet, fight, , σὺ δὲ τάς τε  
 |join  
 καὶ παυσάμενος πλάνης μάχεσθαι· εἰ δὲ συγγινώσκειαι

sent a herald before the Scythians invaded their land and proclaimed to the Scythians not to set foot upon their confines, warning them that if they should attempt to invade the country, they would first have to fight with them. The Agathyrans then having given this warning came out in arms to their borders, meaning to drive off those who were coming upon them; but the Melanchlainoi and Androphagoi and Neuroi, when the Persians and Scythians together invaded them, did not betake themselves to brave defence but forgot their former threat and fled in confusion ever further towards the North to the desert region. The Scythians however, when the Agathyrans had warned them off, did not attempt any more to come to these, but led the Persians from the country of the Neuroi back to their own land.

#### 4.126

Now as this went on for a long time and did not cease, Dareios sent a horseman to Idanthysos king of the Scythians and said as follows: “Thou most wondrous man, why dost thou fly for ever, when thou mightest do of these two things one?—if thou thinkest thyself able to make opposition to my power, stand thou still and cease from wandering abroad, and fight; but if thou dost acknowledge thyself too

*vocabulary***ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀνευρίσκω** discover**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**δρόμος** running, racing ground

~hippodrome

**ἔωθα** be accustomed, in the habit**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**χείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use up**πάντως** by all means**πατρώιος** of the father(s), ancestral  
~paternal**Πέρσης** Persian**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore**συγχέω** entangle, destroy, confound**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix**τάφος** (m) funeral, grave; (n)  
astonishment**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer**τέθηπα** be confused**φυτεύω** plant, grow, cause, prepare  
~physics

εἶναι ἥσσαν, σὺ δὲ καὶ οὕτω πανσάμενος τοῦ δρόμου  
 δεσπότη τῷ σῷ δῶρα φέρων γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ ἐλθὲ ἐς  
 λόγους.»

## 4.127

Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Σκυθέων βασιλεὺς Ἰδάνθυνρος λέγει τάδε.  
 «οὕτω τὸ ἐμὸν ἔχει, ὦ Πέρσα. ἐγὼ οὐδένα κω ἀνθρώπων  
 δείσας ἔφυγον οὔτε πρότερον οὔτε νῦν σὲ φεύγω, οὐδέ  
 τι νεώτερον εἰμὶ ποιήσας νῦν ἢ καὶ ἐν εἰρήνῃ ἐώθεα  
 ποιέειν. ὅ τι δὲ οὐκ αὐτίκα μάχομαι τοι, ἐγὼ καὶ τοῦτο  
 σημανέω. ἡμῖν οὔτε ἄστυα οὔτε γῆ πεφυτευμένη ἐστί,  
 τῶν πέρι δείσαντες μὴ ἀλῶ, ἢ καρῇ ταχύτερον ἂν ὑμῖν  
 συμμίσγοιμεν ἐς μάχην. εἰ δὲ δέοι πάντως ἐς τοῦτο  
 κατὰ τάχος ἀπικνέεσθαι, τυγχάνουσι ἡμῖν ἐόντες τάφοι  
 πατρῴοι· φέρετε, τούτους ἀνευρόντες συγχέειν πειρᾶσθε  
 αὐτούς, καὶ γνώσεσθε τότε εἴτε ὑμῖν μαχησόμεθα περὶ τῶν  
 τάφων εἴτε καὶ οὐ μαχησόμεθα. πρότερον δέ, ἢν μὴ ἡμέας  
 λόγος αἰρέῃ, οὐ συμμίσχομεν τοι. ἀμφὶ μὲν μάχῃ τοσαῦτα  
 εἰρήσθω, δεσπότης δὲ ἐμοὺς ἐγὼ Δία τε νομίζω



εἶναι ἥσσω, σὺ δὲ καὶ οὕτω πανσάμενος τοῦ |running

|master, τῷ σῷ δῶρα φέρων γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ ἐλθὲ ἐς  
|despot  
λόγους.»

4.127

Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Σκυθέων βασιλεὺς Ἰδάνθυσος λέγει τάδε.

«οὕτω τὸ ἐμὸν ἔχει, ὦ Πέρσα. ἐγὼ οὐδένα κω ἀνθρώπων

δείσας ἔφυγον οὔτε πρότερον οὔτε νῦν σὲ φεύγω, οὐδέ

τι νεώτερον εἰμὶ ποιήσας νῦν ἢ καὶ ἐν εἰρήνῃ |be accustomed, in  
|the habit

ποιεῖν. ὅ τι δὲ οὐκ αὐτίκα μάχομαι τοι, ἐγὼ καὶ τοῦτο

|give orders to; ἡμῖν οὔτε ἄστεα οὔτε γῇ |plant, grow, ἐστί,  
|show; mark |cause, prepare

τῶν πέρι δείσαντες μὴ |be captured ,ῇ ταχύτερον ἂν ὑμῖν

συμμίσοιμεν ἐς μάχην. εἰ δὲ δέοι |by all means τοῦτο

κατὰ |speed ἀπικνέεσθαι, τυγχάνουσι ἡμῖν ἐόντες τάφοι

|of the father(s), ἔτε, τούτους |discover |entangle, de-σθε  
|ancestral |stroy, confound

αὐτούς, καὶ γνώσεσθε τότε εἴτε ὑμῖν μαχησόμεθα περὶ τῶν

| (m) funeral, grave; ὃ μαχησόμεθα. πρότερον δέ, ἢν μὴ ἡμέας  
| (n) astonishment

λόγος αἰρέῃ, οὐ |mix with τοι. ἀμφὶ μὲν μάχῃ τοσαῦτα

εἰρήσθω, |master, δὲ ἐμοὺς ἐγὼ Δία τε νομίζω  
|despot

weak, cease then in that case also from thy course, and come to speech with thy master, bringing to him gifts of earth and water.”

**4.127**

To this the king of the Scythians Idanthysos made answer thus: “My case, O Persian, stands thus:— Never yet did I fly because I was afraid, either before this time from any other man, or now from thee; nor have I done anything different now from that which I was wont to do also in time of peace: and as to the cause why I do not fight with thee at once, this also I will declare to thee. We have neither cities nor land sown with crops, about which we should fear lest they should be captured or laid waste, and so join battle more speedily with you; but if it be necessary by all means to come to this speedily, know that we have sepulchres in which our fathers are buried; therefore come now, find out these and attempt to destroy them, and ye shall know then whether we shall fight with you for the sepulchres or whether we shall not fight. Before that however, unless the motion comes upon us, we shall not join battle with thee. About fighting let so much as has been said suffice; but as to masters,

*vocabulary*

**βασίλεια** noblewoman

**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot

**δουλοσύνη** slavery

**εἰσπίπτω** fall into, rush in

**ἐκάστοτε** each time

**ἐπικουρέω** fight in another's cause

~cereal

**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote

**ἵππότης** -ου (m, 1) horseman ~hippo

**μηκέτι** no more

**νωμάω** give out; wield

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πῖμπλημι** fill (+gen.) ~plenum

**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander

~plankton

**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent

~refurbish

**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus

**ῥῆσις** -ος (f) conversation, talk

~rhetoric

**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse

**φρουρέω** keep watch

τὸν ἐμὸν πρόγονον καὶ Ἰστίην τὴν Σκυθέων βασίλειαν  
 μούνους εἶναι. σοὶ δὲ ἀντὶ μὲν δώρων γῆς τε καὶ ὕδατος  
 δῶρα πέμψω τοιαῦτα οἷα σοὶ πρέπει ἔλθειν, ἀντὶ δὲ τοῦ  
 ὅτι δεσπότης ἔφησας εἶναι ἐμός, κλαίειν λέγω.» τοῦτο  
 ἐστὶ ἢ ἀπὸ Σκυθέων ῥήσις.

## 4.128

Ὁ μὲν δὴ κῆρυξ οἰχώκεε ἀγγελέων ταῦτα Δαρείῳ,  
 οἱ δὲ Σκυθέων βασιλεῖς ἀκούσαντες τῆς δουλοσύνης  
 τὸ οὖνομα ὀργῆς ἐπλήσθησαν. τὴν μὲν δὴ μετὰ  
 Σαυροματέων μοῖραν ταχθεῖσαν, τῆς ἡρχε Σκώπασις,  
 πέμπουσι Ἰωσι κελεύοντες ἐς λόγους ἀπικέσθαι, τούτοις  
 οἱ τὸν Ἰστρον ἐξευγμένον ἐφρούρεον· αὐτῶν δὲ τοῖσι  
 ὑπολειπομένοις ἔδοξε πλανᾶν μὲν μηκέτι Πέρσας, σίτα δὲ  
 ἐκάστοτε ἀναιρεομένοις ἐπιτίθεσθαι. νωμῶντες ὦν σίτα  
 ἀναιρεομένους τοὺς Δαρείου ἐποίεον τὰ βεβουλευμένα. ἡ  
 μὲν δὴ ἵππος τὴν ἵππον αἰεὶ τράπεσκε ἡ τῶν Σκυθέων,  
 οἱ δὲ τῶν Περσέων ἱππόται φεύγοντες ἐσέπιπτον ἐς τὸν  
 πεζόν, ὁ δὲ πεζὸς ἂν ἐπεκούρεε· οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι ἐσαράξαντες

τὸν ἐμὸν |elder, |ancestor καὶ Ἰστίην τὴν Σκυθέων |noblewoman  
 μούνους εἶναι. σοὶ δὲ ἀντὶ μὲν δώρων γῆς τε καὶ ὕδατος  
 δῶρα πέμψω τοιαῦτα οἶα σοὶ |be conspicuōus, |preeminent ἀντὶ δὲ τοῦ  
 ὅτι |master, |despot ἔφησας εἶναι ἐμός, κλαίειν λέγω.» τοῦτο  
 ἐστὶ ἢ ἀπὸ Σκυθέων |conversation, talk

4.128

Ὁ μὲν δὴ κῆρυξ οἰχώκεε ἀγγελέων ταῦτα Δαρείῳ,  
 οἱ δὲ Σκυθέων βασιλέες ἀκούσαντες τῆς |slavery  
 τὸ οὔνομα ὀργῆς |fill (+gen.) . τὴν μὲν δὴ μετὰ  
 Σαυροματέων μοῖραν ταχθεῖσαν, τῆς ἡρχε Σκώπασις,  
 πέμπουσι Ἰωσι κελεύοντες ἐς λόγους ἀπικέσθαι, τούτοις  
 οἱ τὸν Ἰστρον |yoke, join |keep watch αὐτῶν δὲ τοῖσι  
 |leave (food, person) ὥστε |lead astray; |no more |Πέρσας, σίτα δὲ  
 |each time |wander  
 ἀναιρεομένοις ἐπιτίθεσθαι. |give out; wield σίτα  
 ἀναιρεομένους τοὺς Δαρείου ἐποίουν τὰ βεβουλευμένα. ἢ  
 μὲν δὴ ἵππος τὴν ἵππον αἰεὶ τράπεσκε ἢ τῶν Σκυθέων,  
 οἱ δὲ τῶν Περσέων |horseman βεύγοντες |fall into, rush in ὃν  
 πεζόν, ὁ δὲ πεζὸς ἂν ἐπεκούρεε· οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι ἐσάράξαντες

I acknowledge none over me but Zeus my ancestor and Hestia the queen of the Scythians. To thee then in place of gifts of earth and water I shall send such things as it is fitting that thou shouldest receive; and in return for thy saying that thou art my master, for that I say, woe betide thee.” This is the proverbial “saying of the Scythians.”

#### 4.128

The herald then had departed to report this to Dareios; and the kings of the Scythians, having heard mention of subjection to a master, were filled with wrath. They sent accordingly the division which was appointed to be joined with the Sauromatai, that division of which Scopasis was in command, bidding them come to speech with the Ionians, namely those who were guarding the bridge of the Ister, and meanwhile they who were left behind resolved not to lead the Persians wandering about any more, but to attack them constantly as they were getting provisions. Therefore they observed the soldiers of Dareios as they got provisions, and did that which they had determined: and the cavalry of the Scythians always routed that of the enemy, but the Persian horsemen as they fled fell back upon the men on foot, and these would come up to their assistance; and meanwhile the Scythians when they had

*vocabulary***ἀντίξοος** opposed to**ἅτε** as if; since**εἶδος** -ους (n, 3) appearance, form  
~oid**ἐπελαύνω** beat out ~elastic**ἡμίονος** (f) mule ~hemisphere**θῶμα** a wonder, feeling of surprise  
~theater**μεταξύ** between**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available**ὄνομαι** blame ~name**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager**οὔς** οὔατος (n) ear**παράπαν** completely**παραπλήσιος** similar to**Πέρσης** Persian**προσβολή** application, attack**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously**ὑποστρέφω** turn around, go back

~atrophy

**ψυχος** -εος (n, 3) coolness

~psychology

τὴν ἵππον ὑπέστρεφον τὸν πεζὸν φοβεόμενοι. ἐποιέοντο δὲ καὶ τὰς νύκτας παραπλησίας προσβολὰς οἱ Σκύθαι.

## 4.129

Τὸ δὲ τοῖσι Πέρσησι τε ἦν σύμμαχον καὶ τοῖσι Σκύθησι ἀντίξοον ἐπιτιθεμένοισι τῷ Δαρείου στρατοπέδῳ, θῶμα μέγιστον ἐρέω, τῶν τε ὄνων ἢ φωνὴ καὶ τῶν ἡμίονων τὸ εἶδος. οὔτε γὰρ ὄνον οὔτε ἡμίονον γῇ ἢ Σκυθικῇ φέρει, ὥς καὶ πρότερόν μοι δεδήλωται, οὐδὲ ἔστι ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ πάσῃ χώρῃ τὸ παράπαν οὔτε ὄνος οὔτε ἡμίονος διὰ τὰ ψύχρα. ὑβρίζοντες ὦν οἱ ὄνοι ἐτάρασσον τὴν ἵππον τῶν Σκυθέων. πολλάκις δὲ ἐπελαυνόντων ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας μεταξὺ ὅκως ἀκούσειαν οἱ ἵπποι τῶν ὄνων τῆς φωνῆς, ἐταράσσοντο τε ὑποστρεφόμενοι καὶ ἐν θώματι ἔσκον, ὀρθὰ ἰστάντες τὰ ὦτα, ἅτε οὔτε ἀκούσαντες πρότερον φωνῆς τοιαύτης οὔτε ἰδόντες τὸ εἶδος.

## 4.130

Ταῦτα μὲν νυν ἐπὶ σμικρόν τι ἐφέροντο τοῦ πολέμου.



τὴν ἵππον |go back τὸν πεζὸν φοβεόμενοι. ἐποιέοντο

δὲ καὶ τὰς νύκτας |similar to |application, οἱ Σκύθαι.  
|attack

4.129

Τὸ δὲ τοῖσι Πέρσησι τε ἦν σύμμαχον καὶ τοῖσι Σκύθησι  
|opposed to ὑπιτιθεμένοισι τῷ Δαρείου στρατοπέδῳ, |wonder,  
|surprise  
μέγιστον ἐρέω, τῶν τε ὄνων ἢ φωνῇ καὶ τῶν |mule τὸ  
|form . οὔτε γὰρ ὄνον οὔτε |mule γῇ ἢ Σκυθικῇ φέρει,  
ὥς καὶ πρότερόν μοι δεδήλωται, οὐδὲ ἔστι ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ  
πάσῃ χώρῃ τὸ |completely οὔτε |donkey ἤτε |mule διὰ τὰ  
|coolness |insult ὧν οἱ |don- |mess things up ἢ ἵππον τῶν  
|key  
Σκυθέων. πολλάκις δὲ |beat out ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας  
|between ὅκως ἀκούσειαν οἱ ἵπποι τῶν ὄνων τῆς φωνῆς,  
|mess things up τε |go back καὶ ἐν |wonder, ἔσκον,  
|surprise  
ὀρθὰ ἰστάντες τὰ |ear , |as if; since ἀκούσαντες πρότερον  
φωνῆς τοιαύτης οὔτε ἰδόντες τὸ |form .

4.130

Ταῦτα μὲν νυν ἐπὶ σμικρόν τι ἐφέροντο τοῦ πολέμου.

driven in the cavalry turned back, fearing the men on foot. Also by night the Scythians used to make similar attacks:

**4.129**

And the thing which, strange to say, most helped the Persians and hindered the Scythians in their attacks upon the camp of Dareios, I will mention, namely the voice of the asses and the appearance of the mules; for Scythia produces neither ass nor mule, as I have declared before, nor is there at all in the Scythian country either ass or mule on account of the cold. The asses accordingly by riotously braying used to throw into confusion the cavalry of the Scythians; and often, as they were in the middle of riding against the Persians, when the horses heard the voice of the asses they turned back in confusion and were possessed with wonder, pricking up their ears, because they had never heard such a voice nor seen the form of the creature before.

**4.130**

So far then the Persians had the advantage for a small part of

*vocabulary***ἀνιάω** (ī) vex**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce**βάτραχος** frog**ἐπαείρω** raise, place on ~aorta**ἐπειρωτέω** consult, ask**ἐπιδευής** needy, lacking (+gen)**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order**θορυβέω** roar, cheer; disturb**μῦς** mouse**οἰστός** arrow**ὄρνις** -θος (ī, f) bird ~ornithology**παραμένω** stay with ~remain**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**σοφός** skilled, clever, wise**σφέτερος** their**τοιόσδε** such**χῶρος** place ~heir

οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι ὅκως τοὺς Πέρσας ἴδοιεν τεθορυβημένους, ἵνα παραμένοιεν τε ἐπὶ πλέω χρόνον ἐν τῇ Σκυθικῇ καὶ παραμένοντες ἀνιώατο τῶν πάντων ἐπιδευέες ἐόντες, ἐποίεον τοιάδε· ὅκως τῶν προβάτων τῶν σφετέρων αὐτῶν καταλίποιεν μετὰ τῶν νομέων, αὐτοὶ ἂν ὑπεξήλαννον ἐς ἄλλον χώρον. οἱ δὲ ἂν Πέρσαι ἐπελθόντες λάβεσκον τὰ πρόβατα καὶ λαβόντες ἐπηείροντο ἂν τῷ πεποιημένῳ.

## 4.131

Πολλάκις δὲ τοιούτου γινομένου, τέλος Δαρεῖος τε ἐν ἀπορίῃσι εἵχετο, καὶ οἱ Σκυθέων βασιλεῖς μαθόντες τοῦτο ἔπεμπον κήρυκα δῶρα Δαρείῳ φέροντα ὄρνιθά τε καὶ μῦν καὶ βάτραχον καὶ ὀιστοὺς πέντε. Πέρσαι δὲ τὸν φέροντα τὰ δῶρα ἐπειρώτεον τὸν νόον τῶν διδομένων. ὁ δὲ οὐδὲν. ἔφη οἱ ἐπεστάλθαι ἄλλο ἢ δόντα τὴν ταχίστην ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι· αὐτοὺς δὲ τοὺς Πέρσας ἐκέλευε, εἰ σοφοὶ εἰσι, γνῶναι τὸ θέλει τὰ δῶρα λέγειν.



the war. But the Scythians, whenever they saw that the Persians were disquieted, then in order that they might remain a longer time in Scythia and in remaining might suffer by being in want of everything, would leave some of their own cattle behind with the herdsmen, while they themselves rode out of the way to another place, and the Persians would come upon the cattle and take them, and having taken them they were elated at what they had done.

**4.131**

As this happened often, at length Dareios began to be in straits; and the kings of the Scythians perceiving this sent a herald bearing as gifts to Dareios a bird and a mouse and a frog and five arrows. The Persians accordingly asked the bearer of the gifts as to the meaning of the gifts which were offered; but he said that nothing more had been commanded to him but to give them and get away as speedily as possible; and he bade the Persians find out for themselves, if they had wisdom, that which the gifts were meant to express.

*vocabulary*

**ἀλκή** prowess, defense, victory  
 ~Alexander  
**ἀναπέτομαι** fly away  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὅ) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀπονοστέω** go home  
**βάτραχος** frog  
**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture  
**εἰσπηδάω** burst in, rush in ~pedal  
**καθαιρέω** take down, close ~heresy

**καταδύω** enter, sink  
**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**μῦς** mouse  
**μύω** close  
**ὀιστός** arrow  
**ὄρνις** -θος (ī, f) bird ~ornithology  
**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**σιτέομαι** (ι) eat ~parasite  
**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow

## 4.132

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ Πέρσαι ἐβουλεύοντο. Δαρείου μέν νυν ἡ γνώμη ἦν Σκύθας ἐωυτῷ διδόναι σφέας τε αὐτοὺς καὶ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ, εἰκάζων τῇδε, ὡς μῦς μὲν ἐν γῇ γίνεται καρπὸν τὸν αὐτὸν ἀνθρώπῳ σιτεόμενος, βάτραχος δὲ ἐν ὕδατι, ὄρνις δὲ μάλιστα ἔοικε ἵππῳ, τοὺς δὲ οἰστοὺς ὡς τὴν ἐωυτῶν ἀλκὴν παραδιδούσι. αὕτη μὲν Δαρείῳ ἀπεδέδεκτο ἡ γνώμη. συνεστήκεε δὲ ταύτῃ τῇ γνώμῃ ἡ Γοβρύεω, τῶν ἀνδρῶν τῶν ἑπτὰ ἐνὸς τῶν τὸν Μάγον κατελόντων, εἰκάζοντος τὰ δῶρα λέγειν «ἦν μὴ ὄρνιθες γενόμενοι ἀναπτῆσθε ἐς τὸν οὐρανόν, ὦ Πέρσαι, ἢ μύες γενόμενοι κατὰ τῆς γῆς καταδύητε, ἢ βάτραχοι γενόμενοι ἐς τὰς λίμνας ἐσπηδήσητε, οὐκ ἀπονοστήσετε ὀπίσω ὑπὸ τῶνδε τῶν τοξευμάτων βαλλόμενοι.»

## 4.133

Πέρσαι μὲν δὴ τὰ δῶρα εἵκαζον. ἡ δὲ Σκυθέων μία μοῖρα ἡ ταχθείσα πρότερον μὲν παρὰ τὴν Μαίητιν



4.132

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ Πέρσαι ἐβουλεύοντο. Δαρείου  
 μέν νυν ἡ γνώμη ἦν Σκύθας ἐωυτῷ διδόναι σφέας τε  
 αὐτοὺς καὶ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ, <sup>|liken;</sup> ἤδε, ὥς <sup>|mouse</sup> ἐν  
 ἐν γῇ γίνεται καρπὸν τὸν αὐτὸν ἀνθρώπῳ σιτεόμενος,  
<sup>|frog</sup> δὲ ἐν ὕδατι, <sup>|bird</sup> δὲ μάλιστα ἔοικε ἵππῳ, τοὺς  
 δὲ <sup>|arrow</sup> ὥς τὴν ἐωυτῶν <sup>|strength</sup> ἀραδιδοῦσι. αὕτη μὲν  
 Δαρεία <sup>|show, point out; ap-</sup> ἴμῃ. <sup>|point; (mid) declare</sup> συνεστήκεε δὲ ταύτῃ τῇ  
 γνώμῃ ἡ Γοβρύεω, τῶν ἀνδρῶν τῶν ἑπτὰ ἐνὸς τῶν τὸν  
 Μάγον <sup>|take down, close</sup> <sup>|liken;</sup> τὰ δῶρα λέγειν «ἦν μὴ  
<sup>|bird</sup> <sup>|conjecture</sup> γενόμενοι ἀναπτῆσθε ἐς τὸν οὐρανόν, ὦ Πέρσαι,  
 ἢ μύες γενόμενοι κατὰ τῆς γῆς <sup>|enter, sink</sup> , ἢ <sup>|frog</sup>  
 γενόμενοι ἐς τὰς <sup>|lake,</sup> <sup>|burst in, rush in</sup> <sup>|go home</sup>  
<sup>|marsh,</sup>  
 ὀπίσω ὑπὸ τῶνδε <sup>|basin,</sup> <sup>|arrow</sup> βαλλόμενοι.»  
<sup>|sea</sup>

4.133

Πέρσαι μὲν δὴ τὰ δῶρα <sup>|liken;</sup> <sup>|conjecture</sup> ἡ δὲ Σκυθέων μία μοῖρα  
 ἡ ταχθεῖσα πρότερον μὲν παρὰ τὴν Μαίητιν

**4.132**

Having heard this the Persians took counsel with one another; and the opinion of Dareios was that the Scythians were giving to him both themselves and also earth and water, making his conjecture by this, namely that a mouse is produced in the earth and feeds on the same produce of the earth as man, and a frog in the water, while a bird has great resemblance to a horse; and moreover that in giving the arrows they were delivering up their own might in battle. This was the opinion expressed by Dareios; but the opinion of Gobryas, one of the seven men who killed the Magian, was at variance with it, for he conjectured that the gifts expressed this: “Unless ye become birds and fly up into the heaven, O Persians, or become mice and sink down under the earth, or become frogs and leap into the lakes, ye shall not return back home, but shall be smitten by these arrows.”

**4.133**

The Persians then, I say, were making conjecture of the gifts: and meanwhile the single division of the Scythians, that which had been appointed at first to keep guard along the

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιτάσσω** set against  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**εἰσακούω** hearken ~acoustic  
**ἐκτός** outside  
**ἐλευθερία** freedom  
**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command  
**ἐξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἐπείγω** weigh upon, drive; (mid) hurry  
**λαγός** hare ~lagomorph  
**λαγών** -όνος (f, 3) flank  
**λαγώς** -ω (m, 2) hare ~lagomorph  
**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend

## ~genus

**παραμένω** stay with ~remain  
**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea  
**ὕποδείκνυμι** (υῶ) show, trace out  
**ὕποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer  
 ~doctrine  
**ὕπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse  
**φρουρέω** keep watch  
**ᾠρος** year

λίμνην φρουρέειν, τότε δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰστρον Ἰωσι ἐς λόγους ἐλθεῖν, ὡς ἀπρίκετο ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν, ἔλεγε τάδε. «ἄνδρες Ἴωνες, ἐλευθερίην ἤκομεν ὑμῖν φέροντες, ἣν πέρ γε ἐθέλητε ἑσακούειν. πυνθανόμεθα γὰρ Δαρεῖον ἐντείλασθαι ὑμῖν ἐξήκοντα ἡμέρας μούνας φρουρήσαντας τὴν γέφυραν, αὐτοῦ μὴ παραγενομένου ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι ἐς τὴν ὑμετέρεην. νῦν ὦν ὑμεῖς τάδε πολεῦντες ἐκτὸς μὲν ἔσεσθε πρὸς ἐκείνου αἰτίας, ἐκτὸς δὲ πρὸς ἡμέων· τὰς προκειμένας ἡμέρας παραμείναντες τὸ ἀπὸ τούτου ἀπαλλάσσεσθε.» οὗτοι μὲν νυν ὑποδεξαμένων Ἰώνων ποιήσιν ταῦτα ὀπίσω τὴν ταχίστην ἐπείγοντο.

## 4.134

Πέρσησι δὲ μετὰ τὰ δῶρα ἐλθόντα Δαρείῳ ἀντετάχθησαν οἱ ὑπολειφθέντες Σκύθαι πεζῶ καὶ ἵπποισι ὡς συμβαλέοντες. τεταγμένοισι δὲ τοῖσι Σκύθησι λαγὸς ἐς τὸ μέσον διήμξε. τῶν δὲ ὡς ἕκαστοι ὥρων τὸν λαγὸν ἐδίωκον. ταραχθέντων δὲ τῶν Σκυθέων καὶ βοῇ

|lake, |keep watch, τότε δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰστρον Ἰωσι ἐς  
|marsh,  
|basin, sea  
λαγούς ἐλθεῖν, ὡς ἀπίκητο ἐπὶ τὴν |dam, dike; b̄ridge γάδε.

«ἄνδρες Ἴωνες, ἐλευθερίην ἤκομεν ὑμῖν φέροντες, ἣν  
πέρ γε ἐθέλητε |hearken πυνθανόμεθα γὰρ Δαρείων

ἐντείλασθαι ὑμῖν |sixty ἡμέρας μούνας |keep watch

τὴν |dam, dike; bridge μὴ παραγενομένου ἐν τούτῳ τῷ

χρόνῳ, |free from, remove; ἐς τὴν ὑμετέρεην. νῦν ὦν  
|be freed, depart

ὑμεῖς τάδε πολεῦντες |outside μὲν ἔσεσθε πρὸς ἐκείνου

αἰτίας, |outside δὲ πρὸς ἡμέων· τὰς |be placed by; ἡμέρας  
|be devoted to

|stay with τὸ ἀπὸ τούτου |free from, remove; οὔτοι  
|be freed, depart

μὲν νυν ὑποδεξαμένων Ἰώνων ποιήσιν ταῦτα ὀπίσω τὴν

ταχίστην |weigh upon, drive;  
|(mid) hurry

4.134

Πέρσησι δὲ μετὰ τὰ δῶρα ἐλθόντα Δαρείῳ |set against

οἱ |leave (food, person) Σκύθαι πεζῶ καὶ ἵπποισι ὡς

|pit against; compare; ταγμένοισι δὲ τοῖσι Σκύθησι |hare  
|mp: meet, fall in with

ἐς τὸ μέσον διήιξε. τῶν δὲ ὡς ἕκαστοι |year τὸν λαγὸν

ἐδίωκον. |mess things up δὲ τῶν Σκυθέων καὶ βοῇ

Maiotian lake and then to go to the Ister and come to speech with the Ionians, when they arrived at the bridge spoke as follows: “Ionians, we have come bringing you freedom, if at least ye are willing to listen to us; for we are informed that Dareios gave you command to guard the bridge for sixty days only, and then, if he had not arrived within that time, to get you away to your own land. Now therefore, if ye do as we say, ye will be without blame from his part and without blame also from ours: stay the appointed days and then after that get you away.” They then, when the Ionians had engaged themselves to do this, hastened back again by the quickest way:

#### 4.134

And meanwhile, after the coming of the gifts to Dareios, the Scythians who were left had arrayed themselves against the Persians with both foot and horse, meaning to engage battle. Now when the Scythians had been placed in battle-array, a hare darted through them into the space between the two armies, and each company of them, as they saw the hare, began to run after it. When the

*vocabulary*

**ἄλλοτε** at another time ~alien  
**ἀντιπολέμιος** warring against  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce  
**ἀσθενής** weak  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**ἐκκαίω** set on fire  
**ἐκμανθάνω** know by heart  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus  
**ἐξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo; destroy someone  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station

**εὖς** good, brave, noble  
**ἐωθα** be accustomed, in the habit  
**θόρυβος** noise, clamor  
**ἰθύω** (ῖ) charge at, head for ~justice  
**καταδέω** tie up; fall short  
**καταφρονέω** scorn; think of  
**κομιδή** care, tending, providing for  
**λαγός** hare ~lagomorph  
**λαγών** -όνος (f, 3) flank  
**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager  
**ὄον** οὔ type of fruit  
**πυρά** pyre ~pyre  
**ταλαιπωρία** hard work, hardship  
**ώθέω** push

χρεωμένων, εἶρετο ὁ Δαρεῖος τῶν ἀντιπολεμίων τὸν θόρυβον· πυθόμενος δὲ σφέας τὸν λαγὸν διώκοντας, εἶπε ἄρα πρὸς τοὺς περ ἐώθεε καὶ τὰ ἄλλα λέγειν «οὔτοι ὦνδρες ἡμέων πολλὸν καταφρονέουσι, καί μοι νῦν φαίνεται Γοβρύης εἶπαι περὶ τῶν Σκυθικῶν δώρων ὀρθῶς. ὡς ὦν οὕτω ἤδη δοκεόντων καὶ αὐτῷ μοι ἔχειν, βουλῆς ἀγαθῆς δεῖ, ὅπως ἀσφαλέως ἡ κομιδὴ ἡμῖν ἔσται τὸ ὀπίσω.» πρὸς ταῦτα Γοβρύης εἶπε «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐγὼ σχεδὸν μὲν καὶ λόγῳ ἠπιστάμην τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν τὴν ἀπορίην, ἐλθὼν δὲ μᾶλλον ἐξέμαθον, ὁρέων αὐτοὺς ἐμπαίζοντας ἡμῖν. νῦν ὦν μοι δοκέει, ἐπεὰν τάχιστα νῦξ ἐπέλθῃ, ἐκκαύσαντας τὰ πυρὰ ὡς ἐώθαμεν καὶ ἄλλοτε ποιέειν, τῶν στρατιωτέων τοὺς ἀσθενεστάτους ἐς τὰς τλαιπωρίας ἐξαπατήσαντας καὶ τοὺς ὄνους πάντας καταδήσαντας ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι, πρὶν ἢ καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰστρον ἰθῦσαι Σκύθας λύσοντας τὴν γέφυραν, ἢ καί τι Ἴωσι δόξας τὸ ἡμέας οἶον τε ἔσται ἐξεργάσασθαι.»



χρεωμένων, ἔρετο ὁ Δαρείος τῶν |warring against τὸν  
 |noise, πνθόμενος δὲ σφέας τὸν λαγὸν διώκοντας,  
 |clamor  
 εἶπε ἄρα πρὸς τοὺς περ |push καὶ τὰ ἄλλα λέγειν  
 «οὔτοι ὦνδρες ἡμέων πολλὸν |scorn; think of , καί μοι  
 νῦν φαίνεται Γοβρύης εἶπαι περὶ τῶν Σκυθικῶν δώρων  
 ὀρθῶς. ὡς ὦν οὕτω ἤδη δοκεόντων καὶ αὐτῷ μοι ἔχειν,  
 βουλῆς ἀγαθῆς δεῖ, ὅπως ἀσφαλέως ἡ |care, ἡμῖν ἔσται  
 |tending  
 τὸ ὀπίσω.» πρὸς ταῦτα Γοβρύης εἶπε «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐγὼ  
 σχεδὸν μὲν καὶ λόγῳ |know τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν  
 τὴν ἀπορίην, ἐλθὼν δὲ μᾶλλον |know by heart ἴων αὐτοὺς  
 ἐμπαίζοντας ἡμῖν. νῦν ὦν μοι δοκείει, ἐπεὰν τάχιστα νύξ  
 ἐπέλθῃ, |set on fire τὰ |pyre ὡς |be accustomed, |at another time  
 |in the habit  
 ποιέειν, τῶν στρατιωτέων τοὺς |weak ἐς τὰς  
 ταλαιπωρίας |trick, cheat καὶ τοὺς |donkey πάντας  
 |tie up; fall short |free from, remove; πρὶν ἢ καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰστρον  
 |be freed, depart  
 |charge at, head for ἴοντας τὴν |dam, dike; bridge . Ἰωσι δόξας  
 τὸ ἡμέας οἶον τε ἔσται |accomplish; undo;  
 |destroy someone

Scythians were thus thrown into disorder and were raising loud cries, Dareios asked what was this clamour arising from the enemy; and hearing that they were running after the hare, he said to those men to whom he was wont to say things at other times: "These men have very slight regard for us, and I perceive now that Gobryas spoke rightly about the Scythian gifts. Seeing then that now I myself too think that things are so, we have need of good counsel, in order that our retreat homewards may be safely made." To this replied Gobryas and said: "O king, even by report I was almost assured of the difficulty of dealing with these men; and when I came I learnt it still more thoroughly, since I saw that they were mocking us. Now therefore my opinion is, that as soon as night comes on, we kindle the camp-fires as we are wont to do at other times also, and deceive with a false tale those of our men who are weakest to endure hardships, and tie up all the asses and get us away, before either the Scythians make for the Ister to destroy the bridge or something be resolved by the Ionians which may be our ruin."

*vocabulary***ἀσθένεια** weakness**ἀσθενής** weak**βοά** din, a shout**δηλαδή** clearly**ἐκκαίω** set on fire**ἐλάχιστος** smallest, shortest, fewest**ἐπείγω** weigh upon, drive; (mid) hurry**ἐρημόω** raze, bereave; desert, isolate**καθαρός** clean, pure**καταδέω** tie up; fall short**ὄμιλος** (ἰ) crowd, throng ~homily**ὄνομαι** blame ~name**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager**πάγῃ** entirely**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;

prediction ~fame

**πυρά** pyre ~pyre**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

**στρατόω** be on a campaign ~strategy**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a

person behind ~eclipse

**ὑποτίθμι** suggest, advise ~hypothesis

## 4.135

Γοβρύης μὲν ταῦτα συνεβούλευε. μετὰ δὲ νύξ τε ἐγίνετο καὶ Δαρείος ἐχρᾶτο τῇ γνώμῃ ταύτῃ· τοὺς μὲν καματηροὺς τῶν ἀνδρῶν καὶ τῶν ἦν ἐλάχιστος ἀπολλυμένων λόγος, καὶ τοὺς ὄνους πάντας καταδήσας κατέλιπε αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ. κατέλιπε δὲ τοὺς τε ὄνους καὶ τοὺς ἀσθενέας τῆς στρατιῆς τῶνδε εἵνεκεν, ἵνα οἱ μὲν ὄνοι βοὴν παρέχωνται· οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι ἀσθενείης μὲν εἵνεκεν κατελείποντο, προφάσιος δὲ τῇσδε δηλαδή, ὥς αὐτὸς μὲν σὺν τῷ καθαρῷ τοῦ στρατοῦ ἐπιθήσεσθαι μέλλοι τοῖσι Σκύθῃσι, οὗτοι δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ῥυοίατο. ταῦτα τοῖσι ὑπολελειμμένοισι ὑποθέμενος ὁ Δαρείος καὶ πυρὰ ἐκκαύσας τὴν ταχίστην ἐπείγετο ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰστρον. οἱ δὲ ὄνοι ἐρημωθέντες τοῦ ὁμίλου οὕτω δὴ μᾶλλον πολλῶ ἔεσαν τῆς φωνῆς· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ Σκύθαι τῶν ὄνων πάγχυ κατὰ χώραν ἤλπιζον τοὺς Πέρσας εἶναι.

4.135

Γοβρύης μὲν ταῦτα |give advice; μετὰ δὲ νύξ τε  
 |mid) consult  
 ἐγίνετο καὶ Δαρεῖος ἐχρᾶτο τῇ γνώμῃ ταύτῃ· τοὺς  
 μὲν καματηροὺς τῶν ἀνδρῶν καὶ τῶν ἡν |smallest, short-  
 |est, fewest  
 ἀπολλυμένων λόγος, καὶ τοὺς |donkey γάντας |tie up; fall short  
 κατέλιπε αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ. κατέλιπε δὲ τοὺς τε  
 |donkey καὶ τοὺς |weak τῆς στρατιῆς τῶνδε εἵνεκεν, ἵνα  
 οἱ μὲν |donkey ἦν παρέχωνται· οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι |weakness  
 μὲν εἵνεκεν κατελείποντο, |pretext; motive; τῇσδε |clearly  
 |prediction  
 ὥς αὐτὸς μὲν σὺν τῷ |clean, pure ὃ στρατοῦ ἐπιθήσεσθαι  
 μέλλοι τοῖσι Σκύθησι, οὗτοι δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον τοῦτον  
 τὸν χρόνον ῥυοίατο. ταῦτα τοῖσι |leave (food, person)  
 |suggest ὁ Δαρεῖος καὶ |pyre |set on fire τὴν ταχίστην  
 |weigh upon, drive; ἢ Ἰστρον. οἱ δὲ |don- |raze, bereave;  
 |mid) hurry |key |desert, isolate  
 τοῦ |crowd οὕτω δὲ μᾶλλον πολλῶ ἔεσαν τῆς φωνῆς·  
 ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ Σκύθαι τῶν ὄνων |entirely κατὰ χώραν  
 ἤλπιζον τοὺς Πέρσας εἶναι.

## 4.135

Thus Gobryas advised; and after this, when night came on, Dareios acted on this opinion. Those of his men who were weakened by fatigue and whose loss was of least account, these he left behind in the camp, and the asses also tied up: and for the following reasons he left behind the asses and the weaker men of his army,— the asses in order that they might make a noise which should be heard, and the men really because of their weakness, but on a pretence stated openly that he was about to attack the Scythians with the effective part of the army, and that they meanwhile were to be defenders of the camp. Having thus instructed those who were left behind, and having kindled camp-fires, Dareios hastened by the quickest way towards the Ister: and the asses, having no longer about them the usual throng, very much more for that reason caused their voice to be heard; so the Scythians, hearing the asses, supposed surely that the Persians were remaining in their former place.

*vocabulary***ἀριθμέω** to count ~arithmetic**ἀριθμός** number**ἅτε** as if; since**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**δειμαίνω** be afraid**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἵππότης** -ου (m, 1) horseman ~hippo**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,  
arrive; be proper**οὐκω** no longer**παραμένω** stay with ~remain**Πέρσης** Persian**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare**πόρω** aor. give, pf. be fated**προδίδωμι** betray**προτείνω** hold out, offer**στρατός** common people/soldiers  
~strategy**στρατόω** be on a campaign ~strategy**σύντομος** truncated, concise**συστρέφω** get together; condense**τέμνω** cut, sacrifice, solemnize  
~tonsure**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a  
person behind ~eclipse**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

## 4.136

Ἡμέρης δὲ γενομένης γνόντες οἱ ὑπολειφθέντες ὥς προεδομένοι εἶεν ὑπὸ Δαρείου, χεῖράς τε προετείνοντο τοῖσι Σκύθησι καὶ ἔλεγον τὰ κατήκοντα· οἱ δὲ ὥς ἤκουσαν ταῦτα τὴν ταχίστην συστραφέντες, αἶ τε δύο μοῖραι τῶν Σκυθέων καὶ ἡ μία καὶ Σαυρομάται καὶ Βουδῖνοι καὶ Γελωνοί, ἐδίωκον τοὺς Πέρσας ἰθὺ τοῦ Ἰστροῦ. ἅτε δὲ τοῦ Περσικοῦ μὲν τοῦ πολλοῦ ἐόντος πεζοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ τὰς ὁδοὺς οὐκ ἐπισταμένους, ὥστε οὐ τετμημενέων τῶν ὁδῶν, τοῦ δὲ Σκυθικοῦ ἰππότεω καὶ τὰ σύντομα τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐπισταμένους, ἀμαρτόντες ἀλλήλων, ἔφθησαν πολλῶ οἱ Σκύθαι τοὺς Πέρσας ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν ἀπικόμενοι. μαθόντες δὲ τοὺς Πέρσας οὐκ ἂν ἀπιγμένους ἔλεγον πρὸς τοὺς Ἴωνας ἐόντας ἐν τῇσι νηυσὶ «ἄνδρες Ἴωνες, αἶ τε ἡμέραι ὑμῖν τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ διοίχηνται καὶ οὐ ποιέετε δίκαια ἔτι παραμένοντες. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ πρότερον δειμαίνοντες ἐμένετε, νῦν λύσαντες τὸν πόρον τὴν ταχίστην ἄπιτε χαίροντες ἐλεύθεροι, θεοῖσί τε καὶ Σκύθησι εἰδότες



4.136

Ἡμέρης δὲ γενομένης γνόντες οἱ |leave (food, person) ἵπ-  
 |betray εἶεν ὑπὸ Δαρείου, χεῖράς τε |hold out, offer  
 τοῖσι Σκύθησι καὶ ἔλεγον τὰ |come down, (a day) to. ἤκουσαν  
 |fall, arrive; be proper  
 ταῦτα τὴν ταχίστην |get together; αἶ τε δύο μοῖραι τῶν  
 |condense  
 Σκυθῶν καὶ ἡ μία καὶ Σαυρομάται καὶ Βουδῖνοι καὶ  
 Γελωνοί, ἐδίωκον τοὺς Πέρσας ἰθὺ τοῦ Ἰστρου. |as if; since  
 δὲ τοῦ Περσικοῦ μὲν τοῦ πολλοῦ ἐόντος πεζοῦ στρατοῦ  
 καὶ τὰς ὁδοὺς οὐκ ἐπισταμένου, ὥστε οὐ |cut, sacrifice,  
 |solemnize  
 τῶν ὁδῶν, τοῦ δὲ Σκυθικοῦ |horseman καὶ τὰ |truncated, γῆς  
 |concise  
 ὁδοῦ ἐπισταμένου, ἀμαρτόντες ἀλλήλων, |be first πολλῶ  
 οἱ Σκύθαι τοὺς Πέρσας ἐπὶ τὴν |dam, dike; bridge-μενοι.  
 μαθόντες δὲ τοὺς Πέρσας |no longer γμένους ἔλεγον πρὸς  
 τοὺς Ἴωνας ἐόντας ἐν τῇσι νηυσὶ «ἄνδρες Ἴωνες, αἶ  
 τε ἡμέραι ὑμῖν τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ διοίχονται καὶ οὐ ποιέετε  
 δίκαια ἔτι |stay with ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ πρότερον |be afraid  
 ἐμένετε, νῦν λύσαντες τὸν πόρον τὴν ταχίστην ἄπιτε  
 χαίροντες |not enslaved ἵεοῖσί τε καὶ Σκύθησι εἰδότες

## 4.136

But when it was day, those who were left behind perceived that they had been betrayed by Dareios, and they held out their hands in submission to the Scythians, telling them what their case was; and the Scythians, when they heard this, joined together as quickly as possible, that is to say the two combined divisions of the Scythians and the single division, and also the Sauromatai, Budinoi, and Gelonians, and began to pursue the Persians, making straight for the Ister: but as the Persian army for the most part consisted of men on foot, and was not acquainted with the roads (the roads not being marked with tracks), while the Scythian army consisted of horsemen and was acquainted with the shortest cuts along the way, they missed one another and the Scythians arrived at the bridge much before the Persians. Then having learnt that the Persians had not yet arrived, they said to the Ionians who were in the ships: “Ionians, the days of your number are past, and ye are not acting uprightly in that ye yet remain waiting: but as ye stayed before from fear, so now break up the passage as quickly as ye may, and depart free and unhurt, feeling thankfulness both to

*vocabulary*

**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**ἐλευθερώω** set free

**καθαιρέω** take down, close ~heresy  
**μηδαμὸς** no one  
**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**τυραννεύω** be an absolute ruler

χάριν. τὸν δὲ πρότερον ἐόντα ὑμέων δεσπότην ἡμεῖς  
 παραστησόμεθα οὕτω ὥστε ἐπὶ μηδαμοὺς ἔτι ἀνθρώπους  
 αὐτὸν στρατεύσασθαι.»

## 4.137

Πρὸς ταῦτα Ἴωνες ἐβουλεύοντο. Μιλτιάδεω μὲν  
 τοῦ Ἀθηναίου, στρατηγέοντος καὶ τυραννέοντος  
 Χερσονησιτέων τῶν ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ, ἦν γνώμη  
 πείθεσθαι Σκύθησι καὶ ἐλευθεροῦν Ἰωνίην, Ἰστιαίου  
 δὲ τοῦ Μιλησίου ἐναντίῃ ταύτῃ, λέγοντος ὡς νῦν μὲν  
 διὰ Δαρεῖον ἕκαστος αὐτῶν τυραννεύει πόλιος· τῆς  
 Δαρείου δὲ δυνάμιος καταιρεθείσης οὔτε αὐτὸς Μιλησίων  
 οἶος τε ἔσεσθαι ἄρχειν οὔτε ἄλλον οὐδένα οὐδαμῶν·  
 βουλήσεσθαι γὰρ ἐκάστην τῶν πολίων δημοκρατέεσθαι  
 μᾶλλον ἢ τυραννεύεσθαι. Ἰστιαίου δὲ γνώμην ταύτην  
 ἀποδεικνυμένου αὐτίκα πάντες ἦσαν τετραμμένοι πρὸς  
 ταύτην τὴν γνώμην, πρότερον τὴν Μιλτιάδεω αἰρεόμενοι.

χάριν. τὸν δὲ πρότερον ἔόντα ὑμέων |master, ἡμεῖς  
|despot  
παραστησόμεθα οὕτω ὥστε ἐπὶ |no one ἔτι ἀνθρώπους  
αὐτὸν στρατεύσασθαι.»

4.137

Πρὸς ταῦτα Ἴωνες ἐβουλεύοντο. Μιλτιάδεω μὲν  
τοῦ Ἀθηναίου, |be a general καὶ |be an absolute ruler  
Χερσονησιτέων τῶν ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ, ἣν γνώμη  
πείθεσθαι Σκύθησι καὶ |set free Ἴωνίν, Ἰστιαίου  
δὲ τοῦ Μιλησίου ἐναντίῃ ταύτῃ, λέγοντος ὥς νῦν μὲν  
διὰ Δαρείον ἕκαστος αὐτῶν |be an absolute ruler τῆς  
Δαρείου δὲ δυνάμιος |take down, close οὔτε αὐτὸς Μιλησίων  
οἷος τε ἔσεσθαι ἄρχειν οὔτε ἄλλον οὐδένα |not anyone  
βουλήσεσθαι γὰρ ἐκάστην τῶν πολίων δημοκρατέεσθαι  
μᾶλλον ἢ τυραννέεσθαι. Ἰστιαίου δὲ γνώμην ταύτην  
|show, point out; ap- οὕτως πάντες ἦσαν τετραμμένοι πρὸς  
|point; (mid) declare  
ταύτην τὴν γνώμην, πρότερον τὴν Μιλτιάδεω αἰρεόμενοι.

the gods and to the Scythians: and him who was formerly your master we will so convince, that he shall never again march with an army upon any nation.”

#### 4.137

Upon this the Ionians took counsel together; and Miltiades the Athenian on the one hand, who was commander and despot of the men of the Chersonese in Hellespont, was of opinion that they should follow the advice of the Scythians and set Ionia free: but Histiaios the Milesian was of the opposite opinion to this; for he said that at the present time it was by means of Dareios that each one of them was ruling as despot over a city; and if the power of Dareios should be destroyed, neither he himself would be able to bear rule over the Milesians, nor would any other of them be able to bear rule over any other city; for each of the cities would choose to have popular rather than despotic rule. When Histiaios declared his opinion thus, forthwith all turned to this opinion, whereas at the first they were adopting that of Miltiades.

*vocabulary***αϊόλος** gleaming, fast-moving**βιάω** use force against, overcome**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge**ἐξιχνέομαι** arrive at**εὖς** good, brave, noble**λόγιμος** notable**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit**πρόκειμαι** be placed by; be devoted to**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow**τύραννος** tyrant**ψῆφος** (f) pebble, vote, decree, sentence

## 4.138

Ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι οἱ διαφέροντές τε τὴν ψῆφον καὶ  
 ἐόντες λόγου πρὸς βασιλέος, Ἑλλησποντίων μὲν τύραννοι  
 Δάφνις τε Ἀβυδηνὸς καὶ Ἴπποκλος Λαμβακηνὸς καὶ  
 Ἡρόφαντος Παριηνὸς καὶ Μητρόδωρος Προκοννήσιος καὶ  
 Ἀρισταγόρης Κυζικηνὸς καὶ Ἀρίστων Βυζάντιος. οὗτοι  
 μὲν ἦσαν οἱ ἐξ Ἑλλησπόντου, ἀπ' Ἰωνίης δὲ Στράττις  
 τε Χίος καὶ Αἰάκης Σάμιος καὶ Λαοδάμας Φωκαεὺς  
 καὶ Ἰστιαῖος Μιλήσιος, τοῦ ἦν γνώμη ἡ προκειμένη  
 ἐναντίῃ τῇ Μιλτιάδεω. Αἰολέων δὲ παρῆν λόγμος μῦνος  
 Ἀρισταγόρης, Κυμαῖος.

## 4.139

Οὗτοι ὦν ἐπέιτε τὴν Ἰστιαίου αἰρέοντο γνώμην, ἔδοξε σφι  
 πρὸς ταύτῃ τάδε ἔργα τε καὶ ἔπεα προσθεῖναι, τῆς μὲν  
 γεφύρης λύειν τὰ κατὰ τοὺς Σκύθας ἐόντα, λύειν δὲ ὅσον  
 τόξευμα ἐξικνέεται, ἵνα καὶ ποιέειν τι δοκέωσι ποιεῦντες  
 μηδὲν καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι μὴ πειρώατο βιώμενοι καὶ βουλόμενοι



4.138

Ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι οἱ διαφέροντές τε τὴν <sup>|pebble, vote, `de-</sup><sub>cree, sentence</sub>  
 εόντες λόγου πρὸς βασιλέος, Ἑλλησποντίων μὲν <sup>|tyrant</sup>  
 Δάφνις τε Ἀβυδηνὸς καὶ Ἴπποκλος Λαμβακηνὸς καὶ  
 Ἡρόφαντος Παριηνὸς καὶ Μητρόδωρος Προκοννήσιος καὶ  
 Ἀρισταγόρης Κυζικηνὸς καὶ Ἀρίστων Βυζάντιος. οὗτοι  
 μὲν ἦσαν οἱ ἐξ Ἑλλησπόντου, ἀπ' Ἰωνίης δὲ Στράττις  
 τε Χίος καὶ Αἰάκης Σάμιος καὶ Λαοδάμας Φωκαεὺς  
 καὶ Ἰστιαῖος Μιλήσιος, τοῦ ἦν γνώμη ἡ <sup>|be placed by;</sup><sub>|be devoted to</sub>  
 ἐναντίῃ τῇ Μιλτιάδεω. <sup>|gleaming, ὁ</sup><sub>|fast-moving</sub> παρῆν <sup>|notable</sup> μούνος  
 Ἀρισταγόρης, Κυμαῖος.

4.139

Οὗτοι ὦν ἐπείτε τὴν Ἰστιαίου αἰρέοντο γνώμην, ἔδοξε σφι  
 πρὸς ταύτῃ τάδε ἔργα τε καὶ ἔπεα προσθεῖναι, τῆς μὲν  
<sup>|dam, dike; bridge</sup> ἡ κατὰ τοὺς Σκύθας εόντα, λύειν δὲ ὅσον  
<sup>|arrow</sup> <sup>|arrive at</sup> , ἵνα καὶ ποιέειν τι δοκέωσι ποιεῦντες  
 μηδὲν καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι μὴ πειρώατο βιώμενοι καὶ βουλόμενοι

**4.138**

Now these were they who gave the vote between the two opinions, and were men of consequence in the eyes of the king, 124— first the despots of the Hellespontians, Daphnis of Abydos, Hippoclos of Lampsacos, Herophantos of Parion, Metrodoros of Proconnesos, Aristagoras of Kyzicos, and Ariston of Byzantion, these were those from the Hellespont; and from Ionia, Strattis of Chios, Aiakes of Samos, Laodamas of Phocaia, and Histiaios of Miletos, whose opinion had been proposed in opposition to that of Miltiades; and of the Aiolians the only man of consequence there present was Aristagoras of Kyme.

**4.139**

When these adopted the opinion of Histiaios, they resolved to add to it deeds and words as follows, namely to break up that part of the bridge which was on the side towards the Scythians, to break it up, I say, for a distance equal to the range of an arrow, both in order that they might be thought to be doing something, though in fact they were doing nothing, and for fear that the Scythians might

*vocabulary*

**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διέξοδος** διαξόδου (f) outlet, path;  
 narrative  
**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal  
**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved  
**ἐπείγω** weigh upon, drive; (mid) hurry  
**ἐπιτηδέως** usefully, conveniently  
**ζήτησις** -εως (f) search, inquiry  
**ἡδονή** pleasure  
**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing  
**νομή** pasture; distribution  
**ὁδός** lead well  
**Πέρσης** Persian

**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare  
**πόρω** aor. give, pf. be fated  
**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
 ~refurbish  
**προθυμία** (ῥ) zeal, alacrity ~fume  
**συγχρώ** cover with dirt  
**τίνω** (ι) pay, atone for; (mp) punish  
**τίω** value, honor; mp: exact  
 recompense for  
**ὑπηρετέω** serve  
**ὑποκρίνομαι** (ι) answer; pretend  
**ὑποστρέφω** turn around, go back  
 ~atrophy  
**χρηστός** useful; brave, worthy

διαβῆναι τὸν Ἰστρον κατὰ τὴν γέφυραν, εἰπεῖν τε λύοντας  
 τῆς γεφύρης τὸ ἐς τὴν Σκυθικὴν ἔχον ὥς πάντα ποιήσουσι  
 τὰ Σκύθησι ἐστὶ ἐν ἡδονῇ. ταῦτα μὲν προσέθηκαν τῇ  
 γνώμῃ. μετὰ δὲ ἐκ πάντων ὑπεκρίνατο Ἰστιαῖος τάδε  
 λέγων. ἄνδρες Σκύθαι, χρηστὰ ἤκετε φέροντες καὶ ἐς  
 καιρὸν, ἐπείγεσθε· καὶ τά τε ἀπ' ὑμέων ἡμῖν, χρηστῶς  
 ὁδοῦται καὶ τὰ ἀπ' ἡμέων ἐς ὑμέας ἐπιτηδέως ὑπηρετέεται.  
 ὥς γὰρ ὁρᾶτε, καὶ λύομεν τὸν πόρον καὶ προθυμίην πᾶσαν  
 ἔξομεν θέλοντες εἶναι ἐλεύθεροι. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ἡμεῖς τάδε  
 λύομεν, ὑμέας καιρὸς ἐστι δίξῃσθαι ἐκείνους, εὐρόντας δὲ  
 ὑπὲρ τε ἡμέων καὶ ὑμέων αὐτῶν τίσασθαι οὕτω ὥς κείνους  
 πρέπει.»

## 4.140

Σκύθαι μὲν τὸ δεύτερον Ἰωσι πιστεύσαντες λέγειν ἀληθέα  
 ὑπέστρεφον ἐπὶ ζήτησιν τῶν Περσέων, καὶ ἡμάρτανον  
 πάσης τῆς ἐκείνων διεξόδου. αἴτιοι δὲ τούτου αὐτοὶ  
 οἱ Σκύθαι ἐγένοντο, τὰς νομὰς τῶν ἵππων τὰς ταύτῃ  
 διαφθείραντες καὶ τὰ ὕδατα συγχώσαντες. εἰ γὰρ ταῦτα

|pass over, cross ὅστ' ἵστρον κατὰ τήν |dam, dike; bridge ἑλύνοντας  
 τῆς |dam, dike; bridge ἡν Σκυθικὴν ἔχον ὥς πάντα ποιήσουσι  
 τὰ Σκύθησι ἐστὶ ἐν |pleasure ταῦτα μὲν προσέθηκαν τῇ  
 γνώμῃ. μετὰ δὲ ἐκ πάντων |answer; pretend Ἰστιαῖος τάδε  
 λέγων. ἄνδρες Σκύθαι, |useful; brave, γε φέροντες καὶ ἐς  
 |worthy  
 καιρὸν, |weigh upon, drive; ἅ τε ἀπ' ὑμέων ἡμῖν, |useful; brave,  
 (mid) hurry |worthy  
 |lead well καὶ τὰ ἀπ' ἡμέων ἐς ὑμέας |usefully, |serve  
 |conveniently  
 ὥς γὰρ ὀράτε, καὶ λύομεν τὸν πόρον καὶ προθυμίην πᾶσαν  
 ἔξομεν θέλοντες εἶναι |not enslaved ἐν ᾧ δὲ ἡμεῖς τάδε  
 λύομεν, ὑμέας καιρὸς ἐστι |seek ἐκείνους, εὐρόντας δὲ  
 ὑπὲρ τε ἡμέων καὶ ὑμέων αὐτῶν τίσασθαι οὕτω ὥς κείνους  
 |be conspicuous,  
 |preeminent

4.140

Σκύθαι μὲν τὸ δεύτερον Ἰωσι πιστεύσαντες λέγειν ἀληθέα  
 |go back ἐπὶ |search, τῶν Περσέων, καὶ ἡμάρτανον  
 |inquiry  
 πάσης τῆς ἐκείνων |outlet, path; αἵτιοι δὲ τούτου αὐτοὶ  
 |narrative  
 οἱ Σκύθαι ἐγένοντο, τὰς νομὰς τῶν ἵππων τὰς ταύτη  
 διαφθείραντες καὶ τὰ ὕδατα συγχώσαντες. εἰ γὰρ ταῦτα

make an attempt using force and desiring to cross the Ister by the bridge: and in breaking up that part of the bridge which was towards Scythia they resolved to say that they would do all that which the Scythians desired. This they added to the opinion proposed, and then Histiaios coming forth from among them made answer to the Scythians as follows: “Scythians, ye are come bringing good news, and it is a timely haste that ye make to bring it; and ye on your part give us good guidance, while we on ours render to you suitable service. For, as ye see, we are breaking up the passage, and we shall show all zeal in our desire to be free: and while we are breaking up the bridge, it is fitting that ye should be seeking for those of whom ye speak, and when ye have found them, that ye should take vengeance on them on behalf of us as well as of yourselves in such manner as they deserve.”

#### 4.140

The Scythians then, believing for the second time that the Ionians were speaking the truth, turned back to make search for the Persians, but they missed altogether their line of march through the land. Of this the Scythians themselves were the cause, since they had destroyed the pastures for horses in that region and had choked up with earth the springs of water; for if they had

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιπολέμιος** warring against  
**ἄρρωδίη** terror  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**διαπορθμεύω** ferry, bring across  
**διέξειμι** pass through; recount ~ion  
**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal  
**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka  
**ἐπακούω** hear, listen to ~acoustic  
**εὐπετής** coming out well; (adv)  
 fortunately  
**ζεύγνυμι** (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote

**κέλευθος** (f) way, path  
**μόγισ** with difficulty, barely  
**ὀρρωδία** terror  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare  
**πόρω** aor. give, pf. be fated  
**στίβος** trail  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**σφάλλω** overthrow, balk, stagger  
**σφέτερος** their  
**χεῖλος** -εος (n, 3) lip  
**χιλός** (ι) fodder

μὴ ἐποίησαν, παρῆχε ἄν σφι, εἰ ἐβούλοντο, εὐπετέως ἐξευρεῖν τοὺς Πέρσας. νῦν δὲ τά σφι ἐδόκεε ἄριστα βεβουλεῦσθαι, κατὰ ταῦτα ἐσφάλησαν. Σκύθαι μὲν νυν τῆς σφετέρης χώρας τῇ χιλός τε τοῖσι ἵπποισι καὶ ὕδατα ἦν, ταύτῃ διεξιόντες ἐδίζηντο τοὺς ἀντιπολεμίους, δοκέοντες καὶ ἐκείνους διὰ τοιούτων τὴν ἀπόδρησιν ποιέεσθαι. οἱ δὲ δὴ Πέρσαι τὸν πρότερον ἐωυτῶν γενόμενον στίβον, τοῦτον φυλάσσοντες ἦσαν, καὶ οὕτω μόγισ εὗρον τὸν πόρον. οἷα δὲ νυκτός τε ἀπικόμενοι καὶ λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρης ἐντυχόντες, ἐς πᾶσαν ἀρρωδίην ἀπίκοντο μὴ σφεας οἱ Ἴωνες ἔωσι ἀπολελοιπότες.

## 4.141

Ἦν δὲ περὶ Δαρεῖον ἀνὴρ Αἰγύπτιος φωνέων μέγιστον ἀνθρώπων· τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα καταστάντα ἐπὶ τοῦ χεῖλεος τῷ Ἰστρου ἐκέλευε Δαρεῖος καλέειν Ἰστιαῖον Μιλήσιον. ὁ μὲν δὴ ἐποίεε ταῦτα, Ἰστιαῖος δὲ ἐπακούσας τῷ πρώτῳ κελεύσματι τάς τε νέας ἀπάσας παρῆχε διαπορθμεύειν τὴν στρατιὴν καὶ τὴν γέφυραν ἔζευξε.



μὴ ἐποίησαν, παρείχε ἄν σφι, εἰ ἐβούλοντο, |coming out well; (adv)  
|fortunately  
|find; |discover τοὺς Πέρσας. νῦν δὲ τά σφι ἐδόκεε ἄριστα  
βεβουλευσθαι, κατὰ ταῦτα |overthrow, balk Σκύθαι μὲν  
νυν τῆς |their χώρας τῇ |fodder τε τοῖσι ἵπποισι καὶ  
ὔδατα ἦν, ταύτῃ |pass |seek τοὺς |warring against  
|through;  
δοκέοντες καὶ ἐκείνους διὰ τοιούτων τὴν ἀπόδρησιν  
ποιέεσθαι. οἱ δὲ δὴ Πέρσαι τὸν πρότερον ἐωντῶν  
γενόμενον |trail , τοῦτον φυλάσσοντες ἦσαν, καὶ οὕτω  
|with difficulty, τὸν πόρον. οἶα δὲ νυκτός τε ἀπικόμενοι καὶ  
|barely  
λελυμένης τῆς |dam, dike; bridge. ἵτες, ἐς πᾶσαν ἀρρωδίην  
ἀπίκοντο μὴ σφεας οἱ Ἴωνες ἔωσι ἀπολελοιπότες.

4.141

Ἦν δὲ περὶ Δαρεῖον ἀνὴρ Αἰγύπτιος φωνέων μέγιστον  
ἀνθρώπων· τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα καταστάντα ἐπὶ τοῦ |lip  
τῷ Ἰστρου ἐκέλευε Δαρεῖος καλέειν Ἰστιαῖον Μιλήσιον. ὁ  
μὲν δὴ ἐποίεε ταῦτα, Ἰστιαῖος δὲ |hear τῷ πρώτῳ  
κελεύσματι τὰς τε νέας ἀπάσας παρείχε |ferry, |bring  
|across  
τὴν στρατιὴν καὶ τὴν |dam, dike; yoke, join  
|bridge

not done this, it would have been possible for them easily, if they desired it, to discover the Persians: but as it was, by those things wherein they thought they had taken their measures best, they failed of success. The Scythians then on their part were passing through those regions of their own land where there was grass for the horses and springs of water, and were seeking for the enemy there, thinking that they too were taking a course in their retreat through such country as this; while the Persians in fact marched keeping carefully to the track which they had made before, and so they found the passage of the river, though with difficulty: and as they arrived by night and found the bridge broken up, they were brought to the extreme of fear, lest the Ionians should have deserted them.

#### 4.141

Now there was with Dareios an Egyptian who had a voice louder than that of any other man on earth, and this man Dareios ordered to take his stand upon the bank of the Ister and to call Histiaios of Miletos. He accordingly proceeded to do so; and Histiaios, hearing the first hail, produced all the ships to carry the army over and also put together the bridge.

*vocabulary*

**ἄνανδρος** without men; not manlike  
 ~androgynous  
**ἀνδράποδον** -ς slave ~androgynous  
**ἀνοίγνυμι** (ὄ) open  
**ἀπορρίπτω** cast away  
**γέρας** -ως (n, 3) reward, honor  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal  
**ἐκφεύγω** flee from, escape ~fugitive

**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved  
**ἐλευθερόω** set free  
**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence  
**εὖς** good, brave, noble  
**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit  
**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**ῥοιά** pomegranate  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**τρώγω** nibble, crop

## 4.142

Πέρσαι μὲν ὧν οὕτω ἐκφεύγουσι Σκύθαι δὲ διζήμενοι καὶ τὸ δεύτερον ἥμαρτον τῶν Περσέων, καὶ τοῦτο μὲν ὡς ἐόντας Ἴωνας ἐλευθέρους κακίστους τε καὶ ἀνανδροτάτους κρίνουσι εἶναι ἀπάντων ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο δέ, ὡς δούλων ἐόντων τὸν λόγον ποιούμενοι, ἀνδράποδα φιλοδέσποτα φασὶ εἶναι καὶ ἄδρηστα. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ Σκύθησι ἐς Ἴωνας ἀπέρριπται.

## 4.143

Δαρεῖος δὲ διὰ τῆς Θρηίκης πορευόμενος ἀπίκητο ἐς Σηιστὸν τῆς Χερσονήσου. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ αὐτὸς μὲν διέβη τῇσι νηυσὶ ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, λείπει δὲ στρατηγὸν ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ Μεγάβαζον ἄνδρα Πέρσῃν· τῷ Δαρεῖος κοτὲ ἔδωκε γέρας, τοιόνδε εἶπας ἐν Πέρσῃσι ἔπος. ὀρμημένου Δαρείου ροιάς τρώγειν, ὡς ἀνοιξε τάχιστα τὴν πρώτην τῶν ροιέων, εἶρετο αὐτὸν ὁ ἀδελφεὸς Ἀρτάβανος ὃ τι βούλοιτ' ἂν οἱ τοσοῦτο πλῆθος γενέσθαι ὅσοι ἐν τῇ ροιῇ κόκκοι·

4.142

Πέρσαι μὲν ὦν οὕτω |flee                      Σκύθαι δὲ |seek  
καὶ τὸ δεύτερον ἡμαρτον τῶν Περσέων, καὶ τοῦτο  
μὲν ὥς ἐόντας Ἴωνας ἐλευθέρους κακίστους τε καὶ  
|without men; not κρίνουσι εἶναι ἀπάντων ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο  
|manlike  
δέ, ὥς δούλων ἐόντων τὸν λόγον ποιούμενοι, |slave  
φιλοδέσποτα φασὶ εἶναι καὶ ἄδρηστα. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ  
Σκύθησι ἐς Ἴωνας |cast away .

4.143

Δαρείος δὲ διὰ τῆς Θρηίκης πορευόμενος ἀπίκητο ἐς  
Σηστὸν τῆς Χερσονήσου. |thence      δὲ αὐτὸς μὲν |pass over, cross  
νηυσὶ ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, λείπει δὲ στρατηγὸν ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ  
Μεγάβαζον ἄνδρα Πέρσην· τῷ Δαρείος κοτὲ ἔδωκε |reward,  
|such      εἶπας ἐν Πέρσῃσι ἔπος. ὀρμημένου Δαρείου |pomegranate  
|nibble, crop ὥς ἄνοιξε τάχιστα τὴν πρώτην τῶν |pomegranate  
εἶρετο αὐτὸν ὁ ἀδελφεὸς Ἀρτάβανος ὅ τι βούλοιτ' ἂν οἱ  
τοσοῦτο πλήθος γενέσθαι ὅσοι ἐν τῇ |pomegranate .

**4.142**

Thus the Persians escaped, and the Scythians in their search missed the Persians the second time also: and their judgment of the Ionians is that on the one hand, if they be regarded as free men, they are the most worthless and cowardly of all men, but on the other hand, if regarded as slaves, they are the most attached to their master and the least disposed to run away of all slaves. This is the reproach which is cast against the Ionians by the Scythians.

**4.143**

Dareios then marching through Thrace arrived at Sestos in the Chersonese; and from that place, he passed over himself in his ships to Asia, but to command his army in Europe he left Megabazos a Persian, to whom Dareios once gave honour by uttering in the land of Persia this saying:— Dareios was beginning to eat pomegranates, and at once when he opened the first of them, Artabanos his brother asked him of what he would desire to have as many as there were seeds in the pomegranate: and Dareios said that he

*vocabulary*

**ἀριθμός** number

**ἑπτακαίδεκα** 17

**εὖς** good, brave, noble

**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin

**μίν** him, her, it

**μνήμη** reminder, memorial

**μυριάς** -δος (ὑ, f, 3) countless, myriad

**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus

**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit

**στρατιά** army ~strategy

**τυφλός** blind

**ὕπήκοον** -ῦ cumin

**ὕπήκοος** heeding, subject

**ὕπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse

**χῶρος** place ~heir

Δαρεῖος δὲ εἶπε Μεγαβάζους ἂν οἱ τοσούτους ἀριθμὸν γενέσθαι βούλεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ὑπήκοον. ἐν μὲν δὴ Πέρσῃσι ταῦτά μιν εἶπας ἐτίμα, τότε δὲ αὐτὸν ὑπέλιπε στρατηγὸν ἔχοντα τῆς στρατιῆς τῆς ἑωυτοῦ ὀκτὼ μυριάδας.

## 4.144

Οὗτος δὲ ὁ Μεγάβαζος εἶπας τόδε τὸ ἔπος ἐλίπετο ἀθάνατον μνήμην πρὸς Ἑλλησποντίων. γενόμενος γὰρ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ἐπύθετο ἑπτακαίδεκα ἔτεσι πρότερον Καλχηδονίους κτίσαντας τὴν χώραν Βυζαντίων, πυθόμενος δὲ ἔφη Καλχηδονίους τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον τυγχάνειν ἐόντας τυφλοὺς· οὐ γὰρ ἂν τοῦ καλλίονος παρεόντος κτίζε χώρου τὸν αἰσχίονα ἐλέσθαι, εἰ μὴ ἦσαν τυφλοί. οὗτος δὴ ὦν τότε ὁ Μεγάβαζος στρατηγὸς λειφθεὶς ἐν τῇ χώρῃ Ἑλλησποντίων τοὺς μὴ μηδίζοντας κατεστρέφετο.



Δαρείος δὲ εἶπε Μεγαβάζους ἄν οἱ τοσούτους |number  
γενέσθαι βούλεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ὑπήκοον. ἐν  
μὲν δὴ Πέρσῃσι ταῦτά μιν εἶπας ἐτίμα, τότε δὲ αὐτὸν  
|leave (food, person) ἔχοντα τῆς στρατιῆς τῆς ἐωυτοῦ |eight  
|countless,  
|myriad  
4.144

Οὗτος δὲ ὁ Μεγάβαζος εἶπας τόδε τὸ ἔπος ἐλίπετο  
ἀθάνατον |reminder, |gròs Ἑλλησποντίων. γενόμενος γὰρ  
|memorial  
ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ἐπύθετο |17 ἔτεσι πρότερον  
Καλχηδονίους |found, τὴν χώραν Βυζαντίων,  
|populate  
πυθόμενος δὲ ἔφη Καλχηδονίους τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον  
τυγχάνειν ἐόντας |blind οὐ γὰρ ἂν τοῦ καλλίονος  
παρεόντος |found, |place τὸν αἰσχίονα ἐλέσθαι, εἰ μὴ ἦσαν  
|populate  
|blind οὗτος δὴ ὦν τότε ὁ Μεγάβαζος στρατηγὸς  
λειφθεὶς ἐν τῇ χώρῃ Ἑλλησποντίων τοὺς μὴ μηδίζοντας  
|overturn,  
|subdue

would desire to have men like Megabazos as many as that in number, rather than to have Hellas subject to him. In Persia, I say, he honoured him by saying these words, and at this time he left him in command with eight myriads of his army.

#### 4.144

This Megabazos uttered one saying whereby he left of himself an imperishable memory with the peoples of Hellespont: for being once at Byzantion he heard that the men of Calchedon had settled in that region seventeen years before the Byzantians, and having heard it he said that those of Calchedon at that time chanced to be blind; for assuredly they would not have chosen the worse place, when they might have settled in that which was better, if they had not been blind. This Megabazos it was who was left in command at that time in the land of the Hellespontians, and he proceeded to subdue all who did not take the side of the Medes.

*vocabulary***αἷθω** set on fire ~ether**ἀνακαίω** light (a fire) ~caustic**ἀπηγέομαι** lead; tell, relate**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**ληίζομαι** plunder ~lucre**ὀπόθεν** whence**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;  
prediction ~fame**στρατιά** army ~strategy**φυτεύω** plant, grow, cause, prepare  
~physics

## 4.145

Οὗτος μὲν νυν ταῦτα ἔπρησσε. τὸν αὐτὸν δὲ τοῦτον χρόνον ἐγένετο ἐπὶ Λιβύην ἄλλος στρατιῆς μέγας στόλος, διὰ πρόφασιν τὴν ἐγὼ ἀπηγγέσομαι προδιηγησάμενος πρότερον τάδε. τῶν ἐκ τῆς Ἀργοῦς ἐπιβατέων παίδων παῖδες ἐξελασθέντες ὑπὸ Πελασγῶν τῶν ἐκ Βραυρῶνος ληισαμένων τὰς Ἀθηναίων γυναῖκας, ὑπὸ τούτων ἐξελασθέντες ἐκ, Λήμνου οἴχοντο πλείοντες ἐς Λακεδαίμονα, ἰζόμενοι δὲ ἐν τῷ Τηϋγέτῳ πῦρ ἀνέκαιον. Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ ἰδόντες ἄγγελον ἔπεμπον πευσόμενοι τίνες τε καὶ ὁκόθεν εἰσί· οἱ δὲ τῷ ἀγγέλῳ εἰρωτῶντι ἔλεγον ὥς εἶησαν μὲν Μινύαι, παῖδες δὲ εἶεν τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀργοῖ πλεόντων ἡρώων, προσσχόντας δὲ τούτους ἐς Λήμνον φυτεῦσαι σφέας. οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀκηκοότες τὸν λόγον τῆς γενεῆς τῶν Μινυέων, πέμψαντες τὸ δεύτερον εἰρώτων τί θέλοντες ἤκοιέν τε ἐς τὴν χώραν καὶ πῦρ αἴθιοιεν. οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν ὑπὸ Πελασγῶν ἐκβληθέντες ἦκειν ἐς τοὺς πατέρας· δικαιοτάτον γὰρ εἶναι οὕτω τοῦτο

4.145

Οὗτος μὲν νυν ταῦτα ἔπρησσε. τὸν αὐτὸν δὲ τοῦτον  
 χρόνον ἐγίνετο ἐπὶ Λιβύην ἄλλος στρατιῆς μέγας στόλος,  
 διὰ |pretext; motive; | ἐγὼ |lead; tell, relate |τροδιηγησάμενος  
 |prediction  
 πρότερον τάδε. τῶν ἐκ τῆς Ἀργούς ἐπιβατέων  
 παίδων παῖδες |drive out ὑπὸ Πελασγῶν τῶν ἐκ  
 Βραυρῶνος |ληίζομαι?: plunder; or |θηναίων γυναῖκας, ὑπὸ  
 |ληίζομαι?: plunder  
 τούτων |drive out ἐκ, Λήμνου οἴχοντο πλείοντες ἐς  
 Λακεδαίμονα, |to seat δὲ ἐν τῷ Τηϋγέτῳ πῦρ |light (a fire)  
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ ἰδόντες ἄγγελον ἔπεμπον πευσόμενοι  
 τίνες τε καὶ |whence εἰσί· οἱ δὲ τῷ ἀγγέλῳ εἰρωτῶντι ἔλεγον  
 ὡς εἶσαν μὲν Μινύαι, παῖδες δὲ εἶεν τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀργοί  
 πλεόντων ἡρώων, προσσχόντας δὲ τούτους ἐς Λήμνον  
 |plant, grow, |as. οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀκηκοότες τὸν λόγον  
 |cause, prepare  
 τῆς γενεῆς τῶν Μινυέων, πέμψαντες τὸ δεύτερον εἰρώτων  
 τί θέλοντες ἥκοιέν τε ἐς τὴν χώραν καὶ πῦρ |set on fire  
 οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν ὑπὸ Πελασγῶν ἐκβληθέντες ἥκειν ἐς τοὺς  
 πατέρας· δικαιοτάτον γὰρ εἶναι οὕτω τοῦτο

## 4.145

He then was doing thus; and at this very same time a great expedition was being made also against Libya, on an occasion which I shall relate when I have first related this which follows.— The children's children of those who voyaged in the Argo, having been driven forth by those Pelasgians who carried away at Brauron the women of the Athenians,— having been driven forth I say by these from Lemnos, had departed and sailed to Lacedemon, and sitting down on Mount Tay getos they kindled a fire. The Lacedemonians seeing this sent a messenger to inquire who they were and from whence; and they answered the question of the messenger saying that they were Minyai and children of heroes who sailed in the Argo, for these, they said, had put in to Lemnos and propagated the race of which they sprang. The Lacedemonians having heard the story of the descent of the Minyai, sent a second time and asked for what purpose they had come into the country and were causing a fire to blaze. They said that they had been cast out by the Pelasgians, and were come now to the land of their fathers, for most just it was that this

*vocabulary*

**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism  
**ἀπολαγχάνω** get by lot  
**ἀστή** inhabitant  
**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy  
**διεξέρχομαι** go through  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**ἐνάγω** lead in/on; arraign  
**ἐξυβρίζω** have a violent breakout  
**ἐρκτή** prison  
**εὖς** good, brave, noble  
**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off  
 ~ballistic

**καταχράομαι** (mp) abuse, use up;  
 (act) be enough  
**μεταδίδωμι** give part of ~donate  
**μεταιτέω** demand one's share; beg  
 from  
**μετέχω** partake of  
**ναυτιλία** sailing ~navy  
**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit  
**παραιτέομαι** entreat; beg for; decline  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
**φυλή** (ῥ) tribe, military unit

γίνεσθαι. δέεσθαι δὲ οἰκέειν ἅμα τούτοισι μοῖράν τε τιμέων  
μετέχοντες καὶ τῆς γῆς ἀπολαχόντες. Λακεδαιμονίοισι  
δὲ ἔαδε δέκεσθαι τοὺς Μινύας ἐπ' οἷσι θέλουσι αὐτοί.  
μάλιστα δὲ ἐνήγχε σφέας ὥστε ποιέειν ταῦτα τῶν  
Τυνδαριδέων ἢ ναυτιλίῃ ἐν τῇ Ἀργοί. δεξάμενοι δὲ τοὺς  
Μινύας γῆς τε μετέδοσαν καὶ ἐς φυλὰς διεδάσαντο. οἱ  
δὲ αὐτίκα μὲν γάμους ἔγημαν, τὰς δὲ ἐκ Λήμνου ἤγοντο  
ἐξέδοσαν ἄλλοισι.

## 4.146

Χρόνου δὲ οὐ πολλοῦ διεξελθόντος αὐτίκα οἱ Μινύαι  
ἐξύβρισαν, τῆς τε βασιληΐης μεταιτέοντες καὶ ἄλλα  
ποιέοντες οὐκ ὅσια. τοῖσι ὦν Λακεδαιμονίοισι ἔδοξε  
αὐτοὺς ἀποκτείνειν, συλλαβόντες δὲ σφέας κατέβαλον ἐς  
ἐρκτήν. κτείνουσι δὲ τοὺς ἂν κτείνωσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι  
νυκτός, μετ' ἡμέρην δὲ οὐδένα. ἐπεὶ ὦν ἔμελλον  
σφέας καταχρήσασθαι, παραιτήσαντο αἱ γυναῖκες τῶν  
Μινυέων, εὐδοῖν αἰσάειν τε καὶ τῶν πρώτων Σπαρτιητέων  
θυγατέρες, ἐσελθεῖν τε ἐς τὴν ἐρκτήν καὶ ἐς λόγους ἐλθεῖν



γίνεσθαι. δέεσθαι δὲ οἰκέειν ἅμα τούτοισι μοῖράν τε τιμέων

|partake of καὶ τῆς γῆς |get by lot Λακεδαιμονίοισι

δὲ |please δέκεσθαι τοὺς Μινύας ἐπ' οἷσι θέλουσι αὐτοί.

μάλιστα δὲ |lead in/on; 'arraign' ὥστε ποιέειν ταῦτα τῶν

Τυνδαριδέων ἢ ναυτιλῆς ἐν τῇ Ἀργοί. δεξάμενοι δὲ τοὺς

Μινύας γῆς τε |give part of καὶ ἐς |tribe διεδάσαντο. οἱ

δὲ αὐτίκα μὲν |wedding, ἑσπέρην, τὰς δὲ ἐκ Λήμνου ἤγοντο

|hand over ἄλλοισι.

4.146

Χρόνου δὲ οὐ πολλοῦ |go through αὐτίκα οἱ Μινύαι

|have a violent τῆς τε βασιλείης |demand one's καὶ ἄλλα  
|breakout |share; beg from

ποιέοντες οὐκ ὅσια. τοῖσι ὦν Λακεδαιμονίοισι ἔδοξε

αὐτοὺς ἀποκτείνειν, |seize, capture; δὲ σφέας |throw down, cast off  
|understand

έρκτῆν. κτείνουσι δὲ τοὺς ἂν κτείνωσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι

νυκτός, μετ' ἡμέρην δὲ οὐδένα. ἐπεὶ ὦν ἔμελλον

σφέας καταχρήσασθαι, |entreat; beg for; αἱ γυναῖκες τῶν  
|decline

Μινυέων, εἶναι |inhabitant καὶ τῶν πρώτων Σπαρτιητέων

θυγατέρες, ἐσελθεῖν τε ἐς τὴν έρκτῆν καὶ ἐς λόγους ἐλθεῖν

should so be done; and they said that their request was to be permitted to dwell with these, having a share of civil rights and a portion allotted to them of the land. And the Lacedemonians were content to receive the Minyai upon the terms which they themselves desired, being most of all impelled to do this by the fact that the sons of Tyndareus were voyagers in the Argo. So having received the Minyai they gave them a share of land and distributed them in the tribes; and they forthwith made marriages, and gave in marriage to others the women whom they brought with them from Lemnos.

#### 4.146

However, when no very long time had passed, the Minyai forthwith broke out into insolence, asking for a share of the royal power and also doing other impious things: therefore the Lacedemonians resolved to put them to death; and having seized them they cast them into a prison. Now the Lacedemonians put to death by night all those whom they put to death, but no man by day. When therefore they were just about to kill them, the wives of the Minyai, being native Spartans and daughters of the first citizens of Sparta, entreated to be allowed to enter the prison

*vocabulary***ἀδελφιδέος** -οῦ nephew**ἀποικία** colony**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float**ἄτε** as if; since**γεύω** taste ~gusto**γυναικίης** of women**δόλος** trick, bait**ἐκφεύγω** flee from, escape ~fugitive**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**παρήκω** lie along; of time: to be past**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle**τοιόσδε** such

ἐκάστη τῷ ἑωυτῆς ἀνδρί. οἱ δὲ σφέας παρήκαν, οὐδένα δόλον δοκέοντες ἐξ αὐτέων ἔσεσθαι. αἱ δὲ ἐπείτε ἐσῆλθον, ποιέουσι τοιάδε· πᾶσαν τὴν εἶχον ἐσθῆτα παραδοῦσαι τοῖσι ἀνδράσι αὐταὶ τὴν τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἔλαβον, οἱ δὲ Μινύαι ἐνδύντες τὴν γυναικίην ἐσθῆτα ἅτε γυναῖκες ἐξήσαν ἕξω, ἐκφυγόντες δὲ τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ ἴζοντο αὐτὶς ἐς τὸ Τηϋῆγον.

## 4.147

Τὸν δὲ αὐτὸν τοῦτον χρόνον Θήρας ὁ Αὐτεσίωνος τοῦ Τισαμενοῦ τοῦ Θερσάνδρου τοῦ Πολυνείκεος ἔστελλε ἐς ἀποικίην ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος· ἦν δὲ ὁ Θήρας οὗτος, γένος ἐὼν Καδμείος, τῆς μητρὸς ἀδελφεὸς τοῖσι Ἀριστοδήμου παισὶ Εὐρυσθένει καὶ Προκλές. ἐόντων δὲ ἔτι τῶν παίδων τούτων νηπίων ἐπιτροπαίην εἶχε ὁ Θήρας τὴν ἐν Σπάρτῃ βασιληίην. αὐξηθέντων δὲ τῶν ἀδελφιδέων καὶ παραλαβόντων τὴν ἀρχήν, οὕτω δὲ ὁ Θήρας δεινὸν ποιούμενος ἄρχεσθαι ὑπ' ἄλλων ἐπείτε ἐγεύσατο ἀρχῆς, οὐκ ἔφη μένειν ἐν τῇ Λακεδαίμονι ἀλλ' ἀποπλεύσεσθαι

ἐκάστη τῷ ἐωντῆς ἀνδρί. οἱ δὲ σφέας παρήκαν, οὐδένα  
 |trick, bait κέοντες ἐξ αὐτέων ἔσεσθαι. αἱ δὲ ἐπίετε ἐσῆλθον,  
 ποιέουσι |such πᾶσαν τὴν εἶχον |clothes παραδοῦσαι  
 τοῖσι ἀνδράσι αὐταὶ τὴν τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἔλαβον, οἱ δὲ Μινύαι  
 |go into, put οὐ γυναικὴν |clothes |as if; since ἔκευ |go forth;  
 |is possible  
 ἔξω, |flee δὲ τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ |to seat αὐτὶς ἐς τὸ  
 Τηϋύγετον.

## 4.147

Τὸν δὲ αὐτὸν τοῦτον χρόνον Θήρας ὁ Αὐτεσίωνος τοῦ  
 Τισαμενοῦ τοῦ Θερσάνδρου τοῦ Πολυνείκεος |prepare, send, furl  
 ἀποικίην ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος· ἦν δὲ ὁ Θήρας οὗτος, γένος  
 ἐὼν Καδμείος, τῆς μητρὸς ἀδελφεὸς τοῖσι Ἀριστοδήμου  
 παισὶ Εὐρυσθένει καὶ Προκλές. ἐόντων δὲ ἔτι τῶν  
 παίδων τούτων νηπίων ἐπιτροπαίην εἶχε ὁ Θήρας τὴν  
 ἐν Σπάρτῃ βασιληίην. αὐξηθέντων δὲ τῶν |nephew  
 καὶ παραλαβόντων τὴν ἀρχήν, οὕτω δὲ ὁ Θήρας δεινὸν  
 ποιούμενος ἄρχεσθαι ὑπ' ἄλλων ἐπίετε ἐγεύσατο ἀρχῆς,  
 οὐκ ἔφη μένειν ἐν τῇ Λακεδαίμονι ἀλλ' |sail away

and come to speech every one with her own husband: and they let them pass in, not supposing that any craft would be practised by them. They however, when they had entered, delivered to their husbands all the garments which they were wearing, and themselves received those of their husbands: thus the Minyai having put on the women's clothes went forth out of prison as women, and having escaped in this manner they went again to Ταῦ getos and sat down there.

#### 4.147

Now at this very same time Theras the son of Autesion, the son of Tisamenos, the son of Thersander, the son of Polyneikes, was preparing to set forth from Lacedemon to found a settlement. This Theras, who was of the race of Cadmos, was mother's brother to the sons of Aristodemos, Eurysthenes and Procles; and while these sons were yet children, Theras as their guardian held the royal power in Sparta. When however his nephews were grown and had taken the power into their hands, then Theras, being grieved that he should be ruled by others after he had tasted of rule himself, said that he would not remain in Lacedemon, but would sail

*vocabulary*

ἀπόγονος descended from

ἀρέσκω please, satisfy; make amends

δίζημαι seek ~zeal

ἐκδιδράσκω escape

ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic

ἐρέσσω to row ~row

ἐρκτή prison

εὖς good, brave, noble

ἵζω to seat ~sit

κάρτα very much ~κράτος

νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

οἰκηιόω adopt, adapt

ὀκτώ eight ~octopus

ὄον οὓ type of fruit

οὐδαμὸς not anyone

παραιτέομαι entreat; beg for; decline

στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle

συγγενεὺς inborn, kin to

συγγενής inborn, kin to

συγχωρέω accede, concede

συνοικέω live together

ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer

φυλή (ἰ) tribe, military unit

φῦλον race, tribe, class ~phylum

ἐς τοὺς συγγενέας. ἦσαν δὲ ἐν τῇ νῦν Θήρῃ καλεομένη νήσῳ, πρότερον δὲ Καλλίστῃ τῇ αὐτῇ ταύτῃ, ἀπόγονοι Μεμβλίου τοῦ Ποικίλεω ἀνδρὸς Φοίνικος. Κάδμος γὰρ ὁ Ἀγήνορος Εὐρώπῃν διζήμενος προσέσχε ἐς τὴν νῦν Θήρην καλεομένην· προσσχόντι δὲ εἶτε δὴ οἱ ἡ χώρα ἤρесе, εἶτε καὶ ἄλλως ἠθέλησε ποιῆσαι τοῦτο· καταλείπει γὰρ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ταύτῃ ἄλλους τε τῶν Φοινίκων καὶ δὴ καὶ τῶν ἑωυτοῦ συγγενέων Μεμβλίον. οὗτοι ἐνέμοντο τὴν Καλλίστην καλεομένην ἐπὶ γενεάς, πρὶν ἢ Θήραν ἐλθεῖν ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος, ὁκτὼ ἀνδρῶν.

## 4.148

Ἐπὶ τούτους δὴ ὦν ὁ Θήρας λεὼν ἔχων ἀπὸ τῶν φυλέων ἔστελλε, συνοικήσων τούτοισι καὶ οὐδαμῶς ἐξελῶν αὐτοὺς ἀλλὰ κάρτα οἰκιοῦμενος. ἐπεῖτε δὲ καὶ οἱ Μινύαι ἐκδράντες ἐκ τῆς ἐρκτῆς ἕζοντο ἐς τὸ Τηϋῆγον, τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων βουλευομένων σφέας ἀπολλύναι παραιτέεται ὁ Θήρας, ὅπως μήτε φόνος γένηται, αὐτὸς τε ὑπεδέκετο σφέας ἐξάξειν ἐκ τῆς χώρας. συγχωρησάντων



ἐς τοὺς συγγενέας. ἦσαν δὲ ἐν τῇ νῦν Θήρῃ καλεομένη  
 νήσῳ, πρότερον δὲ Καλλίστῃ τῇ αὐτῇ ταύτῃ, |descended from  
 Μεμβλιάρου τοῦ Ποικίλεω ἀνδρὸς Φοίνικος. Κάδμος  
 γὰρ ὁ Ἀγήνορος Εὐρώπην |seek προσέσχε ἐς τὴν  
 νῦν Θήρην καλεομένην· προσσχόντι δὲ εἶτε δὴ οἱ ἡ χώρα  
 ἤρεσε, εἶτε καὶ ἄλλως ἠθέλησε ποιῆσαι τοῦτο· καταλείπει  
 γὰρ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ταύτῃ ἄλλους τε τῶν Φοινίκων καὶ δὴ καὶ  
 τῶν ἑωυτοῦ συγγενέων Μεμβλίαν. οὗτοι |distribute τὴν  
 Καλλίστην καλεομένην ἐπὶ γενεάς, πρὶν ἢ Θήραν ἐλθεῖν  
 ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος, |eight ἀνδρῶν.

## 4.148

Ἐπὶ τούτους δὴ ὦν ὁ Θήρας λεῶν ἔχων ἀπὸ τῶν  
 φυλέων |prepare, , |live together τούτοις καὶ |not anyone  
 |send, furl  
 |drive out ὑτοὺς ἀλλὰ |very |adopt, adapt ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ  
 |much  
 Μινύαι |escape ἐκ τῆς ἐρκτῆς |to seat ἐς τὸ Τηϋῆγον,  
 τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων βουλευομένων σφέας ἀπολλύναι  
 |entreat; beg ὁ Θήρας, ὅπως μήτε φόνος γένηται, αὐτὸς τε  
 |for; decline  
 |welcome, ac- φέας ἐξάξειν ἐκ τῆς χώρας. |accede, concede  
 |cept, suffer

away to his kinsmen. Now there were in the island which is now called Thera, but formerly was called Callista, descendants of Membliaros the son of Poikiles, a Phenician: for Cadmos the son of Agenor in his search for Europa put in to land at the island which is now called Thera; and, whether it was that the country pleased him when he had put to land, or whether he chose to do so for any other reason, he left in this island, besides other Phenicians, Membliaros also, of his own kinsmen. These occupied the island called Callista for eight generations of men, before Theras came from Lacedemon.

#### 4.148

To these then, I say, Theras was preparing to set forth, taking with him people from the tribes, and intending to settle together with those who have been mentioned, not with any design to drive them out, but on the contrary claiming them very strongly as kinfolk. And when the Minyai after having escaped from the prison went and sat down on Tay getos, Theras entreated of the Lacedemonians, as they were proposing to put them to death, that no slaughter might take place, and at the same time he engaged himself to take them forth out of

*vocabulary*

ἀπόγονος descended from

διαιρέω divide, distinguish, distribute

ἕξ six ~hexagon

ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic

ἐπικρατέω rule over

ἐπωνύμιος called, named

θεοπρόπιον prophecy ~theology

ἰδρύω establish

κτίζω found, populate ~oxytocin

λύκος wolf ~lycanthropy

νεηνίσκος young man

οἷς sheep ~ewe

οὔτις nobody, nothing

πορθέω sack, ravage, plunder

πύργος ramparts, tower; line of troops

συμπλέω sail with ~float

ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain

φυλή (ῥ) tribe, military unit

δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, τρισὶ τριηκοντέροισι  
 εἰς τοὺς Μεμβιάρου ἀπογόνους ἔπλωσε, οὐτι πάντας  
 ἄγων τοὺς Μινύας ἀλλ' ὀλίγους τινάς. οἱ γὰρ πλεῦνες  
 αὐτῶν ἐτράποντο εἰς τοὺς Παρωρέατας καὶ Καύκωνας,  
 τούτους δὲ ἐξελάσαντες ἐκ τῆς χώρας σφέας αὐτοὺς  
 ἔξ μοίρας διεΐλον, καὶ ἔπειτα ἔκτισαν πόλιος τάσδε  
 ἐν αὐτοῖσι, Λέπρεον Μάκιστον Φρίξας Πύργον Ἑπιον  
 Νούδιον. τούτων δὲ τὰς πλεῦνας ἐπ' ἐμέο Ἡλείοι  
 ἐπόρθησαν. τῇ δὲ νήσῳ ἐπὶ τοῦ οἰκιστέω Θήρα ἢ ἐπωνυμίῃ  
 ἐγένετο.

## 4.149

Ὁ δὲ παῖς οὐ γὰρ ἔφη οἱ συμπλεύσεσθαι, τοιγαρῶν ἔφη  
 αὐτὸν καταλείψειν ὅν ἐν λύκοισι. ἐπὶ τοῦ ἔπεος τούτου  
 οὖνομα τῷ νεηνίσκῳ τούτῳ Οἰόλυκος ἐγένετο, καί κως τὸ  
 οὖνομα τοῦτο ἐπεκράτησε. Οἰολύκου δὲ γίνεται Αἰγεύς,  
 ἐπ' οὗ Αἰγεῖδαι καλέονται φυλὴ μεγάλη ἐν Σπάρτῃ. τοῖσι  
 δὲ ἐν τῇ φυλῇ ταύτῃ ἀνδράσι οὐ γὰρ ὑπέμειναν τὰ τέκνα,  
 ἰδρύσαντο ἐκ θεοπροπίου Ἑρινύων τῶν Λαΐου τε καὶ

δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, τρισὶ τριηκοντέροισι  
 εἰς τοὺς Μεμβιάρου |descended from ἄλωση, |nobody, ἵντας  
 |nothing  
 ἄγων τοὺς Μινύας ἀλλ' ὀλίγους τινάς. οἱ γὰρ πλεῦνες  
 αὐτῶν ἐτράποντο εἰς τοὺς Παρωρέας καὶ Καύκωνας,  
 τούτους δὲ |drive out ἐκ τῆς χώρας σφέας αὐτοὺς  
 ἕξ μοίρας |divide, , distinquish, distribute -ῖπειτα |found, πόλιας τάσδε  
 |populate  
 ἐν αὐτοῖσι, Λέπρεον Μάκιστον Φρίξας |wall, Ἐπιον  
 |tower  
 Νούδιον. τουτέων δὲ τὰς πλεῦνας ἐπ' ἐμέο Ἥλεις  
 |sack τῇ δὲ νήσῳ ἐπὶ τοῦ οἰκιστέω Θήρα ἢ |called,  
 |named  
 ἐγένετο.

## 4.149

Ὁ δὲ παῖς οὐ γὰρ ἔφη οἱ |sail with , τοιγαρὼν ἔφη  
 αὐτὸν καταλείψειν |sheep. |wolf . ἐπὶ τοῦ ἔπος τούτου  
 οὖνομα τῷ |young man οὕτω Οἰόλυκος ἐγένετο, καί κως τὸ  
 οὖνομα τοῦτο |rule over . Οἰολύκου δὲ γίνεται Αἰγείς,  
 ἐπ' οὗ Αἰγείδαι καλέονται |tribe μεγάλη ἐν Σπάρτῃ. τοῖσι  
 δὲ ἐν τῇ |tribe ταύτῃ ἀνδράσι οὐ γὰρ |stay behind, await ἵνα,  
 |establish ἐκ |prophecy Ἐρινύων τῶν Λαῖου τε καὶ

the land. The Lacedemonians having agreed to this proposal, he sailed away with three thirty-oared galleys to the descendants of Membliaros, not taking with him by any means all the Minyai, but a few only; for the greater number of them turned towards the land of the Paroreatai and Caucones, and having driven these out of their country, they parted themselves into six divisions and founded in their territory the following towns,— Lepreon, Makistos, Phrixai, Pyrgos, Epion, Nudion; of these the Eleians sacked the greater number within my own lifetime. The island meanwhile got its name of Thera after Theras who led the settlement.

#### 4.149

And since his son said that he would not sail with him, therefore he said that he would leave him behind as a sheep among wolves; and in accordance with that saying this young man got the name of Oiolykos, and it chanced that this name prevailed over his former name: then from Oiolykos was begotten Aigeus, after whom are called the Aigeidai, a powerful clan in Sparta: and the men of this tribe, since their children did not live to grow up, established by the suggestion of an oracle a temple to the

*vocabulary***ἀλογίη** disrespect, disregard; unreason**ἀπόγονος** descended from**ἀποικία** colony**ἀφανής** unseen, occult, obscure**βαρύς** heavy ~baritone**βασιλεύω** be king**ἐκατόμβη** hecatomb**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

Οἰδιπόδεω ἱρόν· καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ὑπέμειναν.... τὸντὸ τοῦτο  
καὶ ἐν Θήῃ τοῖσι ἀπὸ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων γεγονόσι.

## 4.150

Μέχρι μὲν νυν τούτου τοῦ λόγου Λακεδαιμόνιοι Θηραίοισι  
κατὰ ταῦτὰ λέγουσι, τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου μῦθοι Θηραῖοι  
ᾧδε γενέσθαι λέγουσι. Γρίννος ὁ Αἰσανίου ἐὼν Ψήρα  
τούτου ἀπόγονος καὶ βασιλεύων Θήρης τῆς νήσου ἀπῖκετο  
ἐς Δελφούς, ἄγων ἀπὸ τῆς πόλιος ἑκατόμβην· εἶποντο  
δέ οἱ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ποληγέων καὶ δὴ καὶ Βάττος  
ὁ Πολυμνήστου, ἐὼν γένος Εὐφημίδης τῶν Μινυέων.  
χρεωμένῳ δὲ τῷ Γρίνῳ τῷ, βασιλεί τῶν Θηραίων περὶ  
ἄλλων χρᾶ ἢ Πυθίῃ κτίζειν ἐν Λιβύῃ πόλιν. ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο  
λέγων «ἐγὼ μὲν ὦναξ πρεσβύτερός τε ἤδη εἰμὶ καὶ βαρὺς  
ἀείρεσθαι· σὺ δὲ τινὰ τῶνδε τῶν νεωτέρων κέλευε ταῦτα  
ποιέειν.» ἅμα τε ἔλεγε ταῦτα καὶ ἐδείκνυε ἐς τὸν Βάττον.  
τότε μὲν τοσαῦτα. μετὰ δὲ ἀπελθόντες ἀλογίην εἶχον  
τοῦ χρηστηρίου, οὔτε Λιβύην εἰδότες ὅκου γῆς εἴη οὔτε  
τολμώντες ἐς ἀφανὲς χρῆμα ἀποστέλλειν ἀποικίην.



Οἶδιπόδεω ἱρόν· καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο |stay behind, await ᾧ τὸ τοῦτο  
καὶ ἐν Θήῃ τοῖσι ἀπὸ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων γεγονόσι.

4.150

Μέχρι μὲν νυν τούτου τοῦ λόγου Λακεδαιμόνιοι Θηραίοισι  
κατὰ ταῦτὰ λέγουσι, τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου μῦνοι Θηραῖοι  
ὧδε γενέσθαι λέγουσι. Γρίννος ὁ Αἰσανίου ἐὼν Ψήρα  
τούτου |descended from |be king Θήρης τῆς νήσου ἀπῖκετο  
ἐς Δελφούς, ἄγων ἀπὸ τῆς πόλιος |hecatomb εἶποντο  
δέ οἱ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν πολιητέων καὶ δὴ καὶ Βάττος  
ὁ Πολυμνήστου, ἐὼν γένος Εὐφημίδης τῶν Μινυέων.  
χρεωμένῳ δὲ τῷ Γρίνῳ τῷ, βασιλεί τῶν Θηραίων περὶ  
ἄλλων χρᾶ ἣ Πυθίῃ |found, ἐν Λιβύῃ πόλιν. ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο  
|populate  
λέγων «ἐγὼ μὲν ὦναξ πρεσβύτερός τε ἤδη εἰμὶ καὶ |heavy  
αἰρέσθαι· σὺ δὲ τινὰ τῶνδε τῶν νεωτέρων κέλευε ταῦτα  
ποιέειν.» ἅμα τε ἔλεγε ταῦτα καὶ ἐδείκνυε ἐς τὸν Βάττον.  
τότε μὲν τοσαῦτα. μετὰ δὲ ἀπελθόντες |disrespect, |disre-  
|garg; unreason  
τοῦ |oracle, , οὔτε Λιβύην εἰδότες ὅκου γῆς εἴη οὔτε  
|response  
τολμώντες ἐς |unseen, ὁρᾶμα ἀποστέλλειν ἀποικίην.  
|cult, obscure

Avenging Deities of Laïos and OEdipus, and after this the same thing was continued in Thera by the descendants of these men.

#### 4.150

Up to this point of the story the Lacedemonians agree in their report with the men of Thera; but in what is to come it is those of Thera alone who report that it happened as follows. Grinnos the son of Aisanios, a descendant of the Theras who has been mentioned, and king of the island of Thera, came to Delphi bringing the offering of a hecatomb from his State; and there were accompanying him, besides others of the citizens, also Battos the son of Polymnestos, who was by descent of the family of Euphemos of the race of the Minyai. Now when Grinnos the king of the Theraians was consulting the Oracle about other matters, the Pythian prophetess gave answer bidding him found a city in Libya; and he made reply saying: "Lord, I am by this time somewhat old and heavy to stir, but do thou bid some one of these younger ones do this." As he thus said he pointed towards Battos. So far at that time: but afterwards when he had come away they were in difficulty about the saying of the Oracle, neither having any knowledge of Libya, in what part of the earth it was, nor venturing to send a colony to the unknown.

*vocabulary***ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**ἀποικία** colony**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**δένδρεον** -οῦ tree**δένδρον** tree**δένδρος** tree**δίζημαι** seek ~zeal**καθηγέομαι** lead**κατάσκοπος** spy, inspector**μέτοικος** immigrant**μῆχος** -εος (n, 3) means, remedy

~mechanism

**μισθός** reward, wages**μισθόω** rent out; (pass) be hired**προφέρω** bring forth ~bear**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix**ὕω** (ῥ) to rain

## 4.151

Ἑπτὰ δὲ ἑτέων μετὰ ταῦτα οὐκ ὕε τὴν Θήρην, ἐν τοῖσι τὰ δένδρεα πάντα σφι τὰ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ πλὴν ἐνὸς ἐξαυάνθη. χρεωμένοισι δὲ τοῖσι Θηραίοισι προέφερε ἡ Πυθίη τὴν ἐς Λιβύην ἀποικίην. ἐπεῖτε δὲ κακοῦ οὐδὲν ἦν σφι μῆχος, πέμπουσι ἐς Κρήτην ἀγγέλους διζημένους εἴ τις Κρητῶν ἢ μετοίκων ἀπιγμένος εἴη ἐς Λιβύην. περιπλανώμενοι δὲ αὐτὴν οὗτοι ἀπίκοντο καὶ ἐς Ἰτανον πόλιν, ἐν ταύτῃ δὲ συμμίσγουσι ἀνδρὶ πορφυρεῖ τῷ οὔνομα ἦν Κορώβιος, ὃς ἔφη ὑπ' ἀνέμων ἀπενειχθεὶς ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Λιβύην καὶ Λιβύης ἐς Πλατέαν νήσον. μισθῷ, δὲ τοῦτον πείσαντες ἤγον ἐς Θήρην, ἐκ δὲ Θήρης ἔπλεον κατάσκοποι ἄνδρες τὰ πρῶτα οὐ πολλοί· κατηγησαμένου δὲ τοῦ Κορωβίου ἐς τὴν νήσον ταύτην δὴ τὴν Πλατέαν, τὸν μὲν Κορώβιον λείπουσι, σιτία καταλιπόντες ὅσων δὴ μηνῶν, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἔπλεον τὴν ταχίστην ἀπαγγελέοντες Θηραίοισι περὶ τῆς νήσου.

4.151

Ἐπτά δὲ ἐτέων μετὰ ταῦτα οὐκ ἔειπεν τὴν Θήρην, ἐν τοῖσι τὰ  
 δένδρεα πάντα σφί τὰ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ πλὴν ἑνὸς ἐξαυάνθη.  
 χρεωμένοισι δὲ τοῖσι Θηραίοισι |bring forth ἡ Πυθίη τὴν ἐς  
 Λιβύην ἀποικίην. ἐπεῖτε δὲ κακοῦ οὐδὲν ἦν σφί |means,  
 πέμπουσι ἐς Κρήτην ἀγγέλους |seek εἴ τις Κρητῶν  
 ἢ |immigrant ἀπιγμένος εἴη ἐς Λιβύην. περιπλανώμενοι  
 δὲ αὐτὴν οὗτοι ἀπίκοντο καὶ ἐς Ἰτανον πόλιν, ἐν ταύτῃ  
 δὲ συμμίσγουσι ἀνδρὶ πορφυρεῖ τῷ οὐνόμα ἦν Κορώβιος,  
 ὃς ἔφη ὑπ' ἀνέμων |carry off ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Λιβύην καὶ  
 Λιβύης ἐς Πλατέαν νήσον. μισθῷ, δὲ τοῦτον πείσαντες  
 ἦγον ἐς Θήρην, ἐκ δὲ Θήρης ἔπλεον |spy, inspector ἄνδρες  
 τὰ πρῶτα οὐ πολλοί· |lead δὲ τοῦ Κορωβίου  
 ἐς τὴν νήσον ταύτην δὴ τὴν Πλατέαν, τὸν μὲν Κορώβιον  
 λείπουσι, σιτία καταλιπόντες ὅσων δὴ μηνῶν, αὐτοὶ δὲ  
 ἔπλεον τὴν ταχίστην |announce, order, Θηραίοισι περὶ τῆς  
 |promise  
 νήσου.

## 4.151

Then after this for seven years there was no rain in Thera, and in these years all the trees in their island were withered up excepting one: and when the Theraians consulted the Oracle, the Pythian prophetess alleged this matter of colonising Libya to be the cause. As then they had no remedy for their evil, they sent messengers to Crete, to find out whether any of the Cretans or of the sojourners in Crete had ever come to Libya. These as they wandered round about the country came also the city of Itanos, and there they met with a fisher for purple named Corobios, who said that he had been carried away by winds and had come to Libya, and in Libya to the island of Platea. This man they persuaded by payment of money and took him to Thera, and from Thera there set sail men to explore, at first not many in number; and Corobios having guided them to this same island of Platea, they left Corobios there, leaving behind with him provisions for a certain number of months, and sailed themselves as quickly as possible to make report about the island to the men of Thera.

*vocabulary*

**ἀκήρατος** unharmed, pure  
**ἀνατίθηναι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
 (mp) reproach  
**ἀνίηναι** urge, impel; release ~jet  
**ἀπηνλιώτης** -ου (m, 1) east wind  
**ἀποδημέω** be absent, abroad  
**ἀπονοστέω** go home  
**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear  
**ἀτρέκεια** precise certainty  
**ἀφηνλιώτης** -ου (m, 1) east wind  
**γλίχομαι** cling to, long for  
**γρύψ** griffin  
**δέκατος** tenth ~decimal  
**διεκπεράω** pass out through  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐμπόριον** immigrant, metic, trading  
 post

**ἐμπόριος** immigrant, metic, trading  
 post  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
 ~heresy  
**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse  
**ἐρίζω** struggle, contend  
**κερδαίνω** profit, take advantage  
**κρητήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine  
**ναύκληρος** ship master, landlord  
**πέριξ** all around  
**πομπή** a sending, expedition ~pomp  
**στήλη** post, column  
**σύγκειμαι** be composed of, agreed on  
**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight  
 ~talent  
**φορτίον** burden, load

## 4.152

Ἀποδημεόντων δὲ τούτων πλέω χρόνον τοῦ συγκειμένου  
τὸν Κορώβιον ἐπέλιπε τὰ πάντα, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα νηὺς  
Σαμίη, τῆς ναύκληρος ἦν Κωλαῖος, πλέουσα ἐπ' Αἰγύπτου  
ἀπηνείχθη ἐς τὴν Πλατέαν ταύτην· πυθόμενοι δὲ οἱ  
Σάμιοι παρὰ τοῦ Κορωβίου τὸν πάντα λόγον, σιτία  
οἱ ἐνιαυτοῦ καταλείπουσι. αὐτοὶ δὲ ἀναχθέντες ἐκ τῆς  
νήσου καὶ γλιχόμενοι Αἰγύπτου ἔπλεον, ἀποφερόμενοι  
ἀπηλιώτη ἀνέμῳ· καὶ οὐ γὰρ ἀνίει τὸ πνεῦμα, Ἡρακλέας  
στήλας διεκπερήσαντες ἀπίκοντο ἐς Ταρτησσόν, θείῃ  
πομπῇ χρεώμενοι. τὸ δὲ ἐμπόριον τοῦτο ἦν ἀκήρατον  
τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον, ὥστε ἀπονοστήσαντες οὗτοι ὀπίσω  
μέγιστα δὴ Ἑλλήνων πάντων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἀτρεκεῖν  
ἴδμεν ἐκ φορτίων ἐκέρδησαν, μετὰ γε Σώστρατον τὸν  
Λαοδάμαντος Αἰγινήτην· τούτῳ γὰρ οὐκ οἶά τε ἐστὶ  
ἐρίσαι ἄλλον. οἱ δὲ Σάμιοι τὴν δεκάτην τῶν ἐπικερδίων  
ἐξελόντες ἕξ τάλαντα ἐποιήσαντο χαλκήιον κρητῆρος  
Ἀργολικοῦ τρόπον· περίξ δὲ αὐτοῦ γρυπῶν κεφαλαὶ  
πρόκροσσοί εἰσι. καὶ ἀνέθηκαν



4.152

|be absent, abroad δὲ τούτων πλέω χρόνον τοῦ |be composed  
 |of, agreed on  
 τὸν Κορώβιον |fail, not work πάντα, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα νηῦς  
 Σαμίῃ, τῆς |ship master, ἦν Κωλαῖος, πλέουσα ἐπ' Αἰγύπτου  
 |landlord  
 |carry off ἐς τὴν Πλατέαν ταύτην· πυθόμενοι δὲ οἱ  
 Σάμιοι παρὰ τοῦ Κορωβίου τὸν πάντα λόγον, σιτία  
 οἱ ἐνιαυτοῦ καταλείπουσι. αὐτοὶ δὲ ἀναχθέντες ἐκ τῆς  
 νήσου καὶ |cling to, long for, ὑπτου ἔπλεον, |carry off  
 ἀπηλιώτη ἀνέμῳ· καὶ οὐ γὰρ |urge, γὸ πνεῦμα, Ἡρακλέας  
 |impel;  
 |post, |pass out through ἀπὶκόντο ἐς Ταρτησσόν, θείη  
 |column  
 |a sending, |εἰώμενοι. τὸ δὲ ἐμπόριον τοῦτο ἦν |unharmful, pure  
 |expedition  
 τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον, ὥστε |go home οὔτοι ὀπίσω  
 μέγιστα δὲ |Greek πάντων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἀτρεκεῖν  
 ἴδμεν ἐκ |burden, |profit, take, μετὰ γε Σώστρατον τὸν  
 |load |advantage  
 Λαοδάμαντος Αἰγινήτην· τούτῳ γὰρ οὐκ οἶά τε ἐστὶ  
 |struggle, ἄλλον. οἱ δὲ Σάμιοι τὴν |tenth τῶν ἐπικερδίων  
 |contend  
 |pick, steal; δέδι- |scale, a unit 'ποίησαντο χαλκήμιον |mixing bowl for wine  
 |cate; destroy |of weight  
 Ἀργολικοῦ τρόπον· |all around αὐτοῦ γρυπῶν κεφαλαὶ  
 πρόκροσσοί εἰσι. καὶ |consecrate, lay on, im-  
 |pute; (mp) reproach

## 4.152

Since however these stayed away longer than the time appointed, Corobios found himself destitute; and after this a ship of Samos, of which the master was Colaïos, while sailing to Egypt was carried out of its course and came to this island of Platea; and the Samians hearing from Corobios the whole story left him provisions for a year. They themselves then put out to sea from the island and sailed on, endeavouring to reach Egypt but carried away continually by the East Wind; and as the wind did not cease to blow, they passed through the Pillars of Heracles and came to Tartessos, guided by divine providence. Now this trading-place was at that time untouched by any, so that when these returned back home they made profit from their cargo greater than any other Hellenes of whom we have certain knowledge, with the exception at least of Sostratos the son of Laodamas the Eginetan, for with him it is not possible for any other man to contend. And the Samians set apart six talents, the tenth part of their gains, and had a bronze vessel made like an Argolic mixing-bowl with round it heads of griffins projecting in a row; and this

*vocabulary*

**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἐπίλοιπος** remaining  
**ἐπτάπηχυς** 7 cubits long  
**ἐρείδω** press; mid: lean something  
 against something, prop up  
**κολοσσός** statue, big statue  
**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin  
**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-

forms) allot; receive  
**οὐδαμὸς** not anyone  
**πάλος** lot; ballot  
**πεντηκόντερος** (f) ship with 50 oars  
**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;  
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**ὕφιστημι** promise, undertake ~station  
**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy  
**χῶρος** place ~heir

ἐς τὸ Ἥραιον, ὑποστήσαντες αὐτῷ τρεῖς χαλκίους  
κολοσσούς ἐπταπήχας τοῖσι γούνασι ἐρηρισμένους.  
Κυρηναίοισι δὲ καὶ Θηραίοισι ἐς Σαμίους ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ  
ἔργου πρῶτα φιλῖαι μεγάλαι συνεκρήθησαν.

## 4.153

Οἱ δὲ Θηραῖοι ἐπεῖτε τὸν Κορώβιον λιπόντες ἐν τῇ νήσῳ  
ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὴν Θήρην, ἀπήγγελλον ὥς σφι εἴη νῆσος  
ἐπὶ Λιβύῃ ἐκτισμένη. Θηραίοισι δὲ ἔαδε ἀδελφεόν τε  
ἀπ' ἀδελφεοῦ πέμπειν πάλω λαγχάνοντα καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν  
χώρων ἀπάντων ἐπτα ἐόντων ἄνδρας, εἶναι δὲ σφέων  
καὶ ἡγεμόνα καὶ βασιλέα Βάττον. οὕτω δὴ στέλλουσι δύο  
πεντηκοντέρους ἐς τὴν Πλατείαν.

## 4.154

Ταῦτα δὲ Θηραῖοι λέγουσι, τὰ δ' ἐπίλοιπα τοῦ λόγου  
συμφέρονται ἤδη Θηραῖοι Κυρηναίοισι. Κυρηναῖοι γὰρ  
τὰ περὶ Βάττον οὐδαμῶς ὁμολογέουσι Θηραίοισι λέγουσι  
γὰρ οὕτω. ἔστι τῆς Κρήτης Ὀαξὸς πόλις, ἐν τῇ

ἐς τὸ Ἑβραϊον, 

promise,
undertake

 αὐτῷ τρεῖς χαλκοῦς

statue,	big 7 cubits long	τοῖσι γούνασι	press; mid: lean,
statue			prop

Κυρηναίοισι δὲ καὶ Θηραίοισι ἐς Σαμίους ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ  
ἔργου πρῶτα φιλίας μεγάλαι συνεκρήθησαν.

## 4.153

Οἱ δὲ Θηραῖοι ἐπείτε τὸν Κορώβιον λιπόντες ἐν τῇ νήσῳ

ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὴν Θήρην, | announce, or- ὥς σφι εἶη νῆσος  
| order, promise

ἐπὶ Λιβύῃ | found, . Θηραίοισι δὲ | please ἰδελφεόν τε  
| populate

ἀπ' ἀδελφείου πέμπειν πάλω | be allotted; (esp. -ἐλα- forms) allot; receive

|place ἀπάντων ἐπὶ τὰ ἑόντων ἄνδρας, εἶναι δὲ σφέων

καὶ ἡγεμόνα καὶ βασιλέα Βάπτον. οὕτω δὲ | prepare, send, furl

|ship with 50 oars    ἐς τὴν Πλατείαν.

## 4.154

Ταῦτα δὲ Θηραῖοι λέγουσι, τὰ δ' remaining τοῦ λόγου

bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen

τὰ περὶ Βάπτον | not anyone ἔμολογέουσι Θηραίοισι λέγουσι

γὰρ οὕτω. ἔστι τῆς Κρήτης Ὀαξὸς πόλις, ἐν τῇ

they dedicated as an offering in the temple of Hera, setting as supports under it three colossal statues of bronze seven cubits in height, resting upon their knees. By reason first of this deed great friendship was formed by those of Kyrene and Thera with the Samians.

#### 4.153

The Theraians meanwhile, when they arrived at Thera after having left Corobios in the island, reported that they had colonised an island on the coast of Libya: and the men of Thera resolved to send one of every two brothers selected by lot and men besides taken from all the regions of the island, which are seven in number; and further that Battos should be both their leader and their king. Thus then they sent forth two fifty-oared galleys to Platea.

#### 4.154

This is the report of the Theraians; and for the remainder of the account from this point onwards the Theraians are in agreement with the men of Kyrene: from this point onwards, I say, since in what concerns Battos the Kyrenians tell by no means the same tale as those of Thera; for their account is this:— There is in Crete

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read,  
 understand, persuade  
**ἀνασπάω** draw again ~spatula  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀπάτη** trick, fraud, deceit  
 ~apatosaurus  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float  
**διαδέω** bandage, bind  
**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken  
**διηκονέω** serve, minister to  
**δικαίω** demand/make justice  
**ἐμπορος** passenger; merchant ~pierce  
**ἐξορκόω** swear in  
**ἐπεισέρχομαι** come in also

**ἐπιφέρω** bestow, impute ~bear  
**καταποντόω** throw into the sea;  
 drown  
**μαχλοσύνη** lust  
**μητρυιά** stepmother ~maternal  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
 ~mechanism  
**ξείνιος** of hospitality  
**πέλαγος** -ους (n, 3) the open sea  
 ~pelagic  
**περιημεκτέω** be aggrieved  
**σχοινίον** cord  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent

ἐγένετο Ἐτέαρχος βασιλεύς, ὃς ἐπὶ θυγατρὶ ἀμήτορι τῇ  
 οὖνομα ἦν Φρονίμη, ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἔγημε ἄλλην γυναῖκα.  
 ἡ δὲ ἐπεσελθοῦσα ἐδικαίου καὶ τῷ ἔργῳ εἶναι μητρυνή  
 τῇ Φρονίμῃ, παρέχουσα τε κακὰ καὶ πᾶν ἐπ' αὐτῇ  
 μηχανωμένη, καὶ τέλος μαχλοσύνην ἐπενείκασά οἱ πείθει  
 τὸν ἄνδρα ταῦτα ἔχειν οὕτω. ὁ δὲ ἀναγνωσθεὶς ὑπὸ τῆς  
 γυναικὸς ἔργον οὐκ ὅσιον ἐμηχανᾶτο ἐπὶ τῇ; θυγατρὶ. ἦν  
 γὰρ δὴ Θεμίσων ἀνὴρ Θηραῖος ἔμπορος ἐν τῇ Ὀαζῷ.  
 τοῦτον ὁ Ἐτέαρχος παραλαβὼν ἐπὶ ξείνια ἐξορκοῖ ἡ  
 μὲν οἱ διηκονήσῃν ὅ τι ἂν δεηθῇ. ἐπεῖτε δὴ ἐξώρκωσε,  
 ἀγαγὼν οἱ παραδιδοῖ τὴν ἐωντοῦ θυγατέρα καὶ ταύτην  
 ἐκέλευε καταποντῶσαι ἀπαγαγόντα. ὁ δὲ Θεμίσων  
 περιημεκτήσας τῇ ἀπάτῃ τοῦ ὅρκου καὶ διαλυσάμενος τὴν  
 ξεινίην ἐποίεε τοιάδε· παραλαβὼν τὴν παῖδα ἀπέπλεε· ὥς  
 δὲ ἐγένετο ἐν τῷ πελάγῃ, ἀποσιεύμενος τὴν ἐξόρκωσιν  
 τοῦ Ἐτεάρχου, σχοινίοισι αὐτὴν διαδήσας κατήκε ἐς τὸ  
 πέλαγος, ἀνασπάσας δὲ ἀπύκετο ἐς τὴν Θήρην.



ἐγένετο Ἐτέαρχος βασιλεύς, ὃς ἐπὶ θυγατρὶ ἀμήτορι τῇ  
 οὔνομα ἦν |sensible, , ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἔγημε ἄλλην γυναῖκα.  
 |prudent  
 ἡ δὲ |come in also |demand/make justice ὡς γὰρ εἶναι |stepmother  
 τῇ |sensible, , παρέχουσα τε κακὰ καὶ πᾶν ἐπ' αὐτῇ  
 |prudent  
 |build, contrive , καὶ τέλος |lust |bestow, οἱ πεῖθει  
 |impute  
 τὸν ἄνδρα ταῦτα ἔχειν οὕτω. ὁ δὲ ἀναγνωσθεὶς ὑπὸ τῆς  
 γυναικὸς ἔργον οὐκ ὅσιον |build, ἐπὶ τῇ; θυγατρὶ. ἦν  
 |contrive  
 γὰρ δὴ Θεμισίων ἀνὴρ Θηραῖος |passenger; ἐν τῇ Ὀαζῶ·  
 |merchant  
 τοῦτον ὁ Ἐτέαρχος παραλαβὼν ἐπὶ |of hos-swear in ἡ  
 |pitality  
 μέν οἱ |serve, ὅ τι ἂν δεηθῇ. ἐπείτε δὴ |swear in ,  
 |minister  
 ἀγαγὼν |to οἱ παραδιδόει τὴν ἑωυτοῦ θυγατέρα καὶ ταύτην  
 ἐκέλευε |throw into the sea; |lead away, back ὁ δὲ Θεμισίων  
 |drown  
 |be aggrieved τῇ |trick, τοῦ ὅρκου καὶ |break up; relax, τὴν  
 |fraud |weaken  
 ξεινίην ἐποίεε |such παραλαβὼν τὴν παιδα |sail away ὥς  
 δὲ ἐγένετο ἐν τῷ |the open sea ὁ οἰσιεύμενος τὴν ἐξόρκωσιν  
 τοῦ Ἐτεάρχου, |cord αὐτὴν |bandage, bind ἤκε ἐς τὸ  
 |the open |draw again δὲ ἀπῖκετο ἐς τὴν Θήρην.  
 |sea

a city called Oäxos in which one Etearchos became king, who when he had a daughter, whose mother was dead, named Phronime, took to wife another woman notwithstanding. She having come in afterwards, thought fit to be a stepmother to Phronime in deed as well as in name, giving her evil treatment and devising everything possible to her hurt; and at last she brings against her a charge of lewdness and persuades her husband that the truth is so. He then being convinced by his wife, devised an unholy deed against the daughter: for there was in Oäxos one Themison, a merchant of Thera, whom Etearchos took to himself as a guest-friend and caused him to swear that he would surely serve him in whatsoever he should require: and when he had caused him to swear this, he brought and delivered to him his daughter and bade him take her away and cast her into the sea. Themison then was very greatly vexed at the deceit practised in the matter of the oath, and he dissolved his guest-friendship and did as follows, that is to say, he received the girl and sailed away, and when he got out into the open sea, to free himself from blame as regards the oath which Etearchos had made him swear, he tied her on each side with ropes and let her down into the sea, and then drew her up and came to Thera.

*vocabulary***ἀνδρόω** make a man**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary**δόκιμος** trustworthy; excellent**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus**ἐκγίγνομαι** be born; be by birth

~genus

**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἐπειρωτάω** consult, ask**ἐπωνύμιος** called, named**θεσπίζω** prophecy**μετονομάζω** rename**μίν** him, her, it**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;  
still exist**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

## 4.155

Ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ τὴν Φρονίμην παραλαβὼν πολύμνηστος, ἐὼν τῶν Θηραίων ἀνὴρ δόκιμος, ἐπαλλακεύετο. χρόνου δὲ περιούντος ἐξεγένετό οἱ παῖς ἰσχύφωνος καὶ τραυλός, τῷ οὐνόμα ἐτέθη Βάττος, ὡς Θηραῖοι τε καὶ Κυρηναῖοι λέγουσι, ὡς μέντοι ἐγὼ δοκέω, ἄλλο τι. Βάττος δὲ μετωνομάσθη, ἐπεῖτε ἐς Λιβύην ἀπύκετο, ἀπὸ τε τοῦ χρηστηρίου τοῦ γενομένου ἐν Δελφοῖσι αὐτῷ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς τιμῆς τὴν ἔσχε τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ποιεύμενος. Λίβυες γὰρ βασιλέα βάττον καλέουσι, καὶ τούτου εἵνεκα δοκέω θεσπίζουσιν τὴν Πυθίην καλέσαι μιν Λιβυκῇ γλώσση, εἰδυῖαν ὡς βασιλεὺς ἔσται ἐν Λιβύῃ. ἐπεῖτε γὰρ ἡνδρώθη οὗτος, ἦλθε ἐς Δελφούς περὶ τῆς φωνῆς· ἐπειρωτῶντι δέ οἱ χρᾶ ἡ Πυθίη τάδε.

Βάττ' ἐπὶ φωνὴν ἦλθες. ἄναξ δέ σε Φοῖβος Ἀπόλλων ἐς Λιβύην πέμπει μηλοτρόφον οἰκιστῆρα, ὥσπερ εἰ εἴποι Ἑλλάδι γλώσση χρεωμένη «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπὶ φωνὴν ἦλθες.» ὃ δ' ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε. «ὦναξ, ἐγὼ μὲν ἦλθον

4.155

|thence δὲ τὴν |sensible, παραλαβὼν πολύμνηστος, ἐὼν  
 |prudent  
 τῶν Θηραίων ἀνὴρ |trustworthy;...αλλακεύετο. χρόνου δὲ  
 |excellent  
 |be superior to; be ἐνετό οἱ παῖς ἰσχύφωνος καὶ τραυλός,  
 |left over; still exist  
 τῷ οὐνομα ἐτέθη Βάττος, ὡς Θηραῖοι τε καὶ Κυρηναῖοι  
 λέγουσι, ὡς μέντοι ἐγὼ δοκέω, ἄλλο τι· Βάττος δὲ  
 |rename , ἐπείτε ἐς Λιβύην ἀπύκετο, ἀπὸ τε τοῦ  
 |oracle, τοῦ γενομένου ἐν Δελφοῖσι αὐτῷ καὶ ἀπὸ  
 |response  
 τῆς τιμῆς τὴν ἔσχε τὴν |called, ποιεύμενος. Λίβυες  
 |named  
 γὰρ βασιλέα βάττον καλέουσι, καὶ τούτου εἵνεκα δοκέω  
 |prophecy τὴν Πυθίην καλέσαι μιν Λιβυκῇ |tongue, ,  
 |language  
 εἰδυῖαν ὡς βασιλεὺς ἔσται ἐν Λιβύῃ. ἐπείτε γὰρ |make a man  
 οὗτος, ἦλθε ἐς Δελφούς περὶ τῆς φωνῆς· |consult, ask δέ  
 οἱ χρᾶ ἡ Πυθίη τάδε.

Βάττ' ἐπὶ φωνὴν ἦλθες. ἄναξ δέ σε Φοῖβος Ἀπόλλων  
 ἐς Λιβύην πέμπει μηλοτρόφον οἰκιστῆρα, ὥσπερ εἰ  
 εἶποι Ἑλλάδι |tongue, χρεωμένη «ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπὶ φωνὴν  
 |language  
 ἦλθες.» ὁ δ' ἀμείβετο τοῖσιδε. «ὦναξ, ἐγὼ μὲν ἦλθον

## 4.155

After that, Polymnestos, a man of repute among the Theraians, received Phronime from him and kept her as his concubine; and in course of time there was born to him from her a son with an impediment in his voice and lisping, to whom, as both Theraians and Kyrenians say, was given the name Battos, but I think that some other name was then given, and he was named Battos instead of this after he came to Libya, taking for himself this surname from the oracle which was given to him at Delphi and from the rank which he had obtained; for the Libyans call a king battos: and for this reason, I think, the Pythian prophetess in her prophesying called him so, using the Libyan tongue, because she knew that he would be a king in Libya. For when he had grown to be a man, he came to Delphi to inquire about his voice; and when he asked, the prophetess thus answered him:

“For a voice thou camest, O Battos, but thee lord Phoebus Apollo Sendeth as settler forth to the Libyan land sheep-abounding,”

Just as if she should say using the Hellenic tongue, “For a voice thou camest, O king.” He thus made answer: “Lord, I came to thee to

*vocabulary***ἄγνοέω** be ignorant of ~gnostic**ἄδύνατος** unable; impossible**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀποικίζω** send away, resettle

~economics

**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float**θεσπίζω** prophecy**κατάγω** lead down/home; land

~demagogue

**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin**μεταξύ** between**οὐκί** intensified 'not'**πεντηκόντερος** (f) ship with 50 oars**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune

παρὰ σὲ χρησάμενος περὶ τῆς φωνῆς, σὺ δέ μοι ἄλλα ἀδύνατα χρᾶς, κελεύων Λιβύην ἀποικίζειν τέω δυνάμι, κοίῃ χειρί;» ταῦτα λέγων οὐκ ἔπειθε ἄλλα οἱ χρᾶν· ὥς δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα ἐθέσπιζέ οἱ καὶ πρότερον, οἷχετο μεταξὺ ἀπολιπὼν ὁ Βάττος ἐς τὴν Θήρην.

## 4.156

Μετὰ δὲ αὐτῷ τε τούτῳ καὶ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι Θηραίοισι συνεφέρετο παλιγκότως. ἀγνοεῦντες δὲ τὰς συμφορὰς οἱ Θηραῖοι ἔπεμπον ἐς Δελφοὺς περὶ τῶν παρεόντων κακῶν. ἡ δὲ Πυθίῃ σφι ἔχρησε συγκτίζουσι Βάττω Κυρήνην τῆς Λιβύης ἄμεινον πρήξειν. ἀπέστελλον μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν Βάττον οἱ Θηραῖοι δύο πεντηκοντέροισι. πλώσαντες δὲ ἐς τὴν Λιβύην οὗτοι, οὐ γὰρ εἶχον ὅ τι ποιέωσι ἄλλο, ὀπίσω ἀπαλλάσσοντο ἐς τὴν Θήρην. οἱ δὲ Θηραῖοι καταγομένους ἔβαλλον καὶ οὐκ ἔων τῇ γῇ προσίσχυν, ἀλλ' ὀπίσω πλώειν ἐκέλευον. οἱ δὲ ἀναγκαζόμενοι ὀπίσω ἀπέπλεον καὶ ἔκτισαν νῆσον ἐπὶ Λιβύῃ κειμένην, τῇ οὖνομα, ὥς καὶ πρότερον εἰρέθη, ἐστὶ Βλατέα. λέγεται δὲ ἴση εἶναι ἡ νῆσος



παρὰ σὲ χρησάμενος περὶ τῆς φωνῆς, σὺ δέ μοι ἄλλα  
 |unable; χρᾶς, κελεύων Λιβύην |send away, resettlement δύναμι,  
 |impossible  
 κοίῃ χειρί;» ταῦτα λέγων |intensified 'not' ἄλλα οἱ χράν· ὥς  
 δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα |prophecy οἱ καὶ πρότερον, οἵχετο |between  
 ἀπολιπὼν ὁ Βάττος ἐς τὴν Θήρην.

## 4.156

Μετὰ δὲ αὐτῷ τε τούτῳ καὶ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι Θηραίοισι  
 |bring together; be expedient; |be ignorant of ἵνα τὰς συμφορὰς οἱ  
 |agree; (mp) happen  
 Θηραῖοι ἔπεμπον ἐς Δελφοὺς περὶ τῶν παρεόντων κακῶν.  
 ἡ δὲ Πυθίῃ σφι ἔχρησε συγκτίζουσι Βάττω Κυρήνην τῆς  
 Λιβύης ἄμεινον πρήξειν. ἀπέστελλον μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν  
 Βάττον οἱ Θηραῖοι δύο |ship with 50 oars . πλώσαντες δὲ ἐς  
 τὴν Λιβύην οὗτοι, οὐ γὰρ εἶχον ὅ τι ποιέωσι ἄλλο, ὀπίσω  
 |free from, remove; ἐς τὴν Θήρην. οἱ δὲ Θηραῖοι |lead down/home; land  
 |be freed, depart  
 ἔβαλλον καὶ οὐκ ἔων τῇ γῇ προσίσχαι, ἀλλ' ὀπίσω  
 πλώειν ἐκέλευον. οἱ δὲ ἀναγκαζόμενοι ὀπίσω |sail away  
 καὶ |found, νῆσον ἐπὶ Λιβύῃ κειμένην, τῇ οὖνομα, ὥς καὶ  
 |populate  
 πρότερον εἰρέθη, ἐστὶ Βλατέα. λέγεται δὲ ἴση εἶναι ἡ νῆσος

inquire concerning my voice, but thou answerest me other things which are not possible, bidding me go as a settler to Libya; but with what power, or with what force of men should I go?" Thus saying he did not at all persuade her to give him any other reply; and as she was prophesying to him again the same things as before, Battos departed while she was yet speaking, and went away to Thera.

**4.156**

After this there came evil fortune both to himself and to the other men of Thera; and the Theraians, not understanding that which befell them, sent to Delphi to inquire about the evils which they were suffering: and the Pythian prophetess gave them reply that if they joined with Battos in founding Kyrene in Libya, they would fare the better. After this the Theraians sent Battos with two fifty-oared galleys; and these sailed to Libya, and then came away back to Thera, for they did not know what else to do: and the Theraians pelted them with missiles when they endeavoured to land, and would not allow them to put to shore, but bade them sail back again. They accordingly being compelled sailed away back, and they made a settlement in an island lying near the coast of Libya, called, as was said before, Platea. This island is said to be of the same size as

*vocabulary***ἄγαμαι** wonder, admire; resent,

begudge

**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume**ἀποικία** colony**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin**νάπη** valley**παραρρέω** flow past, slip by**σοφία** skill; wisdom ~sophistry**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;

agree; (mp) happen ~bear

 **χρηστήριον** oracle, response**χρηστός** useful; brave, worthy**χῶρος** place ~heir

τῇ νῦν Κυρηναίων πόλι.

#### 4.157

Ταύτην οἰκέοντες δύο ἔτεα, οὐδὲν γάρ σφι χρηστὸν συνεφέρετο, ἓνα αὐτῶν καταλιπόντες οἱ λοιποὶ πάντες ἀπέπλεον ἐς Δελφούς, ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ χρηστήριον ἐχρέωντο, φάμενοι οἰκέειν τε τὴν Λιβύην καὶ οὐδὲν ἄμεινον πρήσσειν οἰκεῦντες. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη σφι πρὸς ταῦτα χρᾶ τάδε.

Αἱ τὸ ἐμεῦ Λιβύην μηλοτρόφον οἶδας ἄμεινον, μὴ ἐλθὼν ἐλθόντος, ἄγαν ἄγαμαι σοφίην σευρ'.

Ἀκούσαντες δὲ τούτων οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Βάττον ἀπέπλων ὀπίσω· οὐ γὰρ δὴ σφεας ἀπίει ὁ θεὸς τῆς ἀποικίης, πρὶν δὴ ἀπίκωνται ἐς αὐτὴν Λιβύην. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐς τὴν νήσον καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τὸν ἔλιπον, ἔκτισαν αὐτῆς τῆς Λιβύης χώρον ἀντίον τῆς νήσου τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Ἄξιρις· τὸν νάπαι τε κάλλισται ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρα συγκληίουσι καὶ ποταμὸς τὰ ἐπὶ θάτερα παραρρέει.

τῇ νῦν Κυρηναίων πόλι.

4.157

Ταύτην οἰκέοντες δύο ἔτεα, οὐδὲν γάρ σφι useful; brave,  
worthy

bring together; be expedi-  
ent; agree; (mp) happen καταλιπόντες οἱ λοιποὶ πάντες

sail away ἐς Δελφούς, ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ oracle,  
response

ἐχρέωντο, φάμενοι οἰκέειν τε τὴν Λιβύην καὶ οὐδὲν ἄμεινον

πρήσσειν οἰκεῦντες. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη σφι πρὸς ταῦτα χρᾶ τάδε.

Αἰ τὸ ἐμεῦ Λιβύην μηλοτρόφον οἶδας ἄμεινον, μὴ ἐλθὼν

ἐλθόντος, ἄγαν admire;  
begrudge ὀφίην σευρ'.

Ἀκούσαντες δὲ τούτων οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Βάττον sail away

ὀπίσω· οὐ γὰρ δὴ σφεας ἀπίει ὁ θεὸς τῆς ἀποικίης, πρὶν δὴ

ἀπίκωνται ἐς αὐτὴν Λιβύην. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ ἐς τὴν νήσον

καὶ take up, re-  
cover, resume τὸν ἔλιπον, found,  
populate αὐτῆς τῆς Λιβύης

place ἀντίον τῆς νήσου τῷ οὐνόμα ἦν Ἄζιρις· τὸν valley

τε κάλλισται ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρα συγκληίουσι καὶ ποταμὸς τὰ

ἐπὶ θάτερα flow past, slip by

the now existing city of Kyrene.

**4.157**

In this they continued to dwell two years; but as they had no prosperity, they left one of their number behind and all the rest sailed away to Delphi, and having come to the Oracle they consulted it, saying that they were dwelling in Libya and that, though they were dwelling there, they fared none the better: and the Pythian prophetess made answer to them thus:

“Better than I if thou knowest the Libyan land sheep-abounding, Not having been there than I who have been, at thy wisdom I wonder.”

Having heard this Battos and his companions sailed away back again; for in fact the god would not let them off from the task of settlement till they had come to Libya itself: and having arrived at the island and taken up him whom they had left, they made a settlement in Libya itself at a spot opposite the island, called Aziris, which is enclosed by most fair woods on both sides and a river flows by it on one side.

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read,  
understand, persuade

**ἀποικία** colony

**διέξιμι** pass through; recount ~ion

**ἑβδομος** seventh

**ἐκκαίδεκα** 16

**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here

**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence

**ἕξ** six ~hexagon

**ἑσπέρα** evening, west

**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius

**κρήνη** well, spring

**παράγω** deflect; bring forward

**παραιτέομαι** entreat; beg for; decline

**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle

**τετραίνω** pierce ~tribulation

**χωρος** place ~heir

## 4.158

Τοῦτον οἶκεον τὸν χώρον ἐξ ἔτεα, ἐβδόμῳ δὲ σφέας ἔτει παραιτησάμενοι οἱ Λίβυες ὥς ἐς ἀμείνονα χώρον ἄξουσι, ἀνέγνωσαν ἐκλιπεῖν. ἦγον δὲ σφέας ἐνθεῦτεν οἱ Λίβυες ἀναστήσαντες πρὸς ἐσπέρην, καὶ τὸν κάλλιστον τῶν χώρων ἵνα διεξιόντες οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ ἴδοιεν, συμμετρησάμενοι τὴν ὥρην τῆς ἡμέρης νυκτὸς παρήγον. ἔστι δὲ τῷ χώρῳ τούτῳ οὖνομα Ἰρασα. ἀγαγόντες δὲ σφέας ἐπὶ κρήνην λεγομένην εἶναι Ἀπόλλωνος εἶπαν «ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐνθαῦτα ὑμῖν ἐπιτήδεον οἰκέειν. ἐνθαῦτα γὰρ ὁ οὐρανὸς τέτρηται.»

## 4.159

Ἐπὶ μὲν νυν Βάττου τε τοῦ οἰκιστέω τῆς ζόης, ἄρξαντος ἐπὶ τεσσεράκοντα ἔτεα, καὶ τοῦ παιδὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀρκεσίλεω ἄρξαντος ἐκκαίδεκα ἔτεα, οἶκεον οἱ Κυρηναῖοι ἐόντες τοσοῦτοι ὅσοι ἀρχὴν ἐς τὴν ἀποικίην ἐστάλησαν. ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ τρίτου, Βάττου τοῦ εὐδαίμονος καλεομένου, Ἕλληνας



4.158

Τοῦτον οἶκεον τὸν |place ἕξ ἔτεα, |seventh δὲ σφέας  
 ἔτει |entreat; beg for; de- οἱ Λίβυες ὥς ἐς ἀμείνονα |place  
 |cline  
 ἄξουσι, |read |leave out, pass over ἔσφας |thence οἱ  
 Λίβυες ἀναστήσαντες πρὸς ἐσπέρην, καὶ τὸν κάλλιστον  
 τῶν |place ἵνα |pass through; ἰ |Greek μὴ ἴδοιεν,  
 |recount  
 συμμετρησάμενοι τὴν ὥρην τῆς ἡμέρης νυκτὸς |deflect; bring  
 |forward  
 ἔστι δὲ τῷ |place τούτῳ οὖνομα Ἰρασα. ἀγαγόντες  
 δὲ σφέας ἐπὶ |well, λεγομένην εἶναι Ἀπόλλωνος εἶπαν  
 |spring  
 «ἄνδρες |Greek , |there, here ὑμῖν ἐπιτήδεον οἰκέειν.  
 |there, here, ἂρ ὁ οὐρανὸς |pierce .»

4.159

Ἐπὶ μὲν νυν Βάττου τε τοῦ οἰκιστέω τῆς ζόης, ἄρξαντος  
 ἐπὶ τεσσεράκοντα ἔτεα, καὶ τοῦ παιδὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀρκεσίλειω  
 ἄρξαντος |16 ἔτεα, οἶκεον οἱ Κυρηναῖοι ἐόντες  
 τοσοῦτοι ὅσοι ἀρχὴν ἐς τὴν ἀποικίην |prepare, send, furl ἔ  
 τοῦ τρίτου, Βάττου τοῦ |blessed with a αλεομένου, |Greek  
 |good genius

**4.158**

In this spot they dwelt for six years; and in the seventh year the Libyans persuaded them to leave it, making request and saying that they would conduct them to a better region. So the Libyans led them from that place making them start towards evening; and in order that the Hellenes might not see the fairest of all the regions as they passed through it, they led them past it by night, having calculated the time of daylight: and this region is called Irasa. Then having conducted them to the so-called spring of Apollo, they said, “Hellenes, here is a fit place for you to dwell, for here the heaven is pierced with holes.”

**4.159**

Now during the lifetime of the first settler Battos, who reigned forty years, and of his son Arkesilaos, who reigned sixteen years, the Kyrenians continued to dwell there with the same number as when they first set forth to the colony; but in the time of the third king, called Battos the

*vocabulary***ἀναδασμός** redistribution**ἀπονοστέω** go home**ἄτε** as if; since**ἐκστρατεύω** march out; (mp) take the field**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐπικαλέω** call upon**ἐπιμέμφομαι** blame**κρήνη** well, spring**ὄμιλος** (ῑ) crowd, throng ~homily**περίοικος** dwelling around**περιτάμνω** surround to steal**περιυβρίζω** insult wantonly**πολύηρατος** charming, desirable

~erotic

**στερέω** steal, take**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:

meet, fall in with ~ballistic

**συμβολή** encounter; contribution**συνοικέω** live together**χῶρος** place ~heir

πάντας ὥρμησε χρήσασα ἡ Πυθίη πλέειν συνοικήσοντας  
Κυρηναίοισι Λιβύην· ἐπεκαλέοντο γὰρ οἱ Κυρηναῖοι ἐπὶ  
γῆς ἀναδασμῶ· ἔχρησε δὲ ὧδε ἔχοντα.

Ὅς δέ κεν ἐς Λιβύην πολυήρατον ὕστερον ἔλθῃ γᾶς  
ἀναδαιομένας, μετὰ οἱ ποκα φαμὶ μελήσειν.

συλλεχθέντος δὲ ὁμίλου πολλοῦ ἐς τὴν Κυρήνην,  
περιταμνόμενοι γῆν πολλὴν οἱ περίοικοι Λίβυες καὶ ὁ  
βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν τῷ οὐνόμα ἦν Ἀδικράν, οἷα τῆς τε χώρας  
στερισκόμενοι καὶ περὶβριζόμενοι ὑπὸ τῶν Κυρηναίων,  
πέμφαντες ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἔδοσαν σφέας αὐτοὺς Ἀπρίῃ τῷ  
Αἰγύπτου βασιλεί. ὁ δὲ συλλέξας στρατὸν Αἰγυπτίων  
πολλὸν ἔπεμψε ἐπὶ τὴν Κυρήνην. οἱ δὲ Κυρηναῖοι  
ἐκστρατευσάμενοι ἐς Ἰρασα χώρον καὶ ἐπὶ κρήνην Θέστην  
συνέβαλόν τε τοῖσι Αἰγυπτίοισι καὶ ἐνίκησαν τῇ συμβολῇ.  
ἅτε γὰρ οὐ πεπειρημένοι πρότερον οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι Ἑλλήνων  
καὶ παραχρῶμενοι διεφθάρησαν οὕτω ὥστε ὀλίγοι τινὲς  
αὐτῶν ἀπενόστησαν ἐς Αἴγυπτον. ἀντὶ τούτων Αἰγύπτιοι  
καὶ ταῦτα ἐπιμεμφόμενοι Ἀπρίῃ ἀπέστησαν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ.

πάντας ὥρμησε χρήσασα ἡ Πυθίη πλέειν |live together

Κυρηναίοισι Λιβύην· |call upon γὰρ οἱ Κυρηναῖοι ἐπὶ  
γῆς |redistribution ἔχρησε δὲ ὧδε ἔχοντα.

Ὅς δέ κεν ἐς Λιβύην |charming, ὕστερον ἔλθῃ γὰς  
|desirable  
ἀναδαιομένας, μετὰ οἱ ποκα φαμί μελήσειν.

|collect, assemble δὲ |crowd πολλοῦ ἐς τὴν Κυρήνην,  
|surround to steal γῆν πολλὴν οἱ |dwelling Λίβυες καὶ ὁ  
|around  
βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν τῷ οὐνόμα ἦν Ἀδικράν, οἷα τῆς τε χώρας  
στερισκόμενοι καὶ |insult wantonly ὑπὸ τῶν Κυρηναίων,  
πέμψαντες ἐς Αἴγυπτον ἔδοσαν σφέας αὐτοὺς Ἀπρίῃ τῷ  
Αἰγύπτου βασιλεί. ὁ δὲ |collect, |army Αἰγυπτίων  
|assemble  
πολλὸν ἔπεμψε ἐπὶ τὴν Κυρήνην. οἱ δὲ Κυρηναῖοι

|march out; (mp) take ἐς Ἰρασα |place καὶ ἐπὶ |well, Θέστην  
|the field |spring  
|pit against; compare; Αἰγυπτίοισι καὶ ἐνίκησαν τῇ |encounter;  
|mp: meet, fall in with |contribution  
|as if; since ὁ πεπειρημένοι πρότερον οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι |Greek

καὶ παραχρεώμενοι διεφθάρησαν οὕτω ὥστε ὀλίγοι τινὲς  
αὐτῶν |go home ἐς Αἴγυπτον. ἀντὶ τούτων Αἰγύπτιοι  
καὶ ταῦτα |blame Ἀπρίῃ ἀπέστησαν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ.

Prosperous, the Pythian prophetess gave an oracle wherein she urged the Hellenes in general to sail and join with the Kyrenians in colonising Libya. For the Kyrenians invited them, giving promise of a division of land; and the oracle which she uttered was as follows:

“Who to the land much desired, to Libya, afterwards cometh, After the land be divided, I say he shall some day repent it.”

Then great numbers were gathered at Kyrene, and the Libyans who dwelt round had much land cut off from their possessions; therefore they with their king whose name was Adicran, as they were not only deprived of their country but also were dealt with very insolently by the Kyrenians, sent to Egypt and delivered themselves over to Apries king of Egypt. He then having gathered a great army of Egyptians, sent it against Kyrene; and the men of Kyrene marched out to the region of Irasa and to the spring Theste, and there both joined battle with the Egyptians and defeated them in the battle: for since the Egyptians had not before made trial of the Hellenes in fight and therefore despised them, they were so slaughtered that but few of them returned back to Egypt. In consequence of this and because they laid the blame of it upon Apries, the Egyptians revolted from him.

*vocabulary*

**ἀποπνίγω** (ι) strangle; stew; (p) drown  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δόλος** trick, bait  
**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here  
**ἐπιδιώκω** chase after  
**ἡοῖος** eastern, the morning ~Eocene  
**κάμνω** toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be troubled; be sick  
**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin

**μίν** him, her, it  
**στασιάζω** revolt, be divided  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
**ὑποδείκνυμι** (υῦ) show, trace out  
**ὑποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer ~doctrine  
**φάρμακον** drug, potion ~pharmacy  
**χῶρος** place ~heir

## 4.160

Τούτου δὲ τοῦ Βάττου παῖς γίνεται Ἀρκεσίλεως. ὃς  
 βασιλεύσας πρῶτα τοῖσι ἐωυτοῦ ἀδελφεοῖσι ἐστασίασε,  
 ἐς ὃ μιν οὔτοι ἀπολιπόντες οἴχοντο ἐς ἄλλον χῶρον  
 τῆς Λιβύης καὶ ἐπ' ἐωυτῶν βαλόμενοι ἔκτισαν πόλιν  
 ταύτην ἣ τότε καὶ νῦν Βάρκη κλέεται· κτίζοντες δὲ ἅμα  
 αὐτὴν ἀπιστᾶσι ἀπὸ τῶν Κυρηναίων τοὺς Λίβυας. μετὰ  
 δὲ Ἀρκεσίλεως ἐς τοὺς ὑποδεξαμένους τε τῶν Λιβύων  
 καὶ ἀποστάντας τοὺς αὐτοὺς τούτους ἐστρατεύετο· οἱ  
 δὲ Λίβυες δείσαντες αὐτὸν οἴχοντο φεύγοντες πρὸς τοὺς  
 ἡοίους τῶν Λιβύων. ὁ δὲ Ἀρκεσίλεως εἶπετο φεύγουσι,  
 ἐς οὗ ἐν Λεύκωνί τε τῆς Λιβύης ἐγίνετο ἐπιδιώκων καὶ  
 ἔδοξε τοῖσι Λίβυσι ἐπιθέσθαι οἱ. συμβαλόντες δὲ ἐνίκησαν  
 τοὺς Κυρηναίους τοσοῦτο ὥστε ἑπτακισχιλίους ὀπλίτας  
 Κυρηναίων ἐνθαῦτα πεσεῖν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ τρῶμα τοῦτο  
 Ἀρκεσίλεων μὲν κάμνοντά τε καὶ φάρμακον πεπωκότα  
 ὁ ἀδελφεὸς Ἀλῖαρχος ἀποπνίγει, Ἀλῖαρχον δὲ ἡ γυνὴ ἡ  
 Ἀρκεσίλεω δόλῳ κτείνει, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν Ἐρυξώ.



4.160

Τούτου δὲ τοῦ Βάττου παῖς γίνεται Ἀρκεσίλεως. ὃς

|be king      πρῶτα τοῖσι ἑωυτοῦ ἀδελφεοῖσι |revolt, be divided

ἐς ὃ μιν οὗτοι ἀπολιπόντες οἴχοντο ἐς ἄλλον |place

τῆς Λιβύης καὶ ἐπ' ἑωυτῶν βαλόμενοι |found,      πόλιν  
|populate

ταύτην ἣ τότε καὶ νῦν Βάρκη κλέεται· |found,      δὲ ἅμα  
|populate

αὐτὴν ἀπιστᾶσι ἀπὸ τῶν Κυρηναίων τοὺς Λίβυας. μετὰ

δὲ Ἀρκεσίλεως ἐς τοὺς ὑποδεξαμένους τε τῶν Λιβύων

καὶ ἀποστάντας τοὺς αὐτοὺς τούτους ἐστρατεύετο· οἱ

δὲ Λίβυες δείσαντες αὐτὸν οἴχοντο φεύγοντες πρὸς τοὺς

|eastern, the morning. ὁ δὲ Ἀρκεσίλεως εἶπετο φεύγουσι,

ἐς οὗ ἐν Λεύκωνί τε τῆς Λιβύης ἐγίνετο |chase after      καὶ

ἔδοξε τοῖσι Λίβυσι ἐπιθέσθαι οἱ. |pit against; compare; ἔησαν  
|mp: meet, fall in with

τοὺς Κυρηναίους τοσοῦτο ὥστε ἑπτακισχιλίους ὀπλίτας

Κυρηναίων |there, here ἔσεῖν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ τρώμα τοῦτο

Ἀρκεσίλεων μὲν |toil, acquire, ἔε καὶ φάρμακον πεπωκότα  
|be tired

ὁ ἀδελφεὸς Ἀλιάρχος |strangle; stew; λίάρχον δὲ ἡ γυνὴ ἡ  
|(p) drown

Ἀρκεσίλεω |trick, bait ἵνει, τῇ οὐνομα ἦν Ἐρυξάω.

## 4.160

This Battos had a son called Arkesilaos, who first when he became king made a quarrel with his own brothers, until they finally departed to another region of Libya, and making the venture for themselves founded that city which was then and is now called Barca; and at the same time as they founded this, they induced the Libyans to revolt from the Kyrenians. After this, Arkesilaos made an expedition against those Libyans who had received them and who had also revolted from Kyrene, and the Libyans fearing him departed and fled towards the Eastern tribes of Libyans: and Arkesilaos followed after them as they fled, until he arrived in his pursuit at Leucon in Libya, and there the Libyans resolved to attack him. Accordingly they engaged battle and defeated the Kyrenians so utterly that seven thousand hoplites of the Kyrenians fell there. After this disaster Arkesilaos, being sick and having swallowed a potion, was strangled by his brother Haliarchos, and Haliarchos was killed treacherously by the wife of Arkesilaos, whose name was Eryxo.

*vocabulary*

**ἄρτίπος** swift-footed ~pedal  
**διαδέχομαι** be next, succeed ~doctrine  
**διάω** blow through  
**δόκιμος** trustworthy; excellent  
**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
 ~heresy  
**ἐπείρομαι** ask as well; ask then  
**εὖς** good, brave, noble  
**ἱρωσύνη** priesthood, ceremonies

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**νησιώτης** -ου (m, 1) insular  
**ὄον** οὓ type of fruit  
**περίοικος** dwelling around  
**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune  
**τέμενος** -εος (n, 3) non-common land  
**χωλός** lame

## 4.161

Διεδέξατο δὲ τὴν βασιλὴν τοῦ Ἀρκεσίλεω ὁ παῖς Βάττος, χωλὸς τε ἐὼν καὶ οὐκ ἀρτίπους. οἱ δὲ Κυρηναῖοι πρὸς τὴν καταλαβοῦσαν συμφορὴν ἔπεμπον ἐς Δελφοὺς ἐπειρησομένους ὅντινα τρόπον καταστησάμενοι κάλλιστα ἂν οἰκέοιεν. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη ἐκέλευε ἐκ Μαντινέης τῆς Ἀρκάδων καταρτιστῆρα ἀγαγέσθαι. αἴτεον ὦν οἱ Κυρηναῖοι, καὶ οἱ Μαντινέες ἔδοσαν ἄνδρα τῶν ἀστῶν δοκιμώτατον, τῷ ὄννομα ἦν Δημῶναξ. οὗτος ὦν ὠνήρ ἀπικόμενος ἐς τὴν Κυρήνην καὶ μαθὼν ἕκαστα τοῦτο μὲν τριφύλους ἐποίησε σφεας, τῇδε διαθείς· Θηραίων μὲν καὶ τῶν περιοίκων μίαν μοῖραν ἐποίησε, ἄλλην δὲ Πελοποννησίων καὶ Κρητῶν, τρίτην δὲ νησιωτέων πάντων. τοῦτο δὲ τῷ βασιλεί Βάττῳ τεμένεια ἐξελὼν καὶ ἱρwsύνας, τὰ ἄλλα πάντα τὰ πρότερον εἶχον οἱ βασιλεῖς ἐς μέσον τῷ δήμῳ ἔθηκε.

4.161

|be next, succeed τὴν βασιλήην τοῦ Ἀρκεσίλεω ὁ παῖς  
 Βάττος, |lame τε ἔων καὶ οὐκ |swift-footed οἱ δὲ  
 Κυρηναῖοι πρὸς τὴν |seize, understand, catch, ρὴν ἔπεμπον ἐς  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 Δελφούς ἐπειρησομένους ὅντινα τρόπον καταστησάμενοι  
 κάλλιστα ἂν οἰκέοιεν. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη ἐκέλευε ἐκ Μαντινέης  
 τῆς Ἀρκάδων καταρτιστῆρα ἀγαγέσθαι. αἵτεον ὦν οἱ  
 Κυρηναῖοι, καὶ οἱ Μαντινέες ἔδοσαν ἄνδρα τῶν ἀστῶν  
 |trustworthy; , τῷ οὖνομα ἦν Δημῶναξ. οὗτος ὦν ὠνὴρ  
 |excellent  
 ἀπικόμενος ἐς τὴν Κυρήνην καὶ μαθὼν ἕκαστα τοῦτο  
 μὲν τριφύλους ἐποίησε σφεας, τῇδε |blow through, αἶων  
 μὲν καὶ τῶν |dwelling μίαν μοῖραν ἐποίησε, ἄλλην  
 |around  
 δὲ Πελοποννησίων καὶ Κρητῶν, τρίτην δὲ |insular  
 πάντων. τοῦτο δὲ τῷ βασιλεί Βάττω |non- |pick, steal; dedicate; de-  
 |common |stroy  
 |land  
 |priesthood, , τὰ ἄλλα πάντα τὰ πρότερον εἶχον οἱ βασιλεῖς  
 |ceremonies  
 ἐς μέσον τῷ δήμῳ ἔθηκε.

## 4.161

Then Battos the son of Arkesilaos succeeded to the kingdom, who was lame and not sound in his feet: and the Kyrenians with a view to the misfortune which had befallen them sent men to Delphi to ask what form of rule they should adopt, in order to live in the best way possible; and the Pythian prophetess bade them take to themselves a reformer of their State from Mantinea of the Arcadians. The men of Kyrene accordingly made request, and those of Mantinea gave them the man of most repute among their citizens, whose name was Demonax. This man therefore having come to Kyrene and having ascertained all things exactly, in the first place caused them to have three tribes, distributing them thus:— one division he made of the Theraians and their dependants, another of the Peloponnesians and Cretans, and a third of all the islanders. Then secondly for the king Battos he set apart domains of land and priesthoods, but all the other powers which the kings used to possess before, he assigned as of public right to the people.

*vocabulary***ἀναέξω** enlarge, increase**ἀνατίθῃμι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
(mp) reproach**ἄξιόθετος** well worth seeing**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
~apostle**εἶριον** wool ~Eriogonum**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἐπείπον** say besides or afterwards**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**ήλακάτη** distaff, spindle**ήσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be

overcome; (active) defeat

**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure**κατάγνυμι** (ῥ) break up, shatter**κατάγω** lead down/home; land  
~demagogue**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion**στασιάζω** revolt, be divided**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ταραχή** upsetness, confusion**τελευταῖος** last, final**χωλός** lame

## 4.162

Ἐπὶ μὲν δὴ τούτου τοῦ Βάπτου οὕτω διετέλεε ἔόντα, ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ τούτου παιδὸς Ἀρκεσίλειω πολλή ταραχή περὶ τῶν τιμῶν ἐγένετο. Ἀρκεσίλειως γὰρ ὁ Βάπτου τε τοῦ χωλοῦ καὶ Φερετίμης οὐκ ἔφη ἀνέξεσθαι κατὰ τὰ ὁ Μαντινεὺς Δημῶναξ ἔταξε, ἀλλὰ ἀπαίτεε τὰ τῶν προγόνων γέρεα. ἐνθεῦτεν στασιάζων ἐσώθη καὶ ἔφυγε ἐς Σάμον, ἣ δὲ μήτηρ οἱ ἐς Σαλαμίνα τῆς Κύπρου ἔφυγε. τῆς δὲ Σαλαμῖνος τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἐπεκράτεε Εὐέλθων, ὃς τὸ ἐν Δελφοῖσι θυμητήριον, ἐὸν ἀξιοθέητον ἀνέθηκε, τὸ ἐν τῷ Κορινθίων θησαυρῷ κέεται. ἀπικομένη δὲ παρὰ τοῦτον ἡ Φερετίμη ἐδέετο στρατιῆς ἣ κατάξει σφέας ἐς τὴν Κυρήνην. ὁ δὲ Εὐέλθων πᾶν μᾶλλον ἢ στρατιήν οἱ ἐδίδου· ἡ δὲ λαμβάνουσα τὸ διδόμενον καλὸν μὲν ἔφη καὶ τοῦτο εἶναι, κάλλιον δὲ ἐκείνο, τὸ δοῦναί οἱ δεομένην στρατιήν. τοῦτο ἐπὶ παντὶ γὰρ τῷ διδομένῳ ἔλεγε, τελευταῖόν οἱ ἐξέπεμψε δῶρον ὁ Εὐέλθων ἄτρακτον χρύσειον καὶ ἡλακάτην, προσῆν δὲ καὶ εἴριον. ἐπειπάσης δὲ αὖτις



4.162

Ἐπὶ μὲν δὴ τούτου τοῦ Βάπτου οὕτω έόντα,  
 ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ τούτου παιδὸς Ἀρκεσίλεω |accomplish;  
|keep doing  
 περὶ τῶν τιμέων ἐγένετο. Ἀρκεσίλεως γὰρ ὁ |upsetness,  
|confusion  
 τε τοῦ καὶ Φερετίμης οὐκ ἔφη κατὰ  
 τὰ ὁ Μ|lame. ὧς Δημῶναξ ἔταξε, ἀλλὰ |enlarge, . ὧ τῶν  
|increase  
γέρεα. |demand τῶν  
|have returned  
|elder  
|ancestor ἐμνήσθη, ἢ δὲ μή|thence ὧς |revolt, be di- (pass) be weaker, be overcome;  
|vided (active) defeat  
 τῆς δὲ Σαλαμῖνος τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον Εὐέλθων,  
 ὃς τὸ ἐν Δελφοῖσι θυμητήριον, ἐὼν |rule over ,  
 τὸ ἐν τῷ Κορινθίων κέεται, |well worth  
|seeing |consecrate, lay on, im-  
|pute; (mp) reproach  
 τοῦτον ἢ Φερετίμη |treasury . ρατιῆς ἢ κατὰξει σφέας ἐς  
 τὴν Κυρήνην. ὁ δὲ Εὐέλθων πᾶν μᾶλλον ἢ στρατιὴν  
 οἱ ἐδίδου· ἢ δὲ λαμβάνουσα τὸ διδόμενον καλὸν μὲν  
 ἔφη καὶ τοῦτο εἶναι, κάλλιον δὲ ἐκεῖνο, τὸ δοῦναί οἱ  
 δεομένην στρατιήν. τοῦτο ἐπὶ παντὶ γὰρ τῷ διδομένῳ  
 ἔλεγε, οἱ ἐξέπεμψε δῶρον ὁ Εὐέλθων ἄτρακτον  
 χρύσε|last, final , προσῆν δὲ καὶ .  
 δὲ αὐτίς |distaff,  
|spindle |wool |say besides or  
|afterwards

## 4.162

During the reign of this Battos things continued to be thus, but in the reign of his son Arkesilaos there arose much disturbance about the offices of the State: for Arkesilaos son of Battos the Lambe and of Pheretima said that he would not suffer it to be according as the Mantineaean Demonax had arranged, but asked to have back the royal rights of his forefathers. After this, stirring up strife he was worsted and went as an exile to Samos, and his mother to Salamis in Cyprus. Now at that time the ruler of Salamis was Euelthon, the same who dedicated as an offering the censer at Delphi, a work well worth seeing, which is placed in the treasury of the Corinthians. To him having come, Pheretima asked him for an army to restore herself and her son to Kyrene. Euelthon however was ready to give her anything else rather than that; and she when she received that which he gave her said that this too was a fair gift, but fairer still would be that other gift of an army for which she was asking. As she kept saying this to every thing which was given, at last Euelthon sent out to her a present of a golden spindle and distaff, with wool also upon it: and when Pheretima uttered again the same

*vocabulary*

**ἄμφιρυτος** flow-girt ~rheostat  
**ἄμφορεύς** -ος (m) amphora  
**ἀναδασμός** redistribution  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δωρέω** give ~donate  
**ἐξοπτάω** bake well  
**ἥσυχος** quiet  
**καλλιστεύω** be the best  
**κάμινος** (ī, f) oven, furnace  
**κατέρχομαι** come down, out from  
**κάτοδος** descent, return, cycle  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὄρος** boundary marker ~horizon

**οὔρον** boundary stone; unit of distance; limit  
**οὔρος** fair wind; guardian; hill  
**παραινέω** recommend, exhort, warn  
**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into contact with  
**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατός** common people/soldiers ~strategy  
**στρατόω** be on a campaign ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**συναγείρω** gather together ~agora  
**ταῦρος** bull ~steer  
 **χρηστήριον** oracle, response

τῆς Φερετίμης τὼντὸ ἔπος, ὁ Εὐέλθων ἔφη τοιούτοισι  
 γυναῖκας δωρέεσθαι ἀλλ' οὐ στρατιῇ.

#### 4.163

Ὁ δὲ Ἀρκεσίλεως τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἐὼν ἐν Σάμῳ  
 συνήγειρε πάντα ἄνδρα ἐπὶ γῆς ἀναδασμῶ· συλλεγομένου  
 δὲ στρατοῦ πολλοῦ, ἐστάλη ἐς Δελφούς Ἀρκεσίλεως  
 χρησόμενος τῷ χρηστηρίῳ περὶ κατόδου. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη οἱ  
 χρᾶ τάδε. «ἐπὶ μὲν τέσσερας Βάττους καὶ Ἀρκεσίλεως  
 τέσσερας, ὀκτὼ ἀνδρῶν γενεάς, διδοῖ ὑμῖν Λοξίης  
 βασιλεύειν Κυρήνης,<sup>163.3</sup> πλέον μέντοι τούτου οὐδὲ  
 πειρᾶσθαι παραινέει. σὺ μέντοι ἥσυχος εἶναι κατελθὼν  
 ἐς τὴν σεωυτοῦ. ἦν δὲ τὴν κάμινον εὖρης πλέην  
 ἀμφορέων, μὴ ἐξοπτήσης τοὺς ἀμφορέας ἀλλ' ἀπόπεμπε  
 κατ' οὖρον· εἰ δὲ ἐξοπτήσεις τὴν κάμινον, μὴ ἐσέλθης ἐς  
 τὴν ἀμφίρρυτον· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀποθανέαι καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ταῦρος  
 ὁ καλλιστεύων.» ταῦτα ἡ Πυθίη Ἀρκεσίλεω χρᾶ.

τῆς Φερετίμης τὼντὸ ἔπος, ὁ Εὐέλθων ἔφη τοιούτοις  
 γυναιῖκας δωρέεσθαι ἀλλ' οὐ στρατιῇ.

4.163

Ὁ δὲ Ἀρκεσίλεως τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἔων ἐν Σάμῳ  
 συνήγειρε πάντα ἄνδρα ἐπὶ γῆς |redistribution |collect, assemble

δὲ στρατοῦ πολλοῦ, |prepare, send, furl | τοὺς Ἀρκεσίλεως

χρησόμενος τῷ	oracle, response	περὶ	descent, re- turn, cycle	ἡ δὲ Πυθίη οἶ
---------------	---------------------	------	-----------------------------	---------------

χρᾶ τάδε. «ἐπὶ μὲν τέσσερας Βᾶπτους καὶ Ἀρκεσίλεως

τέσσερας, |eight| ἀνδρῶν γενεάς, διδοῖ ὑμῖν Λοξίης

be king Κυρήνης,<sup>163.3</sup> πλέον μέντοι τούτου οὐδὲ

πειρᾶσθαι |recommend,  
exhort, warn    σὺ μέντοι |quiet    εἶναι |come down, out from

ἐς τὴν σεωυτου. ἦν δὲ τὴν 

oven,	εὕρης	bring/come	to,
furnace		near,	into contact

*ἀμφορέων, μὴ* |bake well    *τοὺς* |amphora    *ἀλλ’* |send<sup>with</sup> away

κατ' οὔρον· εἰ δὲ ἐξοπτήσεις τὴν 

oven, furnace	, μὴ ἐσέλθῃς ἐς
------------------	-----------------

τὴν |flow-girt                    εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀποθανέαι καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ |bull

ὁ ὦν be the best . . . » ταῦτα ἡ Πυθίη Ἀρκεσίλῳ χαῖα.

saying about this present, Euelthon said that such things as this were given as gifts to women and not an army.

**4.163**

Arkesilaos meanwhile, being in Samos, was gathering every one together by a promise of dividing land; and while a great host was being collected, Arkesilaos set out to Delphi to inquire of the Oracle about returning from exile: and the Pythian prophetess gave him this answer: “For four named Battos and four named Arkesilaos, eight generations of men, Loxias grants to you to be kings of Kyrene, but beyond this he counsels you not even to attempt it. Thou however must keep quiet when thou hast come back to thy land; and if thou findest the furnace full of jars, heat not the jars fiercely, but let them go with a fair wind: if however thou heat the furnace fiercely, enter not thou into the place flowed round by water; for if thou dost thou shalt die, both thou and the bull which is fairer than all the rest.”

*vocabulary***ἀμφίρρυτος** flow-girt ~rheostat**ἀμφορεύς** -ος (m) amphora**ἀντιστασιώτης** -ου (m, f) partisan  
adversary**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be  
freed, depart**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**δειμαίνω** be afraid**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in  
too easily**ἐμπύρηνμι** burn up ~pyre**ἐμπρήθω** burn up**ἐξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo;  
destroy someone**ἐξοπτάω** bake well**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do ~ergonomics**ἰδιωτικός** private, amateurish**κάμινος** (f) oven, furnace**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to  
~fugitive**κατέρχομαι** come down, out from**μαντεῖον** prophetic warning ~mantis  
**μίν** him, her, it**παράπαν** completely**περινέω** swim around; pile around**πύργος** ramparts, tower; line of troops**συγγενεύς** inborn, kin to**συγγενής** inborn, kin to**σφέτερος** their**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive**χειρόω** dominate, subdue

## 4.164

Ὁ δὲ παραλαβὼν τοὺς ἐκ τῆς Σάμου κατήλθε εἰς τὴν Κυρήνην, καὶ ἐπικρατήσας τῶν πρηγμάτων τοῦ μαντηίου οὐκ ἐμέμνητο, ἀλλὰ δίκας τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας αἵτεε τῆς ἐωυτοῦ φυγῆς. τῶν δὲ οἱ μὲν τὸ παράπαν ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἀπαλλάσσοντο, τοὺς δὲ τινὰς χειρωσάμενος ὁ Ἀρκεσίλεως εἰς Κύπρον ἀπέστειλε ἐπὶ διαφθορῇ. τούτους μὲν νυν Κνίδιοι ἀπενειχθέντας πρὸς τὴν σφετέρην ἐρρύσαντο καὶ εἰς Θήρην ἀπέστειλαν· ἑτέρους δὲ τινὰς τῶν Κυρηναίων εἰς πύργον μέγαν Ἀγλωμάχου καταφυγόντας ἰδιωτικὸν ὕλην περινήσας ὁ Ἀρκεσίλεως ἐνέπρησε. μαθὼν δὲ ἐπ' ἐξεργασμένοισι τὸ μαντήιον ἐὼν τοῦτο, ὅτι μιν ἡ Πυθίη οὐκ ἔα εὐρόντα ἐν τῇ καμίνῳ τοὺς ἀμφορέας ἐξοπτῆσαι, ἔργετο ἐκὼν τῆς τῶν Κυρηναίων πόλιος, δειμαίνων τε τὸν κεχρησμένον θάνατον καὶ δοκέων ἀμφίρρυντον τὴν Κυρήνην εἶναι. εἶχε δὲ γυναῖκα συγγενέα ἐωυτοῦ, θυγατέρα δὲ τῶν Βαρκαίων τοῦ βασιλέως, τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Ἀλάξιερ· παρὰ τοῦτον ἀπικνέεται, καί μιν Βαρκαίοι τε



4.164

Ὁ δὲ παραλαβὼν τοὺς ἐκ τῆς Σάμου |come down, out from

Κυρήνην, καὶ |rule over τῶν πρηγμάτων τοῦ |prophetic  
|warning

οὐκ ἐμέμνητο, ἀλλὰ δίκας τοὺς |partisan αἵτεε τῆς  
|adversary

έωυτοῦ |flight, means δὲ οἱ μὲν τὸ |completely ἐκ τῆς χώρας  
|of escape

|free from, remove; οὓς δὲ τινὰς |χειρώω?: dominate, subdue; or χειρώω?: dom-  
|be freed, depart |inate, subdue

ἐς Κύπρον ἀπέστειλε ἐπὶ διαφθορῇ. τούτους μὲν νυν

Κνίδιοι |carry off πρὸς τὴν |their ἐρρύσαντο καὶ

ἐς Θήρην ἀπέστειλαν· ἑτέρους δὲ τινὰς τῶν Κυρηναίων

ἐς |wall, μέγαν Ἀγλωμάχου |resort to, flee to |private,  
|tower |appeal to |amateurish

ὑλὴν περινήσας ὁ Ἀρκεσίλεως ἐνέπρησε. μαθὼν δὲ ἐπ'

|accomplish; undo; de- |prophetic ἐὼν τοῦτο, ὅτι μιν ἡ Πυθίη  
|stroy someone |warning

οὐκ ἔα εὐρόντα ἐν τῇ |oven, τοὺς |amphora |bake well  
|furnace

|bound, |willingly ἦς τῶν Κυρηναίων πόλις, |be afraid  
|fend off;

δο  
τε τὸν κεχρησμένον θάνατον καὶ δοκέων |flow-girt

τὴν Κυρήνην εἶναι. εἶχε δὲ γυναῖκα συγγενέα έωυτοῦ,

θυγατέρα δὲ τῶν Βαρκαίων τοῦ βασιλέος, τῷ οὔνομα ἦν

Ἀλάζειρ· παρὰ τοῦτον ἀπικνέεται, καί μιν Βαρκαῖοί τε

## 4.164

Thus the Pythian prophetess gave answer to Arkesilaos; and he, having taken to him those in Samos, made his return to Kyrene; and when he had got possession of the power, he did not remember the saying of the Oracle but endeavoured to exact penalties from those of the opposite faction for having driven him out. Of these some escaped out of the country altogether, but some Arkesilaos got into his power and sent them away to Cyprus to be put to death. These were driven out of their course to Cnidos, and the men of Cnidos rescued them and sent them away to Thera. Some others however of the Kyrenians fled to a great tower belonging to Aglomachos a private citizen, and Arkesilaos burnt them by piling up brushwood round. Then after he had done the deed he perceived that the Oracle meant this, in that the Pythian prophetess forbade him, if he found the jars in the furnace, to heat them fiercely; and he voluntarily kept away from the city of the Kyrenians, fearing the death which had been prophesied by the Oracle and supposing that Kyrene was flowed round by water. Now he had to wife a kinswoman of his own, the daughter of the king of Barca whose name was Alazeir: to him he came, and men of Barca together with certain of

*vocabulary***ἀγοράζω** do commerce ~agora**ἀέκων** unwilling**διαιτάω** treat; live; arbitrate**ἐκτίμπλημι** fulfil, accomplish**ἐκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**ἐξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo; destroy someone**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service ~ergonomics**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**ἰκέτις** female suppliant**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**παρίζω** sit beside ~sit**πενθερός** father in law ~Nepenthe**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive; prediction ~fame**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry ~bear**φόρον** forum**φόρος** tribute, revenue**φυγάζ** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee ~fugitive**χρησμός** oracular response

ἄνδρες καὶ τῶν ἐκ Κυρήνης φυγάδων τινὲς καταμαθόντες ἀγοράζοντα κτείνουσι, πρὸς δὲ καὶ τὸν πενθερὸν αὐτοῦ Ἀλάζειρα. Ἀρκεσίλεως μὲν νυν εἴτε ἐκὼν εἴτε ἀέκων ἀμαρτῶν τοῦ χρησμοῦ ἐξέπλησε μοῖραν τὴν ἐωυτοῦ.

## 4.165

Ἡ δὲ μήτηρ Φερετίμη, ἕως μὲν ὁ Ἀρκεσίλεως ἐν τῇ Βάρκῃ διαιτᾶτο ἐξεργασμένος ἐωυτῷ κακόν, ἥ δὲ εἶχε αὐτὴ τοῦ παιδὸς τὰ γέρεα ἐν Κυρήνῃ καὶ τᾶλλα νεμομένη καὶ ἐν βουλῇ παρίζουσα. ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἔμαθε ἐν τῇ Βάρκῃ ἀποθανόντα οἱ τὸν παῖδα, φεύγουσα οἰχώκεε ἐς Αἴγυπτον. ἦσαν γάρ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ Ἀρκεσίλεω εὐεργεσίαι ἐς Καμβύσεια τὸν Κύρου πεποιημένοι· οὗτος γὰρ ἦν ὁ Ἀρκεσίλεως ὃς Κυρήνην Καμβύσῃ ἔδωκε καὶ φόρον ἐτάξατο. ἀπικομένη δὲ ἐς τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἡ Φερετίμη Ἀρυάνδεω ἰκέτις ἔζετο, τιμωρῆσαι ἐωυτῇ κελεύουσα, προισχομένη πρόφασιν ὥς διὰ τὸν μηδισμὸν ὁ παῖς οἱ τέθνηκε.

ἄνδρες καὶ τῶν ἐκ Κυρήνης |exile, |refugee τινὲς |examine, observe  
 |do commerce κτείνουσι, πρὸς δὲ καὶ τὸν |father in law. τοῦ  
 Ἀλάζειρα. Ἀρκεσίλεως μὲν νυν εἴτε |willingly. -ε |unwilling  
 ἁμαρτῶν τοῦ |oracular |fulfil, |,ιοῖραν τὴν ἐωυτοῦ.  
 |response |accomplish

4.165

Ἡ δὲ μήτηρ Φερετίμη, ἕως μὲν ὁ Ἀρκεσίλεως ἐν τῇ  
 Βάρκῃ διαιτᾶτο |accomplish; undó; |πυῶ κακόν, ἥ δὲ εἶχε  
 |destroy someone  
 αὐτὴ τοῦ παιδὸς τὰ γέρεα ἐν Κυρήνῃ καὶ τᾶλλα |distribute  
 καὶ ἐν βουλῇ |sit beside . ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἔμαθε ἐν τῇ Βάρκῃ  
 ἀποθανόντα οἱ τὸν παῖδα, φεύγουσα οἰχώκεε ἐς Αἴγυπτον.  
 ἦσαν γάρ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ Ἀρκεσίλεω εὐεργεσίαι ἐς Καμβύσεια  
 τὸν Κύρου πεποιημέναι· οὗτος γὰρ ἦν ὁ Ἀρκεσίλεως ὃς  
 Κυρήνην Καμβύσῃ ἔδωκε καὶ φόρον ἐτάξατο. ἀπικομένη  
 δὲ ἐς τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἡ Φερετίμη Ἀρυάνδew |female |to seat  
 |suppliant  
 |take vengeance, |πυῇ κελεύουσα, |προισχομένη |pretext; motive;  
 |punish, aid |prediction  
 διὰ τὸν μηδισμὸν ὁ παῖς οἱ τέθνηκε.

the exiles from Kyrene, perceiving him going about in the market-place, killed him, and also besides him his father in law Alazeir. Arkesilaos accordingly, having missed the meaning of the oracle, whether with his will or against his will, fulfilled his own destiny.

**4.165**

His mother Pheretime meanwhile, so long as Arkesilaos having worked evil for himself dwelt at Barca, herself held the royal power of her son at Kyrene, both exercising his other rights and also sitting in council: but when she heard that her son had been slain in Barca, she departed and fled to Egypt: for she had on her side services done for Cambyses the son of Cyrus by Arkesilaos, since this was the Arkesilaos who had given over Kyrene to Cambyses and had laid a tribute upon himself. Pheretime then having come to Egypt sat down as a suppliant of Aryandes, bidding him help her, and alleging as a reason that it was on account of his inclination to the side of the Medes that her son had been slain.

*vocabulary*

**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀποδέχομαι** accept ~doctrine  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**ἀφέψω** purify by boiling  
**ἐπανίστημι** rise up ~station  
**ἐπιφέρω** bestow, impute ~bear  
**καθαρός** clean, pure  
**κατεργάζομαι** achieve; cultivate; get;  
 kill  
**κατοικτεῖρω** have mercy, compassion

**κατοικτεῖρω** have mercy, compassion  
**κόπτω** beat, cut, strike  
**μιμέομαι** (ἔ) imitate, represent  
**μίν** him, her, it  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**μνημόσυνον** memorial  
**νόμισμα** -τος (n, 3) institution; coin  
**στρατός** common people/soldiers  
 ~strategy  
**ὑπαρχος** subordinate  
**χρυσίον** (ὁ) gold coin

## 4.166

Ὁ δὲ Ἀρυνάνδης ἦν οὗτος τῆς Αἰγύπτου ὑπαρχος  
 ὑπὸ Καμβύσῃ κατεστεώς, ὃς ὑστέρω χρόνῳ τούτων  
 παρισούμενος Δαρείῳ διεφθάρη. πυθόμενος γὰρ καὶ  
 ἰδὼν Δαρείον ἐπιθυμέοντα μνημόσυνον ἑωυτοῦ λιπέσθαι  
 τοῦτο τὸ μὴ ἄλλω εἶη βασιλείᾳ κατεργασμένον, ἐμμέετο  
 τοῦτον, ἐς οὗ ἔλαβε τὸν μισθόν. Δαρείος μὲν γὰρ χρυσίον  
 καθαρώτατον ἀπεψήσας ἐς τὸ δυνατώτατον νόμισμα  
 ἐκόψατο, Ἀρυνάνδης δὲ ἄρχων Αἰγύπτου ἀργύριον τὰντὸ  
 τοῦτο ἐποίεε, καὶ νῦν ἐστὶ ἀργύριον καθαρώτατον τὸ  
 Ἀρυνανδικόν. μαθὼν δὲ μιν Δαρείος ταῦτα ποιέοντα, αἰτίην  
 οἱ ἄλλην ἐπενείκας ὥς οἱ ἐπανίσταται, ἀπέκτεινε.

## 4.167

Τότε δὲ οὗτος ὁ Ἀρυνάνδης κατοικτεῖρας Φερετίμην διδοῖ  
 αὐτῇ στρατὸν τὸν ἐξ Αἰγύπτου ἅπαντα καὶ τὸν πεζὸν  
 καὶ τὸν ναυτικόν· στρατηγὸν δὲ τοῦ μὲν πεζοῦ Ἄμασιν  
 ἀπέδεξε ἄνδρα Μαράφιον, τοῦ δὲ ναυτικοῦ Βάδρην ἑόντα





**4.166**

Now this Aryandes had been appointed ruler of the province of Egypt by Cambyses; and after the time of these events he lost his life because he would measure himself with Dareios. For having heard and seen that Dareios desired to leave behind him as a memorial of himself a thing which had not been made by any other king, he imitated him, until at last he received his reward: for whereas Dareios refined gold and made it as pure as possible, and of this caused coins to be struck, Aryandes, being ruler of Egypt, did the same thing with silver; and even now the purest silver is that which is called Aryandic. Dareios then having learnt that he was doing this put him to death, bringing against him another charge of attempting rebellion.

**4.167**

Now at the time of which I speak this Aryandes had compassion on Pheretime and gave her all the troops that were in Egypt, both the land and the sea forces, appointing Amasis a Maraphian to command the land-army and Badres,

*vocabulary***ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἔσθῃς** clothes ~vest**καταστροφή** end, conclusion**κνήμη** lower leg**κνημός** shoulder of a mountain**κομάω** have long hair**παντοῖος** all kinds of**πρόσχημα** -τος (n, 3) screen, pretext,  
appearance, ornament**ῥιπτέω** hurl**ῥίπτω** hurl**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ὕπήκοον** -ῶ cumin**ὕπήκοος** heeding, subject**ὕποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer**φθείρω** destroy, ruin**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
~bear**φροντίζω** consider, ponder**ψέλιον** armlet, anklet

Πασαργάδην γένος. πρὶν δὲ ἢ ἀποστεῖλαι τὴν στρατιήν, ὁ Ἀρυνάνδης πέμψας ἐς τὴν Βάρκην κήρυκα ἐπυνθάνετο τίς εἴη ὁ Ἀρκεσίλεων ἀποκτείνας. οἱ δὲ Βαρκαῖοι αὐτοὶ ὑπεδέκοντο πάντες· πολλά τε γὰρ καὶ κακὰ πάσχειν ὑπ' αὐτοῦ. πυθόμενος δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Ἀρυνάνδης οὕτω δὴ τὴν στρατιήν ἀπέστειλε ἅμα τῇ Φερετίμῃ. αὕτη μὲν νυν αἰτίη πρόσχημα τοῦ στόλου ἐγίνετο, ἀπεπέμπετο δὲ ἡ στρατιή, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκέειν, ἐπὶ Λιβύης καταστροφῇ. Λιβύων γὰρ δὴ ἔθνεα πολλὰ καὶ παντοῖα ἐστί, καὶ τὰ μὲν αὐτῶν ὀλίγα βασιλέος ἦν ὑπήκοα, τὰ δὲ πλέω ἐφρόντιζε Δαρείου οὐδέν.

## 4.168

Οἰκέουσι δὲ κατὰ τάδε Λίβυες. ἀπ' Αἰγύπτου ἀρξάμενοι πρῶτοι Ἀδурμαχίδαι Λιβύων κατοίκηνται, οἱ νόμοισι μὲν τὰ πλέω Αἰγυπτίοισι χρέωνται, ἐσθῆτα δὲ φορέουσι οὔην περ οἱ ἄλλοι Λίβυες. αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες αὐτῶν ψέλιον περὶ ἐκατέρῃ τῶν κνημέων φορέουσι χάλκεον· τὰς κεφαλὰς δὲ κομῶσαι, τοὺς φθεῖρας ἐπεὰν λάβωσι τοὺς ἐωυτῆς ἐκάστη ἀντιδάκνει καὶ οὕτω ρίπτει. οὗτοι δὲ μῦνοι Λιβύων

Πασαργάδην γένος. πρὶν δὲ ἢ ἀποστεῖλαι τὴν στρατιήν,  
ὁ Ἀρνάνδης πέμψας ἐς τὴν Βάρκην κήρυκα ἐπυνθάνετο  
τίς εἴη ὁ Ἀρκεσίλειον ἀποκτείνας. οἱ δὲ Βαρκαῖοι αὐτοῖ

|welcome, ac- πάντες· πολλά τε γὰρ καὶ κακὰ πάσχειν ὑπ'  
|cept, suffer

αὐτοῦ. πυθόμενος δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Ἀρνάνδης οὕτω δὴ τὴν  
στρατιήν ἀπέστειλε ἅμα τῇ Φερετίμῃ. αὕτη μὲν νυν αἰτίη

|screen, pretext, ᾧ ap- ὧλου ἐγίνετο, |send away δὲ ἡ στρατιή,  
|pearance, ornament

ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκέειν, ἐπὶ Λιβύης |end, conclusion Λιβύων γὰρ

δὴ ἔθνεα πολλά καὶ |all kinds of τι, καὶ τὰ μὲν αὐτῶν ὀλίγα

βασιλέος ἦν ὑπήκοα, τὰ δὲ πλέω |consider, Δαρείου οὐδέν.  
|ponder

4.168

Οἰκέουσι δὲ κατὰ τάδε Λίβνες. ἀπ' Αἰγύπτου ἀρξάμενοι  
πρῶτοι Ἀδυρμαχίδαι Λιβύων κατοίκηνται, οἱ νόμοισι μὲν

τὰ πλέω Αἰγυπτίοισι χρέωνται, |clothes δὲ |frequentative of  
|φέρω, to carry

περ οἱ ἄλλοι Λίβνες. αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες αὐτῶν |armlet, περὶ  
|anklet

ἐκατέρῃ τῶν κνημέων |frequentative of εἶον· τὰς κεφαλὰς δὲ  
|φέρω, to carry

|have long hair ᾧ· |destroy, ruin ἂν λάβωσι τοὺς ἐωντῆς ἐκάστη

ἀντιδάκνει καὶ οὕτω ρίπτει. οὗτοι δὲ μούνοι Λιβύων

of the race of the Pasargadai, to command the fleet: but before he sent away the army, Aryandes despatched a herald to Barca and asked who it was who had killed Arkesilaos; and the men of Barca all took it upon themselves, for they said they suffered formerly many great evils at his hands. Having heard this, Aryandes at last sent away the army together with Pheretime. This charge then was the pretext alleged; but in fact the army was being sent out (as I believe) for the purpose of subduing Libya: for of the Libyans there are many nations of nations of various kinds, and but few of them are subject to the king, while the greater number paid no regard to Dareios.

#### 4.168

Now the Libyans have their dwelling as follows:— Beginning from Egypt, first of the Libyans are settled the Adyrmachidai, who practise for the most part the same customs as the Egyptians, but wear clothing similar to that of the other Libyans. Their women wear a bronze ring upon each leg, and they have long hair on their heads, and when they catch their lice, each one bites her own in retaliation and then throws them away. These are the only people of the Lybians who

*vocabulary*

**ἀρεστός** satisfactory, pleasing  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπικειμαι** impose; shut a door  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**ἡπειρος** (f) mainland, continent  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,  
 arrive; be proper  
**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin  
**μεταξύ** between  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

**παράκειμαι** be at hand, ready  
**παραπλήσιος** similar to  
**παρήκω** lie along; of time: to be past  
**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon  
**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into  
 contact with  
**πλατύς** extensive, wide  
**πλυνός** washing trough  
**σίλφιον** a medicinal fennel  
**συνοικέω** live together  
**χῶρος** place ~heir

τοῦτο ἐργάζονται, καὶ τῷ βασιλεί μῶνοι τὰς παρθένους  
 μελλούσας συνοικέειν ἐπιδεικνύουσι. ἥ δὲ ἂν τῷ βασιλεί  
 ἀρεστὴ γένηται, ὑπὸ τούτου διαπαρθενεύεται. παρήκουσι  
 δὲ οὗτοι οἱ Ἀδурμαχίδαι ἀπ' Αἰγύπτου μέχρι λιμένος τῷ  
 οὔνομα Πλυνός ἐστι.

## 4.169

Τούτων δὲ ἔχονται Γιλιγάμαι, νεμόμενοι τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρην  
 χώραν μέχρι Ἀφροδισιάδος νήσου. ἐν δὲ τῷ μεταξὺ  
 τούτου χώρῳ ἥ τε Πλατέα νῆσος ἐπικέεται, τὴν ἔκτισαν  
 οἱ Κυρηναῖοι, καὶ ἐν τῇ ἡπείρῳ Μενέλαος λιμὴν ἐστι καὶ  
 Ἄξιρις, τὴν οἱ Κυρηναῖοι οἴκεον, καὶ τὸ σίλφιον ἄρχεται  
 ἀπὸ τούτου· παρήκει δὲ ἀπὸ Πλατέης νήσου μέχρι τοῦ  
 στόματος τῆς Σύρτιος τὸ σίλφιον. νόμοισι δὲ χρέωνται  
 οὗτοι παραπλησίοισι τοῖσι ἑτέροις.

## 4.170

Γιλιγαμέων δὲ ἔχονται τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης Ἀσβύσαι. οὗτοι  
 ὑπὲρ Κυρήνης οἰκέουσι. ἐπὶ θάλασσαν δὲ οὐ κατήκουσι



τοῦτο ἐργάζονται, καὶ τῷ βασιλεί μῶνοι τὰς |girl, virgin  
 μελλούσας |live together |display, exhibit . ἥ δὲ ἂν τῷ βασιλεί  
 |satisfactory, |pleasing, ἔηται, ὑπὸ τούτου διαπαρθενέεται. |lie along; of time: to be  
 |pleasing |past  
 δὲ οὗτοι οἱ Ἀδερμαχίδαι ἀπ' Αἰγύπτου μέχρι λιμένος τῷ  
 οὔνομα |trough ἔστι.

4.169

Τούτων δὲ ἔχονται Γλιγάμαι, |distribute τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρην  
 χώραν μέχρι Ἀφροδισιάδος νήσου. ἐν δὲ τῷ |between  
 τούτου |place ἥ τε Πλατέα νήσος |impose; shut, |a|found,  
 |door |populate  
 οἱ Κυρηναῖοι, καὶ ἐν τῇ |mainland, |a|continent  
 Ἰενέλαος λιμὴν ἔστι καὶ  
 Ἄζιρις, τὴν οἱ Κυρηναῖοι οἴκεον, καὶ τὸ |a medicinal |fennel .  
 ἀπὸ τούτου· παρήκει δὲ ἀπὸ Πλατέης νήσου μέχρι τοῦ  
 στόματος τῆς Σύρτιος τὸ |a medicinal |fennel . δὲ χρέωνται  
 οὗτοι |similar to τοῖσι ἑτέροις.

4.170

Γλιγαμέων δὲ ἔχονται τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης Ἀσβύσαι. οὗτοι  
 ὑπὲρ Κυρήνης οἰκέουσι. ἐπὶ θάλασσαν δὲ οὐ |come down, (a day) to fall,  
 |arrive; be proper

do this; and they alone display to the king their maidens when they are about to be married, and whosoever of them proves to be pleasing to the king is deflowered by him. These Adyrmachidai extend along the coast from Egypt as far as the port which is called Plynos.

#### 4.169

Next after these come the Giligamai, occupying the country towards the West as far as the island of Aphrodisias. In the space within this limit lies off the coast the island of Platea, where the Kyrenians made their settlement; and on the coast of the mainland there is Port Menelaos, and Aziris, where the Kyrenians used to dwell. From this point begins the silphion and it extends along the coast from the island of Platea as far as the entrance of the Syrtis. This nation practises customs nearly resembling those of the rest.

#### 4.170

Next to the Giligamai on the West are the Asbystai: these dwell above Kyrene, and the Asbystai do not reach down the sea, for

*vocabulary*

**ἀμφιλαφής** spreading, abundant  
**ἐπιτηδεύω** practice, pursue  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**ἥκιστος** least; above all  
**θέρος** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,  
 arrive; be proper

**καρποφόρος** fruit-bearing  
**μιμέομαι** (ι) imitate, represent  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds  
**φοῖνιξ** -χος (m) red or purple dye or  
 color; bay (horse); palm tree  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χωρός** place ~heir

Ἀσβύσται τὸ γὰρ παρὰ θάλασσαν Κυρηναῖοι νέμονται.  
 τεθριπποβάται δὲ οὐκ ἤκιστα ἀλλὰ μάλιστα Λιβύων  
 εἰσί, νόμους δὲ τοὺς πλεῖνας μιμέεσθαι ἐπιτηδεύουσι τοὺς  
 Κυρηναίων.

## 4.171

Ἀσβυστέων δὲ ἔχονται τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης Αὐσχίσαι· οὗτοι  
 ὑπὲρ Βάρκης οἰκέουσι, κατήκοντες ἐπὶ θάλασσαν κατ'  
 Εὐεσπερίδας. Αὐσχισέων δὲ κατὰ μέσον τῆς χώρας  
 οἰκέουσι Βάκαλες, ὀλίγον ἔθνος, κατήκοντες ἐπὶ θάλασσαν  
 κατὰ Ταύχειρα πόλιν τῆς Βαρκαίης· νόμοισι δὲ τοῖσι  
 αὐτοῖσι χρέωνται τοῖσι καὶ οἱ ὑπὲρ Κυρήνης.

## 4.172

Αὐσχισέων δὲ τούτων τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης ἔχονται  
 Νασαμῶνες, ἔθνος ἐὼν πολλόν, οἳ τὸ θέρος καταλείποντες  
 ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάσῃ τὰ πρόβατα ἀναβαίνουνσι ἐς Αὔγिला  
 χῶρον ὁπωριεῦντες τοὺς φοίνικας. οἳ δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ  
 ἀμφιλαφέες πεφύκασι, πάντες ἐόντες καρποφόροι. τοὺς

Ἀσβύσται τὸ γὰρ παρὰ θάλασσαν Κυρηναῖοι |distribute  
 τεθριπποβάται δὲ οὐκ |least; ἀλλὰ μάλιστα Λιβύων  
 |above  
 εἰσί, νόμους δὲ τοὺς πλεῖνας |all |imitate, |practice, τοὺς  
 |represent |pursue  
 Κυρηναίων.

4.171

Ἀσβυστέων δὲ ἔχονται τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης Αὐσχίσαι· οὔτοι  
 ὑπὲρ Βάρκης οἰκέουσι, |come down, (a day) ἵτο' ἄσσαν κατ'  
 |fall, arrive; be proper  
 Εὐεσπερίδας. Αὐσχισέων δὲ κατὰ μέσον τῆς χώρας  
 οἰκέουσι Βάκαλες, ὀλίγον ἔθνος, |come down, (a day) ἵτο' ἄσσαν  
 |fall, arrive; be proper  
 κατὰ Ταύχειρα πόλιν τῆς Βαρκαίης· νόμοισι δὲ τοῖσι  
 αὐτοῖσι χρέωνται τοῖσι καὶ οἱ ὑπὲρ Κυρήνης.

4.172

Αὐσχισέων δὲ τούτων τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης ἔχονται  
 Νασαμῶνες, ἔθνος ἐὼν πολλόν, οἱ τὸ |summer καταλείποντες  
 ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάσῃ τὰ |cattle, flocks, |ναβαίνουσι ἐς Αὔγिला  
 |herds  
 |place ὁπωριεῦντες τοὺς |red, red dye; οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ  
 |palm tree  
 |spreading, |πεφύκασι, πάντες ἐόντες |fruit-bearing τοὺς  
 |abundant

the region along the sea is occupied by Kyrenians. These most of all the Libyans are drivers of four-horse chariots, and in the greater number of their customs they endeavour to imitate the Kyrenians.

**4.171**

Next after the Asbystai on the West come the Auchisai: these dwell above Barca and reach down to the sea by Euesperides: and in the middle of the country of the Auchisai dwell the Bacales, a small tribe, who reach down to the sea by the city of Taucheira in the territory of Barca: these practise the same customs as those above Kyrene.

**4.172**

Next after these Auschisai towards the West come the Nasamonians, a numerous race, who in the summer leave their flocks behind by the sea and go up to the region of Augila to gather the fruit of the date-palms, which grow in great numbers and very large and are all fruit-bearing: these hunt the wingless locusts, and

*vocabulary***αὐαίνω** to dry; (mp) wither**γάλα** milk ~galaxy**δαιτυμών** -όνος (m, 3) dinner guest  
~demon**διεξέρχομαι** go through**ἐνύπνιος** seen in dreams**ἐπίκοινος** in common**θηρεύω** hunt, fish ~fierce**καθάλλομαι** rush down ~sally**κατεύχομαι** pray, vow, curse**μαντεύομαι** to divine ~mantis**μαντικός** prophetic**μίξις** mixing; sex, commerce**νύμφα** nymph; bride**ὄρκιον** oath ~orc**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view  
~thanatopsis**παραπλήσιος** similar to**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus**σῆμα** -τος (n, 3) mark, sign, grave  
mound ~semaphore**σποδός** (f) embers; ashes**τοιόσδε** such**τύμβος** grave mound ~tomb**ὕγρός** wet**φοιτέω** go back and forth**χαμᾶθεν** from the ground

δὲ ἀττελέβους ἐπεὰν θηρεύσωσι, αὐήναντες πρὸς τὸν  
 ἥλιον καταλέουσι καὶ ἔπειτα ἐπὶ γάλα ἐπιπάσσοντες  
 πίνουσι. γυναῖκας δὲ νομίζοντες πολλὰς ἔχειν ἕκαστος  
 ἐπίκεινον αὐτέων τὴν μῖξιν ποιεῦνται τρόπῳ παραπλησίῳ  
 τῷ καὶ Μασσαγέται· ἐπεὰν σκίπωνα προστήσωνται,  
 μίσγονται. πρῶτον δὲ γαμέοντος Νασαμῶνος ἀνδρὸς  
 νόμος ἐστὶ τὴν νύμφην νυκτὶ τῇ πρώτῃ διὰ πάντων  
 διεξελθεῖν τῶν δαιτυμόνων μισγομένην· τῶν δὲ ὥς  
 ἕκαστος οἱ μιχθῇ, διδοὶ δῶρον τὸ ἂν ἔχη φερόμενος ἐξ  
 οἴκου. ὀρκίοισι δὲ καὶ μαντικῇ χρέωνται τοιῇδε· ὁμνύουσι  
 μὲν τοὺς παρὰ σφίσι ἄνδρας δικαιοτάτους καὶ ἀρίστους  
 λεγομένους γενέσθαι, τούτους, τῶν τύμβων ἀπτόμενοι·  
 μαντεύονται δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν προγόνων φοιτέοντες τὰ σήματα,  
 καὶ κατευξάμενοι ἐπικατακοιμῶνται· τὸ δ' ἂν ἴδῃ ἐν  
 τῇ, ὅψι ἐνύπνιον, τούτῳ χρᾶται. πίστισι δὲ τοιῇσιδε  
 χρέωνται· ἐκ τῆς χειρὸς διδοὶ πιεῖν καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκ τῆς τοῦ  
 ἑτέρου πίνει. ἦν δὲ μὴ ἔχῃσι ὑγρὸν μηδέν, οἱ δὲ τῆς  
 χαμᾶθεν σποδοῦ λαβόντες λείχουσι.



δὲ ἀττελέβους ἐπεὰν |hunt, fish , |to dry; (mp) withè γὸν  
 ἥλιον καταλέουσι καὶ ἔπειτα ἐπὶ |milk ἐπιπάσσοντες  
 πίνουσι. γυναῖκας δὲ νομίζοντες πολλὰς ἔχειν ἕκαστος  
 |in common ὕτέων τὴν |mixing; sex, 'ται τρόπῳ |similar to  
 |commerce  
 τῷ καὶ Μασσαγέται· ἐπεὰν σκίπωνα προστήσωνται,  
 μίσγονται. πρῶτον δὲ γαμέοντος Νασαμῶνος ἀνδρὸς  
 νόμος ἐστὶ τὴν νύμφην νυκτὶ τῇ πρώτῃ διὰ πάντων  
 |go through τῶν |dinner guest μισγομένην· τῶν δὲ ὡς  
 ἕκαστος οἱ μυχθῇ, διδοῖ δῶρον τὸ ἂν ἔχη φερόμενος ἐξ  
 οἴκου. ὀρκίοισι δὲ καὶ |prophetic χρέωνται |such ὀμνύουσι  
 μὲν τοὺς παρὰ σφίσι ἄνδρας δικαιοτάτους καὶ ἀρίστους  
 λεγομένους γενέσθαι, τούτους, τῶν |grave ἀπτόμενοι·  
 |mound  
 |to divine δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν |elder, |go back and forth |mark, sign,  
 |ancestor |grave mound  
 καὶ |pray, vow, curse ἐπικατακοιμῶνται· τὸ δ' ἂν ἴδη ἐν  
 τῇ, |sight ἐνύπνιον, τούτῳ χρᾶται. πίστισι δὲ |such  
 χρέωνται· ἐκ τῆς χειρὸς διδοῖ πιεῖν καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκ τῆς τοῦ  
 ἐτέρου πίνει. ἦν δὲ μὴ ἔχῃσι |wet μηδέν, οἱ δὲ τῆς  
 |from the|embers; λαβόντες λείχουσι.  
 |ground |ashes

they dry them in the sun and then pound them up, and after that they sprinkle them upon milk and drink them. Their custom is for each man to have many wives, and they make their intercourse with them common in nearly the same manner as the Massagetai, that is they set up a staff in front of the door and so have intercourse. When a Nasamonian man marries his first wife, the custom is for the bride on the first night to go through the whole number of the guests having intercourse with them, and each man when he has lain with her gives a gift, whatsoever he has brought with him from his house. The forms of oath and of divination which they use are as follows:— they swear by the men among themselves who are reported to have been the most righteous and brave, by these, I say, laying hands upon their tombs; and they divine by visiting the sepulchral mounds of their ancestors and lying down to sleep upon them after having prayed; and whatsoever thing the man sees in his dream, this he accepts. They practise also the exchange of pledges in the following manner, that is to say, one gives the other to drink from his hand, and drinks himself from the hand of the other; and if they have no liquid, they take of the dust from the ground and lick it.

*vocabulary***ἄνυδρος** waterless**ἄρειος** warlike**ἔλυτρον** covering, case; reservoir**ἐντός** within**ἐξαπόλλυμι** (ῥ) disappear from**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**θηριώδης** savage, wild**καταχώννυμι** (ῥ) bury**κατύπερθε** above, from above**νότος** south, south wind**ὁμιλία** (ιι) intercourse, company**πνέω** breathe, blow ~apnea**τοιόσδε** such**ψάμμος** (f) sand

## 4.173

Νασαμῶσι δὲ προσόμουροι εἰσὶ Ψύλλοι. οὗτοι  
 ἐξαπολώλασι τρόπῳ τοιῶδε· ὁ νότος σφι πνέων ἄνεμος  
 τὰ ἔλυτρα τῶν ὑδάτων ἐξηύηνε, ἥ δὲ χώρα σφι ἅπασα  
 ἐντὸς ἐούσα τῆς Σύρτιος ἦν ἄνυδρος. οἱ δὲ βουλευσάμενοι  
 κοινῶ λόγῳ ἐστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ τὸν νότον λέγων δὲ ταῦτα τὰ  
 λέγουσι Δίβυες, καὶ ἐπεῖτε ἐγίνοντο ἐν τῇ ψάμμῳ, πνεύσας  
 ὁ νότος κατέχωσε σφέας. ἐξαπολομένων δὲ τούτων ἔχουσι  
 τὴν χώραν οἱ Νασαμῶνες.

## 4.174

Τούτων δὲ κατύπερθε πρὸς νότον ἄνεμον ἐν τῇ, θηριώδεϊ  
 οἰκέουσι Γαράμαντες, οἱ πάντα ἄνθρωπον φεύγουσι καὶ  
 παντὸς ὁμιλίην, καὶ οὔτε ὄπλον ἐκτέεται ἀρήμιον οὐδὲν  
 οὔτε ἀμύνεσθαι ἐπιστέεται.

## 4.175

Οὔτοι μὲν δὴ κατύπερθε οἰκέουσι Νασαμώνων· τὸ δὲ παρὰ  
 τὴν θάλασσαν ἔχονται τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης Μάκαι,

4.173

Νασαμῶσι δὲ προσόμουροι εἰςὶ Ψύλλοι. οὗτοι  
 |disappear from τρώπῳ |such ὁ |south, σφι |breathe, blow. |S  
 τὰ |covering, case; ἰδάτων ἐξηύηνε, |ηὶ δὲ χώρῃ σφι ἅπασα  
 |reservoir |wind  
 |within ἰούσα τῆς Σύρτιος ἦν |waterless οἱ δὲ βουλευσάμενοι  
 κοινῶ λόγῳ ἐστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ τὸν |south, λέγω δὲ ταῦτα τὰ  
 |south  
 λέγουσι Λίβνες, καὶ ἐπείτε ἐγίνοντο ἐν τῇ |wind |sand , |breathe, blow  
 ὁ |south, κατέχωσε σφέας. |disappear from δὲ τούτων ἔχουσι  
 |south  
 τὴν χώρην οἱ Νασαμῶνες.  
 |wind

4.174

Τούτων δὲ |above, from above. |south, ἄνεμον ἐν τῇ, |savage, wild  
 οἰκέουσι Γαράμαντες, οἱ πάντα ἄνθρωπον φεύγουσι καὶ  
 |south  
 παντὸς ὁμιλίην, καὶ οὔτε ὄπλον ἐκτέαται |warlike οὐδὲν  
 |wind  
 οὔτε ἀμύνεσθαι ἐπιστέαται.

4.175

Οὗτοι μὲν δὴ |above, from above. \_σι Νασαμώνων· τὸ δὲ παρὰ  
 τὴν θάλασσαν ἔχονται τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης Μάκαι,

**4.173**

Adjoining the Nasamonians is the country of the Psylloi. These have perished utterly in the following manner:— The South Wind blowing upon them dried up all their cisterns of water, and their land was waterless, lying all within the Syrtis. They then having taken a resolve by common consent, marched in arms against the South Wind (I report that which is reported by the Libyans), and when they had arrived at the sandy tract, the South Wind blew and buried them in the sand. These then having utterly perished, the Nasamonians from that time forward possess their land.

**4.174**

Above these towards the South Wind in the region of wild beasts dwell the Garamantians, who fly from every man and avoid the company of all; and they neither possess any weapon of war, nor know how to defend themselves against enemies.

**4.175**

These dwell above the Nasamonians; and next to the Nasamonians along the sea coast towards the West come the

*vocabulary*

**ἄκτῃ** beach; cereal grain  
**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet  
**δασύς** hairy, brushy  
**δέρμα** -τος (n, 3) skin, hide  
 ~dermatology  
**διακόσιοι** (ᾱ) two hundred  
**δορά** hide, flaying  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**θρίξ** hair ~tresses  
**κατάγαιος** at ground level;  
 underground  
**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use  
 up

**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**περιδέω** tie around, on  
**προέχω** be ahead, jut forward; mid:  
 have before one  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**ῥοά** pl: waters of a river ~rheostat  
**ῥόος** ῥοῦ stream, flow, current  
 ~rheostat  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στρουθός** (f) sparrow ~struthiomimus  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
 ~bear  
**φιλός** (t) naked, bare ~epsilon

οἱ λόφους κείρονται, τὸ μὲν μέσον τῶν τριχῶν ἀνιέντες αὔξεσθαι, τὰ δὲ ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν κείροντες ἐν χροῖ, ἐς δὲ τὸν πόλεμον στρουθῶν καταγαίων δορὰς φορέουσι προβλήματα. διὰ δὲ αὐτῶν Κῖνυψ ποταμὸς ῥέων ἐκ λόφου καλυμένου Χαρίτων ἐς θάλασσαν ἐκδιδοῖ. ὁ δὲ λόφος οὗτος ὁ Χαρίτων δασὺς ἴδῃσι ἐστί, ἐούσης τῆς ἄλλης τῆς προκαταλεχθείσης Λιβύης ψιλῆς· ἀπὸ θαλάσσης δὲ ἐς αὐτὸν στάδιοι διηκόσιοι εἰσί.

## 4.176

Μακέων δὲ τούτων ἐχόμενοι Γινδᾶνες εἰσί, τῶν αἰ γυναικες περισφύρια δερμάτων πολλὰ ἐκάστη φορέει κατὰ τοιόνδε τι, ὡς λέγεται· κατ' ἄνδρα ἕκαστον μιχθέντα περισφύριον περιδέεται· ἥ δὲ ἂν πλείστα ἔχη, αὕτη ἀρίστη δέδοκται εἶναι ὡς ὑπὸ πλείστων ἀνδρῶν φιληθεῖσα.

## 4.177

Ἄκτῆν δὲ προέχουσιν ἐς τὸν πόντον τούτων τῶν Γινδάνων νέμονται Λωτοφάγοι, οἱ τὸν καρπὸν μῶνον τοῦ



οἱ |neck, |shave, sever, raze; ἔν μέσον τῶν |hair |urge,  
 crest on |devour, use up |impel;  
 αὐτοῖσι, τὰ δὲ ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν |shave, sever, raze; οἱ, ἐς  
 |hilltop |devour, use up |release  
 δὲ τὸν πόλεμον |sparrow |at ground |hide, |frequentative of φέρω,  
 |level; under-flaying |to carry  
 προβλήματα. διὰ δὲ αὐτῶν Κύνυ ποταμὸς ῥέων ἐκ |neck, crest on a  
 |ground |helmet, hilltop  
 καλευμένου Χαρίτων ἐς θάλασσαν |hand over ὃ δὲ |neck, crest on a  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 οὗτος ὁ Χαρίτων |hairy, ἔδῃσι ἐστί, εὐούσης τῆς ἄλλης  
 |brushy  
 τῆς προκαταλεχθείσης Λιβύης |naked, bare ἡ θαλάσσης δὲ  
 ἐς αὐτὸν στάδιοι |two hundred ἑ.

4.176

Μακέων δὲ τούτων ἐχόμενοι Γινδᾶνες εἰσί, τῶν αἱ  
 γυναικες περισφύρια |skin, hide πολλά ἐκάστη |frequentative of  
 |φέρω, to carry  
 κατὰ |such τι, ὡς λέγεται· κατ' ἄνδρα ἕκαστον μιχθέντα  
 περισφύριον |tie around, on, ἥ δὲ ἂν πλείστα ἔχῃ, αὕτη ἀρίστη  
 δέδοκται εἶναι ὡς ὑπὸ πλείστων ἀνδρῶν φιληθεῖσα.

4.177

|beach; δὲ |be ahead, ἐς τὸν πόντον τούτων τῶν  
 |grain |have before  
 Γινδάνων |distribute Λωτοφάγοι, οἱ τὸν καρπὸν μῶνον τοῦ

Macai, who shave their hair so as to leave tufts, letting the middle of their hair grow long, but round this on all sides shaving it close to the skin; and for fighting they carry shields made of ostrich skins. Through their land the river Kinyps runs out into the sea, flowing from a hill called the “Hill of the Charites.” This Hill of the Charites is overgrown thickly with wood, while the rest of Libya which has been spoken of before is bare of trees; and the distance from the sea to this hill is two hundred furlongs.

#### 4.176

Next to these Macai are the Gindanes, whose women wear each of them a number of anklets made of the skins of animals, for the following reason, as it is said:— for every man who has commerce with her she binds on an anklet, and the woman who has most is esteemed the best, since she has been loved by the greatest number of men.

#### 4.177

In a peninsula which stands out into the sea from the land of these Gindanes dwell the Lotophagoi, who live by

*vocabulary*

**εἰστίθῃμι** put in  
**ἐκατόμβῃ** hecatomb  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion  
**ἐξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo;  
 destroy someone  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,  
 arrive; be proper  
**κτίζω** found, populate ~oxytocin  
**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic

**λόγιος** learned, eloquent; oracle  
**λωτός** clover? lotus?  
**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)  
**μίν** him, her, it  
**περιπλώω** sail around  
**προσείκελος** somewhat like  
**τρίπους** three-legged cauldron ~pedal  
**τρώγω** nibble, crop  
**φοῖνιξ -κος** (m) red or purple dye or  
 color; bay (horse); palm tree

λωτοῦ τρώγοντες ζώουσι. ὁ δὲ τοῦ λωτοῦ καρπὸς ἐστὶ μέγαθος ὅσον τε τῆς σχίνου, γλυκύτητα δὲ τοῦ φοίνικος τῷ καρπῷ προσείκελος. ποιεῦνται δὲ ἐκ τοῦ καρποῦ τούτου οἱ Λωτοφάγοι καὶ οἶνον.

## 4.178

Λωτοφάγων δὲ τὸ παρὰ θάλασσαν ἔχονται Μάχλυνες, τῷ λωτῷ μὲν καὶ οὗτοι χρεώμενοι, ἀτὰρ ἦσσαν γε τῶν πρότερον λεχθέντων, κατήκουσι δὲ ἐπὶ ποταμὸν μέγαν τῷ οὐνομα Τρίτων ἐστί· ἐκδιδοὶ δὲ οὗτος ἐς λίμνην μεγάλην Τριτωνίδα. ἐν δὲ αὐτῇ, νῆσος ἐνὶ τῇ, οὐνομα Φλά. ταύτην δὲ τὴν νῆσον Λακεδαιμονίοισι φασὶ λόγιον εἶναι κτίσαι.

## 4.179

Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ὁδε λόγος λεγόμενος. Ἰήσωνα, ἐπεῖτε οἱ ἐξεργάσθη ὑπὸ τῷ Πηλίῳ ἢ Ἀργῷ, ἐσθέμενον ἐς αὐτὴν ἄλλην τε ἑκατόμβην καὶ δὴ καὶ τρίποδα χάλκεον περιπλώειν Πελοπόννησον, βουλόμενον ἐς Δελφοὺς ἀπικέσθαι. καί μιν, ὥς πλέοντα γενέσθαι κατὰ Μαλέην,

|clover? |nibble, crop ζώουσι. ὁ δὲ τοῦ |clover? lotus? ἔστι  
|lotus?

|tall, big ὅσον τε τῆς σχίνου, γλυκύτητα δὲ τοῦ |red, red dye;̂  
|palm tree

καρπῶ |somewhat like . ποιεῦνται δὲ ἐκ τοῦ καρποῦ τούτου  
οἱ Λωτοφάγοι καὶ οἶνον.

## 4.178

Λωτοφάγων δὲ τὸ παρὰ θάλασσαν ἔχονται Μάχλυνες,  
τῶ |clover? lotus? ἢ οὗτοι χρεώμενοι, ἀτὰρ ἦσσαν γε τῶν  
πρότερον λεχθέντων, |come down, (à day) to |lake, marsh, ἴλην  
|fall, arrive; be proper |basin, sea  
οὔνομα Τρίτων ἔστί· |hand over` οὗτος ἐς  
Τριτωνίδα. ἐν δὲ αὐτῇ, νῆσος |be in,], οὔνομα Φλά. ταύτην  
δὲ τὴν νῆσον Λακεδαιμονίοισι φασὶ λόγιον εἶναι |found, .  
|populate

## 4.179

Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ὅδε λόγος λεγόμενος. Ἰήσωνα, ἐπεῖτε  
οἱ |accomplish; undo; τῶ Πηλῖῳ ἢ Ἀργῶ, |put in ἔς  
|destroy someone  
αὐτὴν ἄλλην τε |hecatomb καὶ δὴ καὶ |cauldron χάλκεον  
|sail around Πελοπόννησον, βουλόμενον ἐς Δελφοὺς  
ἀπικέσθαι. καί μιν, ὥς πλέοντα γενέσθαι κατὰ Μαλέην,

eating the fruit of the lotos only. Now the fruit of the lotos is in size like that of the mastich-tree, and in flavour it resembles that of the date-palm. Of this fruit the Lotophagoi even make for themselves wine.

**4.178**

Next after the Lotophagoi along the sea-coast are the Machlyans, who also make use of the lotos, but less than those above mentioned. These extend to a great river named the river Triton, and this runs out into a great lake called Tritonis, in which there is an island named Phla. About this island they say there was an oracle given to the Lacedemonians that they should make a settlement in it.

**4.179**

The following moreover is also told, namely that Jason, when the Argo had been completed by him under Mount Pelion, put into it a hecatomb and with it also a tripod of bronze, and sailed round Pelopponese, desiring to come to Delphi; and when in sailing he got near Malea, a North

*vocabulary***ἀπήμιων** unharmed, not harmful**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind**διέκπλοος** passage, breaking through**ἐκγονος** offspring, descendant ~genus**ἐξαγωγή** going out, export**ἐπιχώριος** native**καθοράω** look down ~panorama**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**πéριξ** all around**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare**πόρω** aor. give, pf. be fated**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore**συμπλέω** sail with ~float**τρίπους** three-legged cauldron ~pedal**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's  
support, seize; speak up; imagine  
~epilepsy

ὑπολαβεῖν ἄνεμον βορέην καὶ ἀποφέρειν πρὸς τὴν Λιβύην·  
 πρὶν δὲ κατιδέσθαι γῆν, ἐν τοῖσι βράχεσι γενέσθαι  
 λίμνης τῆς Τριτωνίδος. καὶ οἱ ἀπορέοντι τὴν ἐξαγωγὴν  
 λόγος ἐστὶ φανῆναι Τρίτωνα καὶ κελεύειν τὸν Ἰήσωνα  
 ἑωυτῷ δοῦναι τὸν τρίποδα, φάμενόν σφι καὶ τὸν πόρον  
 δέξειν καὶ ἀπήμονας ἀποστελέειν. πειθομένου δὲ τοῦ  
 Ἰήσονος, οὕτω δὴ τὸν τε διέκπλοον τῶν βραχέων  
 δεικνύναι τὸν Τρίτωνά σφι καὶ τὸν τρίποδα θεῖναι ἐν  
 τῷ ἑωυτοῦ ἱρῷ, ἐπιθεσπίσαντά τε τῷ τρίποδι καὶ τοῖσι  
 σὺν Ἰήσωνι σημήναντα τὸν πάντα λόγον, ὥς ἐπεὰν  
 τὸν τρίποδα κομίσηται τῶν ἐκγόνων τις τῶν ἐν τῇ  
 Ἀργοῖ συμπλεόντων, τότε ἑκατὸν πόλιας οἰκῆσαι περὶ  
 τὴν Τριτωνίδα λίμνην Ἑλληνίδας πᾶσαν εἶναι ἀνάγκην.  
 ταῦτα ἀκούσαντας τοὺς ἐπιχωρίους τῶν Λιβύων κρύψαι  
 τὸν τρίποδα.

## 4.180

Τούτων δὲ ἔχοντας τῶν Μαχλύων Αὐσέες· οὗτοι δὲ καὶ οἱ  
 Μάχλυες πέριξ τὴν Τριτωνίδα λίμνην οἰκέουσι, τὸ



take under one's, sup- north, καὶ carry off πρὸς τὴν Λιβύην·  
 port, seize; speak up; north  
 imagine πρὶν δὲ look down γῆν, ἐν τοῖσι βράχεσι γενέσθαι  
 wind

lake, marsh, Τριτωνίδος. καὶ οἱ be confused, dis-going out, export  
 basin, sea tressed

λόγος ἐστὶ φανῆναι Τρίτωνα καὶ κελεύειν τὸν Ἰήсона

έωυτῷ δοῦναι τὸν cauldron , φάμενόν σφι καὶ τὸν πόρον

δέξειν καὶ unharmed, ἀποστελέειν. πειθομένου δὲ τοῦ  
 not harmful

Ἰήσονος, οὕτω δὴ τὸν τε passage, break- ἔν βραχέων  
 ing through

δεικνύναι τὸν Τρίτωνά σφι καὶ τὸν cauldron θείναι ἐν

τῷ έωυτοῦ ἱρώ, ἐπιθεσπίσαντά τε τῷ cauldron καὶ τοῖσι

σὺν Ἰήσωνι give orders to; τὸν πάντα λόγον, ὥς έπεὰν  
 show; mark

τὸν cauldron κομίσσεται τῶν offspring τις τῶν ἐν τῇ

Ἀργοῖ sail with , τότε έκατὸν πόλιας οἰκῆσαι περὶ

τὴν Τριτωνίδα lake, marsh, ἁλινίδας πᾶσαν εἶναι ἀνάγκην.  
 basin, sea

ταῦτα ἀκούσαντας τοὺς native τῶν Λιβύων hide,  
 cover

τὸν cauldron

4.180

Τούτων δὲ έχοντας τῶν Μαχλύων Αὐσέες· οὗτοι δὲ καὶ οἱ

Μάχλυνες all around Τριτωνίδα lake, marsh, ὄουσι, τὸ  
 basin, sea

Wind seized his ship and carried it off to Libya, and before he caught sight of land he had come to be in the shoals of the lake Tritonis. Then as he was at a loss how he should bring his ship forth, the story goes that Triton appeared to him and bade Jason give him the tripod, saying that he would show them the right course and let them go away without hurt: and when Jason consented to it, then Triton showed them the passage out between the shoals and set the tripod in his own temple, after having first uttered a prophecy over the tripod and having declared to Jason and his company the whole matter, namely that whensoever one of the descendants of those who sailed with him in the Argo should carry away this tripod, then it was determined by fate that a hundred cities of Hellenes should be established about the lake Tritonis. Having heard this the native Libyans concealed the tripod.

#### 4.180

Next to these Machlyans are the Auseans. These and the Machlyans dwell round the lake Tritonis, and the river Triton is the boundary between

*vocabulary***ἀναβιβάζω** make to mount, promote**ἄνειμι** go up, inland, to, back ~ion**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet**ἀποτελέω** accomplish, produce**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**αὐθιγενής** native-born**δίιστημι** stand apart ~stand**δίχα** in two, in two ways**ἐκάστοτε** each time**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐνιαύσιος** yearling**εὖς** good, brave, noble**καλλιστεύω** be the best**κομέω** have long hair**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**κυνέα** -ῆς helmet ~hound**κύνεος** doglike, shameless ~hound**κυνέω** kiss**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**μέμφομαι** blame; reject**μίν** him, her, it**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**ὀρτή** holiday, feast**οὐρίζω** divide; ordain, define**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**παλαίω** wrestle ~Pallas**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**πανοπλία** suit of armor**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon**πάτριος** of the father(s), ancestral**περιάγω** lead around**ψευδοπάρθενος** fake virgin

μέσον δέ σφι οὐρίζει ὁ Τρίτων. καὶ οἱ μὲν Μάχλυνες  
 τὰ ὀπίσω κομῶσι τῆς κεφαλῆς, οἱ δὲ Αὐσέες τὰ  
 ἔμπροσθε. ὁρτῇ δὲ ἐνιαυσίῃ Ἀθηναίης αἱ παρθένοι αὐτῶν  
 δίχα διαστᾶσαι μάχονται πρὸς ἀλλήλας λίθοισί τε καὶ  
 ξύλοισι, τῷ αὐθιγενεί θεῷ λέγουσαι τὰ πάτρια ἀποτελέειν,  
 τὴν Ἀθηναίην καλέομεν. τὰς δὲ ἀποθησκούσας τῶν  
 παρθένων ἐκ τῶν τραμάτων ψευδοπαρθένους καλέουσι.  
 πρὶν δὲ ἀνείναι αὐτὰς μάχεσθαι, τάδε ποιεῦσι κοινῇ.  
 παρθένον τὴν καλλιστεύουσαν ἐκάστοτε κοσμήσαντες  
 κυνέη τε Κορινθίῃ καὶ πανοπλίῃ Ἑλληνικῇ καὶ ἐπ' ἄρμα  
 ἀναβιβάσαντες περιάγουσι τὴν λίμνην κύκλῳ. ὅτέοισι δὲ  
 τὸ πάλαι ἐκόσμεον τὰς παρθένους πρὶν ἢ σφι Ἑλλήνας  
 παροικισθῆναι, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν, δοκέω δ' ὦν Αἰγυπτίοισι  
 ὅπλοισι κοσμέεσθαι αὐτάς· ἀπὸ γὰρ Αἰγύπτου καὶ τὴν  
 ἀσπίδα καὶ τὸ κράνος φημὶ ἀπίχθαι ἐς τοὺς Ἑλλήνας.  
 τὴν δὲ Ἀθηναίην φασὶ Ποσειδέωνος εἶναι θυγατέρα καὶ  
 τῆς Τριτωνίδος λίμνης, καὶ μιν μεμφθεῖσάν τι τῷ πατρὶ  
 δοῦναι ἑωυτὴν τῷ Δίῳ, τὸν δὲ Δία ἑωυτοῦ μιν ποιήσασθαι

μέσον δέ σφι |divide; or-Τρίτων. καὶ οἱ μὲν Μάχλυες  
 |dain, define  
 τὰ ὀπίσω |have long hair κεφαλῆς, οἱ δὲ Αὐσέες τὰ  
 ἔμπροσθε. |holiday,` |yearling Ἀθηναίης αἱ |girl, virgin αὐτῶν  
 |feast  
 |in |stand apart μάχονται πρὸς ἀλλήλας λίθοισί τε καὶ  
 two,  
 |in two  
 |ways |native-born ἑῷ λέγουσαι τὰ |of the accomplish, ,  
 |father(s),|produce  
 |ancestral  
 τὴν Ἀθηναίην καλέομεν. τὰς δὲ ἀποδνησκούσας τῶν  
 |girl, virgin ἐκ τῶν τρωμάτων |fake virgin καλέουσι.  
 πρὶν δὲ ἀνείναι αὐτὰς μάχεσθαι, τάδε ποιεῦσι κοινῇ.  
 |girl, virgin τὴν |be the best |each time |marshal, array  
 κυνέη τε Κορινθίῃ καὶ πανοπλίῃ Ἑλληνικῇ καὶ ἐπ' |chariot  
 |make to mount, |lead around τὴν |lake, |circle, . ὅτέοισι δὲ  
 |promote |marsh, |wheel  
 τὸ πάλαι |marshal, τὰς |girl, virgin |basin, πρὶν ἢ σφι |Greek  
 |array |sea  
 παροικισθῆναι, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν, δοκέω δ' ὦν Αἰγυπτίοισι  
 ὅπλοισι |marshal, αὐτάς· ἀπὸ γὰρ Αἰγύπτου καὶ τὴν  
 |array  
 ἀσπίδα καὶ τὸ |helmet; ship's ram ἔχθαι ἐς τοὺς |Greek  
 τὴν δὲ Ἀθηναίην φασὶ Ποσειδέωνος εἶναι θυγατέρα καὶ  
 τῆς Τριτωνίδος |lake, marsh, ἴμιν |blame; reject τι τῷ πατρὶ  
 |basin, sea  
 δοῦναι ἐωυτὴν τῷ Δίῳ, τὸν δὲ Δία ἐωυτοῦ μιν ποιήσασθαι

them: and while the Machlyans grow their hair long at the back of the head, the Auseans do so in front. At a yearly festival of Athene their maidens take their stand in two parties and fight against one another with stones and staves, and they say that in doing so they are fulfilling the rites handed down by their fathers for the divinity who was sprung from that land, whom we call Athene: and those of the maidens who die of the wounds received they call "false-maidens." But before they let them begin the fight they do this:— all join together and equip the maiden who is judged to be the fairest on each occasion, with a Corinthian helmet and with full Hellenic armour, and then causing her to go up into a chariot they conduct her round the lake. Now I cannot tell with what they equipped the maidens in old time, before the Hellenes were settled near them; but I suppose that they used to be equipped with Egyptian armour, for it is from Egypt that both the shield and the helmet have come to the Hellenes, as I affirm. They say moreover that Athene is the daughter of Poseidon and of the lake Tritonis, and that she had some cause of complaint against her father and therefore gave herself to Zeus, and Zeus made her his own daughter. Such is the story which these tell; and

*vocabulary***ἄδρός** full-grown, fat**ἀνακοντίζω** spurt up ~acute**γλυκός** sweet, pleasant ~glycerine**ἐπίκοινος** in common**ἐρήμος** empty**ἐρημόω** raze, bereave; desert, isolate**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**θηριώδης** savage, wild**κατάκειμαι** lie down**κολώνος** hill, mound**κορυφή** peak, crown**μεσόγαια** inland**μίξις** mixing; sex, commerce**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**ὄφρῦη** eyebrow**παραθαλάσσιος** by the sea**παρατείνω** extend, lengthen, torture**στήλη** post, column**συμφοιτάω** regularly attend together**συμφοιτέω** regularly attend together**συνοικέω** live together**τρύφος** -εος (n, 3) fragment ~drop**ψυχρός** (ῥ) cold ~psychology

θυγατέρα. ταῦτα μὲν λέγουσι, μῖξιν δὲ ἐπικούινον τῶν γυναικῶν ποιεόνται, οὔτε συνοικέοντες κτηνηδόν τε μισγόμενοι. ἐπεὰν δὲ γυναικὶ τὸ παιδίον ἀδρὸν γένηται, συμφοιτῶσι ἐς τὸντο οἱ ἄνδρες τρίτου μηνός, καὶ τῷ ἂν οἴκῃ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τὸ παιδίον, τούτου παῖς νομίζεται.

## 4.181

Οὔτοι μὲν οἱ παραθαλάσσιοι τῶν νομάδων Λιβύων εἰρέεται, ὑπὲρ δὲ τούτων ἐς μεσόγαιαν ἢ θηριώδης ἐστὶ Λιβύη, ὑπὲρ δὲ τῆς θηριώδους ὀφρὺν ψάμμης κατήκει παρατείνουσα ἀπὸ Θηβέων τῶν Αἰγυπτίων ἐπ' Ἡρακλέας στήλας. ἐν δὲ τῇ ὀφρύνῃ ταύτῃ μάλιστα διὰ δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ ἄλός ἐστι τρύφεια κατὰ χόνδρους μεγάλους ἐν κολωνοῖσι, καὶ ἐν κορυφῇσι ἐκάστου τοῦ κολωνοῦ ἀνακοντίζει ἐκ μέσου τοῦ ἄλός ὕδωρ ψυχρὸν καὶ γλυκύ, περὶ δὲ αὐτὸν ἄνθρωποι οἰκέουσι ἔσχατοι πρὸς τῆς ἐρήμου καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς θηριώδους, πρῶτοι μὲν ἀπὸ Θηβέων διὰ δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ Ἀμμώνιοι, ἔχοντες τὸ ἶρον ἀπὸ τοῦ Θηβαίεος Διός· καὶ γὰρ τὸ ἐν Θήβῃσι,



θυγατέρα. ταῦτα μὲν λέγουσι, <sup>|mixing; sex,|</sup>in common  
<sup>|commerce</sup>  
 τῶν γυναικῶν ποιέονται, οὔτε <sup>|live together</sup> κτηνηδόν τε  
 μισγόμενοι. ἐπεὰν δὲ γυναικὶ τὸ παιδίον <sup>|fat</sup> γένηται,  
 συμφοιτῶσι ἐς τὸντὸ οἱ ἄνδρες τρίτου μηνός, καὶ τῷ ἂν  
 οἴκῃ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τὸ παιδίον, τούτου παῖς νομίζεται.

4.181

Οὔτοι μὲν οἱ <sup>|by the sea</sup> τῶν <sup>|roaming, grazing</sup> Λιβύων  
 εἰρέεται, ὑπὲρ δὲ τούτων ἐς μεσόγαιαν ἡ <sup>|savage, wild</sup>  
 ἐστὶ Λιβύη, ὑπὲρ δὲ τῆς <sup>|savage, wild</sup> <sup>|eyebrow</sup> ψάμμης  
<sup>|lie down</sup> <sup>|extend, lengthen, torture</sup> ἰπὸ Θηβέων τῶν Αἰγυπτίων ἐπ'  
 Ἡρακλέας <sup>|post, column</sup> ἐν δὲ τῇ <sup>|eyebrow</sup> αὐτῇ μάλιστα διὰ  
 δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ ἁλὸς ἐστὶ <sup>|fragment</sup> κατὰ χόνδρους  
 μεγάλους ἐν <sup>|hill, mound</sup> καὶ ἐν <sup>|peak, crown</sup> ἐκάστου τοῦ  
<sup>|hill, mound</sup> <sup>|spurt up</sup> ἐκ μέσου τοῦ ἁλὸς ὕδωρ <sup>|cold</sup> καὶ  
<sup>|sweet, pleasant</sup> , γερὶ δὲ αὐτὸν ἄνθρωποι οἰκέουσι <sup>|farthest</sup> πρὸς τῆς  
 ἐρήμου καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς <sup>|savage, wild</sup>, πρῶτοι μὲν ἀπὸ Θηβέων  
 διὰ δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ Ἀμμώνιοι, ἔχοντες τὸ ἶρὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 Θηβαιέος Διός· καὶ γὰρ τὸ ἐν Θήβῃσι,

they have their intercourse with women in common, not marrying but having intercourse like cattle: and when the child of any woman has grown big, he is brought before a meeting of the men held within three months of that time, and whomsoever of the men the child resembles, his son he is accounted to be.

#### 4.181

Thus then have been mentioned those nomad Libyans who live along the sea-coast: and above these inland is the region of Libya which has wild beasts; and above the wild-beast region there stretches a raised belt of sand, extending from Thebes of the Egyptians to the Pillars of Heracles. In this belt at intervals of about ten days' journey there are fragments of salt in great lumps forming hills, and at the top of each hill there shoots up from the middle of the salt a spring of water cold and sweet; and about the spring dwell men, at the furthest limit towards the desert, and above the wild-beast region. First, at a distance of ten days' journey from Thebes, are the Ammonians, whose temple is derived from that of the Theban Zeus, for the image of Zeus in Thebes

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαλμα** -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory, statue

**ἀμβολάδην** spurting up ~ballistic

**ἀποκλίνω** (i) bend aside ~incline

**ἄρδω** give water

**ἐπίκλησις** -τος (f) nickname; nominally ~gallo

**ζέω** boil ~eczema

**θερμός** warm, hot ~thermos

**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος

**κῆπος** garden, orchard

**κολωνός** hill, mound

**κρηναῖος** of a spring or fountain

**κρήνη** well, spring

**κριοπρόσωπος** (i) ram-faced

**μεσαμβρία** midday; the south

**ὄρθρος** dawn

**ὄφρυς** eyebrow

**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into contact with

**πληθύω** become full; abound, multiply

**τηνικαῦτα** at that time, in that case

**ὕφειμι** lower; admit; slack off ~jet

**φοῖνιξ** -χος (m) red or purple dye or color; bay (horse); palm tree

**φοιτάω** go back and forth

**χωρός** place ~heir

**ψάμμος** (f) sand

**ψυχρός** (i) cold ~psychology

**ψύχω** (i) breathe, blow ~psychology

ὥς καὶ πρότερον εἴρηταί μοι, κριοπρόσωπον τοῦ Διὸς  
 τῶγαλμα ἐστί. τυγχάνει δὲ καὶ ἄλλο σφι ὕδωρ κρηναῖον  
 ἐὼν, τὸ τὸν μὲν ὄρθρον γίνεται χλιαρόν, ἀγορῆς δὲ  
 πληθυσύσης ψυχρότερον, μεσαμβρίῃ τε ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ κάρτα  
 γίνεται ψυχρόν· τηνικαῦτα δὲ ἄρδουσι τοὺς κήπους·  
 ἀποκλινομένης δὲ τῆς ἡμέρης ὑπίεται τοῦ ψυχροῦ, ἐς  
 οὗ δύεται τε ὁ ἥλιος καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ γίνεται χλιαρόν. ἐπὶ  
 δὲ μᾶλλον ἰὼν ἐς τὸ θερμὸν ἐς μέσας νύκτας πελάζει,  
 τηνικαῦτα δὲ ζέει ἀμβολάδην· παρέρχονται τε μέσαι  
 νύκτες καὶ ψύχεται μέχρι ἐς ἡῶ. ἐπὶ κλησιν δὲ αὕτη ἡ  
 κρήνη καλέεται ἡλίου.

## 4.182

Μετὰ δὲ Ἀμμωνίους διὰ τῆς ὀφρύης τῆς ψάμμου δι'  
 ἀλλέων δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ κολωνός τε ἁλός ἐστι ὅμοιος  
 τῷ Ἀμμωνίῳ καὶ ὕδωρ, καὶ ἄνθρωποι περὶ αὐτὸν οἰκέουσι·  
 τῷ δὲ χώρῳ τούτῳ ὄνομα Αὔγिला ἐστί. ἐς τοῦτον τὸν  
 χώρον οἱ Νασαμῶνες ὀπωριεῦντες τοὺς φοίνικας φοιτῶσι.

ὥς καὶ πρότερον εἴρηταί μοι, |ram-faced τοῦ Διὸς

|ornament, glory, statue ἔτι. τυγχάνει δὲ καὶ ἄλλο σφι ὕδωρ |of a spring  
|glory, statue |or fountain

ἔον, τὸ τὸν μὲν |dawn γίνεται χλιαρόν, ἀγορῆς δὲ

|become full;|cold , |midday; the south ἱ καὶ τὸ |very much

|abound,  
|multiply

γίνεται |cold

|at that time, in that|give water

|case

τοὺς |garden,  
|orchard

|bend aside

δὲ τῆς ἡμέρης

|lower; admit;|cold  
|slack off

, ἐς

οὗ δύεταί τε ὁ ἥλιος καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ γίνεται χλιαρόν. ἐπὶ

δὲ μᾶλλον ἰὸν ἐς τὸ |warm, hot μέσας νύκτας |bring/come to, near,  
|into contact with

|at that time, in|boil ἀμβολάδην· παρέρχονται τε μέσαι  
|that case

νύκτες καὶ |breathe, blow, ρι ἐς ἡῶ. |nickname; δὲ αὕτη ἡ  
|nominally

|well, καλέεται ἡλίου.  
|spring

4.182

Μετὰ δὲ Ἀμμωνίους διὰ τῆς |eyebrow τῆς |sand δι'

ἀλλέων δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ |hill, τε ἀλός ἐστι ὅμοιος  
|mound

τῷ Ἀμμωνίῳ καὶ ὕδωρ, καὶ ἄνθρωποι περὶ αὐτὸν οἰκέουσι·

τῷ δὲ |place τούτῳ οὖνομα Αὔγिला ἐστί. ἐς τοῦτον τὸν

|place οἱ Νασαμῶνες ὁπωριεῦντες τοὺς |red, red|go back and forth  
|dye; palm  
|tree

also, as I have said before, has the head of a ram. These, as it chances, have also other water of a spring, which in the early morning is warm; at the time when the market fills, cooler; when midday comes, it is quite cold, and then they water their gardens; but as the day declines, it abates from its coldness, until at last, when the sun sets, the water is warm; and it continues to increase in heat still more until it reaches midnight, when it boils and throws up bubbles; and when midnight passes, it becomes cooler gradually till dawn of day. This spring is called the fountain of the Sun.

#### 4.182

After the Ammonians, as you go on along the belt of sand, at an interval again of ten days' journey there is a hill of salt like that of the Ammonians, and a spring of water, with men dwelling about it; and the name of this place is Augila. To this the Nasamonians come year by year to gather the fruit of the date-palms.

*vocabulary***ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat ~heir**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**δέρμα** -τος (n, 3) skin, hide

~dermatology

**ἐπιφορέω** pile on**θηρεύω** hunt, fish ~fierce**καρποφόρος** fruit-bearing**κολωνός** hill, mound**κύπτω** stoop, bend down**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**ὄφης** ὄφεως (m) serpent ~ophidian**παχύτης** -τος (f, 3) thickness**σιτέομαι** (i) eat ~parasite**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora**σύντομος** truncated, concise**τέθριππος** four-horse**τρωγλοδύτης** -ου (m, 1) hole-dweller;  
wren**φοῖνιξ** -κος (m) red or purple dye or  
color; bay (horse); palm tree

## 4.183

Ἀπὸ δὲ Αὐγίλων διὰ δέκα ἡμερέων ἀλλέων ὁδοῦ ἕτερος  
ἀλὸς κολωνὸς καὶ ὕδωρ καὶ φοίνικες καρποφόροι πολλοί,  
κατὰ περ καὶ ἐν τοῖσι ἑτέροισι· καὶ ἄνθρωποι οἰκέουσι  
ἐν αὐτῷ τοῖσι οὖνομα Γαράμαντες ἐστί, ἔθνος μέγα  
ἰσχυρῶς, οἱ ἐπὶ τὸν ἄλλα γῆν ἐπιφορέοντες οὕτω σπεύρουσι.  
συντομώτατον δ' ἐστὶ ἐς τοὺς Λωτοφάγους, ἐκ τῶν  
τριήκοντα ἡμερέων ἐς αὐτοὺς ὁδὸς ἐστι· ἐν τοῖσι καὶ οἱ  
ὀπισθονόμοι βόες γίνονται· ὀπισθονόμοι δὲ διὰ τόδε εἰσι.  
τὰ κέρεα ἔχουσι κεκυφότα ἐς τὸ ἔμπροσθε· διὰ τοῦτο  
ὀπίσω ἀναχωρέοντες νέμονται· ἐς γὰρ τὸ ἔμπροσθε οὐκ  
οἶοι τε εἰσὶ προεμβαλλόντων ἐς τὴν γῆν τῶν κερέων. ἄλλο  
δὲ οὐδὲν διαφέρουσι τῶν ἄλλων βοῶν ὅτι μὴ τοῦτο καὶ τὸ  
δέρμα ἐς παχύτητά τε καὶ τρυψιν. οἱ Γαράμαντες δὴ οὗτοι  
τοὺς τρωγλοδύτας Αἰθίοπας θηρεύουσι τοῖσι τεθρίπποισι·  
οἱ γὰρ τρωγλοδύται Αἰθίοπες πόδας τάχιστοι ἀνθρώπων  
πάντων εἰσὶ τῶν ἡμεῖς πέρι λόγους ἀποφερομένους  
ἀκούομεν. σιτεύονται δὲ οἱ τρωγλοδύται ὄφεις καὶ σαύρους



4.183

Ἀπὸ δὲ Αὐγίλων διὰ δέκα ἡμερέων ἀλλέων ὁδοῦ ἕτερος

άλος |hill, mound καὶ ὕδωρ καὶ |red, red|fruit-bearing πολλοί,  
|dye; palm

κατὰ περ καὶ ἐν τοῖσι ἐτέροισι· καὶ ἄνθρωποι οἰκέουσι  
|tree

ἐν αὐτῷ τοῖσι οὖνομα Γαράμαντες ἐστί, ἔθνος μέγα

ισχυρῶς, οἱ ἐπὶ τὸν ἄλα γῆν |pile on οὕτω |sow

|truncated, concise δ' ἐστὶ ἐς τοὺς Λωτοφάγους, ἐκ τῶν

τριήκοντα ἡμερέων ἐς αὐτοὺς ὁδός ἐστι· ἐν τοῖσι καὶ οἱ

ὀπισθονόμοι βόες γίνονται· ὀπισθονόμοι δὲ διὰ τόδε εἰσι.

τὰ κέρεα ἔχουσι |stoop, bend down ἔμπροσθε· διὰ τοῦτο

ὀπίσω |return, retreat |distribute ἐς γὰρ τὸ ἔμπροσθε οὐκ

οἶοι τε εἰσὶ προεμβαλλόντων ἐς τὴν γῆν τῶν κερέων. ἄλλο

δὲ οὐδὲν διαφέρουσι τῶν ἄλλων βοῶν ὅτι μὴ τοῦτο καὶ τὸ

|skin, hide |thickness τε καὶ τρῖψιν. οἱ Γαράμαντες δὴ οὗτοι

τοὺς |hole-dweller; Αἰθίοπας |hunt, fish τοῖσι |four-horse  
|wren

οἱ γὰρ |hole-dweller; Αἰθίοπες πόδας τάχιστοι ἀνθρώπων  
|wren

πάντων εἰσὶ τῶν ἡμεῖς πέρι λόγους |carry off

ἀκούομεν. σιτέονται δὲ οἱ |hole-dweller; |serpent καὶ σαύρους  
|wren

## 4.183

From Augila at a distance again of ten days' journey there is another hill of salt and spring of water and a great number of fruit-bearing date-palms, as there are also in the other places: and men dwell here who are called the Garmantians, a very great nation, who carry earth to lay over the salt and then sow crops. From this point is the shortest way to the Lotophagoi, for from these it is a journey of thirty days to the country of the Garmantians. Among them also are produced the cattle which feed backwards; and they feed backwards for this reason, because they have their horns bent down forwards, and therefore they walk backwards as they feed; for forwards they cannot go, because the horns run into the ground in front of them; but in nothing else do they differ from other cattle except in this and in the thickness and firmness to the touch of their hide. These Garamantians of whom I speak hunt the "Cave-dwelling" Ethiopians with their four-horse chariots, for the Cave-dwelling Ethiopians are the swiftest of foot of all men about whom we hear report made: and the Cave-dwellers feed upon serpents and lizards

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἅλης** crowded; all together**ἄνώνυμος** nameless ~name**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary**ἐπιτρίβω** rub on; destroy**ἔρπετόν** able to move ~serpent**θέρως** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos**καταράομαι** (αἶα) curse**κολωνός** hill, mound**κορυφή** peak, crown**κυκλοτερής** rounded (by wear) ~cycle**λοιδορέω** abuse, revile**νέφος** -εος (n, 3) cloud ~nebula**νυκτερίς** -δος (f) bat (animal)

~nocturnal

**παρόμοιος** closely resembling**τρίζω** scream**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay

~ballistic

καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν ἐρπετῶν· γλῶσσαν δὲ οὐδεμιῇ ἄλλῃ  
παρομοίην νενομίκασι, ἀλλὰ τετρίγασι κατὰ περ αἱ  
νυκτερίδες.

## 4.184

Ἀπὸ δὲ Γαραμάντων δι' ἀλλέων δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ ἄλλος  
ἄλος τε κολωνὸς καὶ ὕδωρ, καὶ ἄνθρωποι περὶ αὐτὸν  
οἰκέουσι τοῖσι οὖνομα ἐστὶ Ἀτάραντες, οἱ ἀνώνυμοι εἰσὶ  
μοῦνοι ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν· ἀλέσι μὲν γάρ σφι ἐστὶ  
Ἀτάραντες οὖνομα, ἐνὶ δὲ ἐκάστω αὐτῶν οὖνομα οὐδὲν  
κέεται. οὗτοι τῷ ἡλίῳ ὑπερβάλλοντι καταρῶνται καὶ  
πρὸς τούτοισι πάντα τὰ αἰσχροῦ λαιδορέονται, ὅτι σφέας  
καίων ἐπιτρίβει, αὐτούς τε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους καὶ τὴν χώραν  
αὐτῶν. μετὰ δὲ δι' ἀλλέων δέκα ἡμερέων ἄλλος κολωνὸς  
ἄλος καὶ ὕδωρ, καὶ ἄνθρωποι περὶ αὐτὸν οἰκέουσι. ἔχεται  
δὲ τοῦ ἄλὸς Τούτου ὅρος τῷ οὖνομα ἐστὶ Ἄτλας, ἔστι  
δὲ στεινὸν καὶ κυκλοτερές πάντη, ὑψηλὸν δὲ οὕτω δὴ τι  
λέγεται ὥς τὰς κορυφὰς αὐτοῦ οὐκ οἶα τε εἶναι ἰδέσθαι.  
οὐδέκοτε γὰρ αὐτὰς ἀπολείπειν νέφεα οὔτε θέρεος

καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν |able to|tongue, δὲ οὐδεμιῇ ἄλλῃ  
 |move |language  
 |closely νενομίκασι, ἀλλὰ |scream κατά περ αἰ  
 |resembling  
 |bat (animal)

4.184

Ἀπὸ δὲ Γαραμάντων δι' ἀλλέων δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ ἄλλος  
 ἁλὸς τε |hill, καὶ ὕδωρ, καὶ ἄνθρωποι περὶ αὐτὸν  
 |mound  
 οἰκέουσι τοῖσι οὖνομα ἐστὶ Ἀτάραντες, οἱ |nameless εἰσὶ  
 μῦνοι ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν· |crowded; , ἄρ σφι ἐστὶ  
 |all together  
 Ἀτάραντες οὖνομα, ἐνὶ δὲ ἐκάστῳ αὐτῶν οὖνομα οὐδὲν  
 κέεται. οὗτοι τῷ ἡλίῳ |cause to go be-|curse καὶ  
 |yond; delay  
 πρὸς τούτοις πάντα τὰ |shameful|abuse, revile , ὅτι σφέας  
 καίων |rub on; destroy. ὥς τε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους καὶ τὴν χώραν  
 αὐτῶν. μετὰ δὲ δι' ἀλλέων δέκα ἡμερέων ἄλλος |hill,  
 |mound  
 ἁλὸς καὶ ὕδωρ, καὶ ἄνθρωποι περὶ αὐτὸν οἰκέουσι. ἔχεται  
 δὲ τοῦ ἁλὸς Τούτου ὅρος τῷ οὖνομα ἐστὶ Ἄτλας, ἔστι  
 δὲ στενὸν καὶ |rounded πάντη, ὑψηλὸν δὲ οὕτω δὴ τι  
 λέγεται ὡς τὰς |peak, αὐτοῦ οὐκ οἶά τε εἶναι ἰδέσθαι.  
 |crown  
 οὐδέκοτε γὰρ αὐτὰς ἀπολείπειν |cloud οὔτε |sum-  
 |mer

and such creeping things, and they use a language which resembles no other, for in it they squeak just like bats.

#### 4.184

From the Garmentians at a distance again of ten days' journey there is another hill of salt and spring of water, and men dwell round it called Atarantians, who alone of all men about whom we know are nameless; for while all taken together have the name Atarantians, each separate man of them has no name given to him. These utter curses against the Sun when he is at his height, and moreover revile him with all manner of foul terms, because he oppresses them by his burning heat, both themselves and their land. After this at a distance of ten days' journey there is another hill of salt and spring of water, and men dwell round it. Near this salt hill is a mountain named Atlas, which is small in circuit and rounded on every side; and so exceedingly lofty is it said to be, that it is not possible to see its summits, for clouds never leave them either in the summer

*vocabulary***ἅλινος** of salt**ἄνομβρος** having little rain**ἄνυδρος** waterless**ἄξυλος** thickly timbered ~xylophone**αὐτόθι** on the spot**διάκειμαι** be in a condition**διακέομαι** repair**εἶδος** -ους (n, 3) appearance, form  
~oid**ἐμψυχος** (ō) animate, animated**ἐνύπνιος** seen in dreams**ἐπιχώριος** native**ἐπώνυμος** named for a reason ~name**ἐρῆμος** empty**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἱκμάς** -δος (f, 3) moisture**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose;  
enroll ~legion**κίων** κίονος (ī, f) pillar**μεσόγαια** inland**μέταλλον** mine; mineral**νότος** south, south wind**ὄον** οῦ type of fruit**ὀρύσσω** dig**ὄφρῦη** eyebrow**πορφύρεος** purple**σιτέομαι** (ī) eat ~parasite**στήλη** post, column**τοιχος** wall of a house**ὕω** (ō) to rain**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

οὔτε χειμῶνος. τοῦτο τὸν κίονα τοῦ οὐρανοῦ λέγουσι οἱ ἐπιχώριοι εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτου τοῦ ὄρεος οἱ ἄνθρωποι οὔτοι ἐπώνυμοι ἐγένοντο· καλέονται γὰρ δὴ Ἄτλαντες. λέγονται δὲ οὔτε ἔμψυχον οὐδὲν σιτέεσθαι οὔτε ἐνύπνια ὁρᾶν.

## 4.185

Μέχρι μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἀτλάντων τούτων ἔχω τὰ οὐνόματα τῶν ἐν τῇ ὀφρύνῃ κατοικημένων καταλέξει, τὸ δ' ἀπὸ τούτων οὐκέτι. διήκει δ' ὦν ἡ ὀφρύνῃ μέχρι Ἡρακλέων στηλέων καὶ τὸ ἔξω τουτέων. ἔστι δὲ ἁλὸς τε μέταλλον ἐν αὐτῇ διὰ δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ καὶ ἄνθρωποι οἰκέοντες. τὰ δὲ οἰκία τούτοισι πᾶσι ἐκ τῶν ἀλίνων χόνδρων οἰκοδομέαται. ταῦτα γὰρ ἤδη τῆς Λιβύης ἄνομβρα ἐστί· οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἡδυνέατο μένειν οἱ τοῖχοι ἔοντες ἄλινοι, εἰ ὕε. ὁ δὲ ἅλς αὐτόθι καὶ λευκὸς καὶ πορφύρεος τὸ εἶδος ὀρύσσεται. ὑπὲρ δὲ τῆς ὀφρύνῃς τὸ πρὸς νότου καὶ ἐς μεσόγαιαν τῆς Λιβύης ἔρημος καὶ ἄνυδρος καὶ ἄθηρος καὶ ἄνομβρος καὶ ἄξυλος ἐστὶ ἢ χώρα, καὶ ἱκμάδος ἐστὶ ἐν



οὔτε |winter, storm τοῦτο τὸν |pillar τοῦ οὐρανοῦ λέγουσι  
οἱ |native εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτου τοῦ ὄρεος οἱ ἄνθρωποι  
οὔτοι |named for a reason . ο· καλέονται γὰρ δὴ Ἄτλαντες.  
λέγονται δὲ οὔτε |animate, animated οὐδὲν σιτέεσθαι οὔτε ἐνύπνια  
ὄραν.

4.185

Μέχρι μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἀτλάντων τούτων ἔχω τὰ οὐνόματα  
τῶν ἐν τῇ |eyebrow κατοικημένων |relate in detail, ὃ δ' ἀπὸ  
|choose; enroll  
τούτων οὐκέτι. διήκει δ' ὦν ἡ |eyebrow, μέχρι Ἡρακλέων  
|post, column καὶ τὸ ἔξω τουτέων. ἔστι δὲ ἁλὸς τε |mine; mineral  
ἐν αὐτῇ διὰ δέκα ἡμερέων ὁδοῦ καὶ ἄνθρωποι οἰκέοντες.  
τὰ δὲ οἰκία τούτοισι πᾶσι ἐκ τῶν |of salt χόνδρων  
οικοδομέαται. ταῦτα γὰρ ἤδη τῆς Λιβύης |having little rain ἐστί·  
οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἠδυνέατο μένειν οἱ |wall of a house |of salt , εἰ  
ὔε. ὁ δὲ ἅλς |on the spot· λευκὸς καὶ |purple τὸ |form  
|dig . ὑπὲρ δὲ τῆς |eyebrow τὸ πρὸς |south, south, καὶ ἐς  
|wind  
μεσόγαιαν τῆς Λιβύης ἔρημος καὶ |waterless καὶ ἀσῆρος καὶ  
|having little rain καὶ |thickly timbered ὅστις ἡ χώρα, καὶ |moisture ἐστὶ ἐν

or in the winter. This the natives say is the pillar of the heaven. After this mountain these men got their name, for they are called Atlantians; and it is said that they neither eat anything that has life nor have any dreams.

**4.185**

As far as these Atlantians I am able to mention in order the names of those who are settled in the belt of sand; but for the parts beyond these I can do so no more. However, the belt extends as far as the Pillars of Heracles and also in the parts outside them: and there is a mine of salt in it at a distance of ten days' journey from the Atlantians, and men dwelling there; and these all have their houses built of the lumps of salt, since these parts of Libya which we have now reached are without rain; for if it rained, the walls being made of salt would not be able to last: and the salt is dug up there both white and purple in colour. Above the sand-belt, in the parts which are in the direction of the South Wind and towards the interior of Libya, the country is uninhabited, without water and without wild beasts, rainless and treeless, and there is no trace of

*vocabulary***ἀτρεκής** precise, certain**γαλακτοπότης** -ου (m, 1) milk drinker**γεύω** taste ~gusto**δικαιόω** demand/make justice**ἐπιτελέω** complete; do a religious duty**ἐπιτέλλω** order ~apostle**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**ἔωθα** be accustomed, in the habit**θηλέω** abound in ~thallium**θῆλυς** female; (rare) abundant ~female**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**ὁρτή** holiday, feast**οὔτις** nobody, nothing**πατέομαι** eat, drink ~pastor**πατέω** trample ~peripatetic**συχνός** long; many; extensive**τοιόσδε** such**ὕς** pig ~sow

αὐτῇ οὐδέν.

#### 4.186

Οὕτω μὲν μέχρι τῆς Τριτωνίδος λίμνης ἀπ' Αἰγύπτου νομάδες εἰσὶ κρεοφάγοι τε καὶ γαλακτοπόται Λίβυες, καὶ θηλέων τε βοῶν οὔτι γεύόμενοι, διότι περ οὐδὲ Αἰγύπτιοι, καὶ ὅς οὐ τρέφοντες. βοῶν μὲν νυν θηλέων οὐδ' αἱ Κυρηναίων γυναῖκες δικαιούσι πατέεσθαι διὰ τὴν ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ Ἴσιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ νηστηίας αὐτῇ καὶ ὀρτὰς ἐπιτελέουσι. αἱ δὲ τῶν Βαρκαίων γυναῖκες οὐδὲ ὕων πρὸς τῇσι βουσὶ γέονται.

#### 4.187

Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω ἔχει. τὸ δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρης τῆς Τριτωνίδος λίμνης οὐκέτι νομάδες εἰσὶ Λίβυες οὐδὲ νόμοισι τοῖσι αὐτοῖσι χρεώμενοι, οὐδὲ κατὰ τὰ παιδιά ποιεῦντες οἷον τι καὶ οἱ νομάδες ἐώθασιν ποιεῖν. οἱ γὰρ δὴ τῶν Λιβύων νομάδες, εἰ μὲν πάντες, οὐκ ἔχω ἀτρεκέως τοῦτο εἰπεῖν, ποιεῦσι δὲ αὐτῶν συχνοὶ τοιάδε· τῶν παιδίων τῶν

αὐτῇ οὐδέν.

4.186

Οὕτω μὲν μέχρι τῆς Τριτωνίδος <sup>|lake, marsh, basin, sea</sup> Αἰγύπτου  
<sup>|roaming, grazing</sup> εἰς κρεοφάγοι τε καὶ <sup>|milk drinker</sup> Λίβνες,  
καὶ θηλέων τε βοῶν <sup>|nobody, nothing</sup> ὑόμενοι, διότι περ οὐδὲ  
Αἰγύπτιοι, καὶ ὅς οὐ τρέφοντες. βοῶν μὲν νυν θηλέων  
οὐδ' αἱ Κυρηναίων γυναῖκες <sup>|demand/make justice</sup> ἰ διὰ τὴν  
ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ Ἴσιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ νηστηίας αὐτῇ καὶ <sup>|holiday, feast</sup>  
ἐπιτελέουσι. αἱ δὲ τῶν Βαρκαίων γυναῖκες οὐδὲ <sup>|pig</sup> πρὸς  
τῇσι βουσί γέονται.

4.187

Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω ἔχει. τὸ δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρας τῆς  
Τριτωνίδος <sup>|lake, basin, sea</sup> <sup>|marsh</sup> <sup>|roaming, grazing</sup> εἰς Λίβνες οὐδὲ νόμοισι  
τοῖσι αὐτοῖσι χρεώμενοι, οὐδὲ κατὰ τὰ παιδιά ποιεῦντες  
οἶον τι καὶ οἱ <sup>|roaming, grazing</sup> <sup>|be accustomed, in the habit</sup> οἱ γὰρ δὴ τῶν  
Λιβύων <sup>|roaming, grazing</sup> εἰ μὲν πάντες, οὐκ ἔχω <sup>|precise, certain</sup> τοῦτο  
εἰπεῖν, ποιεῦσι δὲ αὐτῶν <sup>|long; many; extensive</sup> <sup>|such</sup> τῶν παιδίων τῶν

moisture in it.

#### 4.186

I have said that from Egypt as far as the lake Tritonis Libyans dwell who are nomads, eating flesh and drinking milk; and these do not taste at all of the flesh of cows, for the same reason as the Egyptians also abstain from it, nor do they keep swine. Moreover the women of the Kyrenians too think it not right to eat cows' flesh, because of the Egyptian Isis, and they even keep fasts and celebrate festivals for her; and the women of Barca, in addition from cows' flesh, do not taste of swine either.

#### 4.187

Thus it is with these matters: but in the region to the West of lake Tritonis the Libyans cease to be nomads, and they do not practise the same customs, nor do to their children anything like that which the nomads are wont to do; for the nomad Libyans, whether all of them I cannot say for certain, but many of them, do as follows:— when their children

*vocabulary*

**ἄκος** ἄκεος (n, 3) cure, remedy  
**ἀπάρχω** cut hairs ~oligarch  
**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course  
 ~atrophy  
**ἀτρεκής** precise, certain  
**αὐχὴν** -ένος (m, 3) neck  
**δηλέομαι** hurt, spoil, steal ~delenda  
**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka  
**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after  
 ~genus  
**εὖς** good, brave, noble  
**θυσία** sacrifice  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**καταρρέω** flow down ~rheostat  
**κορυφή** peak, crown  
**κρόταφος** temple (forehead)  
**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal  
**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**μετεξέτεροι** (+gen) some ones of  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing  
**ὄον** οὐ type of fruit  
**ὄρος** boundary marker ~horizon  
**οὔρον** boundary stone; unit of distance; limit  
**οὔρος** fair wind; guardian; hill  
**οὖς** οὔατος (n) ear  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds  
**ρίπτέω** hurl  
**σελήνη** moon  
**σπασμός** convulsion  
**σπένδω** libate; (mid) make a treaty  
 ~spontaneous  
**σφέτερος** their  
**τετραέτης** of four years  
**τράγος** male goat  
**τρώγω** nibble, crop  
**ὕγιηρός** healthful; healthy  
**φλέγμα** -τος (n, 3) flame ~flame  
**φλέψ** -βός (f) vein ~phlebotomy

σφετέρων, ἐπεὰν τετραέτεα γένηται, οἷσπη προβάτων  
καίουσι τὰς ἐν τῇσι κορυφῇσι φλέβας, μετεξέτεροι δὲ  
αὐτῶν τὰς ἐν τοῖσι κροτάφοις, τοῦδε εἵνεκα ὥς μή  
σφεας ἐς τὸν πάντα χρόνον καταρρέον φλέγμα ἐκ τῆς  
κεφαλῆς δηλέηται. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο σφέας λέγουσι εἶναι  
ὑγιηροτάτους· εἰσὶ γὰρ ὥς ἀληθέως οἱ Λίβυες ἀνθρώπων  
πάντων ὑγιηρότατοι τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, εἰ μὲν διὰ τοῦτο,  
οὐκ ἔχω ἀτρεκέως εἰπεῖν, ὑγιηρότατοι δ' ὦν εἰσὶ. ἦν  
δὲ καίουσι τὰ παιδιά σπασμὸς ἐπιγένηται, ἐξεύρηταί σφι  
ἄκος· τράγου γὰρ οὖρον σπείσαντες ῥύονται σφέα. λέγω  
δὲ τὰ λέγουσι αὐτοὶ Λίβυες.

## 4.188

Θυσίαι δὲ τοῖσι νομάσι εἰσὶ αἶδε. ἐπεὰν τοῦ ὠτὸς  
ἀπάρξωνται τοῦ κτήνεος, ῥιπτεύουσι ὑπὲρ τὸν δόμον,  
τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσαντες ἀποστρέφουσι τὸν αὐχένα αὐτοῦ·  
θύουσι δὲ ἡλίῳ καὶ σελήνῃ μούνουσι. τούτοις μὲν νυν  
πάντες Λίβυες θύουσι, ἀτὰρ οἱ περὶ τὴν Τριτωνίδα λίμνην  
νέμοντες τῇ Ἀθηναίῃ μάλιστα, μετὰ δὲ τῷ; Τρίτῳ καὶ



|their , ἐπεὰν |of four years ,|ένηται, οἷσπη |cattle, flocks,  
 |herds  
 καίουσι τὰς ἐν τῇσι |peak, |vein , |(+gen) some ones of  
 |crown  
 αὐτῶν τὰς ἐν τοῖσι |temple (forehead)- ἵδε εἵνεκα ὥς μὴ  
 σφεας ἐς τὸν πάντα χρόνον |flow down |flame ἐκ τῆς  
 κεφαλῆς |hurt, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο σφέας λέγουσι εἶναι  
 |spoil, steal  
 |healthful; εἰσὶ γὰρ ὥς ἀληθέως οἱ Λίβυες ἀνθρώπων  
 |healthy  
 πάντων |healthful; τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, εἰ μὲν διὰ τοῦτο,  
 |healthy  
 οὐκ ἔχω |precise, εἰπεῖν, |healthful; δ' ὦν εἰσί. ἦν  
 |certain |healthy  
 δὲ καίουσι τὰ παιδία |convulsion |succeed , |find; σφι  
 |discover  
 |cure, .ράγου γὰρ οὖρον |libate; (mid)ρύνονται σφέα. λέγω  
 |remedy |make a treaty  
 δὲ τὰ λέγουσι αὐτοὶ Λίβυες.

4.188

Θυσίαι δὲ τοῖσι |roaming, εἰσὶ αἶδε. ἐπεὰν τοῦ |ear  
 |grazing  
 |cut hairs τοῦ |herd animal|hurl ὑπὲρ τὸν δόμον,  
 τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσαντες |turn back τὸν |neck αὐτοῦ·  
 |rush; sacrifice, ἰώ καὶ |moon μούνοισι. τούτοισι μὲν νυν  
 πάντες Λίβυες |rush; sacrifice, οἱ περὶ τὴν Τριτωνίδα |lake, marsh,  
 |basin, sea  
 νέμοντες τῇ Ἀθηναίῃ μάλιστα, μετὰ δὲ τῷ; Τρίτωνι καὶ

are four years old, they burn with a greasy piece of sheep's wool the veins in the crowns of their heads, and some of them burn the veins of the temples, so that for all their lives to come the cold humour may not run down from their heads and do them hurt: and for this reason it is (they say) that they are so healthy; for the Libyans are in truth the most healthy of all races concerning which we have knowledge, whether for this reason or not I cannot say for certain, but the most healthy they certainly are: and if, when they burn the children, a convulsion comes on, they have found out a remedy for this; for they pour upon them the water of a he-goat and so save them. I report that which is reported by the Libyans themselves.

#### 4.188

The following is the manner of sacrifice which the nomads have;— they cut off a part of the animal's ear as a first offering and throw it over the house, and having done this they twist its neck. They sacrifice only to the Sun and the Moon; that is to say, to these all the Libyans sacrifice, but those who dwell round the lake Tritonis sacrifice most of all to Athene, and next to Triton

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαλμα** -τος (n, 3) ornament, glory, statue

**αἴγεις** of goats

**αἰγίς** -δος (f) the aegis, a shield of Zeus or cloak of Athena

**αἶξ** αἰγός (m) goat

**Ἕλλην** Greek

**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here

**ἔσθής** clothes ~vest

**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph

**θύσανος** tassel

**θυσανωτός** fringed, with tassels

**κάρτα** very much ~χράτος

**μετονομάζω** rename

**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing

**ὄλολυγή** (ῥ) women's ecstatic shout

**ὄφεις** ὄφεως (m) serpent ~ophidian

**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic

**σκούτινος** (ῥ) of leather

**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle

**στολή** equipment

**χρίω** (ι) anoint ~Christ

**φιλός** (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon

τῷ Ποσειδέωνι.

4.189

Τὴν δὲ ἄρα ἐσθήτα καὶ τὰς αἰγίδας τῶν ἀγαλμάτων τῆς Ἀθηναίης ἐκ τῶν Λιβυσσέων ἐποίησαντο οἱ Ἕλληνες· πλὴν γὰρ ἢ ὅτι σκυτίνη ἢ ἐσθῆς τῶν Λιβυσσέων ἐστὶ καὶ οἱ θύσανοι οἱ ἐκ τῶν αἰγίδων αὐτῇσι οὐκ ὄφιος εἰσὶ ἀλλὰ ἱμάντινοι, τά γε ἄλλα πάντα κατὰ τῶντὸ ἔσταλται. καὶ δὴ καὶ τὸ οὖνομα κατηγορεῖ ὅτι ἐκ Λιβύης ἦκει ἢ στολὴ τῶν Παλλαδίων· αἰγέας γὰρ περιβάλλονται ψιλὰς περὶ τὴν ἐσθήτα θυσανωτὰς αἱ Λίβυσσαι κεχριμέναι ἐρευθεδάνῳ, ἐκ δὲ τῶν αἰγέων τουτέων αἰγίδας οἱ Ἕλληνες μετωνόμασαν. δοκέει δ' ἔμοιγε καὶ ὁλολυγὴ ἐν ἱροῖσι ἐνθαῦτα πρῶτον γενέσθαι· κάρτα γὰρ ταύτῃ χρέωνται καλῶς αἱ Λίβυσσαι. καὶ τέσσερας ἵππους συζευγνύναι παρὰ Λιβύων οἱ Ἕλληνες μεμαθήकाσι.

4.190

Θάπτουσι δὲ τοὺς ἀποθνήσκοντας οἱ νομάδες κατὰ περ

τῷ Ποσειδέωνι.

4.189

Τὴν δὲ ἄρα |clothes καὶ τὰς |aegis τῶν |ornament, τῆς  
 |glory, statue  
 Ἀθηναίης ἐκ τῶν Λιβυσσέων ἐποίησαντο οἱ |Greek  
 πλὴν γὰρ ἣ ὅτι |of leather ἣ |clothes τῶν Λιβυσσέων ἐστὶ  
 καὶ οἱ |tassel οἱ ἐκ τῶν |aegis αὐτῇσι οὐκ |serpent ἰσὶ  
 ἀλλὰ ἰμάντινοι, τά γε ἄλλα πάντα κατὰ τὴν αὐτὴν |prepare, send, furl  
 καὶ δὴ καὶ τὸ οὖνομα κατηγορεῖ ὅτι ἐκ Λιβύης ἦκει  
 ἣ |equipment τῶν Παλλαδίων· |of goats γὰρ |excel; don  
 |naked, bare τὴν |clothes |fringed, with αἱ Λίβυσσαι |anoint  
 |tassels  
 ἐρυθροδάνω, ἐκ δὲ τῶν αἰγέων τουτέων |aegis οἱ  
 |Greek |rename . δοκέει δ' ἔμοιγε καὶ |women's ec-  
 |static shout  
 ἐν ἰροῖσι |there, here πρώτον γενέσθαι· |very much τούτῃ  
 χρέωνται καλῶς αἱ Λίβυσσαι. καὶ τέσσερας ἵππους  
 συζευγνύναι παρὰ Λιβύων οἱ |Greek μεμαθήκασιν.

4.190

|bury δὲ τοὺς ἀποθνήσκοντας οἱ |roaming, κατά περ  
 |grazing

and Poseidon.

#### 4.189

It would appear also that the Hellenes made the dress and the aegis of the images of Athene after the model of the Libyan women; for except that the dress of the Libyan women is of leather, and the tassels which hang from their aegis are not formed of serpents but of leather thongs, in all other respects Athene is dressed like them. Moreover the name too declares that the dress of the figures of Pallas has come from Libya, for the Libyan women wear over their other garments bare goat-skins (aigeas) with tasselled fringes and coloured over with red madder, and from the name of these goat-skins the Hellenes formed the name aegis. I think also that in these regions first arose the practice of crying aloud during the performance of sacred rites, for the Libyan women do this very well. The Hellenes learnt from the Libyans also the yoking together of four horses.

#### 4.190

The nomads bury those who die just in the same manner as the Hellenes, except

*vocabulary***ἀνθέρικος** stalk of corn**ἀριστερός** left-hand**ἀροτήρ** -ος (m) plowman ~arable**δασύς** hairy, brushy**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἑσπέρα** evening, west**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**θηριώδης** savage, wild**κάρτα** very much ~κράτος**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use

up

**κομάω** have long hair**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μίν** him, her, it**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**οἶκημα** -τος (n, 3) room**ὄρεινός** mountainous**σχοῖνος** rush, bed of rushes; rope, measuring line; 10 km**ταπεινός** low**ὑπτιος** lying on one's back; flipped; flat**χρίω** (ι) anoint ~Christ**ψαμμώδης** sandy

οἱ Ἕλληνες, πλὴν Νασαμώνων· οὗτοι δὲ κατημένους  
θάπτουσι, φυλάσσοντες, ἐπεὰν ἀπιῇ τὴν ψυχὴν, ὅπως  
μὴν κατίσουσι μηδὲ ὕπτιος ἀποθανέεται. οἰκήματα δὲ  
σύμπηκτα ἐξ ἀνθερίκων ἐνερμένων περὶ σχοίνους ἐστί,  
καὶ ταῦτα περιφορητά. νόμοισι μὲν τοιούτοισι οὗτοι  
χρέωνται.

## 4.191

Τὸ δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρης τοῦ Τρίτωνος ποταμοῦ Αὐσέων  
ἔχονται ἀροτῆρες ἤδη Λίβυες καὶ οἰκίας νομίζοντες  
ἐκτῆσθαι, τοῖσι οὖνομα κέεται Μάξυες. οἱ τὰ ἐπὶ δεξιὰ  
τῶν κεφαλέων κομόωσι, τὰ δ' ἐπ' ἀριστερὰ κείρουσι, τὸ δὲ  
σῶμα χρίονται μίλτω. φασὶ δὲ οὗτοι εἶναι τῶν ἐκ Τροίης  
ἀνδρῶν. ἡ δὲ χώρα αὕτη τε καὶ ἡ λοιπὴ τῆς Λιβύης ἡ  
πρὸς ἐσπέρην πολλῶ θηριωδεστέρα τε καὶ δασυτέρα ἐστὶ  
τῆς τῶν νομάδων χώρας. ἡ μὲν γὰρ διὰ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ  
τῆς Λιβύης, τὴν οἱ νομάδες νέμουσι, ἐστὶ ταπεινὴ τε καὶ  
ψαμμώδης μέχρι τοῦ Τρίτωνος ποταμοῦ, ἡ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου  
τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρην ἡ τῶν ἀροτήρων ὀρεινὴ τε κάρτα καὶ



οἱ |Greek , πλὴν Νασαμώνων· οὗτοι δὲ κατημένους  
 |bury , φυλάσσοντες, ἐπεὰν ἀπιῇ τὴν ψυχὴν, ὅκως  
 μιν κατίσουσι μηδὲ |supine ἀποθανέται. |room δὲ  
 σύμπηκτα ἐξ ἀνθερίκων ἐνερμένων περὶ |rush, bed of rushes; rope,  
 |measuring line; 10 km  
 καὶ ταῦτα περιφορητά. νόμοισι μὲν τοιούτοισι οὗτοι  
 χρέωνται.

## 4.191

Τὸ δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρης τοῦ Τρίτωνος ποταμοῦ Αἰσέων  
 ἔχονται |plowman ἤδη Λίβυες καὶ οἰκίας νομίζοντες  
 ἐκτῆσθαι, τοῖσι οὖνομα κέεται Μάξυες. οἱ τὰ ἐπὶ δεξιὰ  
 τῶν κεφαλῶν |have long hair ὅ' ἐπ' |left-hand |shave, sever, `razè;  
 |devour, use up  
 σῶμα |anoint μίλτω. φασὶ δὲ οὗτοι εἶναι τῶν ἐκ Τροίης  
 ἀνδρῶν. ἡ δὲ χώρα αὕτη τε καὶ ἡ λοιπὴ τῆς Λιβύης ἡ  
 πρὸς ἐσπέρην πολλῶ |savage, wild τε καὶ |hairy, ἐστὶ  
 |brushy  
 τῆς τῶν |roaming, χώρης. ἡ μὲν γὰρ δὴ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ  
 |grazing  
 τῆς Λιβύης, τὴν οἱ |roaming, |distribute ἐστὶ |low τε καὶ  
 |sandy μέχρι τοῦ Τρίτωνος ποταμοῦ, ἡ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου  
 τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρην ἡ τῶν |plowman ὀρεινὴ τε |very much `

only the Nasamonians: these bury bodies in a sitting posture, taking care at the moment when the man expires to place him sitting and not to let him die lying down on his back. They have dwellings composed of the stems of asphodel entwined with rushes, and so made that they can be carried about. Such are the customs followed by these tribes.

#### 4.191

On the West of the river Triton next after the Auseans come Libyans who are tillers of the soil, and whose custom it is to possess fixed habitations; and they are called Maxyans. They grow their hair long on the right side of their heads and cut it short upon the left, and smear their bodies over with red ochre. These say that they are of the men who came from Troy.

This country and the rest of Libya which is towards the West is both much more frequented by wild beasts and much more thickly wooded than the country of the nomads: for whereas the part of Libya which is situated towards the East, where the nomads dwell, is low-lying and sandy up to the river Triton, that which succeeds it towards the West, the country of those who till the soil, is exceedingly mountainous and thickly-wooded and full of wild beasts:

*vocabulary***ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture**ἄρκτος** (f) bear**αὐτόθι** on the spot**δασύς** hairy, brushy**ἐλέφας** -ντος (m, 3) ivory, elephant**ἐμφορής** similar**θηριώδης** savage, wild**θώς** jackal**κατάγαιος** at ground level;  
underground**κρίος** (ἷ) ram**κροκόδειλος** lizard, crocodile**μέγαθος** tall, big (person)**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager**ὄφεις** ὄφεως (m) serpent ~ophidian**πῆχυς** forearm, cubit**στρουθός** (f) sparrow ~struthiomimus**τοιόσδε** such**τρίπηχυς** 3 cubits long**φοῖνιξ** -χος (m) red or purple dye or  
color; bay (horse); palm tree**χερσαῖος** of dry land

δασέα καὶ θηριώδης· καὶ γὰρ οἱ ὄφιοι οἱ ὑπερμεγάθεις καὶ οἱ λέοντες κατὰ τούτους εἰσὶ καὶ οἱ ἐλέφαντές τε καὶ ἄρκτοι καὶ ἀσπίδες τε καὶ ὄνοι οἱ τὰ κέρα ἔχοντες καὶ οἱ κυνοκέφαλοι καὶ οἱ ἀκέφαλοι οἱ ἐν τοῖσι στήθεσι τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς ἔχοντες, ὥς δὴ λέγονται γε ὑπὸ Λιβύων, καὶ οἱ ἄγριοι ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες ἄγριαι, καὶ ἄλλα πλήθει πολλὰ θηρία ἀκατάψευστα.

## 4.192

Κατὰ τοὺς νομάδας δὲ ἐστὶ τούτων οὐδέν, ἀλλ' ἄλλα τοιάδε, πύγαργοι καὶ ζορκάδες καὶ βουβάλιες καὶ ὄνοι, οὐκ οἱ τὰ κέρα ἔχοντες ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄποτοι οὐ γὰρ δὴ πίνουσι, καὶ ὄρνεις, τῶν τὰ κέρα τοῖσι φοίνιξι οἱ πήχες ποιεῦνται μέγαθος δὲ τὸ θηρίον τοῦτο κατὰ βοῦν ἐστὶ, καὶ βασσάρια καὶ ὕαινα καὶ ὕστριχες καὶ κριοὶ ἄγριοι καὶ δίκτυες καὶ θῶες καὶ πάνθηρες καὶ βόρνες, καὶ κροκόδειλοι ὅσον τε τριπήχες χερσαῖοι, τῇσι σαύρησι ἐμφερέστατοι, καὶ στρουθοὶ κατάγαιοι, καὶ ὄφιοι μικροί, κέρας ἐν ἑκάστος ἔχοντες· ταῦτά τε δὴ αὐτόθι ἐστὶ θηρία καὶ τὰ περ τῇ

|hairy, καὶ |savage, wild καὶ γὰρ οἱ |serpent ἢ ὑπερμεγάθεις  
|brushy  
καὶ οἱ λέοντες κατὰ τούτους εἰσὶ καὶ οἱ |ivory, τε καὶ  
|elephant  
|bear καὶ ἀσπίδες τε καὶ |donkey· τὰ κέρεα ἔχοντες καὶ  
οἱ κυνοκέφαλοι καὶ οἱ ἀκέφαλοι οἱ ἐν τοῖσι στήθεσι τοὺς  
ὀφθαλμοὺς ἔχοντες, ὥς δὴ λέγονταί γε ὑπὸ Λιβύων, καὶ οἱ  
|wild, ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες |wild, , καὶ ἄλλα πλήθει πολλὰ  
|savage |savage  
θηρία ἀκατάψευστα.

#### 4.192

Κατὰ τοὺς |roaming, δὲ ἐστὶ τούτων οὐδέν, ἀλλ' ἄλλα  
|grazing  
|such , πύγαργοι καὶ ζορκάδες καὶ βουβάλιες καὶ |donkey 'κ  
οἱ τὰ κέρεα ἔχοντες ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄποτοι οὐ γὰρ δὴ πίνουσι,  
καὶ ὄρνες, τῶν τὰ κέρεα τοῖσι |red, red|forearm, τοιεῦνται  
|dye; palm|cubit  
|tall, big δὲ τὸ θηρίον τοῦτο κατὰ βoῦν ἐστι, καὶ βασσάρια  
καὶ ὕαιναι καὶ ὕστριχες καὶ |ram |wild, καὶ δίκτυες καὶ  
|savage  
|jackal καὶ πάνθηρες καὶ βόρνες, καὶ |lizard, ὅσον  
|crocodile  
τε |3 cubits long|of dry land ᾗσι σάρρησι |similar , καὶ  
|sparrow |at ground level;|serpent, ,ικροί, κέρας ἐν ἑκάστος  
|underground  
ἔχοντες· ταῦτά τε δὴ |on the spot ` θηρία καὶ τά περ τῇ

for in the land of these are found both the monstrous serpent and the lion and the elephant, and bears and venomous snakes and horned asses, besides the dog-headed men, and the headless men with their eyes set in their breasts (at least so say the Libyans about them), and the wild men and wild women, and a great multitude of other beasts which are not fabulous like these.

#### 4.192

In the land of the nomads however there exist none of these, but other animals as follows:— white-rump antelopes, gazelles, buffaloes, asses, not the horned kind but others which go without water (for in fact these never drink), oryxes, whose horns are made into the sides of the Phœnician lyre (this animal is in size about equal to an ox), small foxes, hyenas, porcupines, wild rams, wolves, jackals, panthers, boryes, land-crocodiles about three cubits in length and very much resembling lizards, ostriches, and small snakes, each with one horn: these wild animals there are in this country, as well as

*vocabulary*

**ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**αὐτόθι** on the spot  
**ἄφθονος** ungrudging, plentiful  
**γλῶσσα** tongue, language ~glossary  
**δημιοεργός** public worker  
**ἔλαφος** (f) deer  
**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at  
**εὖς** good, brave, noble  
**ἡνιοχεύς** -ος (m) rein holder  
**ἱστορέω** inquire; relate  
**κατεργάζομαι** achieve; cultivate; get;

## kill

**μέλι** honey, a sweet  
**μέλισσα** bee  
**μνάω** make a moue  
**μνέω** initiate into  
**μῦς** mouse  
**μυών** -ος (m, 3) muscle  
**νομάς** -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing  
**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit  
**πάμπαν** completely  
**σίλφιον** a medicinal fennel  
**τριξός** threefold  
**ὑς** pig ~sow

ἄλλη, πλὴν ἐλάφου τε καὶ ὕδς ἀγρίου· ἔλαφος δὲ καὶ ὕς  
 ἄγριος ἐν Λιβύῃ πάμπαν οὐκ ἔστι. μυῶν δὲ γένεα τριζὰ  
 αὐτόθι ἔστι· οἱ μὲν δίποδες καλέονται, οἱ δὲ ζεγέριες τὸ  
 δὲ οὖνομα τοῦτο ἐστὶ μὲν Λιβυστικόν, δύναται δὲ κατ'  
 Ἑλλάδα γλῶσσαν βουνοί, οἱ δὲ ἐχινέες. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ γαλαῖ  
 ἐν τῷ σιλφίῳ γινόμεναι τῇσι Ταρτησσίησι ὁμοιόταται.  
 τοσαῦτα μὲν νυν θηρία ἢ τῶν νομάδων Λιβύων γῇ ἔχει,  
 ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἱστορέοντες ἐπὶ μακρότατον οἰοί τε ἐγενόμεθα  
 ἐξικέσθαι.

## 4.193

Μαξύων δὲ Λιβύων Ζαύηκες ἔχονται, τοῖσι αἱ γυναῖκες  
 ἡνιοχεῦσι τὰ ἄρματα ἐς τὸν πόλεμον.

## 4.194

Τούτων δὲ Γύζαντες ἔχονται, ἐν τοῖσι μέλι πολλὸν μὲν  
 μέλισσαι κατεργάζονται, πολλῶ δ' ἔτι πλέον λέγεται  
 δημοεργοὺς ἄνδρας ποιεῖν. μιλτοῦνται δ' ὧν πάντες  
 οὔτοι καὶ πιθηκοφαγέουσι. οἱ δὲ σφι ἄφθονοι ὅσοι ἐν τοῖσι



ἄλλη, πλὴν |deer      τε καὶ ὑὸς ἀγρίου· |deer      δὲ καὶ ὕς  
 |wild,      ἐν Λιβύῃ |completely ὑκ ἔστι. μυῶν δὲ γένεα |threefold  
 |savage  
 |on the spot .ι· οἱ μὲν δίποδες καλέονται, οἱ δὲ ζεγέριες τὸ  
 δὲ οὖνομα τοῦτο ἐστὶ μὲν Λιβυστικόν, δύναται δὲ κατ'  
 Ἑλλάδα |tongue,      βουνοί, οἱ δὲ ἐχινέες. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ γαλαῖ  
 |language  
 ἐν τῷ |a medicinal fennel .ι τῇσι Ταρτησσίῃσι ὁμοιόταται.  
 τοσαῦτα μὲν νυν θηρία ἢ τῶν |roaming,      Λιβύων γῇ ἔχει,  
 |grazing  
 ὅσον ἡμεῖς |inquire; relate ἐπὶ μακρότατον οἰοί τε ἐγενόμεθα  
 |arrive at

4.193

Μαξύων δὲ Λιβύων Ζαύηκες ἔχονται, τοῖσι αἱ γυναῖκες  
 |rein holder .ᾠα |chariot      ἐς τὸν πόλεμον.

4.194

Τούτων δὲ Γύζαντες ἔχονται, ἐν τοῖσι |honey πολλὸν μὲν  
 |bee      |achieve; cultivate;      πολλῶ δ' ἔτι πλεον λέγεται  
 |get; kill  
 |public worker ἀνδρας ποίειν. μιλοῦνται δ' ὧν πάντες  
 οὔτοι καὶ πιθηκοφαγέουσι. οἱ δὲ σφι |ungrudging,      .ι ἐν τοῖσι  
 |plentiful

those which exist elsewhere, except the stag and the wild-boar; but Libya has no stags nor wild boars at all. Also there are in this country three kinds of mice, one is called the “two-legged” mouse, another the zegeris (a name which is Libyan and signifies in the Hellenic tongue a “hill”), and a third the “prickly” mouse. There are also weasels produced in the silphion, which are very like those of Tartessos. Such are the wild animals which the land of the Libyans possesses, so far as we were able to discover by inquiries extended as much as possible.

#### 4.193

Next to the Maxyan Libyans are the Zaukes, whose women drive their chariots for them to war.

#### 4.194

Next to these are the Gyzantes, among whom honey is made in great quantity by bees, but in much greater quantity still it is said to be made by men, who work at it as a trade. However that may be, these all smear themselves over with red ochre and eat monkeys, which are produced in very great numbers

*vocabulary*

**ἄγχοῦ** near, nigh; like ~angina  
**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
 muster  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄμπελος** (f) vine  
**ἀναφέρω** bring up ~bear  
**ἄσφαλτος** (f) asphalt, bitumen  
**αὐτόθι** on the spot  
**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height  
**διαβατός** crossable, fordable  
**διακόσιοι** (ᾱ) two hundred  
**ἐβδομήκοντα** 70  
**εἰσχέω** pour into  
**ἐλαία** olive, olive tree ~olive  
**ἐλαιον** oil, olive oil ~olive  
**ἐπιχώριος** native  
**εὖς** good, brave, noble  
**ἥπειρος** (f) mainland, continent  
**ἱλύς** -ος (ī, f) mud, slime  
**καθίημι** (ιι) speed down upon; take  
 down ~jet  
**Καρχηδόνιος** Carthaginian  
**κοντός** pole

**λάκκος** pond, tank  
**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**μεστός** full  
**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature  
**μύρσινος** myrtle  
**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit  
**ὄρνις** -θος (ī, f) bird ~ornithology  
**ὀρύσσω** dig  
**ὀσμὴ** smell ~osmium, odor  
**πάντῃ** everywhere  
**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon  
**πίσσα** pitch, resin ~pitch  
**πλάτος** -εος (n, 3) width  
**προσδέω** bind also; need also  
**πτέρων** feather, wing ~pterodactyl  
**σταδίῃ** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl  
 noun) 200 meters  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**συχνός** long; many; extensive  
**χρίω** (ι) anoint ~Christ  
**ψῆγμα** gold dust; shavings, scrapings  
**ᾠρος** year

ὄρεσι γίνονται.

#### 4.195

Κατὰ τούτους δὲ λέγουσι Καρχηδόνιοι κεῖσθαι νῆσον τῇ οὔνομα εἶναι Κύραυν, μῆκος μὲν διηκοσίων σταδίων, πλάτος δὲ στεεινὴν, διαβατὸν ἐκ τῆς ἡπείρου, ἐλαιέων τε μεστὴν καὶ ἀμπέλων. λίμνην δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ εἶναι, ἐκ τῆς αἰ παρθένου τῶν ἐπιχωρίων πτεροῖσι ὀρνίθων κεχριμένοισι πίσση ἐκ τῆς ἰλύος ψῆγμα ἀναφέρουσι χρυσοῦ. ταῦτα εἰ μὲν ἔστι ἀληθέως οὐκ οἶδα, τὰ δὲ λέγεται γράφω· εἴη δ' ἂν πᾶν, ὅκου καὶ ἐν Ζακύνθῳ ἐκ λίμνης καὶ ὕδατος πίσσαν ἀναφερομένην αὐτὸς ἐγὼ ὥρων. εἰσὶ μὲν καὶ πλεῖνες αἱ λίμναι αὐτόθι, ἣ δ' ὦν μεγίστη αὐτέων ἑβδομήκοντα ποδῶν πάντη, βάθος δὲ διόργυιος ἐστί· ἐς ταύτην κοντὸν κατιεῖσι ἐπ' ἄκρῳ μυρσίνην προσδήσαντες καὶ ἔπειτα ἀναφέρουσι τῇ μυρσίνῃ πίσσαν, ὁδμὴν μὲν ἔχουσαν ἀσφάλτου, τὰ δ' ἄλλα τῆς Πιερικῆς πίσσης ἀμείνω. ἐσχέουσι δὲ ἐς λάκκον ὀρωρυγμένον ἀγχοῦ τῆς λίμνης. ἐπεὰν δὲ ἀθροίσωσι συχνήν, οὕτω ἐς τοὺς

ὄρεσι γίνονται.

4.195

Κατὰ τούτους δὲ λέγουσι Καρχηδόνιοι κεῖσθαι νῆσον τῇ  
οὔνομα εἶναι Κύρανιν, <sup>|length,</sup> μὲν διηκοσίων σταδίων,  
<sup>|stature</sup>  
<sup>|width</sup> δὲ στερινήν, <sup>|crossable,</sup> ἐκ τῆς ἡπείρου, ἐλαιέων τε  
<sup>|fordable</sup>  
<sup>|full</sup> καὶ <sup>|vine</sup> λίμνην δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ εἶναι, ἐκ τῆς αἰ  
παρθένοι τῶν <sup>|native</sup> <sup>|feather, wing</sup> λίθων <sup>|anoint</sup>  
<sup>|pitch</sup> ἐκ τῆς <sup>|mud,</sup> <sup>|gold dust|bring up</sup> χρυσοῦ. ταῦτα  
<sup>|slime</sup>  
εἰ μὲν ἔστι ἀληθέως οὐκ οἶδα, τὰ δὲ λέγεται γράφω·  
εἷη δ' ἂν πᾶν, ὅκου καὶ ἐν Ζακύνθῳ ἐκ λίμνης καὶ  
ὑδατος <sup>|pitch</sup> <sup>|bring up</sup> αὐτὸς ἐγὼ <sup>|year</sup> . εἰσὶ μὲν  
καὶ πλεῦνες αἱ λίμναι αὐτόθι, ἥ δ' ὦν μεγίστη αὐτέων  
ἐβδομήκοντα ποδῶν πάντη, <sup>|depth,</sup> δὲ διόργυιος ἐστί· ἐς  
<sup>|height</sup>  
ταύτην <sup>|pole</sup> <sup>|speed down upon; ὦ</sup> <sup>|myrtle</sup> <sup>|bind also; need also</sup>  
<sup>|take down</sup>  
καὶ ἔπειτα <sup>|bring up</sup> τῇ <sup>|myrtle</sup> <sup>|pitch</sup> , <sup>|smell</sup> μὲν  
ἔχουσιν ἀσφάλτου, τὰ δ' ἄλλα τῆς Πιερικῆς <sup>|pitch</sup>  
ἀμείνω. <sup>|pour into</sup> δὲ ἐς <sup>|pond,</sup> <sup>|dig</sup> <sup>|near, nigh; like</sup>  
<sup>|tank</sup>  
λίμνης. ἐπεὰν δὲ ἀθροίσωσι <sup>|long; many;</sup> ὧς τοὺς  
<sup>|extensive</sup>

upon their mountains.

**4.195**

Opposite these, as the Carthaginians say, there lies an island called Kyrauis, two hundred furlongs in length but narrow, to which one may walk over from the mainland; and it is full of olives and vines. In it they say there is a pool, from which the native girls with birds' feathers smeared over with pitch bring up gold-dust out of the mud. Whether this is really so I do not know, but I write that which is reported; and nothing is impossible, for even in Zakynthos I saw myself pitch brought up out of a pool of water. There are there several pools, and the largest of them measures seventy feet each way and is two fathoms in depth. Into this they plunge a pole with a myrtle-branch bound to it, and then with the branch of the myrtle they bring up pitch, which has the smell of asphalt, but in other respects it is superior to the pitch of Pieria. This they pour into a pit dug near the pool; and when they have collected a large quantity, then they

*vocabulary*

**ἀμφορεύς** -ος (m) amphora  
**ἀναφαίνω** reveal, shine ~phenomenon  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**εἰσβαίνω** enter, board ~basis  
**εἰσπίπτω** fall into, rush in  
**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis  
**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy ~heresy  
**ἐξάλλομαι** break away from ~sally  
**ἐξαναχωρέω** retreat, withdraw  
**ἐπέξειμι** attack, prosecute  
**ἐπιχώριος** native  
**εὖς** good, brave, noble  
**ἐφεξῆς** in order, in a row

**καπνός** smoke  
**Καρχηδόνιος** Carthaginian  
**καταχεύω** pour onto  
**λάκκος** pond, tank  
**λίμνη** lake, marsh, basin, sea ~limnic  
**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch ~skeptical  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στήλη** post, column  
**τύφω** (ὕ) to smoke  
**φορτίον** burden, load  
**χρυσός** (ὕ) gold  
**χώρος** place ~heir

ἀμφορέας ἐκ τοῦ λάκκου καταχέουσι. ὁ τι δ' ἂν ἐσπέσῃ  
 ἐς τὴν λίμνην, ὑπὸ γῆν ἰὸν ἀναφαίνεται ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ· ἥ  
 δὲ ἀπέχει ὥς τέσσερα στάδια ἀπὸ τῆς λίμνης. οὕτω ὦν  
 καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου τῆς ἐπὶ Λιβύῃ κειμένης οἰκότα ἐστὶ  
 ἀληθείη.

## 4.196

Λέγουσι δὲ καὶ τάδε Καρχηδόνιοι. εἶναι τῆς Λιβύης  
 χῶρόν τε καὶ ἀνθρώπους ἔξω Πρακλέων στηλέων  
 κατοικημένους· ἐς τοὺς ἐπεὰν ἀπίκωνται καὶ ἐξέλωνται  
 τὰ φορτία, θέντες αὐτὰ ἐπεξῆς παρὰ τὴν κυματογῆν,  
 ἐσβάντες ἐς τὰ πλοῖα τύφειν καπνόν. τοὺς δ' ἐπιχωρίους  
 ἰδομένους τὸν καπνὸν ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ ἔπειτα  
 ἀντὶ τῶν φορτίων χρυσὸν τιθέναι καὶ ἐξαναχωρεῖν  
 πρόσω ἀπὸ τῶν φορτίων. τοὺς δὲ Καρχηδονίους  
 ἐκβάντας σκέπτεσθαι, καὶ ἦν μὲν φαίνηταί σφι ἄξιος ὁ  
 χρυσὸς τῶν φορτίων, ἀνελόμενοι ἀπαλλάσσονται, ἦν δὲ  
 μὴ ἄξιος, ἐσβάντες ὀπίσω ἐς τὰ πλοῖα κατέαται· οἱ δὲ  
 προσελθόντες ἄλλον πρὸς ὦν ἔθηκαν χρυσόν, ἐς οὗ



|amphora ἔκ τοῦ λάκκου καταχέουσι. ὁ τι δ' ἂν |fall into, rush in  
 ἐς τὴν |lake, marsh, |γῆν ἰὼν |reveal, shine ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ· ἡ  
 |basin, sea  
 δὲ ἀπέχει ὥς τέσσερα στάδια ἀπὸ τῆς |lake, marsh, ἦ γὰρ ὦν  
 |basin, sea  
 καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου τῆς ἐπὶ Λιβύῃ κειμένης οἰκότα ἐστὶ  
 ἀληθείη.

4.196

Λέγουσι δὲ καὶ τάδε Καρχηδόνιοι. εἶναι τῆς Λιβύης  
 |place τε καὶ ἀνθρώπους ἔξω Πρακλέων |post,  
 |column  
 κατοικημένους· ἐς τοὺς ἐπεὰν ἀπίκωνται καὶ ἐξέλωνται  
 τὰ |burden, load αὐτὰ ἐπεξῆς παρὰ τὴν κυματωγὴν,  
 |enter, ἐς τὰ πλοῖα |to |smoke τοὺς δ' |native  
 |board |smoke  
 ἰδομένους τὸν |smoke ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ ἔπειτα  
 ἀντὶ τῶν |burden, |gold τιθέναι καὶ |retreat,  
 |load |withdraw  
 |forward, in the τῶν |burden, load τοὺς δὲ Καρχηδονίους  
 |future; far  
 |come forth |look, look at, watch ἦν μὲν φαίνεται σφί ἄξιος ὁ  
 |gold τῶν |burden, load ἐλεύμενοι |free from, remove; ἦν δὲ  
 |be freed, depart  
 μὴ ἄξιος, |enter, ὀπίσω ἐς τὰ πλοῖα κατέαται· οἱ δὲ  
 |board  
 προσελθόντες ἄλλον πρὸς ὧν ἔθηκαν |gold , ἐς οὗ

pour it into the jars from the pit: and whatever thing falls into the pool goes under ground and reappears in the sea, which is distant about four furlongs from the pool. Thus then the report about the island lying near the coast of Libya is also probably enough true.

**4.196**

The Carthaginians say also this, namely that there is a place in Libya and men dwelling there, outside the Pillars of Heracles, to whom when they have come and have taken the merchandise forth from their ships, they set it in order along the beach and embark again in their ships, and after that they raise a smoke; and the natives of the country seeing the smoke come to the sea, and then they lay down gold as an equivalent for the merchandise and retire to a distance away from the merchandise. The Carthaginians upon that disembark and examine it, and if the gold is in their opinion sufficient for the value of the merchandise, they take it up and go their way; but if not, they embark again in their ships and sit there; and the others approach and straightway add more gold to the former, until they satisfy them: and they say that

*vocabulary*

**αὐτόχθων** native  
**βορέας** -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἔπηλυς** strange, foreign  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**νότος** south, south wind

**οὐδέτερος** neither  
**παραβάλλω** put at risk ~ballistic  
**σπουδαῖος** quick, active; excellent  
**τοσόσδε** this much  
**φορτίον** burden, load  
**χρυσίον** (ῥ) gold coin

ἂν πείθωσι. ἀδικέειν δὲ οὐδετέρους. οὔτε γὰρ αὐτοὺς τοῦ χρυσοῦ ἄπτεσθαι πρὶν ἂν σφι ἀπισωθῇ τῇ ἀξίῃ τῶν φορτίων, οὔτ' ἐκείνους τῶν φορτίων ἄπτεσθαι πρότερον ἢ αὐτοὶ τὸ χρυσίον λάβωσι.

## 4.197

Οὗτοι μὲν εἰσὶ τοὺς ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν Λιβύων ὀνομάσαι, καὶ τούτων οἱ πολλοὶ βασιλέος τοῦ Μήδων οὔτε τι νῦν οὔτε τότε ἐφόρτιζον οὐδέν. τοσόνδε δὲ ἔτι ἔχω εἰπεῖν περὶ τῆς χώρας ταύτης, ὅτι τέσσερα ἔθνεα νέμεται αὐτὴν καὶ οὐ πλέω τούτων, ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, καὶ τὰ μὲν δύο αὐτόχθονα τῶν ἐθνέων τὰ δὲ δύο οὐ, Λίβυες μὲν καὶ Αἰθίοπες αὐτόχθονες, οἳ μὲν τὰ πρὸς βορέω οἳ δὲ τὰ πρὸς νότου τῆς Λιβύης οἰκέοντες, Φοίνικες δὲ καὶ Ἑλλήνες ἐπήλυδες.

## 4.198

Δοκέει δέ μοι οὐδ' ἀρετὴν εἶναι τις ἢ Λιβύῃ σπουδαίῃ ὥστε ἢ Ἀσίῃ ἢ Εὐρώπῃ παραβληθῆναι, πλὴν Κίνυπος

ἂν πείθωσι. ἀδικέειν δὲ |neither οὔτε γὰρ αὐτοὺς  
 τοῦ χρυσοῦ ἄπτεσθαι πρὶν ἂν σφι ἀπισωθῇ τῇ ἀξίῃ τῶν  
 |burden, load ἔτ' ἐκείνους τῶν |burden, load .τεσθαι πρότερον  
 ἢ αὐτοὶ τὸ |gold coin λάβωσι.

#### 4.197

Οὗτοι μὲν εἰσὶ τοὺς ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν Λιβύων ὀνομάσαι, καὶ  
 τούτων οἱ πολλοὶ βασιλέος τοῦ Μήδων οὔτε τι νῦν οὔτε  
 τότε ἐφόρτιζον οὐδέν. |this much ὃ δὲ ἔτι ἔχω εἰπεῖν περὶ  
 τῆς χώρας ταύτης, ὅτι τέσσερα ἔθνεα |distribute αὐτὴν  
 καὶ οὐ πλέω τούτων, ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, καὶ τὰ μὲν δύο  
 αὐτόχθονα τῶν ἐθνέων τὰ δὲ δύο οὐ, Λίβυες μὲν καὶ  
 Αἰθίοπες |native , οἳ μὲν τὰ πρὸς |north, οἳ δὲ τὰ πρὸς  
 |south, τῆς Λιβύης οἰκέοντες, Φοίνικες δὲ καὶ |Greek  
 |south  
 |wind  
 |strange,  
 |foreign

#### 4.198

Δοκέει δέ μοι οὐδ' ἀρετὴν εἶναι τις ἢ Λιβύῃ |quick, active; ἢτε  
 ἢ Ἀσίῃ ἢ Εὐρώπῃ |put at risk , πλὴν Κίνυπος  
 |excellent

neither party wrongs the other; for neither do the Carthaginians lay hands on the gold until it is made equal to the value of their merchandise, nor do the others lay hands on the merchandise until the Carthaginians have taken the gold.

**4.197**

These are the Libyan tribes whom we are able to name; and of these the greater number neither now pay any regard to the king of the Medes nor did they then. Thus much also I have to say about this land, namely that it is occupied by four races and no more, so far as we know; and of these races two are natives of the soil and the other two not so; for the Libyans and the Ethiopians are natives, the one race dwelling in the Northern parts of Libya and the other in the Southern, while the Phenicians and the Hellenes are strangers.

**4.198**

I think moreover that (besides other things) in goodness of soil Libya does not very greatly excel as compared with Asia or Europe, except only the region of

*vocabulary*

ἀμάω (ᾱα) collect

αὐχμέω be dirty, squalid

αὐχμός drought

δηλέομαι hurt, spoil, steal ~delenda

ἐκατοστός hundredth

ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear

ἔπυδρος rain-making

θῶμα a wonder, feeling of surprise

~theater

μελάγγαιος with black soil

μέτρον measure ~metric

νέμω to allot, to pasture ~nemesis

νομάς -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing

ὄμβρος storm

ὀργάω be turned on

παραθαλάσσιος by the sea

πίδαξ -χος (f) spring

συγκομίζω gather

τριηκόσιοι three hundred

τρογάω harvest grapes

ϕῶ (ϕ) to rain

φροντίζω consider, ponder

χωρος place ~heir

μούνης· τὸ γὰρ δὴ αὐτὸ οὖνομα ἢ γῇ τῷ ποταμῷ ἔχει. αὕτη δὲ ὁμοίῃ τῇ ἀρίστῃ γέων Δήμητρος καρπὸν ἐκφέρειν οὐδὲ ἔοικε οὐδὲν τῇ ἄλλῃ Λιβύῃ. μελάγγαιός τε γὰρ ἐστὶ καὶ ἔπυδρος πίδαξι, καὶ οὔτε αὐχμοῦ φροντίζουσα οὐδὲν οὔτε ὄμβρον πλέω πιοῦσα δεδήληται. ὕεται γὰρ δὴ ταῦτα τῆς Λιβύης. τῶν δὲ ἐκφορίων τοῦ καρποῦ ταῦτά μέτρα τῇ Βαβυλωνίῃ γῇ κατίσταται. ἀγαθὴ δὲ γῇ καὶ τὴν Εὐεσπερίται νέμονται· ἐπ' ἑκατοστὰ γάρ, ἐπεὰν αὐτὴ ἐωυτῆς ἄριστα ἐνείκη, ἐκφέρει, ἣ δὲ ἐν τῇ Κίνυπι ἐπὶ τριηκόσια.

## 4.199

Ἔχει δὲ καὶ ἡ Κυρηναίη χώρα, ἐοῦσα ὑψηλοτάτη ταύτης τῆς Λιβύης τὴν οἱ νομάδες νέμονται, τρεῖς ὥρας ἐν ἐωυτῇ ἀξίας θώματος. πρῶτα μὲν γὰρ τὰ παραθαλάσσια τῶν καρπῶν ὀργᾶ ἀμᾶσθαι τε καὶ τρυγᾶσθαι· τούτων τε δὴ συγκεκομισμένων τὰ ὑπὲρ τῶν θαλασσιδίων χώρων τὰ μέσα ὀργᾶ συγκομίζεσθαι, τὰ βουνούς καλέουσι· συγκεκόμισται τε οὗτος ὁ μέσος καρπὸς καὶ ὁ ἐν τῇ



μούνης· τὸ γὰρ δὴ αὐτὸ οὖνομα ἡ γῆ τῷ ποταμῷ ἔχει.  
 αὕτη δὲ ὁμοίῃ τῇ ἀρίστη γέων Δήμητρος καρπὸν |carry off  
 οὐδὲ ἔοικε οὐδὲν τῇ ἄλλῃ Λιβύῃ. |with black soil . εἰ γὰρ  
 ἐστὶ καὶ |rain-making|spring , καὶ οὐτε αὐχμοῦ |consider,  
 οὐδὲν οὐτε |storm πλέω πιούσα |hurt, spoil, |to rain ,ἀρ δὴ  
 |steal  
 ταῦτα τῆς Λιβύης. τῶν δὲ ἐκφορίων τοῦ καρποῦ ταυτὰ  
 |measure ἡ Βαβυλωνίῃ γῇ κατίσταται. ἀγαθὴ δὲ γῆ καὶ  
 τὴν Εὐεσπερίται |distribute ἐπ' |hundredth γάρ, ἐπεὰν αὐτὴ  
 ἑωυτῆς ἄριστα ἐνείκη, |carry off , ἡ δὲ ἐν τῇ Κίνυπι ἐπὶ  
 |three  
 |hundred

4.199

Ἐχει δὲ καὶ ἡ Κυρηναίη χώρα, ἐοῦσα ὑψηλοτάτῃ ταύτης  
 τῆς Λιβύης τὴν οἱ |roaming, |distribute , τρεῖς ὥρας ἐν ἑωυτῇ  
 |grazing  
 ἀξίας |wonder, |surprise . πρῶτα μὲν γὰρ τὰ |by the sea τῶν  
 καρπῶν |be |collect τε καὶ |harvest τούτων τε  
 |turned  
 δὴ |συγχομίζω?: gather; or |on ὑπὲρ τῶν θαλασσιδίων |place  
 |συγχομίζω?: gather  
 τὰ μέσα |be |gather , τὰ βουνοὺς καλέουσι·  
 |turned  
 |συγχομίζω?: gather; or |on τος ὁ μέσος καρπὸς καὶ ὁ ἐν τῇ  
 |συγχομίζω?: gather

Kinyps, for the same name is given to the land as to the river. This region is equal to the best of lands in bringing forth the fruit of Demeter, nor does it at all resemble the rest of Libya; for it has black soil and is watered by springs, and neither has it fear of drought nor is it hurt by drinking too abundantly of rain; for rain there is in this part of Libya. Of the produce of the crops the same measures hold good here as for the Babylonian land. And that is good land also which the Euesperites occupy, for when it bears best it produces a hundred-fold, but the land in the region of Kinyps produces sometimes as much as three hundred fold.

#### 4.199

Moreover the land of Kyrene, which is the highest land of the part of Libya which is occupied by nomads, has within its confines three seasons of harvest, at which we may marvel: for the parts by the sea-coasts first have their fruits ripe for reaping and for gathering the vintage; and when these have been gathered in, the parts which lie above the sea-side places, those situated in the middle, which they call the hills, are ripe for the gathering in; and as soon as this middle crop has been gathered in, that in the highest part of the land

*vocabulary***ἀνευρίσκω** discover**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel**δάπεδον** floor, prepared ground**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate**ἐκπίνω** (i) drink up, consume**ἐνθαῦτα** there, here**ἐννέα** nine**ἐντός** within**ἐπέχω** hold, cover; offer; assail**ἐπιφράζω** realize, think of ~frenzy**ἐπιχέω** pour over**καρτερός** strong, staunch**καταβιβρώσκω** devour**κωφός** blunt, insensible**μεταίτιος** accessory**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**ὀπώρα** fall (season)**ὀργάω** be turned on**ὄρυγμα** -τος (n, 3) trench, tunnel**ὀρύσσω** dig**πεπαίνω** ripen**περιφέρω** carry around**Πέρσης** Persian**προσβολή** application, attack**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle**τελευταῖος** last, final**τιμωρός** (i) avenging**ὑπόγαιος** underground**χαλκεύς** -ος (m) smith

κατυπερτάτη τῆς γῆς πεπαίνεται τε καὶ ὀργᾶ, ὥστε  
ἐκπέποται τε καὶ καταβέβρωται ὁ πρῶτος καρπὸς καὶ  
ὁ τελευταῖος συμπαραγίνεται. οὕτω ἐπ' ὀκτὼ μῆνας  
Κυρηναίους ὁπώρη ἐπέχει. ταῦτα μὲν νυν ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον  
εἰρήσθω.

## 4.200

Οἱ δὲ Φερετίμης τιμωροὶ Πέρσαι ἐπείτε ἐκ τῆς Αἰγύπτου  
σταλέντες ὑπὸ Ἀρνάνδεω ἀπίκατο ἐς τὴν Βάρκην,  
ἐπολιόρκεον τὴν πόλιν ἐπαγγελλόμενοι ἐκδιδόναι τοὺς  
αἰτίους τοῦ φόνου τοῦ Ἀρκεσίλεω· τῶν δὲ πᾶν γὰρ ἦν τὸ  
πλῆθος μεταίτιον, οὐκ ἐδέκοντο τοὺς λόγους. ἐνθαῦτα δὴ  
ἐπολιόρκεον τὴν Βάρκην ἐπὶ μῆνας ἐννέα, ὀρύσσοντες τε  
ὀρύγματα ὑπόγαια φέροντα ἐς τὸ τείχος καὶ προσβολὰς  
καρτερὰς ποιεύμενοι. τὰ μὲν νυν ὀρύγματα ἀνὴρ χαλκεὺς  
ἀνεῦρε ἐπιχάλκω ἀσπίδι, ὥδε ἐπιφρασθεῖς· περιφέρων  
αὐτὴν ἐντὸς τοῦ τείχεος προσίσχε πρὸς τὸ δάπεδον τῆς  
πόλιος. τὰ μὲν δὴ ἄλλα ἔσκε κωφὰ πρὸς τὰ προσίσχε,  
κατὰ δὲ τὰ ὀρυσσόμενα ἠχέεσκε ὁ χαλκὸς τῆς

κατυπερτάτῃ τῆς γῆς |ripen                    τε καὶ |be turned' on  
|drink up, consume... |devour                    ὁ πρῶτος καρπὸς καὶ  
ὁ |last, final            συμπαραγίνεται.    οὕτω ἐπ' |eight    μῆνας  
Κυρηναίους ὀπώρη ἐπέχει. ταῦτα μὲν νυν ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον  
εἰρήσθω.

4.200

Οὐ δὲ Φερεσίμης |avenging Πέρσαι ἐπέιτε ἐκ τῆς Αἰγύπτου  
|prepare, send, furl Ἀρνάνδεω ἀπίκατο ἐς τὴν Βάρκην,  
ἐπολιόρκεον τὴν πόλιν ἐπαγγελλόμενοι |hand over τοὺς  
αἰτίους τοῦ φόνου τοῦ Ἀρκεσίεω· τῶν δὲ πᾶν γὰρ ἦν τὸ  
πληθος |accessory , οὐκ ἐδέκοντο τοὺς λόγους. |there, here ἤ  
ἐπολιόρκεον τὴν Βάρκην ἐπὶ μῆνας |nine , |dig τε  
|trench, |underground ἵκοντα ἐς τὸ τεῖχος καὶ |application,  
|tunnel |attack  
|strong, ποιεύμενοι. τὰ μὲν νυν |trench, ἀνὴρ |smith  
|staunch |tunnel  
|discover ἐπιχάλκω ἀσπίδι, ὧδε |realize, think |carry  
|of |around  
αὐτὴν |within τοῦ τεύχεος προσίσχε πρὸς τὸ |floor τῆς  
πόλιος. τὰ μὲν δὲ ἄλλα ἔσκε |blunt, ...-ὸς τὰ προσίσχε,  
|insensible  
κατὰ δὲ τὰ |dig ἡχέεσκε ὁ χαλκὸς τῆς

comes to perfection and is ripe; so that by the time the first crop has been eaten and drunk up, the last is just coming in. Thus the harvest for the Kyrenians lasts eight months. Let so much as has been said suffice for these things.

#### 4.200

Now when the Persian helpers of Pheretime, having been sent from Egypt by Aryandes, had arrived at Barca, they laid siege to the city, proposing to the inhabitants that they should give up those who were guilty of the murder of Arkesilaos: but as all their people had taken a share in the guilt, they did not accept the proposals. Then they besieged Barca for nine months, both digging underground passages which led to the wall and making vigorous attacks upon it. Now the passages dug were discovered by a worker of bronze with a shield covered over with bronze, who had thought of a plan as follows:— carrying it round within the wall he applied it to the ground in the city, and whereas the other places to which he applied it were noiseless, at those places where digging was going on the bronze of the

*vocabulary*

**αίρετός** takeable, desirable ~heresy  
**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism  
**ἀποκρούω** drive away  
**ἀσθενής** weak  
**ἀσπαστός** gladly, with glad welcome  
**δόλος** trick, bait  
**ἐξευρίσκω** find; discover ~eureka  
**ἐπιπολή** (gen) on top of  
**ἐπιτείνω** intensify  
**ἐπιφορέω** pile on  
**ἰσόπεδον** (ἶ) flat spot  
**κατύπερθεν** above, from above  
**κρυπτός** hidden, secret ~cryptic  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
 ~mechanism  
**ὁμολογίη** agreement, consent

**ὄρκιον** oath ~orc  
**ὀρύσσω** dig  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**προκαλέω** challenge, call out ~gallo  
**προσβολή** application, attack  
**τάφρη** ditch, trench  
**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph  
**τέμνω** cut, sacrifice, solemnize  
 ~tonsure  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**τρίβω** (ἶ) rub; (mid) be worn out  
 ~tribulation  
**ὑπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic  
**ὑποτελέω** pay a tax  
**χοῦς** jar, jug; loose dirt  
**χόω** heap up

ἀσπίδος. ἀντορύσσοντες δ' ἂν ταύτῃ οἱ Βαρκαῖοι ἔκτεινον τῶν Περσέων τοὺς γεωρυχέοντας. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ οὕτω ἐξευρέθη, τὰς δὲ προσβολὰς ἀπεκρούοντο οἱ Βαρκαῖοι.

## 4.201

Χρόνον δὲ δὴ πολλὸν τριβομένων καὶ πιπτόντων ἀμφοτέρων πολλῶν καὶ οὐκ ἦσσαν τῶν Περσέων, Ἄμασις ὁ στρατηγὸς τοῦ πεζοῦ μηχανᾶται τοιάδε. μαθὼν τοὺς Βορκαίους ὥς κατὰ μὲν τὸ ἰσχυρὸν οὐκ αἰρετοὶ εἶεν, δόλῳ δὲ αἰρετοί, ποιέει τοιάδε· νυκτὸς τάφρην ὀρύξας εὐρέαν ἐπέτεινε ξύλα ἀσθενέα ὑπὲρ αὐτῆς, κατύπερθε δὲ ἐπιπολῆς τῶν ξύλων χοῦν γῆς ἐπεφόρησε ποιέων τῇ ἄλλῃ γῇ ἰσόπεδον. ἅμα ἡμέρῃ δὲ ἐς λόγους προεκαλέετο τοὺς Βαρκαίους· οἱ δὲ ἀσπαστῶς ὑπήκουσαν, ἐς ὃ σφι ἔαδε ὁμολογίῃ χρήσασθαι. τὴν δὲ ὁμολογίην ἐποιεῦντο τοιήνδε τινά, ἐπὶ τῆς κρυπτῆς τάφρου τάμνοντες ὄρκια, ἔστ' ἂν ἡ γῇ αὕτη οὕτω ἔχῃ, μένειν τὸ ὄρκιον κατὰ χώραν, καὶ Βαρκαίους τε ὑποτελέειν φάναι ἀξίην βασιλείῃ καὶ Πέρσας μηδὲν ἄλλο νεοχμοῦν κατὰ Βαρκαίους. μετὰ δὲ τὸ ὄρκιον



ἀσπίδος. ἀντορύσσοντες δ' ἂν ταύτῃ οἱ Βαρκαῖοι ἔκτεινον  
τῶν Περσέων τοὺς γεωρυχέοντας. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ οὕτω

|find;  
|discover , τὰς δὲ |application, |drive away οἱ Βαρκαῖοι.  
|attack

4.201

Χρόνον δὲ δὴ πολλὸν |rub; (mid) be καὶ πιπτόντων  
|worn out

ἀμφοτέρων πολλῶν καὶ οὐκ ἦσσαν τῶν Περσέων, Ἄμασις

ὁ στρατηγὸς τοῦ πεζοῦ |build, |such . μαθὼν τοὺς  
|contrive

Βαρκαίους ὥς κατὰ μὲν τὸ ἰσχυρὸν οὐκ |takeable, εἶεν,  
|desirable

|trick, bait |takeable, ποιέει |such νυκτὸς |ditch |dig  
|desirable

εὐρέαν |intensify ξύλα |weak ὑπὲρ αὐτῆς, |above, from above

|(gen) on top of ξύλων χοῦν γῆς |pile on ποιέων τῇ ἄλλῃ

γῇ |flat spot . ἅμα ἡμέρη δὲ ἐς λόγους |challenge τοὺς

Βαρκαίους· οἱ δὲ |glad, welcoming ἴκουσαν, ἐς ὃ σφι |please

|agreement, χρήσασθαι. τὴν δὲ |agreement, ἐποιεῦντο |such  
|consent |consent

τινά, ἐπὶ τῆς |hidden, |ditch τάμνοντες ὄρκια, ἔστ' ἂν  
|secret

ἢ γῇ αὕτη οὕτω ἔχῃ, μένειν τὸ ὄρκιον κατὰ χώρην, καὶ

Βαρκαίους τε |pay a tax φάναι ἀξίην βασιλείῃ καὶ Πέρσας

μηδὲν ἄλλο νεοχμοῦν κατὰ Βαρκαίους. μετὰ δὲ τὸ ὄρκιον

shield gave a sound; and the men of Barca would make a countermine there and slay the Persians who were digging mines. This then was discovered as I have said, and the attacks were repulsed by the men of Barca.

#### 4.201

Then as they were suffering hardship for a long time and many were falling on both sides, and especially on that of the Persians, Amasis the commander of the land-army contrived as follows:— perceiving that the Barcaians were not to be conquered by force but might be conquered by guile, he dug by night a broad trench and over it he laid timber of no great strength, and brought earth and laid it above on the top of the timber, making it level with the rest of the ground: then at daybreak he invited the men of Barca to a parley; and they gladly consented, and at last they agreed to make a treaty: and the treaty they made with one another was taken over the hidden trench, namely that so long as this earth should continue to be as it was, so long the oath should remain firm, and that the men of Barca should promise to pay tribute of due amount to the king, and the Persians should do no further violence to the men of Barca. After the

*vocabulary***ἀνασκολοπίζω** impale**ἀνοίγνυμι** (ὄ) open**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure**γέφυρα** (ὄ) dam, dike; bridge**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

**θέω** run, run for**καταρρήγνυμι** (ὄ) break down**κρυπτός** hidden, secret ~cryptic**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**λήϊη** booty**μαστός** nipple, breast**μεταίτιος** accessory**ὄρκιον** oath ~orc**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**Πέρσης** Persian**τέμνω** cut, sacrifice, solemnize

~tonsure

Βαρκαῖοι μὲν πιστεύσαντες τούτοις αὐτοὶ τε ἐξήσαν ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος καὶ τῶν πολεμίων ἔων παριέναι ἐς τὸ τεῖχος τὸν βουλόμενον, τὰς πάσας πύλας ἀνοίξαντες. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι καταρρήξαντες τὴν κρυπτὴν γέφυραν ἔθρον ἔσω ἐς τὸ τεῖχος. κατέρρηξαν δὲ τοῦδε εἵνεκα τὴν ἐποίησαν γέφυραν, ἵνα ἐμπεδορκέοιεν, ταμόντες τοῖσι Βαρκαίοις χρόνον μένειν αἰεὶ τὸ ὄρκιον ὅσον ἂν ἡ γῆ μένη κατὰ τότε εἶχε· καταρρήξασι δὲ οὐκέτι ἔμενε τὸ ὄρκιον κατὰ χώραν.

## 4.202

Τοὺς μὲν νυν αἰτιωτάτους τῶν Βαρκαίων ἡ Φερετίμη, ἐπεῖτε οἱ ἐκ τῶν Περσέων παρεδόθησαν, ἀνεσκολόπισε κύκλῳ τοῦ τεύχεος, τῶν δὲ σφί γυναικῶν τοὺς μαζοὺς ἀποταμοῦσα περιέστιξε καὶ τούτοις τὸ τεῖχος· τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς τῶν Βαρκαίων λήϊν ἐκέλευε θέσθαι τοὺς Πέρσας, πλὴν ὅσοι αὐτῶν ἦσαν Βαττιάδαι τε καὶ τοῦ φόνου οὐ μεταίτιοι· τούτοις δὲ τὴν πόλιν ἐπέτρεψε ἡ Φερετίμη.

Βαρκαῖοι μὲν πιστεύσαντες τούτοισι αὐτοὶ τε ἐξήσαν ἐκ  
 τοῦ ἄστεος καὶ τῶν πολεμίων ἔων |dangle; pass τὸ τεῖχος  
 |over, allow  
 τὸν βουλόμενον, τὰς πάσας πύλας ἀνοίξαντες. οἱ δὲ  
 Πέρσαι |break down τὴν |hidden, |dam, dike;|run ἔσω  
 |secret |bridge  
 ἐς τὸ τεῖχος. κατέρρηξαν δὲ τοῦδε εἵνεκα τὴν ἐποίησαν  
 |dam, dike; bridge, πεδορκέοιεν, |cut, sacrifice, ᾧσι Βαρκαίοισι  
 |solemnize  
 χρόνον μένειν αἰεὶ τὸ ὄρκιον ὅσον ἂν ἡ γῆ μένη κατὰ τότε  
 εἶχε· |break down δὲ οὐκέτι ἔμενε τὸ ὄρκιον κατὰ χώρην.

## 4.202

Τοὺς μὲν νυν αἰτιωτάτους τῶν Βαρκαίων ἡ Φερετίμη,  
 ἐπείτε οἱ ἐκ τῶν Περσέων παρεδόθησαν, |impale  
 |circle, τοῦ τεύχεος, τῶν δέ σφι γυναικῶν τοὺς |breast  
 |wheel  
 |cut off, sever περιέστιξε καὶ τούτοισι τὸ τεῖχος· τοὺς δὲ  
 λοιποὺς τῶν Βαρκαίων |booty ἐκέλευε θέσθαι τοὺς Πέρσας,  
 πλὴν ὅσοι αὐτῶν ἦσαν Βαττιάδαι τε καὶ τοῦ φόνου οὐ  
 |accessory τούτοισι δὲ τὴν πόλιν |entrust, de-, Φερετίμη.  
 |cide, allow

oath the men of Barca trusting to these engagements both went forth themselves from their city and let any who desired it of the enemy pass within their walls, having opened all the gates; but the Persians first broke down the concealed bridge and then began to run inside the city wall. And the reason why they broke down the bridge which they had made was that they might keep their oaths, since they had sworn to the men of Barca that the oath should remain firm continually for so long time as the earth should remain as it then was, but after that they had broken it down, the oath no longer remained firm.

#### 4.202

Now the most guilty of the Barcaians, when they were delivered to her by the Persians, Pheretime impaled in a ring round about the wall; and she cut off the breasts of their wives and set the wall round with these also in order: but the rest of the men of Barca she bade the Persians carry off as spoil, except so many of them as were of the house of Battos and not sharers in the guilt of the murder; and to these Pheretime gave the city in charge.

*vocabulary***ἀνδραποδίζω** enslave**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀποκαλέω** call back; call a name**ἀποτρέχω** run away**διέξειμι** pass through; recount ~ion**διεξέρχομαι** go through**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal**ἐνθεῦτεν** thence**ἐξήκοντα** sixty**εὖς** good, brave, noble**ἐφόδιον** supplies, funding**ἐφόδιος** for a journey**ἰδρύω** establish**ἵζω** to seat ~sit**λόγιος** learned, eloquent; oracle**μεταμέλομαι** (impers.+dat.) cause regret to; (mp) regret**ὄον** οὖ type of fruit**ὄχθος** bank, hill**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**Πέρσης** Persian**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers ~strategy**στρατόω** be on a campaign ~strategy

## 4.203

Τοὺς ὦν δὴ λοιποὺς τῶν Βαρκαίων οἱ Πέρσαι ἀνδραποδισάμενοι ἀπήισαν ὀπίσω· καὶ ἐπείτε ἐπὶ τῇ Κυρηναίων πόλι ἐπέστησαν, οἱ Κυρηναῖοι λόγιόν τι ἀποσιεύμενοι διεξῆκαν αὐτοὺς διὰ τοῦ ἄστεος. διεξιούσης δὲ τῆς στρατιῆς Βάδρης μὲν ὁ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ στρατηγὸς ἐκέλευε αἰρέειν τὴν πόλιν, Ἄμασις δὲ ὁ τοῦ πεζοῦ οὐκ ἔα· ἐπὶ Βάρκην γὰρ ἀποσταλῆναι μούνην Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν· ἐς ὃ διεξελθοῦσι καὶ ἰζομένοισι ἐπὶ Διὸς Λυκαίου ὄχθον μετεμέλησέ σφι οὐ σχοῦσι τὴν Κυρήνην. καὶ ἐπειρῶντο τὸ δεύτερον παριέναι ἐς αὐτήν· οἱ δὲ Κυρηναῖοι οὐ περιώρων. τοῖσι δὲ Πέρσησι οὐδενὸς μαχομένου φόβος ἐνέπεσε, ἀποδραμόντες τε ὅσον τε ἐξήκοντα στάδια ἕζοντο· ἰδρυθέντι δὲ τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ταύτῃ ἦλθε παρὰ Ἀρυνάνδεω ἄγγελος ἀποκαλέων αὐτούς. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι Κυρηναίων δεηθέντες ἐπόδια σφι δοῦναι ἔτυχον, λαβόντες δὲ ταῦτα ἀπαλλάσσοντο ἐς τὴν Αἴγυπτον. παραλαβόντες δὲ τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν αὐτοὺς Λίβυες



4.203

Τοὺς ὧν δὴ λοιποὺς τῶν Βαρκαίων οἱ Πέρσαι  
 |enslave ἀπήσαν ὀπίσω· καὶ ἐπείτε ἐπὶ τῇ  
 Κυρηναίων πόλει ἐπέστησαν, οἱ Κυρηναῖοι λόγιόν τι  
 ἀποσιεύμενοι διεξῆκαν αὐτοὺς διὰ τοῦ ἄστεος. |pass through;  
 |recount  
 δὲ τῆς στρατιῆς Βάδρης μὲν ὁ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ  
 στρατηγὸς ἐκέλευε αἰρέειν τὴν πόλιν, Ἀμασις δὲ ὁ τοῦ  
 πεζοῦ οὐκ ἔα· ἐπὶ Βάρκην γὰρ ἀποσταλῆναι μούνην  
 Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν· ἐς ὃ |go through καὶ |to seat ἐπὶ Διὸς  
 Λυκαίου |bank, hill τεμέλυσέ σφι οὐ σχοῦσι τὴν Κυρήνην.  
 καὶ ἐπειρῶντο τὸ δεύτερον |dangle; pass; |aunt; οἱ δὲ  
 |over, allow  
 Κυρηναῖοι οὐ περιώρων. τοῖσι δὲ Πέρσησι οὐδενὸς  
 μαχομένου φόβος ἐνέπεσε, |run away τε ὅσον τε  
 |sixty στάδια |to seat |establish δὲ τῷ στρατοπέδῳ  
 ταύτῃ ἦλθε παρὰ Ἀρυνάνδεω ἄγγελος |call back; call  
 |a name  
 αὐτοῦς. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι Κυρηναίων δεηθέντες ἐπόδιά σφι  
 δοῦναι ἔτυχον, λαβόντες δὲ ταῦτα |free from, remove; 's τὴν  
 |be freed, depart  
 Αἴγυπτον. παραλαβόντες δὲ τὸ |thence αὐτοὺς Λίβυες

## 4.203

So the Persians having made slaves of the rest of the Barcaians departed to go back: and when they appeared at the gates of the city of Kyrene, the Kyrenians let them go through their town in order to avoid neglect of some oracle. Then as the army was going through, Badres the commander of the fleet urged that they should capture the city, but Amasis the commander of the land-army would not consent to it; for he said that they had been sent against no other city of the Hellenes except Barca. When however they had passed through and were encamping on the hill of Zeus Lycaios, they repented of not having taken possession of Kyrene; and they endeavoured again to pass into it, but the men of Kyrene would not allow them. Then upon the Persians, although no one fought against them, there fell a sudden panic, and they ran away for about sixty furlongs and then encamped. And when the camp had been placed here, there came to it a messenger from Aryandes summoning them back; so the Persians asked the Kyrenians to give them provisions for their march and obtained their request; and having received these, they departed to go to Egypt. After this the Libyans took them

*vocabulary***ἀνδραποδίζω** enslave**ἀπονοστέω** go home**ἐκαστάτω** afar, far off**ἐπίφθονος** jealous**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest**εὐλή** worm, maggot**ἐφέλκω** drag; (mid) influence**καταπλέκω** entwine, braid**κώμη** village**λίην** very**Πέρσης** Persian**σκευή** equipment**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

**τιμωρία** (τι) vengeance, punishment**τίνω** (ι) pay, atone for; (mp) punish**τίω** value, honor; mp: exact

recompense for

**ὕπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse**φονεύω** kill

τῆς τε ἐσθῆτος εἵνεκα καὶ τῆς σκευῆς τοὺς ὑπολειπομένους αὐτῶν καὶ ἐπελκομένους ἐφόνευν, ἐς ὃ ἐς τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἀπίκοντο.

## 4.204

Οὗτος ὁ Περσέων στρατὸς τῆς Λιβύης ἐκαστάτῳ ἐς Εὐεσπερίδας ἦλθε. τοὺς δὲ ἡνδραποδίσαντο τῶν Βαρκαίων, τούτους δὲ ἐκ τῆς Αἰγύπτου ἀνασπάστους ἐποίησαν παρὰ βασιλέα, βασιλεὺς δέ σφι Δαρεῖος ἔδωκε τῆς Βακτρίας χώρας κώμην ἐγκατοικῆσαι. οἱ δὲ τῇ κώμῃ ταύτῃ οὖνομα ἔθεντο Βάρκην, ἥ περ ἔτι καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ἦν οἰκεομένη ἐν γῇ τῇ Βακτρίῃ.

## 4.205

Οὐ μὲν οὐδὲ ἡ Φερετίμη εὖ τὴν ζόην κατέπλεξε. ὥς γὰρ δὴ τάχιστα ἐκ τῆς Λιβύης τισαμένη τοὺς Βαρκαίους ἀπενόστησε ἐς τὴν Αἴγυπτον, ἀπέθανε κακῶς· ζῶσα γὰρ εὐλέων ἐξέζεσε, ὥς ἄρα ἀνθρώποισι αἱ λίην ἰσχυραὶ τιμωρίαι πρὸς θεῶν ἐπίφθονοι γίνονται· ἐκ μὲν δὴ

τῆς τε |clothes εἵνεκα καὶ τῆς |equipment ἵς |leave (food, person)  
 αὐτῶν καὶ |drag; (mid) in-kill , ἐς ὃ ἐς τὴν Αἴγυπτον  
 |fluence  
 ἀπίκοντο.

4.204

Οὗτος ὁ Περσέων |army τῆς Λιβύης |afar, far off ἐς  
 Εὐεσπερίδας ἦλθε. τοὺς δὲ |enslave τῶν  
 Βαρκαίων, τούτους δὲ ἐκ τῆς Αἰγύπτου ἀνασπάστους  
 ἐποίησαν παρὰ βασιλέα, βασιλεὺς δέ σφι Δαρεῖος ἔδωκε  
 τῆς Βακτρίας χώρας κώμην ἐγκατοικῆσαι. οἱ δὲ τῇ |village  
 ταύτῃ οὖνομα ἔθεντο Βάρκην, ἥ περ ἔτι καὶ ἐς ἐμὲ ἦν  
 οἰκεομένη ἐν γῇ τῇ Βακτρίῃ.

4.205

Οὐ μὲν οὐδὲ ἡ Φερετίμη εὖ τὴν ζόην |entwine, ὥς  
 |braid  
 γὰρ δὴ τάχιστα ἐκ τῆς Λιβύης τισαμένη τοὺς Βαρκαίους  
 |go home ἐς τὴν Αἴγυπτον, ἀπέθανε κακῶς· ζῶσα  
 γὰρ |worm, ἐξέξεσε, ὥς ἄρα ἀνθρώποισι αἱ |very ἰσχυραὶ  
 |maggot  
 τιμωρίαι πρὸς θεῶν |jealous γίνονται· ἐκ μὲν δὴ

up, and killed for the sake of their clothes and equipment those of them who at any time were left or straggled behind, until at last they came to Egypt.

**4.204**

This army of the Persians reached Euesperides, and this was their furthest point in Libya: and those of the Barcaians whom they had reduced to slavery they removed again from Egypt and brought them to the king, and king Dareios gave them a village in the land of Bactria in which to make a settlement. To this village they gave the name of Barca, and it still continued to be inhabited by them even down to my own time, in the land of Bactria.

**4.205**

Pheretime however did not bring her life happily to an end any more than they: for as soon as she had returned from Libya to Egypt after having avenged herself on the Barcaians, she died an evil death, having become suddenly full of worms while yet alive: for, as it seems, too severe punishments inflicted by men prove displeasing to the gods. Such and so

*vocabulary*

**τιμωρία** (τι) vengeance, punishment

Φερετίμης τῆς Βάττου τοιαύτη τε καὶ τοσαύτη τιμωρή  
ἐγένετο ἐς Βαρκαίους.



Φερεσίμης τῆς Βάπτου τοιαύτη τε καὶ τοσαύτη τιμωρίῃ  
ἐγένετο ἐς Βαρκαίους.

great was the punishment inflicted by Pheretime the wife of Battos on the men of Barca.